July 3, 1922
TEMPLE OF JUPITER (A RESTORATION)
A JUNIOR LATIN READER

BY

FREDERICK WARREN SANFORD
ASSOCIATE PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY OF NEBRASKA

AND

HARRY FLETCHER SCOTT
ASSOCIATE PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN OHIO UNIVERSITY, ATHENS, OHIO

SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY
CHICAGO NEW YORK
Copyright 1919, 1922
by
Scott, Foresman and Company
This book is dedicated to the memory of
Harold W. Johnston
by the authors
who count it an honor to have been numbered among his pupils
The purpose of this book is to furnish sufficiently easy reading material for pupils in the second year of their Latin study, and also to provide the opportunity for drill on forms which have not been a part of the work of the first year.

Children demand an early introduction to connected discourse, which is the purpose of language. It is important that their earlier Latin readings shall be well within their powers. Not all difficulties can be eliminated. Difficulties are inherent in a highly inflected language. Not all should be eliminated. But the difficulties should be surmountable, with a view to the pupil's legitimate satisfaction from day to day. It happens that no Latin author saw fit to write simple Latin stories for children. The best substitute for such material seems to be a simplified form of narrative based more or less directly on ancient authors. This volume aims to serve the purpose indicated. Its plan is as follows:

I. Ten review lessons are given, dealing with forms and constructions from the work of the first year. These lessons (pages 301 ff.) follow the text of Caesar, and they may be omitted by teachers who prefer to do so. But many teachers will find it worth while to spend the time necessary to cover them. Summer vacations have a well-known power to dim the knowledge acquired the preceding year.

II. All forms and uses of the subjunctive are omitted from the first-year book of this series. In order that pupils may have the opportunity to apply in the most effective way knowledge already gained before attacking new modal forms and uses, a number of pages of simple reading matter have been provided. These consist of the stories of Perseus and Hercules from Ritchie's *Fabulae Faciles*, a book published...
in England, but well known and much used in this country. The Latin is simple, the stories are interestingly told, the vocabulary is well selected. As here presented, neither story contains subjunctives, a fact which has made alterations necessary in certain parts of the Hercules.

III. The inflections and principles of syntax which were postponed from the first book are next given in a series of thirty-five lessons. The number of subjunctive constructions has been kept within reasonable limits. If pupils carry Latin but two years, elaborate study of the subjunctive is inappropriate. If they go further, other uses are best taken up in connection with the reading of more advanced Latin. These lessons include a number of case uses, together with some pronouns, adjectives, and irregular verbs which are commonly given in the first year’s work of the four-year high school, but which many teachers prefer to postpone to a later part of the course.

IV. A third story from Fabulae Faciles follows, that of the Argonauts. Only minor changes from the original form are made in this story. The pupil here finds subjunctive constructions amply illustrated.

V. The stories from Roman history contain, first of all, legends of early Rome recounted in the first book of Livy. They are given in a greatly simplified form in respect to vocabulary, constructions, sentence length, and order of words. The same ground was covered by the French teacher Lhomond in the eighteenth century. In this book, however, all the stories of the kings and several of the earlier biographical sketches of notables of the republic have been written anew from the sources without reference to Lhomond’s work and in much simpler form than his sketches. The later biographies have been adapted from his Urbis Romae Viri Illustres, considerably simplified and shortened.

VI. The reading matter concludes with the first book of Caesar’s Gallic War in simplified form. In altering the text
the authors have intended to smooth away the more serious difficulties and yet to leave the essential Caesarean qualities intact. Involved sentences have been simplified by being broken up into shorter sentences. All but very brief passages in indirect discourse have been converted to the direct form. The second part of the book, beginning with the thirtieth chapter, and weighted in the original text with indirect discourse, is thus reduced to a fairly easy narrative. It is one of the most attractive portions of the Gallie War. Its graphic account of Caesar’s dealings with the German king Ariovistus, who had come into Alsace to stay, but did not stay, commands the unflagging attention of any pupil, if the difficulties of the language are not beyond his powers of mastery. The authors hope that the reading of a portion of Caesar’s narrative in simplified form may serve to give some knowledge of the character of this work which has so long held its place among the masterpieces of prose narrative.

VII. To the end of the Roman stories the text is furnished with page vocabularies, a feature of long standing in the Lake Classical Series. At the place of first occurrence the definition of each word, except proper nouns and adjectives, is presented on the same page with the text. This plan causes a saving of the pupil’s time and makes possible effective vocabulary drill. In making up this page vocabulary, however, many of the words appearing in the first-year book of this series have been omitted, and words in the vocabularies of the thirty-five lessons have not been repeated in the page vocabularies attached to the stories following the Lessons. The final vocabulary contains all words in the selections for reading and the exercises, including proper nouns and adjectives.

VIII. Exercises in composition are given, one for each week of the time likely to be available after the Lessons are completed. An English-Latin vocabulary accompanies the composition section.
IX. In keeping with the present practice in high-school textbooks, a Grammatical Appendix displays the declensions and conjugations and the leading principles of syntax for convenient reference. The authors believe that it contains all the grammatical material essential at this stage of the pupil’s studies.

X. A capable teacher finds in each day’s reading lesson ample material for the study of English derivatives. As a supplement to such work, this book contains connected lists of English derivatives from Latin to be found in the terminologies of elementary science, grammar, geography, and elementary mathematics. No device serves better to demonstrate the debt that our own language owes to Latin.

XI. In the preparation of notes the authors have intended not to smother the student with unnecessary erudition. The reading matter of the book is not difficult. The notes, accordingly, are brief. The aim has been to give apt and typical translations, stimulating suggestions, and, where necessary, adequate explanations.

As in the first-year book, consonant \(i\) has been represented by \(j\). The uncontracted genitive of nouns in \(-ius\) and \(-ium\) has also been used. In expectō, existō, and other compounds of \(ex\) with words beginning with \(s\), the later spelling, without \(s\), has been employed. The advantage of the use of these forms for pupils who take but two years of Latin is obvious, and for others the change to slightly different forms, if necessary, need cause no difficulty.

While the reading of Cicero or Vergil may be taken up directly after this book, some teachers may prefer to give a half year to the reading of Caesar as the next element of the course. With a five-year course a full year can be given to Caesar or to Caesar and Nepos after the reading of a reasonably large amount of text from this book.

Frederick Warren Sanford
Harry Fletcher Scott
# CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Preface</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List of Illustrations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List of Abbreviations</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## PART I

**The Story of Perseus** | 1

**The Story of Hercules** | 15

## PART II

**Lesson I. The Locative: Declension of domus** | 57
**II. Summary of Place Constructions** | 59
**III. Conjugation of nōlō** | 62
**IV. Declension of vetus and quisquam** | 64
**V. The Subjunctive Mood: Present Subjunctive of Regular Verbs: Clauses of Result** | 66
**VI. Present Subjunctive of Regular Verbs (Continued)** | 67
**VII. Present Subjunctive of sum and possum: Noun Clauses of Fact** | 69
**VIII. Imperfect Subjunctive of Regular Verbs: Sequence of Tenses** | 72
**IX. Imperfect Subjunctive of sum and possum: Impersonal Verbs** | 74
**X. Dative of Purpose: Dative of Reference** | 76
**XI. The Perfect Subjunctive: Cum Causal Clauses** | 78
**XII. The Past Perfect Subjunctive: Cum Adversative Clauses** | 81
**XIII. Subjunctive of ferō: Cum Descriptive Clauses of Situation** | 83
**XIV. Subjunctive of volō and eō: Indirect Questions** | 85
**XV. Future Passive Participle: Dative of Agent** | 87
**XVI. Present and Imperfect Subjunctive of fiō and nōlō: Indirect Discourse, Completed** | 89
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONTENTS</th>
<th>PAGE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>XVII. Present Passive Imperative: Impersonal Use of Certain Verbs in the Passive</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XVIII. The Gerundive</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIX. Clauses of Purpose with <em>ut</em> and <em>né</em></td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XX. Relative Clauses of Purpose: Ablative of Comparison</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXI. The Supine: Declension of <em>iste</em></td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXII. Noun Clauses of Desire</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXIII. Relative Clauses of Description</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXIV. Clauses of Fear</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXV. Review of Participles</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXVI. The Volitive Subjunctive in Principal Clauses</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXVII. The Subjunctive in Wishes</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXVIII. The Anticipatory Subjunctive: Dative of Possession</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXIX. Conditional Sentences: Future Conditional Sentences, More Vivid and Less Vivid</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXX. Conditional Sentences Contrary to Fact</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXI. Non-Committal Conditional Sentences: Ablative of Route</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXII. The Future Imperative: Vocative in -i</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXIII. Conjugation of <em>mālō</em>: Adjectives Denoting a Part</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXIV. Classes of Perfect Stems: Negative Commands</td>
<td>121</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXXV. Genitive with Certain Verbs: Subjunctive by Attraction</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PART III

The Argonauts                                                  127

Stories from Roman History

1. Aeneas Settles in Italy                                    153
2. Founding of Alba Longa                                    154
3. Romulus and Remus                                         155
4. Founding of Rome                                          157
5. The Sabine Women                                          159
6. Numa Pompilius                                            162
7. Tullus Hostilius                                          164
## CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8. Ancus Marcius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Tarquinius Priscus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Servius Tullius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Tarquinius Superbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Banishment of Tarquinius Superbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Horatius Cocles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Secession of the Plebs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Menenius Agrippa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. Lucius Quinctius Cincinnatus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. The Gallic Invasion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. Gaius Fabricius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. Marcus Atilius Regulus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. Hannibal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. Quintus Fabius Maximus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. Gaius Marius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. Lucius Cornelius Sulla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25. Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26. Gaius Julius Caesar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27. Marcus Tullius Cicero</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## PART IV

- Caesar's Army ........................................... 243
- Caesar's Gallic War, Book I (Simplified) ........... 249
- Review Outline of First Year Work ................. 301
- Lists of English Derivatives from Latin .......... 317
- Grammatical Appendix ................................ 327
- Exercises in Latin Composition .................... 397
- English-Latin Vocabulary (following 416) ......... 1
- Latin-English Vocabulary ................................ 10
- Index .................................................. 76
# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Illustration</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Frontispiece, Temple of Jupiter at Pompeii (Restored)</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jupiter</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MINERVA</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JUNO</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>An Amazon</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View of Modern Rome</td>
<td>63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vessels Found in Pompeii</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tomb of the Emperor Hadrian, in Rome</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Temple in Rome</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Key from an Ancient House</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marble Relief in Roman Forum</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roman Sword and Scabbard</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jars for Storing Oil and Grain, Ancient Ostia</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arch of Constantine</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wall Painting from Pompeii</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ruins of Ostia</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fragment of the Wall of Servius Tullius</td>
<td>208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roman Aqueduct</td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gaius Julius Caesar</td>
<td>334</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marcus Tullius Cicero</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

PERSEUS

Perseus and his mother were set adrift on the sea by Acrisius, king of Argos, the grandfather of Perseus, because an oracle had declared that Acrisius would some day perish at the hands of his grandson.

Jupiter, however, saved the mother and child, bringing them to the Island of Seriphus, where they were kindly received by Polydectes, the king.

When Perseus reached manhood he was ordered by Polydectes to bring him the head of Medusa, an undertaking which was likely to prove fatal. But Apollo and Minerva directed him on his journey and gave him a special equipment for his task. With the aid thus afforded, he accomplished the perilous exploit in safety and escaped from the companions of Medusa, who sought to kill him. On his way back he rescued Andromeda, daughter of Cepheus, the king of the Ethiopians, who was about to be devoured by a sea serpent. He married Andromeda, and soon after returned with her to the island from which he had been sent by the crafty Polydectes. Finding that his mother had taken refuge from the king, he turned the latter into stone through the magic power of the head of Medusa. Afterward, while taking part in athletic games he accidentally killed his grandfather, Acrisius, thus fulfilling the oracle which Acrisius had vainly sought to escape.
A JUNIOR LATIN READER

PART I

THE STORY OF PERSEUS

1. Set Adrift


1. Haec, these things, i.e., the following stories. This substantive use of the neuter plural of hie is very common.
2. Ācrisius: predicate nominative after the passive of a verb of calling.
6. Danaē: a Greek name, with genitive ending in -ēs, acc. in -ēn.
7. enim: postpositive, i.e., it stands after one or more words of its sentence; nam (see l. 3) regularly stands first in a sentence. Another postpositive word is autem, l. 8.

In section 1 point out two appositives; an ablative of agent.

2. avus, -ī, m., grandfather.
3. nepōs, -ōtis, m., grandson, nephew.
4. ōrāculum, -i, n. [ōrō], oracle.
com-prehendō, -hendere, -hendi, -hensum, tr., seize, arrest.
5. ad-hūc, adv., until now, as yet.
in-fāns, gen. -fantis, adj., infant; subst., m. and f., infant, babe.
arca, -ae, f., chest, box.
ligneus, -a, -um, adj., [lignum], of wood, wooden.

inclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsus, tr. [in+claudō], shut up, enclose.

6. conjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, tr. [com+jaciō], throw together; hurl, cast.

7. enim, conj. (postpositive), for.
turbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [turba], disturb, throw into confusion.

8. autem, conj., but, on the other hand, however, furthermore.
sinus, -ūs, m., a fold; bosom.
dormiō, -īre, -īvi, -ītum, intr., sleep.
JUPITER
2. Cast on an Island


9. tamen: usually postpositive, but sometimes stands first in its clause; the same is true of igitur, l. 4.

10. mare tranquillum: two accusatives after a verb of making. One accusative may be an adjective, as here.

11. Seriphum: in apposition with insulam. We usually say in English “the island of,” “the city of.”

12. Postquam: with postquam and ubi the perfect is the tense most frequently employed. In translation, with the English equivalents “after” or “when,” we sometimes employ the past perfect tense, sometimes the past.

13. piscātōre quōdam: the forms of quōdam sometimes precede and sometimes follow the word they modify.

16. dedit: eīs, dative of indirect object, is to be understood.

In section 2 point out a complementary infinitive; a dative of indirect object.

10. tranquillus, -a, -um, adj., calm, still.

11. per-ducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr., lead through, lead, bring, conduct.

12. appellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, tr. [ad+pellō], drive to, bring to; with or without nāvem, land, put in.

harēna (sometimes spelled arēna), -ae, f., sand; shore, beach.

13. quiēs, -ētis, f., rest; peace, quiet.

piscātor, -ōris, m. [piscor, to fish], fisherman.

14. domus, -ūs, (-i), f., home, house.

ad-ducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr., lead to, conduct, bring; incite, induce.

15. benignē, adv. [benignus], kindly.

excipiō, -cipere, -cépi, -ceptum, tr. [ex+capiō], take out, take up, catch; receive, entertain.

sēdēs, -is, f. [sedeō], seat, chair; residence, abode.

17. grātia, -ae, f. [grātus], favor, influence; gratitude, thanks, requital; grātiās agere, to express thanks; grātiām referre, to make requital, to requite; grātiā (with gen.), for the sake of.
3. Perseus Sent on His Travels


18. annōs: accusative of duration of time.
21. Perseō: dependent on grātum; for the case see App. 50.
23. haec: used as in l. 1; with dīxit, spoke as follows.
agere: subject of est; an infinitive used as a noun is in the neuter gender; hence the predicate adjective, turpe, is neuter.
24. jam dūdum es, you have long been; with jam dūdum a present tense is translated by an English present perfect, an imperfect by an English past perfect; jam dūdum erās would mean you had long been.
25. abī: imperative of abeō. What is the imperative of eō?
26. refer: the present imperative of ferō and its compounds is irregular. See App. 34.

19. beātus, -a, -um, adj., happy, prosperous.
20. atque, conj., and also, and.
21. minimē, superl. adv. [minimus], least, very little; by no means, not at all.
23 vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [vōx], call, summon.
turpis, -e, adj., unseemly, shameful, disgraceful.
ignāvus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+gnāvus, busy], inactive, cowardly.
24. dūdum, adv., before, formerly; jam dūdum, this long time, a long time ago.
adulēscēns, adulēscēntis, -ium, adj. [pr. part. of adulēscō], youthful; subst., m., a young man, a youth.
quo-usque, adv., till when? how long?
25. prae-stō, -stāre, -stītī, -stītum, intr. and tr., stand before; excel, be better; exhibit, show.
hinc, adv. [hic], from this place, hence.
ab-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum, intr., go away, depart.
26. re-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, tr., bear back, bring back; pedem referre, withdraw, retire, retreat; grātiam referre, requite.
4. Perseus Gets His Outfit


27. Perseus: in Latin, when the verbs of a principal and a subordinate clause express action by the same person or thing, the noun or pronoun used to denote the subject frequently stands before the subordinate clause. haec, this; see note on haec, l. 23.
31. galeam magicam: this rendered the wearer invisible.
33. pedibus, on his feet; dative, used with the compound induit.
āera: a word of Greek origin, which retains its Greek accusative form.
36. speciē horribili, of horrible aspect, ablative of description.
37. aere: from aes.

28. continēns, -entis, f. [contineō], continent, mainland.
frūstrā, adv., in vain, to no purpose.
29. ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., not know, be unaware of.
tandem, adv., at length, finally.
30. prīmum, adv. [primus], in the first place, first of all; cum prīmum, as soon as; quam prīmum, as soon as possible.
31. tālāria, -ium, n. pl., winged sandals.
galea, -ae, f., helmet.
magicus, -a, -um, adj., magical, magic.
32. falx, falcis, f., sickle.
speculum, -ī, n. [speciō, look], mirror.
33. induō, -duere, -duī, -dūtum, tr., put on.
āēr, āeris, m., the air.
35. cēterī, -ae, -a, adj., pl., the other, the rest of.
36. mōnstrum, -ī, n., [moneō], a divine omen, portent; monster.
speciēs, -eī, f., appearance, aspect.
horribilis, -e, adj. [horreō], terrible, fearful, dreadful.
37. serpēns, gen. -entis, f. [pr. part. of serpō, crawl], serpent.
omnīnō, adv. [omnis], altogether, entirely, at all; only.
con-tegō, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctum, tr., cover.
aes, aeris, n., copper, bronze.
5. The Gorgon’s Head


40. vertēbantur: the Latin imperfect, like the English past, often expresses repeated or customary action.
42. speculum: ancient mirrors consisted of polished metal plates.
hōc modō: ablative of manner.
46. dum fugit, while he fled, while fleeing; when a dum clause denotes situation, it takes the present indicative, regardless of the tense of the principal verb.

In section 5 what is the subject of the first sentence? Account for the case of ictū, 43; for the tense of fēcit, 47. What different forces have the perfects vertit, vēnit, and the imperfects īnspiciēbat, dormiēbat, 42-43?

39. abscidō, -cidere, -cīdi, -cīsūm, tr. [abs+caedo], cut off.
40. cōnspectus, -ūs, m. sight, view.
vertō, -ere, verti, versum, tr., turn.
42. īnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, look into, look.
43. ictus, -ūs, m., blow, stroke.
44. somnus, -ī, m., sleep.
excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., call out, rouse.
45. īra, -ae, f., anger, wrath, ire.
com-moveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mō-tum, tr., move deeply, excite, arouse, alarm.
rapiō, -ere, rapui, raptum, tr., seize, carry off.
46. occidō, -cidere, -cīdī, -cīsūm, tr. [ob+caedo], cut down, kill.
dum, conj., while; until.
48. ē-vādō, -vādere, -vāsi, -vāsūm, intr., come out, escape.

6. The Sea Serpent

Post haec Perseus in fines Aethiopum vēnit. Ibi Cēpheus quidam illō tempore rēgnābat. Hic Neptūnum, maris deum,

49. Cēpheus quidam, a certain Cepheus, or a man named Cepheus.
50. tempore: ablative of time.
Hic: a pronoun referring to Cepheus.
MINERVA

52. mari: it should be remembered that neuter nouns with the genitive plural in -ium have the ending -i in the ablative singular.

53. omnium, of all (i.e., men); a substantive use of an adjective; compare the neuter haec, l. 23.

54. ōrāculum: the word may mean the seat of an oracle, as here, or the reply given by an oracle. The consultation of oracles sprang from the belief that information and advice could be obtained from certain divinities. Oracles were usually given by oral utterances of a priest or priestess in a state of real or pretended frenzy, or by signs. The temple (with its oracle) of the Egyptian god Hammon stood in an oasis of the Libyan desert. His oracles were signs interpreted by a priest. The most famous oracle of antiquity was that of Apollo at Delphi, in Greece, where the oracular response was delivered by a priestess in a state of excitement resembling madness.

55. mónstrō: trādere takes an indirect object.

nōmine: ablative of respect.

56. Cēpheus, ubi: the order for translation is explained in the note on Perseus, ubi, l. 27.

In section 6 explain the case of deō, 54; of Andromeda, 55; of virgō, 56. What are the principal parts of volō?

51. offendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēnd-sum, tr., [ob+fendō, strike], offend.

saevus, -a, -um, adj., fierce, savage.

52. dē-vorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., swallow, devour.

53. ob, prep. with acc., on account of.

pavor, -ōris, m. [paveō, be afraid], terror, alarm.

54. cōnsulō, -sulere, -sului, -sultum, tr. and intr., consult; consult the interests of (with dative).

56. virgō, virginis, f., young woman, maiden, virgin.

fōrmōsus, -a, -um, adj. [förma], beautiful, handsome.

57. percipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. [per+capio], perceive, feel.

58. ex-trahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr., draw out; extricate, release.

59. imperātum, -i, n. [pf. part. of imperō], command, order.
7. A Human Sacrifice

Tum rēx diem certam dīxit et omnia parāvit. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Andromeda ad lītus dēducta est et in cōnspectū omnium ad rūpem alligāta est. Omnēs fātum ejus dēplōrābant, nec lacrimās tenēbant. At subitō, dum mōnstrum expectant, Perseus accurrit; et, ubi lacrimās vidit, causam dolōris quaerit. Illī rem tōtam expōnunt et puellam dēmōnstrant. Dum haec geruntur, fremitus terribilis auditur; simul mōnstrum, horribili speciē, procul conspicitur. Ejus cōnspectus timorem maximum omnibus injeicit. At mōnstrum diem: in the plural, diēs is always masculine, in the singular sometimes masculine, sometimes feminine.

omnia, all things, everything; or with parāvit, made all preparations. The masculine plural forms of omnis used substantively mean all men, as in l. 53, the neuter plural forms, all things.

63. nec tenēbant, and did not restrain; neque is regularly used in Latin for and not.

dum ... expectant, while they were awaiting; the present tense with dum, as in l. 46.

64. accurrit: for vivid effect a past event or situation may be represented as present. The present in this use is called the historical present, which may often be translated by the English past. Several other examples occur in this section.

67. speciē: the case use is the same as in l. 36.

68. timōrem ... omnibus injeicit, inspired all with the greatest fear; literally, threw the greatest fear into all; omnibus is a dative with a compound verb, as in l. 33.

60. certus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of cernō], fixed, certain.

61. dē- dúcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr., lead away; draw down; nāvem dēducere, to launch a ship.

62. rūpēs, -is, f., rock, cliff.

alligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [ad+ligō, bind], bind to, tie to.

fātum, -ī, n. [p. part. of for, speak], fate, destiny.

dē-plōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., deplore, lament.

64. accurrō, -currere, -currī, -currī, intr. [ad+currō], run to, come up hurriedly.

65. ex-pōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, tr., set forth, explain; expose, abandon; set ashore.

66. fremitus, -ūs, m. [fremō, roar], a roar, a loud noise.

terribilis, -e, adj. [terreo], dreadful, terrible.

67. procul, adv., in the distance, at a distance, far off.

conspeciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, tr., [con+speciō], look, perceive. observe.

68. injiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, tr. [in+jacī], throw into, hurl upon; inspire in, cause.
magnā celeritāte ad lītus contendit, jamque ad lŏcum appro-
pinquābat ubi puella stābat.

69. magnā celeritāte: ablative of manner.
In section 7 account for the tense of geruntur, 66; of stābat, 70.

8. THE RESCUE

At Perseus, ubi haec vidit, gladium suum rapuit, et, post-
quam tālāria induit, in āera sublātus est. Tum dēsuper in
mōnstrum impetum subitō fēcit et gladiō suō collum ejus
graviter vulnerāvit. Mōnstrum, ubi sēnsit vulnus, fremitum
horribilem ēdidit et sine morā tōtum corpus sub aquam
mersit. Perseus, dum circum lītus volat, reditum ejus ex-
pectābat; mare autem intereā undique sanguine ĭnficitur.
Post breve tempus, bēlua rūrsus caput sustulit; mox tamen
ā Perseō ictū graviōre vulnerāta est. Tum iterum sē sub
undās mersit, neque postea visa est.

72. in (mōnstrum), on.
70. neque: translate as in l. 63.
In section 8 account for the case of gladiō, 73; of Perseō, 79; of ictū, 79.
What case is governed by sub with a verb of motion? By in meaning
into? By circum? By sīne?

72. tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, tr.,
    lift, elevate, raise; elate; remove.
dē-super, adv., from above.
73. collum, -ī, n., neck.
74. graviter, adv. [gravis], heavily;
    severely; with dignity, impressively.
sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsum, tr., feel,
    see, perceive.
75. ē-dō, -dere, -dīdī, -ditum, tr.,
    give out, put forth; give birth to;
    exhibit; inflict.
sub, prep. with acc. and abl., under.
76. mergō, -ere, mersī, mersum, tr.,
    plunge, sink.
    reditus, -ūs, m. [redeō], return.
77. inter-eā, adv., meanwhile, in the
    meantime.
    undique, adv., from all parts, on all
    sides, all around, everywhere.
    sanguis, sanguinis, m., blood.
    inficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, tr. [in +faciō], stain, dye, color.
78. bēlua, -ae, f., wild beast, mon-
    ster.
80. unda, -ae, f., wave.
9. The Reward of Valor

10. Turned to Stone


93. sē . . . contulit, betook himself, proceeded.
97. quod: a conjunction.
99. eō: an adverb.
100. magnō timōre affectus est, was very badly frightened. What is it literally?
102. simul atque, as soon as; the same rule as to the tense of the verb applies to this phrase as to postquam and ubi, explained in the note on l. 12.

In section 10 account for the case of vacuam, désertam, 95; of diē, 96; of ātrium, 100; of Medūsae, 101. What case does per govern? What are the meanings of the adverbs hic, hinc, hūc?

95. dē-serō, -serere, -seruī, -seruērum, tr., [serō, join], abandon, desert.
96. quārtus, -a, -um, adj. [quattuor], fourth.
97. hūc, adv. [hic], this way, to this place.
re-fugīō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugītūrus, intr., flee back; flee away, escape.
99. rēgia, -ae, f. [rēgius], palace.
eō, adv. [is], to that place, thither; on that account.

100. ātrium, -i, n., atrium, the principal room or hall of a house.
irrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, tr. and intr. [in+rumpō], burst in, rush into, burst into.
102. mōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [mōnstrum], show, exhibit; point out.

11. The Oracle Fulfilled

Post haec Perseus cum uxōre suā ad urbem Ācrisiī rediit. Ille autem, ubi Perseum vīdit, magnō terrōre affectus est.
Nam propter ōrāculum istud nepōtem suum adhūc timēbat. In Thessaliam igitur ad urbem Lārissam statim refūgit; frūstrā tamen, neque enim fātum suum vitāvit. Post paucōs annōs rēx Lārissae lūdōs magnōs fēcit; nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmiserat et diem ōdīxerat. Multī ex omnibus urbibus Graeciae ad lūdōs convēnērunt. Ipse Perseus inter aliōs certāmen discōrum iniit. At, dum discum conjicit, avum suum cāsū occidit; Ācrisius enim inter spectātōrēs ejus certāminis forte stābat.

106. istud: this word is declined like ille, and usually means that or that of yours. Here the force is, that oracle of which you know.

107. Lārissam, of Larissa; an appositive translated like Seriphum, 1. 11.

109. lūdōs fēcit, gave games.

in omnēs partēs, in all directions.

110. discōrum: the discus was a flat piece of stone or metal.

112. cassū, by chance, accidentally; cāsus is one of a class of very common nouns used without prepositions to express manner.

What cases are governed by the prepositions propter, ex, inter? What is the regular position of enim?

106. iste, ista, istud, demonstr. pron., that of yours, that.

109. lūdus, -i, m., game, sport.

110. ē-dicō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum, tr., declare, proclaim, appoint.

112. certāmen, -inis, n. [certō], struggle, contest, rivalry.

discus, -i, m., discus, quoit.

in-eō, -iēre, -iī or -ivi, -itum, tr., enter; enter upon, form.

113. spectātor, -ōris, m. [spectō], onlooker, spectator.

114. forte, adv. [abl. of fors, chance], perhaps, by chance.
HERCULES

Hercules was a Greek hero, celebrated for his feats of strength. While only an infant he strangled two serpents which had been sent by Juno to destroy him. In his boyhood he devoted himself to athletic pursuits, and in a fit of anger he slew the centaur who was his teacher of music. Having been seized by the King of Egypt as a victim for sacrifice, he killed the king, as well as the priest who was about to sacrifice him. His next exploit was to cut off the ears of the envoys of the Minyae who had come to Thebes to demand tribute, thus causing a war in which the Thebans under the leadership of Hercules were victorious. While in a state of temporary madness he slew his children, and thereupon was ordered by the oracle at Delphi to give himself up to the service of Eurystheus, King of Tiryns. At his command he performed the celebrated Twelve Labors, as follows: 1. Slaying the Nemean lion. 2. Slaying the Hydra of Lerna. 3. Capturing the Cerynian stag. 4. Capturing the boar of Erymanthus. 5. Cleaning the Augean stables. 6. Killing the birds of Stymphalus. 7. Capturing the Cretan bull. 8. Capturing the horses of Diomede. 9. Obtaining the girdle of Hippolyte. 10. Bringing the oxen of Geryon from the island of Erythia. 11. Procuring the golden apples of the Hesperides. 12. Bringing Cerberus from the underworld. In connection with these labors he also performed numerous other exploits.

His death came from the putting on of a poisoned robe which had been dipped in the blood of the centaur, Nessus. After his death he was taken by Jupiter to Olympus.
THE STORY OF HERCULES

1. The Infant Prodigy


---

1. Hic dicitur fuisse, he is said to have been; dicō and verbs of similar meaning are frequently employed in the passive with a personal subject and a dependent infinitive.

3. ōderat, hated; this verb has only the tenses formed on the perfect stem; the perfect, however, is translated as a present, the past perfect as an imperfect, and the future perfect as a future.

5. mediā nocte, in the middle of the night.

8. itaque, and so; more frequently the word means therefore.

---

2. Hercules and the Serpents

Īphiclēs, frāter Herculis, magnā vōce exclāmāvit; at Hercules ipse, puer fortissimus, haudquāquam territus est. Parvis manibus serpentēs statim prehendit et colla eārum magnā vis compressit. Tāli modō serpentēs ā puerō interfectae sunt.

---

9. ex-clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., cry out, exclaim.

10. haud-quāquam, adv., not at all, by no means.

12. comprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressum, tr. [com+-premō], press together, squeeze; suppress.
JUNO
Alcmena autem, mater puerorum, clámorem audíverat et maríturn suum ē somnō excitáverat. Ille lúmen accendit et gládió suum rapuit; tum ad puerós properábat, sed, ubi ad locum vénit, rem miram vídít; Herculès enim rídēbat et serpentēs mortuās mōnstrābat.

13. clamor, -ōris, m. [clámō], shout, shouting, noise.
14. maritus, -i, m., husband.
15. lumen, -inis, n. [compare lux], light, a light.
16. mirus, -a, -um, adj., wonderful, strange.
17. mortuus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of moriōr], dead.

3. The Music Lesson

Herculès ā puerō corpus suum diligenter exercēbat. Magnam partem diēi in palaestrā cōsūmēbat; didicit etiam arcum intendere et tēla conjicere. Hís exercitātiōnibus vīrēs ejus cōnfirmātæ sunt. In mūsicā etiam ā Linō Centaurō ērudiēbātur. (Centaurī autem equī erant, sed caput hominis habēbant.) Huic tamen artī minus diligenter studēbat. Hic

18. ā puerō, from boyhood; literally, from a boy.
19. palaestra: the name given by the Greeks to the place in which instruction and training were given the young in wrestling and boxing.
20. vīrēs: review the declension of ĭs, App. 3, (5).
21. exercitātiō, -onis, f. [exercitō, train], exercise, training.
22. čón-firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., strengthen, establish.
23. ērudiō, -āre, -īvī, -ītum, tr. [ē+ rudis, rough], educate, instruct.
24. minus, adv. [neut. of minor], less.
25. exercitō, -āre, studui, —, intr. (takes dative), be devoted, apply oneself, study; favor.
Linus Herculem olim culpabat, quod parum studiösus erat.  

Tum puer iratus citharam subitō rapuit et summīs viribus caput magistri infelīcis percussit. Ille ictū prōstrātus est, et paulō post ē vitā excessit, neque quisquam posteā id officium suscipere voluit.

26. Ille: he (i.e., Linus); ille is used to refer to some person other than the subject of the sentence immediately preceding.

27. paulō: an adverb, but in origin an ablative of degree of difference; with post, a little later; literally, later by a little.

id officium: i.e., the task of instructing Hercules in music.

24. culpō, -äre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [culpa], blame, rebuke.

parum, adv., too little, insufficiently.

studioösus, -a, -um, adj. [studium], eager, fond, studious.

25. cithara, -ae, f., cithara, guitar.

summus, -a, -um, adj. [superl. of superus], highest; utmost, greatest; top of, highest part of.

26. magister, -trī, m., master, teacher.

in-felīx, gen. -fēlicis, adj., unfortunate, unhappy.

percūtīō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussum, tr. [per+quatiō, shake], pierce, strike.

prō-sternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum, tr., spread out; overthrow, lay prostrate.

27. paulō, adv. [abl. of paulum, a little], (by) a little, a little.

quisquam, quicquam, indef. pron., any one, any thing.

officium, -i, n. [opus+faciō], duty, service.

28. suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr., [sub+capiō], undertake.

4. HERCULES ESCAPES FROM BEING SACRIFICED

Dē Hercule haec etiam inter alia narrantur. Olim, dum iter facit, in finēs Aegyptiōrum vēnit; ibi rēx quidam, nōmine Būsīris, illō tempore rēgnābat; hic autem, vir crūdlēissimus, hominēs immolāre cōnsuēverat. Herculem igitur corripuit et

29. haec inter alia, these things among others.

31. vir: in apposition with hic.

32. cōnsuēverat, was accustomed; cōnsuēscō means become accustomed; its perfect tense therefore denotes a present state, has become accustomed, i.e., is accustomed; likewise the past perfect cōnsuēverat denotes a past state, he had become accustomed, i.e., was accustomed.

31. crūdlēis, -e, adj., cruel.

32. immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [in+mola, meal], sacrifice.

cōn-suēscō, -suēscere, -suēvi, -suētum, intr., become accustomed;

pf., be accustomed, be in the habit of.

corripio, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, tr. [com+-rapiō], seize, take hold of, snatch up.

33. sacrifició, for the sacrifice, dative.
37. capítibus: dative with a compound verb, App. 55.
40. alterō: ictū is to be supplied.

33. sacrificium, -ī, n. [compare sacrificā], sacrifice.
34. rítē, adv. [compare ritus], in a proper manner, fitly, duly.
35. catēna, -ae, f., chain.
ferreus, -a, -um, adj. [ferrum], of iron.
mola, -ae, f., meal, coarse flour.
salsus, -a, -um, adj. [sāl], salted.
36. inspergō, -spergere, -spersī, -spersum, tr. [in+spargō, sprint- kle], sprinkle over.
antiquus, -a, -um, adj., ancient, of long ago.
sāl, salis, m., salt.

37. fār, farris, n., grain, meal.
victima, -ae, f., victim (for sacrifice).
impōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, tr. [in+pōnō], place upon, impose; put on board.
āra, -ae, f., altar.
38. sacerdōs, -ōtis, m. and f. [sacer], priest, priestess.
culter, -tri, m., knife.
sūmō, -ere, sūmpsi, sūptum, tr. [sub+emō], take, take up.
39. cōnātus, -ūs, m. [cōnor], attempt.
per-rumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -rup-tum, tr., burst through, burst asunder.

5. Ear-Cropping

Hercules, jam adulēscēns, urbem Thēbās incolēbat. Rēx Thēbārum, vir ignāvus, Creōn appellābatur. Minyae, gēns bellicōsissima, Thēbānis finitimi erant. Lēgātī autem ā Mi- nyēs ad Thēbānōs quotannis veniēbant et centum bovēs postu-

43. Thēbānīs: dative, depending on the adjective finītīmi.
44. veniēbant: imperfect of repeated action.

43. bellicōsus, -a, -um, adj. [bellum], warlike, martial.
44. centum, indecl. num. adj., hun-dred.

47. civēs suōs, his fellow citizens. stipendiō: ablative of separation, App. 64.

49. habentur, are considered. Ill treatment of envoys was assigned as the reason for several wars in antiquity.

In section 5 account for the gender, number, and case of sacrī, 49.

45. tribūtum, -i, n. [p. part. of tribuō, assign], tribute, payment.

46. pendō, -ere, pependi, pēsum, tr., weigh, pay out, pay.

47. liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [liber], set free, free, liberate, release.

6. DEFEAT OF THE MINYAE

50. Ergīnus, rōx Minyārum, ob haec vehementer īrātus erat, et cum omnibus cópiās in finēs Thēbānōrum contendit. Creōn adventum ejus per explōrātōrēs cognōvit; ipse tamen pugnāre nōluit; nam magnō timōre affectus est; Thēbānī igitur Herculēm imperātōrem creāvērunt. Ille nūntiās in omnēs partēs dimīsit et cópiās coēgit. Tum proximō diē cum magnō exercitu prefectus est. Locum idōneum dēlēgit et aciem ināstrūxīt. Tum Thēbānī ē superiōre locō impetum in hostēs

53. magnō timōre: see note on Per., 100.

50. vehementer, adv. [vehemēns, vehement, violent], violently; very much, greatly.

52. explōrātor, -ōris, m. [explōrō], scout.

53. nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, tr. and intr. [ne+volō], be unwilling, not to wish.

55. cōgō, cōgere, coēgi, coāctum, tr. [com-+agō], drive together, bring together, collect; compel, force.

56. proficiscor, proficisci, prefectus sum, intr., set out, start, depart.

57. superior, -ius, adj. [comp. of superus], higher; previous, preceding; superior.
fecerunt. Illi autem impetum sustinère non potuérunt, itaque acies hostium pulsa est atque in fugam conversa.

59. conversa: supply est, which, like the other forms of sum, is sometimes omitted in the perfect passive.

In section 6 account for the case of timóre, Herculæm, 53; of imperálorem, 54; of dié, 55.

58. sustineó, -tinère, -tinui, -ten- tum, tr. [sub+teneó], hold up, sustain, withstand.

59. pelló, -ere, pepuli, pulsum, tr., beat; drive out, drive away, rout.

con-vertó, -vertere, -verti, -versum, tr., turn around, turn.

7. MADNESS AND MURDER


61. gaudēbant: what are the principal parts of this verb? What kind of verb is it?

64. in furōrem incidit, became insane; how literally?

65. ipse suā, his own; but the two Latin words are more emphatic than the English translation.

68. sé recēpit, betook himself, withdrew; compare sé contulit, Per. 93.

60. re-dućō, -ducere, -dūxi, -duc-tum, tr., lead back.

61. maximē, superl. adv. [maximus], in the highest degree, most, exceedingly.

62. decorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [decus, decoration], adorn, honor.

64. furor, -ōris, m. [furō, to rage], madness, fury.

65. incidō, -cidere, -cidi, —, intr. [in+cadō], fall in, fall into.

66. sānitās, -ātis, f. [sānus], health, sanity.

67. facinus, facinoris, n., deed; crime.

68. sermō, -ōnis, m. [serō, entwine], talk, conversation.
8. Hercules Consults the Oracle

Herculēs magnopere cupiēbat tantum scelus expiāre. Čōn-
stituit igitur ad òrāculum Delphicum ìre; hoc enim òrāculum
erat omnium celeberrimum. Ibi templum erat Apollinis,
plūrimis dōnīs ōrnātum. Hōc in templō sedēbat fēmina quae-
dam, nōmine Pythia, et cōnsilium dabat ǐs qui ad òrāculum
veniēbant. Haec autem fēmina ab ipsō Apolline docēbātur,
et voluntātem dei hominibus ēnūntiābat. Herculēs igitur,
qui Apollinem praecipuē colēbat, hūc vēnit. Tum rem tōtām
exposuit, neque scelus cēlāvit.

70. scelus, sceleris, n., wickedness, crime.
ex-piō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [piō, appease], atone for, appease.
72. omnium: supply òrāculōrum.
73. dōnīs: presented by states and individuals.
Hōc in templō: a monosyllabic preposition may stand between a noun
and a modifier.
In section 8, account for the case of omnium, 72; of nōmine, 74.

75. doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum, tr., teach; show, explain.
76. ē-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., assert; proclaim, reveal.
77. praecipuē, adv. [praecipuus, especially], especially.

80. Tiryntha: a word of Greek origin, retaining its Greek accusative
form. Proper names must always be translated by the nominative.
82. in servītūtem, in slavery.

9. The Oracle’s Reply

Ubi Herculēs finem fēcit, Pythia diū tacēbat. Tandem
80 tamen jussit eum ad urbem Tiryntha ìre, et Eurysthei rēgis
omnia imperāta facere. Herculēs, ubi haec audīvit, ad urbem
illum contendit, et Eurystheō rēgi sē in servītūtem trādīdit.

79. taceō, -ēre, tacuī, tacitum, intr. and tr., be silent, be silent about.
82. servītūs, -útis, f. [servus], servitude, slavery.

85. plūrima, a great many things, an adjective used substantively. In section 9 account for the case of eum, 80; of rēgī, 82.

83. duodecim, indecl. num. adj. [duo+decem], twelve. intr. [in+parō], command; control.

84. labor, -ōris, m., labor, toil. imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and

87. crēdibilis, -e, adj. [crēdō], credible.

10. First Labor — Slaying the Nemean Lion —

Prīnum ab Eurystheō jussus est Herculēs leōnem occidere, quī illō tempore vallem Nemaeam reddēbat īnifestam. In silvās igitur quās leō incolēbat statim sē contulit. Mox 90 fēram vīdit, et arcum quem sēcum attulerat intendit; ejus tamen pellem, quae dēnsissima erat, trājicere nōn potuit. Tum clāvā magnā, quam semper gerēbat, leōnem percussit. Frūstrā tamen, neque enim hōc modō eum occidere potuit. Tum dēmum collum mōnstrī bracchīsuīs suīs complexus est, et faucēs 95 ejus summēs vīribus compressit. Hōc modō leō brevī tem-

91. sēcum: the preposition cum regularly follows, and is attached to, a personal, a reflexive, or a relative pronoun.

88. leō, -ōnis, m., lion.

89. īnfestus, -a, -um, adj., unsafe, hostile.

91. fēra, -ae, f., wild beast, wild animal.

afferō, afferre, attuli, allātum, tr. [ad+ferō], bring to, bring.

92. pellis, pellis, -ium, f., skin, hide, pelt.

dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., close, thick. trājiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, tr. and intr. [trans+jacīō], hurl across; pierce.

93. clāva, -ae, f., staff, club.

95. dēmum, adv., at last, at length. bracchium, -i, n., the fore-arm, arm.

com-plector, -plectī, -plexus sum, tr. [plector, embrace], clasp, embrace. faucēs, -ium, f. pl., throat.
pore examinatūs est; nūlla enim respīrandī facultās eī dābā-
tur. Tum Herculēs cadāver ad oppidum in umēris rettulit et
pellem quam dētrāxerat posteā prō veste gerēbat. Omné
autem quī eam regiōnem incolēbant, ubi fāmam dē morte
leōnis accēpērunt, vehementer gaudēbant, et Herculem magnō
in honōre habēbant.

100. fāma, -ae, f., report, rumor, talk.

110. conātū: ablative of separation.

108. quotiēns, adv. [quot, how many], often as.

110. dē-sistō, -sistere, -stītī, -stī-
tum, intr., leave off, desist from.

112. comprehendērunt, caught.
113. unde, from which, = ex quibus.

In section 11 account for the gender of hoc, 109; for the case of mortiferās, 117.

111. succidō, -cidere, -cīdī, -cīsum, tr. [sub + caedō], cut down, fell.
112. lignum, -i, n., wood, firewood.
fax, facis, f., torch, firebrand.
ārdēns, gen. ārdentis, adj. [pr. part. of ārdēō], glowing, fiery.
113. ad-ūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, tr., burn, sear.
unde, adv., from which place, whence.

114. cancer, -crī, m., a crab.
115. crūs, crūris, n., leg.
mordeō, -ère, momordi, morsum, tr., bite.
117. imbuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, tr., soak, steep.
mortifer, -era, -erum, adj. [mors + ferō], death-dealing, deadly.

12. Third Labor — Capture of the Cerynian Stag

Postquam Eurystheō caedēs Hydrae nūntiāta est, magnus timor animum ejus occupāvit. Jussit igitur Herculem cervum quendam ad sē referre; nōluit enim virum tantae audāciae in urbe retinēre. Hic autem cervus, cujus cornua aurea fuisse trāduntur, incrēdibilī fuit celeritāte. Herculēs igitur prīnum

120. tantae audāciae: genitive of description, App. 44.
121. fuisse trāduntur, are said to have been.
122. celeritāte: ablative of description; either the ablative or the genitive in this use may stand in the predicate.

119. cervus, -ī, m., stag. an army).
120. audācia, -ae, f. [audāx], bold-

121. cornū, -ūs, n., horn; wing (of

122. in-crēdibilis, -e, adj., incredible.
vestīgia ejus in silvis animadvertit. Deinde, ubi cervum ipsum vīdit, summīs viribus currere coepit. Usque ad ves-

125 perum cucurrit, neque nocturnum tempus sibi ad quītem reliquit. Frūstrā tamen, nūllō enim modō praedam cōnsequī poterat. Tandem, postquam tōtum annum cucurerrat (ita trāditur), cervum cursū examītum cēpit et vivum ad Eurystheum rettulit.

125. sibi: dative after reliquit, but may be omitted in translation. ad, for.
127. cucurerrat: with postquam and ubi the perfect is the tense most frequently used, as has been stated before. The past perfect is here employed because its clause denotes a situation.
ita trāditur, so the story goes.
In section 12 account for the case of Eurystheō, 118; of Herculēm, 119; of annum, 127; of cursū, 128.

123. vestīgium, -ī, n., footstep, track.
animadvertō, -vertere, -vertū, -versum, tr. [animus + advertō], direct the mind to, observe, notice; punish.
124. usque, adv., all the way, even, all the time, until.
vēser, -erī, m., evening.
125. nocturnus, -ā, -um, adj. [nox], nightly, at night, night (as adjective).
126. cōn-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, tr., follow up; overtake; punish.
128. cursus, -ūs, m., chariot.
vivus, -ā, -um, adj. [vivo], living, alive.

13. Fourth Labor — The Erymanthian Boar

Post haec jussus est Herculēs aprum quendam capere, qui illō tempore agrōs Erymanthīōs vāstābat et incolās hujus regiōnis magnopere terrēbat. Herculēs rem suscēpit et in Arcadiam prefectus est. Postquam in silvam paulum prō-

130. aper, apri, m., a wild boar.
131. incola, -ae, m. and f. [incolō], inhabitant, resident.
132. rem, task; rēs is to be rendered freely according to the context.
133. paulum, adv. [acc. of paulum, a little], somewhat.
prōgredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, intr. [prō+gradior, step], go on, advance, proceed.
gressus est, aprō occurrit. Ille autem, simul atque Herculēm vidit, statim refūgit et, timōre perterritus, in altam fossam sē prōjēcit. Herculēs igitur laqueum quem attulerat injēcit, et summā cum difficultāte aprum ē fossā extrāxit. Ille, etsī multum relūctābātur, nūllō modō sē liberāre potuit, et ab Hercule ad Eurystheum vivus relātus est.

134. aprō: dative with occurrit, which is a compound of ob and currō.  
In section 13, is the preposition cum, 137, necessary to the expression of manner? Account for the case of vivus, 139.

134. occurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, intr. [ob+currō], run to meet, meet.  
135. per-terreō, -terrēre, -terrui, -territum, tr., frighten thoroughly, terrify.  
136. prōjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, tr. [prō+jaciō], hurl forward, hurl down.

14. Hercules at the Centaur’s Cave

De quarto labore, quem supra narrāvimus, haec etiam traduntur. Herculēs, dum iter in Arcadiam facit, ad eam regionem vēnit quam Centaurī incolēbant. Mox, quod nox jam appetebat, ad antrum dēvertit, in quō Centaurus quīdam, nōmine Pholus, habitābat.

Ille Herculēm benignē excēpit et cēnam parāvit. At Herculēs, postquam cēnāvit, vinum ā Pholō postulāvit. Erat

140. narrāvimus: the plural as used by the author to refer to himself was formerly common in English also, especially in newspaper editorials.

143. jam, now, or by this time; nunc means now (absolutely), at the present time.

140. supra, adv. [superus], above, before.  
143. antrum, -ī, n., cave.  
145. ĉena, -ae, f., dinner.  
146. cēnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr. and tr. [cēna], dine, dine upon.

150. inquit: this verb is regularly used in the present tense with direct quotations and stands after one or more words of a quotation; it corresponds to the English "said I." It is defective, that is, it lacks some forms of person, tense, and mood.

147. amphora, -ae, j., jar, flagon. optimus, -a, -um, adj. [superl. of bonus], best. re-pleō, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum, tr., fill again, refill. praeter, prep. with acc. [compare prae, before], except; past, beyond; in addition to; contrary to.

150. inquam, inquis, inquit, intr. defect., say, employed in direct quotations. irrīdeo, -ridēre, -risī, -risum, intr. [in+rideō], laugh at, jeer, mock. cyathus, -i, m., cup.

151. The Fight with the Centaurs

Simul atque amphora aperta est, odor jucundissimus undique diffūsus est; vīnum enim suāvissimum erat. Centaurī nōtum odōrem sēnsērunt, et omnēs ad locum convēnērunt. Ubi ad antrum pervēnērunt, magnopere īrāti erant, quod Herculem bibentem vīdērunt. Tum arma rapuērunt, et Pholūm interficere volēbant. Herculēs tamen in aditū antrī

154. odor, -ōris, m., smell, odor. jucundus, -a, -um, adj., pleasant, agreeable. diffundō, -fundere, -fūdi, -fūsum, tr. [dis+fundō], pour out, spread, diffuse. suāvis, -e, adj., sweet, agreeable, pleasant.

155. nōtus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of nōscō, learn, know], known, familiar. bibō, bibere, bibi, —, tr. and intr., drink. aditus, -ūs, m. [adeō, -īre], entrance, means of approach, access.
cōnstitit, et impetum eōrum fortissimē sustinēbat. Facēs ārdentēs in eōs conjēcit; multōs etiam sagittīs suas vulnerāvit. Hae autem sagittae eadem erant quae sanguine Hydrae ōlim imbūtae erant. Omnēs igitur quōs ille sagittīs vulnerāverat venēnō statim absūmpti sunt; reliquī autem, ubi hoc vidērunt, terga vertērunt et fugā salūtem petīrunt.

161. in, at, the usual meaning of in with words meaning to throw.
165. fugā, in flight; the ablative denotes means, however.

160. cōn-sistō, -sistere, -stītī, —, intr., take one’s stand, halt, make a stand.
164. venēnum, -ī, n., drug, poison. 165. tergum, -ī, n., back.

16. The Fate of Pholus

Postquam reliquī fūgērunt, Pholus ex antrō ēgressus est, et corpora spectābat eōrum qui sagittīs interfeci erant. Magnopere autem mīrātus est, quod tam levī vulnerē exanimātī erant, et causam ejus reī quaerēbat. Adīt igitur locum ubi cadāver cujusdam Centaurī jacebāt et sagittām ē vulnerē trāxit. Haec tamen, sīve cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum, ē manibus ejus lápsa est et pedem levitē vulnerāvit. Ille extemplō dolōrem gravem per omnia membrā sēnsit, et post breve tempus vī venēnī exanimātus est. Mox Herculeōs, qui reliquīs Centaurōs secūtus erat, ad antrum rediūt, et magnō cum dolōre Pholum mortuum vīdit. Multīs cum lacrimīs

171, sīve ... deōrum, either by chance or by design of the gods.

In section 16 point out two ablatives of manner; a deponent verb.

167. spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [freq. of speciō, look], observe, watch, look at, look to.
168. mīrōr, -ārī, -ātus sum, tr. and intr. [mīrus], be astonished; wonder at.
levis, -e, adj., light, slight, trifling.
170. jaceō, -ēre, jacui, —, intr., lie, be prostrate.
171. trahō, -ere, trāxi, tractum, tr., draw, drag.
172. lábor, lábi, lápsus sum, intr., glide, slip, fall.
levitē, adv. [levīs], lightly, slightly.
exemplō, adv., immediately, forthwith, without delay.
173. membrum, -i, n., limb, member.
corpus amīcī ad sepultūram dedit; tum, postquam alterum cyatham vīnī hausit, somnō sē dedit.

177. sepultūra, -ae, f. [sepeliō], burial.

17. FIFTH LABOR — CLEANSING THE AUGEAN STABLES

Deinde Eurystheus Herculī hunc labōrem graviōrem im-

posuit. Augēās quīdam, quī illō tempore rēgnūm in Ėlide obtinēbat, trīa milīa bōum habēbat. Hī in stabulō ingenīs

magnītūdinīs inclusēbantur. Stabulum autem illūvie ac

squālōre obsītum erat; neque enim ad hoc tempus umquam

pūrgātum erat. Hoc jussus est Herculēs intrā spatium ūnīus
dīē pūrgāre. Ille, etsī rēs erat multae operaes, negotītum sus-
cēpit. Prīnum, magnō labōre fossam duodēvigintī pedum

fēcit, per quam flūminis aquam dē montibus ad mūrum

stabuli perdūxit. Tum, postquam mūrum perrūpit, aquam

179. Herculī, upon Hercules.

181. tria milīa bōum, three thousand cattle; it must be kept in mind

that the singular mīlle is an adjective, the plural milīa a noun, used with

a genitive of the whole. Bōum is the genitive plural of bōs, App. 3, (5).

183. neque umquam, never.

185. erat multae operaes, was one of great labor; a genitive of description

standing in the predicate, like the ablative of description in l. 122.

186. duodēvigintī pedum: the genitive of description with numerals is

regularly employed to express measure. The reference is to width.

In section 17 account for the case of magnītūdinīs, 182. What case is

governed by intrā? By contrā?

181. obtīneō, -tīnēre, -tīnui, -tīn-
tum, tr. [ob+tīneō], hold, possess.

stabulum, -i, n., stable, stall.

182. magnītūdō, -inis, f. [magnus],

size, magnitude.

illūvīēs, —, abl. -ē, f., overflow;
dirt, filth.

183. squālor, -ōris, m., squalor, filth.

ob-serō, -serere, -sēvī, -situm, tr.,

plant; cover, fill.

umquam, adv., ever.

184. pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.

[pūrus+agō], clean, cleanse; ex-
cuse; pūrgātus, -a, -um, p. part.
as adj., free from blame.

spatium, -i, n., space, distance, in-
terval.

185. opera, -ae, f. [opus], effort,
labor, toil.

negōtītum, -i, n. [nec+ōtium], busi-

ness, matter; affair, task; diffi-
culty, trouble.

186. duodēvigintī, indecl. num. adj.,
twenty.
in stabulum immisit et tali modō, contrā opinionem omnium, opus confecit.

189. immittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -mĭsum, tr. [in+mittō], send in, let in. opinīō, -ōnis, f. [opīnōr, suppose], opinion; expectation.

18. SIXTH LABOR — THE BIRDS OF STYMPHALUS

Post paucōs diēs Herculis ad oppidum Stymphalum iter fecit; jussērat enim eum Eurystheus avēs Stymphalidēs necāre. Hae avēs rōstra aēnea habēbant, et carne hominum vēscēbantur. Ille, postquam ad locum pervēnit, lacum vidit; in hoc autem lacū, qui nōn procul erat ab oppidō, avēs habītābant. Nūlla tamen dabātur approquinuandī facultās. Lacus enim nōn ex aquā sed ē limō cōnstitit; Herculis igitur neque pedibus neque lintre prōgreādī potuit.

Tandem postquam magnam partem diēī frūstrā cōnsūmpsit, hoc cōnātū dēstitit et ad Vulcānum sē contulit auxiliumque ab eo petīt. Vulcānus, quī ā fabris maximē colēbātur, crepundia, quae ipse ex aere fabricātus erat, Herculi dedit. His Herculis dīrūm crepitum fecit, et avēs perterritae

193. carne: ablative governed by vēscēbantur. Name the deponent verbs that govern the ablative.

197. cōnstitit: from cōnstitō.

198. pedibus, on foot; ablative of means, here suggesting in addition the idea of manner.

In section 18 account for the case of Stymphalum, 191; of lintre, 198; of cōnātū, 200; of fabris, 201.

193. rōstrum, -ī, n. [rōdō, gnaw], beak; pl., rōstra, -ōrum, the Rostra, a platform for speakers in the Forum, adorned with beaks of captured ships.
aēneus, -a, -um, adj. [aes], of copper, of bronze.
carō, carnīs, f., flesh.
194. vēscor, -ī, —, —, intr. (takes ablative) feed upon.
197. limus, -i, m., mud, mire.
cōn-stō, -stāre, -stīti, -stātūrus, intr., stand together; consist; impers., cōn-stat, it is known, it is certain.
198. linter, -tris, f., boat, skiff.
201. faber,-bri, m., workman, smith.
202. crepundia, -ōrum, n., pl. [crepō, to rattle], a child’s rattle, a rattle.
fabricor, -āri, -ātus sum, tr. [faber], make, construct, build.
203. dīrūs, -a, -um, adj., dreadful, dire.
crepitus, -ūs, m. [crepō, to rattle], clattering, noise.
ävolāvērunt; ille autem, dum ävolant, magnum numerum eōrum sagittīs tānsfixit.

204. ä-volō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, intr., fly away.
205. tāns-figō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, tr., pierce, transfix.

19. Seventh Labor — The Cretan Bull


Post breve tempus summa tranquillitās cōncētā est, et nautae, qui sē ex timōre jam recēperant, nāvem incolūmem ad terram perdūxērunt. Hercules ē nāvi ēgressus est, et, ubi

206. ferōcissimum, very savage. The translation of the superlative by very is frequently necessary.

208. cum prīmum, as soon as. With this phrase, as with ubi, postquam, simul alīque, the perfect indicative is most frequently employed, as explained in the note on Perseus, 12.

209. īnsulae: dative with appropinquābat.

212. nāvigandī imperītus, ignorant of, unskilled in, navigation. The genitive of the gerund here depends upon an adjective; in l. 196 it was used with a noun, facultās.

215. sē recēperant, had recovered.

206. taurus, -i, m., bull.
208. cōnscedō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēnsum, tr. [cōm- + scāndō, climb], climb; go aboard, embark on.
210. co-ōrīor, -ōrīri, -ōrtus sum, intr., come forth, arise.

212. nāvigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr. [nāvis+āgō], sail, navigate.

213. imperītus, -a, -um, adj. [in- + perītus], inexperienced, unskilled.

214. tranquillitās, -ātis, f. [tranquil-lus], stillness; a calm (at sea).

215. incolūmis, -e, adj., unharmed, safe.
ad régem Crētae vēnit, causam veniendi docuit. Deinde, postquam omnia parāta sunt, ad eam regionem contendit quam taurus vāstābat. Mox taurum vīdit, et, quamquam rēs erat magnī perīculī, cornua ejus prehendit. Tum ingerit labīre mōnstrum ad nāvem trāxit et cum praeda in Graeciam rediit.

20. Eighth Labor — Capture of the Horses of Diomede

Postquam ex īnsulā Crētā rediit, Herculēs ab Eurystheō in Thrāciam missus est et equōs Diomēdis redūcere jussus. Hi equī carne hominum vēscēbantur; Diomēdēs autem, vir crū-dēlissimus, iūs prōjiciēbat peregrīnōs omnēs qui in eam regionem vēnerant. Herculēs igitur magna celeritāte in Thrāciam contendit et hōs equōs ab Diomēde postulāvit. Quod tamen ille hōs trādere nōlēbat, Herculēs, irā com-mōtus, rēgem interfēcit et cadāver ejus prōjici jussit.

Ita mīra rērum commūtātiō facta est; is enim qui antēa multōs cum cruciātū necāverat ipse eōdem suppliciō necātus est. Ubi hac nūntiāta sunt, omnēs qui eam regionem in-colēbant maximā laetitiā affectī sunt, et Herculī meritam grātiam referēbant. Nōn modo maximīs honōribus et prae-mīs eum decorāvērunt, sed rēgnum etiam eī obtulērunt. Ille tamen rēgnum accipere nōlēbat et, postquam ad mare rediit, nāvem occupāvit. Ubi omnia ad nāvigandum parāta

---

225. carne: why ablative?

234. meritam grātiam referēbant: for the translation consult the note on Per. 86.

238. ad nāvigandum, for sailing; one of the commonest uses of the gerund is the accusative with ad in expressions of purpose.

226. peregrīnus, -a, -um, adj. [per +ager], strange, foreign; subst., peregrīnus, -ī, m., a foreigner.

231. commūtātiō, -ōnis, f. [com-mūtō], change.

232. cruciātus, -ūs, m. [cruciō, to torture], torture.

234. laetitia, -ae, f., [laetus], joy, happiness.

235. modo, adv. [abl. of modus], only, merely, a little while ago; recently.

236. offerō, -ferre, obtuli, oblātum, tr. [ob+ferō], bring before, offer.
sunt, equōs in nāvem collocāvit; deinde idōneam tempestātem nactus sine morāē portū solvit et paulō post equōs in lītus Argolicum exposuit.

239. tempestātem, weather; with what meaning has the word been used previously?

240. nactus: the past participle of a deponent verb is usually active in meaning. It therefore agrees with the subject when denoting an act of the subject; an act attributed to the subject, if expressed by the past participle of a non-deponent verb, requires the ablative absolute construction.

paulō post: see note on l. 27.

In section 20, would it be proper to use cum with magnā celeritāte, 227? Would it be proper to omit cum in the phrase cum cruciātū, 232?

240. nanciscor, -i, nactus sum, tr., get, obtain; meet with, find.


242. cōnstitisse: from cōnstō.

243. reī militāris, military science, art of war.

244. proelium committere, to engage in battle.

249. bellum Amāzonibus īnferre, to make war on the Amazons.

242. mulier, -eris, f., woman.

243. scientia, -ae, f. [sciēns, knowing], knowledge, expertness, skill.

militāris, -e, adj. [miles], military.

244. praebēo, -ēre, praebuī, praebītum, tr. [praebefore + habēō], hold forth, offer; furnish, supply; exhibit, show.

245. balteus, -i, m., girdle, belt.

247. possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, tr. [por for pró + sēdeo], possess, have.

251. ūsus, -ūs, m. [ūtor], use; practice, experience.
22. The Girdle Refused

His virīs Herculēs causam itineris exposuit; illī auctōritāte ejus adductī iter cum eō facere cōstituērunt. Tum cum īs quibus persuāserat nāvem cōnscendit et, ventum idōneum nactus, post paucōs diēs ad ōstium flūminis Thermōdontis appulit. Postquam in ōnēs Amāzonum vēnit, nūntium ad Hippolytam mīsit, qui causam veniendi docuit et balteum poposcit. Ipsa Hippolytē balteum tradere volebat, quod de Herculis virtūte fāmam accēperat; quod tamen reliquae Amāzonēs nōlēbant, negāvit. At Herculēs, ubi haec nūntiāta sunt, bellī fortūnam temptāre constītuit.

Proximō igitur diē cōpiās ēdūxīt. Tum locum idōneum dēlēgit et hostēs ad pugnam ēvocāvit. Amāzonēs quoque cōpiās suās ex castrīs ēdūxērunt et nōn magnō intervāllō aciem ĭnstrūxērunt.

253. His virīs: dative of indirect object.
254. auctōritāte: ablative of cause.
255. quibus: dative with persuāserat, App. 51.
256. post paucōs diēs: in this phrase post is employed as a preposition. It has also been employed as an adverb in phrases of the same or similar meaning, with ablative of degree of difference; e.g., paucēs post diēbus.
257. ad ōstium Thermōdontis: the Thermodon was a river in Pontus, a country on the southern coast of the Black Sea. The Amazons were also represented as dwelling to the north on the river Don.
258. volēbat, was willing.
259. nōlēbant: the words balteum trādere are to be understood.
260. negāvit: this is the common word for say that not accompanied by indirect discourse. It is often used also, as here, with the meaning refuse.
261. haec: neuter plural used substantively.
262. non magnō intervāllō, at no great distance (interval); ablative of degree of difference.

What part of the verb is veniendi, 258?

263. ostium, -ī, n. [compare ōs], door; mouth, entrance.
264. poscō, -ere, poposcī, —, tr., ask, request, demand.
265. negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, lr. and intr., say no, say that not; refuse, deny.
266. temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [intens. of tendō], try, make trial of.
267. evocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., call out.
Palūs erat nōn magna inter duōs exercitūs; neutrī tamen initium trānseundī facere volēbant. Tandem Herculēs signum dedit et, ubi palūdem trānsīt, proelium commīsit.

270 Amāzonēs impetum virōrum fortissimē sustinuērunt et contrā opinīōnem omnium magnam virtūtem praestītērunt; multōs quidem eōrum occīdērunt, multōs etiam in fugam conjēcērunt. Virī enim novō genere pugnæ perturbābantur, nec solitam virtūtem praestābant. Herculēs autem, ubi haec vidit, dē suīs fortūnīs despērāre coepit. Militēs igitur vehementer cohortex ad prīstinam virtūtem tantum dēdecus despēcātus ēst; quibus verbīs animī omnium ērēctī sunt; nam multī, etiam qui vulneribus confectī erant, proelium sine morā redintegrāvērunt.

273. genus, generis, n., race, family, birth, descent; kind, class.
per-turbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., throw into confusion, throw into disorder, disturb.
276. co-hortor, -āri, -ātus sum, tr., encourage, rally, admonish.
prīstinus, -a, -um, adj. [compare prior], former, original.
dē-decus, -decoris, n. [decus, decoration, honor], disgrace, dishonor.
ērigō, -rigere, -érēxi, -érēctum, tr. [ē + regō], lift up; arouse, encourage.
279. red-integrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [integrō, make whole], renew, restore.
AN AMAZON
24. Defeat of the Amazons


280. Diū... pugnātum est, the battle was long and fierce; literally, it was fought long and fiercely. ad sōlis occāsum, about sunset.

286. nōn multum aestātis, not much of the summer; multum is neuter of the adjective used as a noun; aestātis is genitive of the whole.

In section 24 point out two complementary infinitives.

280. occāsus, -ūs, m. [ob + cāsus], falling down, setting; sōlis occāsus, sunset.
284. clēmentia, -ae, f. [clēmens], forbearance, mercy.
287. super-sum,-esse,-fui,—, intr., be left over, survive, remain.

mātūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr. [mātūrus], set about early, hasten.
289. ante-quam, conj., before.
291. dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. and intr. [dē + faciō], fail, run out; withdraw, desert.

25. Laomedon and the Sea Monster

Lāomedōn quidam illō tempore rēgnum Trojae obtinēbat; ad hunc Neptūnus et Apollō annō superiōre vēnerant et, quod Troja nōndum moenia habēbat, ad hoc opus auxiliō obtulerant. Postquam tamen hōrum auxiliō moenia cōnfecta sunt, nōlēbat Lāomedōn praemium quod prōposuerat per-solvere.

294. moenia, -ium, n. pl., walls (of a city).
296. prō-pōnō, -pōner, -posuī, -po- situm, tr., set forth, relate; offer, propose.
per-solvō, -solvere, -solvi, -solūtum, tr., pay, pay over.
Neptūnus igitur et Apollō, ob hanc causam īrātī, mónstrum quoddam mīsērunt speciē horribili, quod cotīdiē ē mari veniēbat et homīnēs pecudēsque vorābat. Trojānī igitur, 300 timōre perterriti, in urbe continēbantur, et pecora omnia ex agrīs intrā mūrōs compulerant. Lāomedōn, hīs rēbus commōtus, ōrāculum cōnsuluit; ā deō autem jussus est filiām Hēsionem mónstrō objicere.

301. continēbantur, were confining themselves; the passive voice is sometimes used in a reflexive sense; i.e., it denotes an act done by the actor to or for himself; sē continēbant might have been used.

In section 25 point out an ablative of cause; an ablative of time; an ablative of description.

300. pecus, -udis, f., a head of cattle, beast; pl., flock, herd.
301. contineō, -tinere, -tinui, -ten-tum, tr. [com+-teneō], hold together; shut in, confine.
302. com-pellō, -pellere, -puli, -pul-sum, tr., drive together, collect.
303. objiciō, -jicere, -jēci, -jectum, tr. [ob+jacio], throw before, throw to, offer, expose; set against, oppose.
304. in, de, pro.

26. The Rescue of Hesione

Lāomedōn, ubi hoc responsūm renūntiātum est, magnum 305 dolōrem percēpit. Sed tamen, quod civēs suōs tantō periculō liberāre volēbat, ōrāculo pārēre cōnsūit et diem sacrificiō dīxit. Sed, sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum, Herculēs tempore opportūnisīmō Trojam attigit; ipsō enim temporis pūntō quo puella catēnīs vincēta ad litus dēdūcēbātur ille nāvem 310 appulit. Herculēs, ē nāvī ēgressus, dē rēbus quae gerēbantur certior factus est; tum, īrā commōtus, ad rēgem sē contulit.

307. ōrāculō: dative with the special verb pārēre.
308. sacrificiō, for the sacrifice, dative.
309. ipsō . . . temporis pūntō quō, at the very moment when.
310. certior factus est, was informed; literally, was made more certain.

305. re-nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr., bring back word, report, announce.
306. attingō, -tingere, -tīgī, -tāctum, tr. [ad+tangō], touch; arrive at.
307. pūntum, -i, n. [p. part. of pungō], point; moment.
308. opportūnus, -a, -um, adj. [ob+portus], fit, opportune.
et auxilium suum obtulit. Rēx libenter ejus auxilium accēpit; deinde Herculēs mōnstrum interfēcit et puellam, quae jam omnem spem salūtis dēposuerat, incolumem ad patrem redūxit. Lāomedōn magnō cum gaudīō filiam suam accēpit, et Herculī prō tantō beneficiō meritam grātiam rettulit.

In section 26 account for the case of periculō 306; of incolumem, 315. Give the principal parts of vincīō and vincō.

27. Tenth Labor — The Oxen of Geryon

Post haec jussus est Herculēs ad insulam Erythiam ire bovēisque Gēryonis arcessere. Rēs erat summae difficultātis, quod bovēs ā gigante Eurytione et ā cane bicipite custōdiēbantur. Ipse autem Gēryōn speciem horribilem praebēbat; habēbat enim tria corpora inter sē conjūncta. Herculēs tamen, etsi intellegēbat periculum magnum esse, negotium suscēpit et, postquam per multās terrās iter fēcit, ad eam partem Libyae pervēnit quae Europae proxima est. Ibi in utrāque parte fretī quod Europam ā Libyā dividit columnās cōnstituit, quae postea Herculis Columnae appellātae sunt.

322. inter sē, together, to one another; how literally?
323. periculum magnum esse: what class of verbs take the infinitive with subject accusative?
325. in utrāque parte, on both sides.
327. Herculis Columnae: the Rock of Gibraltar and a hill on the opposite side of the Straits doubtless gave rise to this legend.

In section 27 account for the case of difficultātis 319; of Europae 325; of Columnae 327.

319. arcesso, -cessere, -cessivi, -cessitūm, tr., send for, summon.
320. gigās, -antis, m., giant.
biceps, -cipitis, adj., two-headed.
custōdiō, -ître, -ivī, -ītum, tr. [custōs], watch, guard.

323. intellegō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctum, tr. [inter + legō], perceive, understand, know.
326. uterque, utraque, utrumque, pron., each (of two).
fretum, -ī, n., a strait, channel.
columna, -ae, f., column, pillar.
28. **The Golden Ship**


328. Dum morātur: a dum clause of situation, as in Per. 63, which regularly takes a present indicative even if the principal verb is past.

331. admirātus: to be translated as a present participle, a force which the past participles of certain deponent verbs often have.

328. moror, -āri, -ātus sum, tr. and intr. [mora], delay, linger; hinder.

329. calor, -ōris, m., heat.

331. ad-miror, -āri, -ātus sum, tr., be astonished at, admire.

29. **A Miraculous Hail-Storm**

Tum Herculēs boves per Hispāniam et Liguriam compellere cōnstituit. Postquam igitur omnia parāta sunt, boves ex īnsulā ad continentem trānsportāvit. Ligurēs tamen, gēns bellicōsissima, dum ille per finēs eōrum īter facit, magnīs cōpiis convēnērunt, atque eum longius prōgredī prohibēbant. Herculēs magnam difficūltātem habēbat; barbarī enim in locīs

341. trāns-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., carry over, transport.

343. prohibēō, -hibēre, -hibui, -hibītum, tr. [prō + habeō], check, stop, restrain; keep out, prohibit.
superiōribus cōnstiterant, et saxa tēlaque in eum conjiciēbant. Ille quidem paene omnem spem salūtīs dēposuerat; sed tempore opporṭūnissimō Juppiter imbrem lapidum ingentiūm ē caelō dēmīsit. Hī magnā vī cecidērunt et magnum numerum Ligurum occīdērunt; ipse tamen Herculēs, ut in tālibus rēbus accidere cōnsuēvit, nihil incommodi cēpit.

346. quidem: this word often has a concessive force, it is true, to be sure; it is then followed in the next sentence by some adversative word, here sed, but, nevertheless.

349. in tālibus rēbus: i.e., when favored with divine help.

350. cōnsuēvit: the force of the tenses of this verb is explained in the note on l. 32.

nihil incommodi, no harm; incommodi is a genitive of the whole.

In section 29 account for the tense of facit 342; for the case of vī 348.

347. imber, -bris, m., rain, storm.
lapis, lapidis, m., stone.

350. accidō, -cidere, -cīdī, —, intr. [ad + cadō], fall upon; happen, come about.

30. Passage of the Alps

Postquam Ligurēs hoc modo superrātī sunt, Herculēs quam celerrimē progressus est, et post paucōs diēs ad Alpēs pervēnit. Necesse erat hōs trānsīre, quod in Italianam bovēs dūcere volēbat; rēs tamen summae erat difficultātis. Hī enim montēs, qui Galliam ulteriōrem ab Italīa dīvidunt, nive perennī teguntur; quam ob causam neque frūmentum neque pābulum in hīs regionibus invenīri potest. Herculēs igitur,

351. quam celerrimē, as rapidly as possible; quam is employed with a superlative to indicate the highest degree possible.

355. Galliam ulteriōrem: i.e., Gaul north of the Alps; the valley of the Po in Italy was also inhabited at one time by a Gallic population and was known to the Romans as Gallia citerior, nearer Gaul.

356. quam ob causam, for this reason; for the position of the preposition see the note on hoc in templō, l. 73.

In section 30, what is the subject of erat 353?

353. necesse, indecl. adj., necessary.
355. ulterior, -ius, compar. adj., farther.
nix, nivis, f., snow.

356. perennis, -e, adj. [per+annus], lasting through the year, perennial.

357. pābulum, -i, n. [compare pāscō], food, pasturage, fodder.
antequam ascendere coepit, magnam cōpiam frūmentī et pābulī comparāvit, et bovēs onerāvit. Postquam in hīs rēbus trēs diēs cōnsūmpserat, quārtō diē profectus est et, contrā omnium opīniōnem, bovēs incolumēs in Italiam trādūxit.

359. com-parō, -parāre, -parāvī, -parātum, tr., prepare.
onerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [onus, a burden], load, fill.


361. trādūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -duc-, tum, tr. [trāns-ducō], lead across.

362. Tiberim: a few third declension nouns have -im as the ending of the accusative singular.

368. ingenti magnitudīne: ablative of description; what other case might be employed?

364. fessus, -a, -um, adj., wearied, tired, exhausted.

365. re-creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., renew, restore, refresh.

366. pāscō, pāscere, pāvī, pāustum, tr., supply with food, feed; pass., graze, feed.

369. ōs, ōris, n., mouth.

370. noctū, adv. [nox], at night, by night.

371. abripiō, -ripere, -ripūi, -rep-, tum, tr. [ab+rapio], snatch away, steal.

372. cauda, -ae, f., tail.
putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. (clean, prune); think, suppose.

373. dēciπiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -cep-, tum, tr. [dē+capiō], beguile, deceive.
32. Hercules Discovers the Theft

Posterō die, simul atque ē somnō excitātus est, Herculēs fūr tum animadvertit, et bovēs āmissōs undique quaerēbat. Hōs tamen nusquam reperīre poterat, nōn modo quod locī nātūram ignōrābat, sed quod vestīgiīs falsīs dēceptus est. Tandem, ubi magnam partem dieī frūstrā cōnsūmpsit, cum reliquis bōbes prōgredī cōnstituit. At, dum proficīscerī parat, ūnus ē bōbus quōs sēcum habuit mūgīre coepit. Exemplō iī qui in antrō inclusī erant mūgitum reddīrerunt; hōc modō Herculēs locum invēnit. Tum vehementer īrātus, ad spēluncam quam celerrīmē sē contulit. At Cācus saxum īngēns dējēcerat et aditum spēluncae omnīnō obstrūxerat.

374. simul atque: the tense of the verb with this phrase was explained in the note on Per. 102.

380. ūnus ē bōbus: with cardinal numbers and with quīdam an ablative with ex or dē is more common than a genitive of the whole; the latter, however, sometimes occurs, as in l. 371.

383. quam celerrīmē: to be translated as in l. 351.

375. fūr tum, -ī, n. [fūr, thiefl, theft.] 376. nusquam, adv. [ne-usquām], nowhere.

381. mūgītus, -ūs, m. [mūgiō], low-ing, bellowing.

382. spēlunca, -ae, f., cave, cavern.

384. dējiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, tr. [dē+jaciō], throw down.

380. mūgiō, -ire, -īvi, —, intr., low, bellow.

383. obstruō, -struere, -strūxi, -strum, tr., stop up, bar.

33. Recovery of the Oxen

Herculēs, quoniam nūllum alium introitum reperīre poterat, hoc saxum āmovēre cōnātus est; sed propter ejus magnitūdinem rēs erat difficillima. Diū laborābat, neque quidquam efficere poterat. Tandem tamen magnō cōnātū saxum

385. quoniam, conj. [quom, for cum, + jam], since, inasmuch as.

386. ā-moveō, -movēre, -móvi, -mó-tum, tr., move away.
amōvit et spēluncam patefecit. Ibi āmissōs bovēs magnō
cum gaudīō cōnspexit. Sed Cācum ipsum vix cernere potuit, quod spēlunca replēta erat fūmō quem ille mōre suō ēvomē
bat. Herculēs, inūsitātā speciē turbātus, breve tempus
haesitābat; mox tamen in spēluncam irrupit et collum mōn
strī bracchiōs complexus est. Ille, etsi multum relūctātus est,
nūllō modō sē liberāre potuit; et, quod nūlla facultās respi
randī dabātur, mox, quod necesse fuit, exanimātus est.

391. mōre suō, according to his custom; the ablative is employed to
express the idea of “in accordance with.”
392. breve tempus: accusative of duration of time.
396. quod (a thing), which; neuter, because referring to the fact in
exanimātus est.

389. patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -fac ī-
tum, tr. [pateō + faciō], lay open, open, throw open.
390. cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētum,
tr., distinguish; discern, perceive.
391. fūmus, -ī, m., smoke.
392. inūsitātus, -a, -um, adj., usual, extraordinary.
393. haesitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr.
[freq. of haereō], stick fast, remain
fixed, hesitate.

34. Eleventh Labor — The Golden Apples
of the Hesperides

Eurystheus, postquam bovēs Gēryonis accēpit, labōrem
undecimum Herculī imposuit, graviōrem quam quōs suprā
nārrāvimus. Jussit enim eum aurea pōma ex hortō Hesper-
dum auferre. Hesperidēs autem nymphae erant quaedam
fōrā praestantissimā, quae in terrā longinquā habitābant, et
quibus aurea quaedam pōma a Jūnōne commissa erant.

398. quam: supply eī erant.
400. quaedam: with nymphae.

398. undecimus, -a, -um, adj. [un-
decim, eleven], eleventh.
399. pōmum, -i, n., fruit, apple.
400. auferō, auferre, abstulī, abla-
tum, tr. [ab + ferō], carry away, carry off.

nympha, -ae, f., nymph.
401. fōrā, -ae, f., form, appear-
ance; beauty.
praestāns, gen. -stantis, adj. [pr.
part. of praestō], preëminent, dis-
tinguished, surpassing.

longinquus, -a, -um, adj. [longus],
remote, distant; lengthy, long.
Multī hominēs, aurī cupiditātē inductī, haec pōma auferre jam anteā cōnātī erant; rēs tamen difficillima erat. Nam hortus in quō pōma erant mūrō ingenti undique circumdatus est; praeterea dracō quīdam, quī centum capita habēbat, portam hortī diligenter custōdiēbat. Opus igitur quod Eurystheus Herculī imperāverat erat summae difficilītātīs, nōn modo ob causās quās memorāvimus, sed quod Herculēs situm hortī omnīnō ignōrābat.

408. Herculē: dative with imperāverat, had imposed upon Hercules.

In section 34 point out a dative governed by a compound verb; an ablative of description; a genitive of description; an infinitive with subject accusative.

403. cupiditās, -ātis, f. [cupidus], eagerness, longing, desire.
404. in-duco, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, tr., lead in; move, induce.
405. circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, tr., place around, surround.
406. dracō, -ōnis, m., serpēnt, dragon.
409. memorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [memor, mindful], mention, recount, relate.
410. situs, -ūs, m., site, location.

35. Atlas, Who Upheld the Heavens

Herculēs, quamquam quiētem vehementer cupiēbat, cōnstituit tamen Eurystheō pārēre; et simul ac jussa ejus accēpit, proficisci mātūrāvit. Multōs mercātōrēs interrogaēverat dē sēde Hesperidum; nihil tamen certum reperire potuerat. Frūstrā per multās terrās iter fēcit, et multa pericula subiit; tandem, postquam in hīs itineribus tōtum annum cōnsūmpsit, ad extrēmam partem orbīs, quae proxima erat Óceanō, per-

412. Eurystheō: dative with pārēre.
417. orbīs: supply terrārum; the two words together mean the world; the ancients regarded the earth as a circular plane or disk.

412. jussum, -ī, n. [p. part. of jubeō], order, command.
413. mercātōr, -ōris, m. [mercōr, to trade], trader, merchant.
415. sub-eō, -ire, -iī, -itum, intr. and tr., go under; undergo, submit to; enter.
417. extrēmus, -a, -um, adj. [exterus, on the outside], outermost, farthest, most distant.

orbīs, orbīs, -ium, m., ring, circle; orbīs terrārum, the earth, the world.
vēnit. Hīc stābat vir quīdam, nōmine Atlās, ingenti magnitudine corporis, quī caelum (ita trādunt) umerīs suīs sustinēbat, et in terram dēcidere prohibēbat. Herculēs tantum labōrem magnopere mīrātus, post paulō in colloquium cum Atlante vēnit et, postquam causam itineris exposuit, auxilium ejus petiit.

419. ita trādunt, so legend has it, as the legend goes; literally so they hand down.

umerīs: ablative of means, but to be translated on his shoulders.
caelum dēcidere: infinitive with subject accusative, object of prohibēbat, as in l. 343.

421. mīrātus: a past participle to be translated as a present, as explained in the note on l. 331.

In section 35 point out a dative governed by an adjective.

420. dēcidō, -cidere, -cidi, —, intr. [dē+cadō], fall down, fall off.

36. A SUBSTITUTE

Atlās autem potuit Herculēs maximē prōdesse; ille enim, quoniam ipse erat pater Hesperidum, situm hortī bene scīvit. Postquam igitur audīvit causam itineris Herculis, "Ipse," inquit, "ad hortum ībō; ego sī hortābor, filiae certē pōma suā sponte trādent." Herculēs, ubi haec audīvit, magnopere gāviōsus est; cupidēbat enim rem sine vī fieri. Čōnstituit igitur oblātum auxilium accipere. Sed quod Atlās abītūrus erat, necesse erat aliquem caelum umerīs sustinēre. Hoc igitur negōtiōm Herculēs libenter suscēpit et, quamquam rēs erat

424. Herculēs: dative with prōdesse. Why?

427. suā sponte, of their own accord, without compulsion; sponte is found almost exclusively in the ablative, expressing manner, with meā, suā, tuā.

424. prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfui, intr., be useful, benefit, profit, serve.

425. bene, adv. [bonus], well.

427. hortor, -āri, -ātus sum, tr., urge, encourage, exhort.
certē, adv. [certus], assuredly, cert-

tainly.

428. (spōns) spontis, f. [compare spondeō, promise], only abl. sing. in common use (generally with the possessesives meā, tuā, suā), of one's own accord, voluntarily.
summi labōris, tōtum pondus caeli continuōs complūrēs diēs sōlus sustinuit.

In section 36 point out an accusative of duration of time.

433. pondus, ponderis, n. [compare pendō], weight, a weight. continuus, -a, -um, adj. [contineō], successive, continuous. com-plūrēs, -plūra, adj., several, a number of, many.

37. Return of Atlas

Atlās intereā abierat et ad hortum Hesperidum, qui pauca mīlia passuum aberat, sē quam celerrimē contulerat. Eō ubi vēnīt, causam veniendi exposuit, et ā filiābus suis pōma vehementer petīvit. Illae dīū haerēbant; nōlēbant enim hoc facere, quod ab ipsā Jūnōne, dē quā ante dictum est, hoc mūnus accēperant. Atlās tamen post multa verba īs persuāsit, et pōma ad Herculem rettulīt. Herculēs intereā, qui plūrēs diēs expectāverat, neque āram fāmam dē reditū Atlantis accēperat, hāc morā graviter commōtus est. Tandem quintō dīē Atlantem vidit redeuntem, et mox magnō cum gaudīō pōma accēpit; tum, postquam grātiās prō tantō beneficiō ēgit, ad Graeciam proficiscī māturāvit.

435. pauca mīlia passuum, a few miles. The use of mīlle in the plural was explained in the note on l. 181.

437. filiābus: if the dative and ablative plural of filiā were written filīs, with what other word would it be confused in those cases?

In section 37 account for the case of mīlia 436; of īs 440; of diē 444. What is the force of a superlative with quam?

438. haereō, -ēre, haesī, haesūrus, intr., stick, clinging; hesitate. multus], subst., n. sg., more; pl., plūrēs, plūra, adj., more, a greater number of.

440. mūnus, mūneris, n., service, duty; present, gift. 444. quintus, -a, -um, adj. [quinque], fifth.

38. Twelfth Labor — Cerberus, the Three-Headed Dog

Postquam aurea pōma ad Eurystheum relāta sunt, ūnus modo reliquēbātur ē duodecim labōribus quōs Pythia Herc-

448. quōs Pythia Herculi praeceperat, which Pythia had enjoined upon Hercules; the accusative and the dative are explained in App. 55, a.
culi praecēperat. Eurystheus autem, quod Herculem mag-
nopere timēbat, sē ab cō in perpetuum liberāre volēbat. Jus-
sit igitur eum canem Cerberum ex Orcō in lūcem trahere. Hoc op
nium omnium difficillimum erat; nēmō enim unquam ex Orcō redierat. Praeterēa Cerberus iste mōnstrum erat horri-
bilī speciē, quī tria capita serpentibus saevis cincta habēbat. An-
tequam tamen hunc labōrem nārrāmus, nōn aliēnum vidē-
tur, quoniam dē Orcō mentiōnem fēcimus, pauca dē istā regiōne prōpōnere.

450. in perpetuum, forever; the neuter adjective is used as a noun.
455. aliēnum, out of place.
   In section 38 account for the case of labōribus 448; could the genitive be used instead?

449. praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -cep-
tum, tr. [praē, before, + capiō],
enjoin upon, impose upon; teach.
450. perpetuus, -a, -um, adj., con-
tinuous, constant, perpetual;
   subst., n. sg., in perpetuum, for
   all time, forever.
455. aliēnus, -a, -um, adj. [alius],
another’s; out of place; unfavorable.
456. mentiō, -ōnis, f., mention.

39. Orcus or Hades, the Abode of the Dead
   Dē Orcō, quī īdem Hādēs appellābātur, haec trāduntur. Ut quisque ē vitā discesserat, mānēs ejus ad Orcum, sēdem mortuōrum, ā deō Mercuriō dēdūcēbantur. Hujus regiōnis, quae sub terrā fuisse dicitur, rēx erat Plūtō, cujus uxor erat Prōserpina, Jovis et Cērēs filia. Mānēs igitur, ā Mercuriō dēductī, primum ad rīpam veniēbant Stygīs flūminis, quō

458. īdem, also, a frequent meaning of the word.
459. Ut, when. In this sense ut takes an indicative.
   discesserat: past perfect of repeated or habitual action; in like man-
   ner dēdūcēbantur is an imperfect of habitual action.
   mānēs: a plural noun, but translated by a singular.
460. Mercuriō: one of the functions ascribed to the god Mercury was
   that of guide of souls into the lower world.

459. mānēs, -ium, m. pl., a departed spirit, shade, ghost.
continētur rēgnum Plūtōnis. Hoc omnēs trānsīre necesse erat qui in Orcum veniēbant. Quoniam tamen in hōc flūmine nūllus pōns erat, mānēs trānsvehēbantur ā Charonte quōdam, qui cum parvā scaphā ad ripam expectābat. Charōn prō hōc officiō merēcēdem postulābat, neque volēbat quemquam sine hōc praemiō trānsvehere. Ob hanc causam mōs erat apud antiquōs nummum in ōre mortuī pōnere; eō modō, ut putābant; mortuus ad Stygem veniēns pretium trājectūs solvere poterat. Iī autem qui post mortem in terrā nōn sepultī erant Stygem trānsīre nōn potuērunt, sed in litore per centum annōs errāre coāctī sunt; tum dērum licuit Orcum intrāre.

464. omnēs trānsīre necesse erat, all must cross. The subject of erat is omnēs trānsīre.
465. in (flūmine), over.
466. Charonte: Charon was represented in literature and art as an old man of squalid appearance, but hale and vigorous.
469. mōs erat . . . pōnere, it was the custom to place; pōnere is the subject of erat.
470. mortuī, of the dead person.
474. errāre: dependent upon coāctī sunt.
475. intrāre: subject of licuit.

466. trāns-vehō, -vehere, -vēxi, -vectum, tr., convey across, carry over.
467. scapha, -ae, f., skiff, boat.
468. mercēs, -ēdis, f., hire, pay, fec.
470. nummus, -ī, m., a coin.
471. trājectus, -ūs, m. [trājiciō], crossing over, passage.
472. sepeliō, -īre, -īvi, -pultum, tr., bury.
475. intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., enter.

40. The Realm of Pluto
Postquam mānēs Stygem hōc modō trānsierant, ad altērum veniēbant flūmen, quod Lēthē appellātum est. Ex hōc flūmine aquam bibere cōgēbantur. Quod ubi fēcerant, rēs

478. Quod ubi fēcerant, and when they had done this. The Latin relative pronoun often stands at the beginning of a sentence and refers to an antecedent in the preceding sentence. When thus used it is often followed by ubi, as in this instance, or by cum. In this use it is translated by a personal or a demonstrative pronoun.
omnēs in vitā gestās ē memoriā dépōnēbant. Dēnique ad sēdem ipsam Plūtōnis veniēbant, cujus introitus ā cane Cer-
berō custōdiēbātur. Ibi Plūtō, nigrō vestītū indūtus, cum uxorē Prōserpinā in solīō sedēbat. Stābant etiam nōn procul
ab eō locō tria alia solia, in quibus sedēbant Mīnōs, Rhada-
manthus, et Aeacus, jūdicēs Īnfērōrum. Hī mortuīs jūs dicē-
bant et praemia poenāsque cōnstituebant. Bonī enim in Campōs Ėlysiōs, sēdem beātōrum, veniēbant; improbī autem
in Tartarum mittēbantur, et multīs varīsque suppliciīs ibi excriēbantur.

482. Stābant, there stood; the English expletive “there” has no equiva-
 lent in Latin; its effect is often obtained by placing the Latin verb first
in the sentence.

484. mortuīs jūs dicēbant, dispensed justice to the dead.

486. Campōs Ėlysiōs: in early Greek literature the Elysian Fields were
conceived of as lying in the far West, at the earth’s extremity, or in the
Islands of the Blest. At a later time they were represented as a part of
the lower world.

479. memoria, -ae,-f. [memor, mind-
ful], memory, remembrance.

481. niger, -gra, -grum, adj., black.

vestītus, -ūs, m. [vestīo, to clothe],
clothing.

482. solium, -i, n., throne.

484. jūdēx, -icis, m., judge.

inferi, -ōrum, m. pl. [inferus, below,
lower], those of the lower world,
the dead, the shades.

jūs, jūris, n., right, law, justice.

486. improbus, -a, -um, adj. [in+-
probus, honest], bad, wicked.

488. ex-cruciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,
tr., rack, torture.

41. Charon’s Ferry

Herculēs postquam imperia Eurystheī accēpit, in Lacō-
niam ad Taenarum statim sē contulit; ibi enim spēlunca erat
ingenti magnitudine, per quam (ut trādēbātur) hominēs ad
Orcum dēscendēbant. Eō ubi vēnit et ex incolis situm spē-

491. ut trādēbātur: the clause has the same sense as ita trādunt, l. 419.

492. Eō, to that place.

489. imperium, -i, n. [imperō], power, authority, command.

495. sociōs, as companions.

495. ad-jungō, -jungere, -jūnxī, 499. minae, -ārum, f. pl., threats. -jūnc tum, tr., join to, attach.

42. The Twelve Labors Accomplished

Postquam flūmen Stygem tāli modō trānsiit, Herculēs in sēdem ipsius Plūtōnis vēnit, et, postquam causam veniendi docuit, ab eō facultātem Cerberum auferendi petīvit. Plūtō, qui dē Herculē fāmam accēperat, eum benignē excēpit, et facultātem quam ille petēbat libenter dedit. Jussit tamen Herculem imperāta Eurysthei facere et posteā Cerberum in Orcum rūrsus redūcere. Herculēs haec pollicitus est, et Cerberum, quem nōn sine magnō periculō manibusprehenderat, summō cum labōre ex Orcō in lūcem et ad urbem Eurysthei trāxit. Eō ubi vēnit, Eurystheus ex ātriō statim refūgit; tantus pavor animum ejus occupāverat. Postquam autem paulum sē ex timōre recēpit, multīs cum lacrimīs clāmitāvit sē velle mōnstrum sine morā in Orcum redūcī. Sic, contrā omnium opīniōnem, duodecim illī labōrēs quōs Pythia praecēperat intrā duodecim annōs cōnfectī sunt. Itaque Her-

504. auferendi: a gerund with a direct object, Cerberum; App. 129, Note 1.
513. sē recēpit, recovered.
culēs, servitūte tandem liberātus, magnō cum gaudīō Thēbās rediit.

517. Thēbās, to Thebes; the name of a city without a preposition to express the place to which will be explained in later lessons.

43. Nessus, the Centaur

Post haec Herculēs multa alia praeclāra perfecit, quae nunc perscribere longum est. Tandem, jam actāte prōvectus, 520 Dēianīram, Oeneī filiam, in mātrimōnium dūxit; post tamen trēs annōs puerum quendam, nōmine Eunomum, cāsū occīdit. Mōre antīquō necesse erat Herculem ob eam rem in exilium ire; itaque cum uxōre suā ē finibus ejus civitātis exīre mātūrāvit. Dum tamen iter faciunt, ad flūmen quoddam pervēnērunt in quō nūllus pōns erat, et dum quaerunt modum transeundi, ad flūmen nando transiit. At Nessus, paulum in aquam progressus, subito revertīt et Dēianīram auferre conābatur. Quod ubi animadvertit Herculēs, īrā graviter commōtus, arcum intendit et pectus Nessī sagittā trānsfixit.

519. quae: object of perscribere.
520. longum est, it would take too long.
523. Mōre: ablative expressing accordance, as in l. 391.
529. nandō, by swimming, ablative of the gerund expressing means and manner.
531. Quod ubi: the note on l. 478 should be consulted.

519. prae-clārus, -a, -um, adj., very bright, brilliant; splendid, distinguished.
520. per-scribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum, tr., write in full, write out, describe fully.
523. exilium, -ī, n. [exul], exile.
528. viātor, -ōris, m. [via], traveler.
529. nō, nāre, nāvī, —, swim.
532. pectus, pectoris, n., breast.
44. The Poisoned Robe

Nessus igitur, sagittā Herculis trānsfixus, mortēns humī
jacēbat; at nōlēns occāsionem Herculem ulcīscendī dīmittere,
ita locūtus est. "Tū, Dēianīra, verba morientīs audi: sī vis
amōrem marītī tuī cōnservāre, aliquid sanguinis hujus quī ē
pectore meō effunditur sūme ac repōne; tum, sī umquam sus-
piciō in mentem tuam vēnerit, vestem marītī hōc sanguine
infiiciēs." Haec locūtus Nessus animam efflavit; Dēianīra
autem, nihil malī suspiciāta, imperātā fēcit. Post breve tem-
pus Herculēs bellum contra Eurytum regem Oechaliæ sus-
cēpit et, ubi regem ipsum cum filīs interfēcit, Iōlēn, filiām
Eurytī, captivam reduxit. Antequam tamen domum vēnit,

| 534. humī, adv. [locative of humus, ground], on the ground. |
| 535. occāsiō, -onis, f. [ob+cado], opportunity, occasion, chance. |
| 536. morientīs, of one who is dying; a present participle (from morior) used as a noun. |
| 537. aliquid sanguinis hujus, some of this blood; what kind of genitive? |
| 538. effundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fū-
sum, tr. [ex+fundo], pour out; use up, waste. |
| 539. mens, mentís, f., the mind. |
| 540. animō, -ae, f., air, breath; life. |
| 541. suspiciō, -onis, f. [compare suspiciō, suspect], suspicion, distrust. |
| 542. domum, home; the accusative of this noun is used without a prepo-
sition to express the place to which. |
nāvem ad Cēnaeum prōmuntorium appulit. Ibi in terram 545
ēgressus quod Jovi sacrificāre volēbat, āram cōnstituit. Dum
tamen sacrificium parat, Licham comitem suum domum īre
et vestem albam referre jussit; mōs enim erat apud antiquōs
in sacrificándō vestem albam gerere. At Dēianīra, arbitrāta
Herculem amōrem ergā Iolēn habēre, vestem, priusquam 550
Lichae dedit, sanguine Nessī ūnfēcit.

549. sacrificandō: ablative of the gerund governed by a preposition.

545. prōmuntorium, -i, n., head-
land, promontory.
546. sacrificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr. [sacer+faciō], offer
sacrifice, sacrifice.
547. comes, -itis, m. and f., com-
panion.

546. albus, -a, -um, adj., white.
550. ergā, prep. with acc., towards,
for.
551. prius-quam, conj., before.

557. di-vellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vul-
sum, tr., tear apart, tear away.
558. rogus, -i, m., funeral pile,
funeral pyre.
559. extruō, -uere, -ūxi, -ūctum, tr.

45. The Death of Hercules

Herculēs, nihil malī suspicātus, vestem quam Lichās attulit
statim induit; post tamen breve tempus dolōrem per omnia
membra sēnsit, sed quod causam ejus reī ignōrābat magno-
pere mūrābātur. Dolōre paene exanimātus, vestem dētrahere
555
cōnātus est. Illa ŭamen in corpore haesit, neque ūllō modō
divelli potuit. Tum dēmum Herculēs, quasi furōre impulsus,
in montem Oetam sē contulit et in rogum, quem summā
celeritāte extrūxit, sē imposuit. Hoc ubi fēcit, voluit eós
qui circumstābant rogum quam celerrimē accendere. Omnēs
560
diū recūsābant; tandem tamen pāstor quīdam, ad misericor-
diam inductus, ignem subdidit. Tum, dum omnia fūmō obscūrantur, Herculēs, dēnsā nūbe vēlātus, ā Jove in Olym-
pum abreptus est.

563. Herculēs ... abreptus est: since Hercules was the son of Zeus it was not unnatural, in view of his marvelous exploits, for legend to repre-
sent him as deified and free from the death usual to mortals.

562. sub-ḍō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, 
   tr., put under, apply.
563. obscūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [obscurus], darken, cover, hide.
   vēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [vēlum, 
   veil], cover, envelop, veil.

VIEW OF MODERN ROME
A JUNIOR LATIN READER

PART II—LESSONS

NOTE

The following Lessons include forms and principles of syntax not appearing in the first-year book of the series to which this book belongs. It is not necessary that all these Lessons be assigned for study before beginning the reading of Part III. If the subjunctive has been taught in the first year, the reading of the Argonauts may be taken up directly after the Hercules, and occasional assignments may be made from the Lessons as the teacher finds necessary. If the subjunctive has been postponed to the second year, Lessons V-XIV and XIX-XX may be studied before the reading of the text of Part III is begun, and occasional assignments made thereafter from the remaining Lessons in connection with the later readings. Some teachers whose classes are unable to complete the reading of all the text in the book may prefer to omit the Argonauts in order to have more time for the stories of Roman history and the simplified Caesar.

LESSON I

THE LOCATIVE: DECLENSION OF DOMUS

USE OF THE LOCATIVE

1. In addition to the cases which have been given, a few nouns have another case, called the Locative. This case denotes place where, just as the ablative with in does in other nouns and pronouns. Names of cities and towns and the common noun domus, which is given in this lesson, are the most important words which have a locative case.
FORM OF THE LOCATIVE

2. The locative of nouns of the first and second declensions in the singular number has the same form as the genitive singular. In the plural of nouns of these two declensions and in the singular and plural of other nouns it regularly has the same form as the ablative. The locative of Rōma is Rōmae, at Rome, or in Rome, the locative of Athēnae is Athēnīs, at Athens, or in Athens.

DECLENSION OF DOMUS

3. The noun domus is declined partly in the fourth declension and partly in the second:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nominative</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>domus</td>
<td>domūs</td>
<td>domūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>domūs</td>
<td>domuum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>domui or domō</td>
<td>domibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>domum</td>
<td>domōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>domō or domū</td>
<td>domibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Locative</td>
<td>domī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Occasionally domī is used as a genitive. In the genitive plural domōrum is sometimes found, and the accusative plural is sometimes domūs.

4. VOCABULARY

Athēnae,-ārum, f. pl., Athens
comprehendō,-hendere,-hen-
dī,-hēnsum, seize, arrest
domus, -ūs (see section 3), f.,
home, house
Graeci, -ōrum, m. pl., the
Greeks
Laurentum, -ī, n., Laurentum, an ancient town of Italy
servitus, -tūtis, f., slavery
Troja,-ae, f., Troy, an ancient city of Asia Minor
Trojāni, -ōrum, m. pl., the Trojans

a. A few names of cities have only plural forms. Athēnae belongs to this class. Its locative is Athēnīs.
A JUNIOR LATIN READER

EXERCISES


6. 1. My father, who is now in Rome, will return soon. 2. Many wished to remain at home, because they feared wounds and death. 3. The consul’s father had a residence at Laurentum. 4. There is a very famous temple at Athens. 5. The king was among those who were killed at Troy.

LESSON II

SUMMARY OF PLACE CONSTRUCTIONS

PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES IN PLACE CONSTRUCTIONS

7. We have already seen prepositional phrases used to denote place to which, place from which, and place in which. A review of these constructions is here given.

(1) Place to which is regularly expressed by the accusative with ad or in.

Legātus in Italiam rediit, the lieutenant has returned to Italy. Caesar ad urbem profectus est, Caesar set out for the city.

(2) Place from which is regularly expressed by the ablative with ab, dē, or ex.

Dictātor ex urbe ēgressus est, the dictator departed from the city.

(3) Place where is regularly expressed by the ablative with in.

Cōnsul in urbe habitat, the consul lives in the city.
PL A CE C ONSTRUCTIONS W ITHOUT P REPOSITIONS

8. In expressions of place to which and place from which with names of cities and towns and the noun domus the accusative and ablative are used as in other nouns, but without prepositions. A summary of place constructions with these words¹ is as follows:

(1) Place to which is expressed by the accusative without a preposition.

Lēgātus Rōmam rediit, the lieutenant returned to Rome.

(2) Place from which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Dictātor Rōmā ēgressus est, the dictator departed from Rome.

(3) Place where is expressed by the locative, which in nouns of the first and second declensions in the singular is identical with the genitive, and in most other words is identical with the ablative.

Cōnsul Rōmae habitat, the consul lives in Rome.

a. A few words, among which are locus and pars, sometimes omit the preposition in expressions of place where, especially if modified by an adjective.

Hōc locō nōn diū manēbimus, we shall not remain long in this place.

9. VOCABULARY

atque, conj., and, and also

crudēlis, -e, cruel

enim, conj., for

Latīnus, -ī, m., Latinus, a legendar y king in Italy

Lāvīnia, -ae, f., Lavinia, a daughter of Latinus

mātrimōnium, -i, n., marriage

proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum, set out

sīve, conj., whether, or if;

sīve . . . sīve, either . . . or,

whether . . . or

¹ Case forms of a few other nouns are occasionally used in place constructions without prepositions.
a. The conjunction *atque* is sometimes used to give prominence to the second of two words or expressions connected, but frequently it does not differ materially in meaning from *et* or *-que*.

b. The position of *enim* is always after one or more words of its sentence, but it is translated as if it stood at the beginning.

**EXERCISES**


11. 1. My brother, who is now at home, will go to Athens this winter. 2. The Trojans and their allies did not set out for Laurentum. 3. After the battle the soldier returned home. 4. Many came into the town from the fields, because they feared the barbarians. 5. Lavinia was then at home with her mother. 6. I set out from home with the messenger whom the general had sent.
LESSON III

CONJUGATION OF NŌLŌ

12. The verb nōlō, be unwilling, not wish, is a compound of volō. Its principal parts are nōlō, nōlle, nōlui. Like volō, it is irregular in the present indicative, the other tenses of the indicative being formed like those of a regular verb of the third conjugation.

**PRESENT INDICATIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nōlō</td>
<td>nōlumus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōn vīs</td>
<td>nōn vultis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōn vult</td>
<td>nōlunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IMPERATIVE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present  nōlī</td>
<td>nōlīte</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**INFINITIVES**

| Present nōlle | Perfect nōluisse |

**PARTICIPLE**

Present nōlēns

13. **VOCABULARY**

antiquus, -a, -um, ancient, of long ago

crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētum, increase, grow greater

Etrūsci, -ōrum, m. pl., the Etrurians or Etruscans

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, winter, spend the winter

nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, be unwilling, not wish

ops, opis, f., power; pl., resources, influence.

quoniam, conj., since

Rutuli, -ōrum, m. pl., the Rutuli or Rutulians, a nation of central Italy.

1 The element with which volō is combined is a negative prefix ne, replaced in some forms by nōn.
EXERCISES

14. 1. Trojānī, qui in Italianam venerant, cum Rutulis bel-

lum gerere nōlēbant. 2. Lōgātus dixit gentem suam pācem

facere nōllem (App. 121). 3. In urbe aestāte (App. 69)

manēre nōlūmus. 4. Quoniam Gallī magnās cōpiās nōn

habent, adventum nostrum expectāre nōlunt. 5. In illō

monte quem vidēs erat urbs antiqua Etrūscōrum. 6. Quo-
niam opēs Trojānōrum crēscēbant, gentēs Italiāe potentiam

eōrum timēbant. 7. Exercitus Rōmānōrum in Britannia hie-
māre nōlēbat. 8. Bellō cōnfectō (App. 75), hī mīlitēs domum

proficīscēntur, et magnum gaudium erit. 9. Pater hujus

rēgis domiciliu̇m Rōiae habēbat, atque ibi saepe visus est.

10. Hace gēns ab hostibus domō expulsa erat, et in Galiā

errābat.

15. 1. The Romans did not wish to destroy this beautiful

city. 2. The resources of the enemy are increasing, and our

allies are in danger. 3. We do not wish to spend the winter

in this part of Gaul. 4. These men do not have money,
because they are unwilling to work. 5. Since the king of the

Rutulians wishes to wage war, we shall send an army into

his country (fīnēs).
Lesson IV

Declension of Vetus and Quisquam

The Adjective Vetus

16. As we have seen, third declension adjectives of one ending, such as felix and potens (App. 7, 3), are i-stems. But there is one third declension adjective of one ending which is a consonant stem. It is declined as follows:

vetus, old
Base veter-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>M. F.</td>
<td>N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vetus</td>
<td>vetus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>veteris</td>
<td>veteris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>veterī</td>
<td>veterī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>veterem</td>
<td>vetus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vetere</td>
<td>vetere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The Indefinite Pronoun Quisquam

17. The indefinite pronoun quisquam, any one, any one at all, is declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>M. F.</th>
<th>N.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom.</td>
<td>quisquam</td>
<td>quicquam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen.</td>
<td>cujusquam</td>
<td>cujusquam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat.</td>
<td>cuiquam</td>
<td>cuiquam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc.</td>
<td>quemquam</td>
<td>quicquam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl.</td>
<td>quōquam</td>
<td>quōquam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Quisquam is used chiefly in clauses which contain a negative or a comparative, or which are introduced by a word meaning if. When a plural is needed, it is supplied from the plural forms of ullus.
18. VOCABULARY

conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, win over, conciliate
impleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, fill
Latīnī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Latins, the inhabitants of Latium, in central Italy

moenia, -ium, n. pl., walls (of a city)
mortālis, -e, mortal
quisquam, quicquam, anyone, anything, anyone (or thing) at all
ultimus, -a, -um, last
vetus, gen. veteris, old

a. The noun moenia is declined like the plural of animal (App. 3, 4).

b. The neuter form of quisquam is sometimes quidquam in the nominative and accusative, instead of quicquam.

EXERCISES


20. 1. The old wall which is behind the temple is low. 2. The soldier has a new sword, but his shield is old. 3. We are unwilling to give money to the boy who has brought the letter. 4. I returned to Rome from Laurentum with the same man with whom I had gone out (exeo) from Rome. 5. I have not been at home for four days, nor have I seen anyone from that place.
21. In addition to the indicative and the imperative moods, the verb has another mood, which is called the Subjunctive. The Latin subjunctive is sometimes used to express ideas which we express in English by the indicative, and hence is often translated exactly like the indicative. The first uses of the mood to be taken up are of this class.

There are only four tenses in the subjunctive. They are the present, imperfect, perfect, and past perfect.

THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

22. The verbs *porto* and *moneō* are conjugated as follows in the present subjunctive:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>Passive</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Singular</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>portem</td>
<td>portēmus</td>
<td>moneauī</td>
<td>moneāmus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>portēs</td>
<td>portētis</td>
<td>moneās</td>
<td>moneātis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>portēt</td>
<td>portent</td>
<td>moneat</td>
<td>moneant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

THE SUBJECTIVE IN CLAUSES OF RESULT

23. A subordinate clause which expresses result has its verb in the subjunctive. *Miles tam fortis est ut nūllum periculum *timeat*, the soldier is so brave that he fears no danger.
24. **VOCABULARY**

abundō, -āre, -āvī, overflow
adolēscō, -ere, adolēvī, adul-
tum, grow up, grow to ma-
turity
aetās, -tātis, f., age
imperium, -i, n., power, au-

**EXERCISES**

25. 1. Ille homō tam benignus est ut omnēs eum ament.
2. Exercitus noster nunc tantus est ut hostēs nos timeant.
3. Stultitia ejus hominis est tanta ut nūllōs amīcōs habēat.
4. Hic mōns tam altus est ut ab urbe nostrā facile videā-
tur. 5. Tum flūmen abundābat et magnum dētrīmentum ferēbat. 6. Illū juvenēs in montibus adulēscēbant, et cor-
pora eōrum valida fiēbant. 7. Propter aetātem hic agricola
nōn jam labōrāre potest, itaque in oppidum migrāre vult.
8. Quoniam filius rēgis nōndum mātūrus est, imperium eī
nōn dabitur. 9. Puer tam impigrē labōrat ut ab omnībus
laudētur.

26. 1. This picture is so beautiful that it is praised by all.
2. The river is so wide that we fear to cross.
3. The danger is so great that we do not dare go out from the city.
4. The man is so old that he does not work in the fields.
5. Your friend is not here, nor has any one seen him.

---

**LESSON VI**

**THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE — CONTINUED**

**THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS**

27. In the third and fourth conjugations the sign of the present subjunctive is ā. This tense sign replaces the char-
acteristic vowel in -ō verbs of the third conjugation. In -iō
verbs of the third conjugation and in all verbs of the fourth conjugation, the tense sign follows the -i of the stem.

28. The verbs dúcō, capiō, and audiō are conjugated as follows in the present subjunctive:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dúcēm</td>
<td>capiam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>′dúcēs</td>
<td>capiás</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dúcēt</td>
<td>capiat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dúcēmus</td>
<td>capiāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dúcētis</td>
<td>capiātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dúcētant</td>
<td>capiant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Passive</strong></td>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dúcēr</td>
<td>capiar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dúcēris</td>
<td>capiāris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dúcētūr</td>
<td>capiātur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dúcēmur</td>
<td>capiāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dúcēminī</td>
<td>capiāminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dúcētantur</td>
<td>capiantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

29. **Vocabulary**

auferō, -ferre, abstulī, ablātum, carry away, carry off  
nāscor, nāsci, nātus sum, be born  
crūdēlitās, -tātis, f., cruelty  
Rōmulus, -i, m., Romulus, the founder of Rome  
fluō, -ere, fluīxī, fluīxum, flow  
turba, -ae, f., crowd, mob  
honor, -ōris, m., honor  
laus, laudis, f., praise, glory  

**Exercises**

30. 1. Perīculum tantum est ut omnēs in hīs locīs tēla semper gerant. 2. Flūmen tam celeriter fluit ut sonus aquae
ex hoc locō audiātur. 3. Haec animalīa tam fera sunt ut
nōn facile capiantur. 4. Ille puer tam irātus est ut saxa in
(al) aliōs puerōs jaciat. 5. Nōmen Rōmulī in magnō honōre
Rōmae erat. 6. Paucōs amīcōs in ēa turbā vidi. 7. Multī
crūdēlitātem ejus hominis timēbant ā quō hae statuae
ablātae sunt. 8. Multī laudem nōn habent in ēō locō in quō
nātī sunt. 9. Ille imperātor tam avārus est ut multī eum
condemnent.

31. 1. So many have been killed in this war that all now
desire peace. 2. The fear of the mob is so great that men
are assembling from all parts of the city. 3. The Romans
are so brave that they easily repulse the enemy. 4. The
boy is so faithful that he never complains. 5. This famous
poet was born in a small town, but he lived for many years
in Rome.

LESSON VII

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF *SUM AND POSSUM*: NOUN
CLAUSES OF FACT

THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF *SUM AND POSSUM*

32. The present subjunctive of the irregular verbs *sum*
and *possum* is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sim</td>
<td>sīmus</td>
<td>possim</td>
<td>possīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sis</td>
<td>sītis</td>
<td>possīs</td>
<td>possītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sint</td>
<td>possit</td>
<td>possint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NOUN CLAUSES OF FACT

33. The third person singular of *fīō* (App. 36) is often
translated *it results* (freely, *the result is*) or *it comes about*
(imperfect, *it resulted, the result was, or it came about, etc.*).
When so used these forms are regularly followed by a clause
introduced by *ut*, with its verb in the subjunctive. The verb
accidit, *it happens* (imperfect *it happened*, etc.) is followed by a clause of the same kind. These clauses introduced by *ut* are not quite the same as those which we have seen in section 23. They are really the subjects of the verbs of the principal clauses, and are called Noun\(^1\) clauses of Fact.

*a.* Sometimes such clauses are used as objects instead of subjects. In this lesson, however, they are found only as subjects.

**Fit ut paucös amícös habeámus,** the result is (it results) that we have few friends.

**Saepe accidit ut frátrem tuum in ea urbe videám, it** often happens that I see your brother in that city.

### 34. VOCABULARY

| accidō, -ere, accidī, happen | mēnsa, -ae, F., table |
| Albānus, -a, -um, A l b a n ; | pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum, drive out, rout |
| Mōns Albānus, the Alban Mount, a small mountain | sub, prep. with acc. and abl., under |
| about fifteen miles from Rome | viātor, -ōris, M., traveler |
| ignāvus, -a, -um, cowardly | |
| ita, adv., so, to such a degree | |

*a.* To denote the place toward which or up to which motion is directed *sub* takes the accusative; to denote the place where something exists or occurs it regularly takes the ablative.

### EXERCISES


\(^1\) Or substantive clauses of fact.
6. *Fit ut viātōrēs flūmen trānsīre nōn possint.*

7. *Sub (at the foot of) monte Albānō nova urbs condita est.*

8. *Māter puerī cibum in mēnsā posuit, et nunc eum expectat.*

9. *Ille rēx frātrem suum pepulit et in locō ejus rēgnāvit.*

36. 1. It happens that no one can see us (is able to see us). 2. The result is that the city is in great danger. 3. The traveler is so cowardly that he remains in the village. 4. This farmer works so energetically that he is often tired out. 5. You are so cowardly that you cannot be (are not able to be) a good soldier.
THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF REGULAR VERBS: THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

37. The imperfect subjunctive of all regular verbs has the tense sign -rē before the personal endings. It is formed on the present stem.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I.</th>
<th>II.</th>
<th>III.</th>
<th>IV.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>portārem</td>
<td>monērem</td>
<td>dūcerem</td>
<td>caperem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>portārēs</td>
<td>monērēs</td>
<td>dūcerēs</td>
<td>caperēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>portāret</td>
<td>monēret</td>
<td>dūceret</td>
<td>caperet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

| portāremus | monēremus | dūcerēmus | caperēmus | audīremus |
| portārētis | monērētis | dūcerētis | caperētis | audīrētis |
| portārent | monērent | dūcerent | caperent | audīrent |

PASSIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I.</th>
<th>II.</th>
<th>III.</th>
<th>IV.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>portārer</td>
<td>monērer</td>
<td>dūcerer</td>
<td>caperer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>portārēris</td>
<td>monērēris</td>
<td>dūcerēris</td>
<td>caperēris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>portārētur</td>
<td>monērētur</td>
<td>dūcerētur</td>
<td>caperētur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

| portāremur | monēremur | dūcerēmur | caperēmur | audīremur |
| portārēmini | monērēmini | dūcerēmini | caperēmini | audīrēmini |
| portārentur | monērentur | dūcerentur | caperentur | audīrentur |

a. The imperfect subjunctive may be formed by adding the personal endings to the present active infinitive, with the necessary changes in quantity. This statement applies to all irregular verbs as well as to regular verbs.

---

1 As has been previously stated, a long vowel in a tense sign or stem ending becomes short before the personal endings -m, -t, -nt, -r, and -ntur.
THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

38. (1) When the verb in the principal clause of a complex sentence is present, future, or future perfect, the verb of the subordinate clause, if subjunctive, is regularly present (or perfect).\(^1\)

(2) When the verb in the principal clause is imperfect, perfect, or past perfect, the subjunctive in the subordinate clause is regularly imperfect (or past perfect).\(^1\)

\(^a\). If the main verb is a perfect which is equivalent to an English present perfect, the dependent subjunctive is sometimes present and sometimes imperfect.

\(^b\). A result clause sometimes has its verb in the perfect after a principal verb denoting past time.

39. VOCABULARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ascanius, -ī, m., Ascanius, the legendary founder of Alba</td>
<td>falsō, adv., falsely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Longa</td>
<td>laetitia, -ae, f., joy, gladness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnspectus, -ūs, m., sight</td>
<td>tenuis, -e, slight, thin; shallow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, surrender, give up</td>
<td>vēnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, hunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>vocō, -āre, āvī, -ātum, call</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

EXERCISES

40. 1. Ille cōnsul ita fortiter patriam dēfenderat ut omnēs cīvēs eum laudārent. 2. Ita fēlīcēs in eā urbe erāmus ut diū manērēmus. 3. Cōpiēs hostium tantae erant ut castra nōn facile dēfenderentur. 4. Audivimus hanc parvam urbēm ab Ascaniō conditam esse. 5. Centuriō quī in cōnspectū imperātōris stābat falsō ab inimīcō accūsābātur. 6. Aqua ita tenuis erat ut piscēs ā ripā vidērentur. 7. Puerī quī in silvā vēnābantur nunc domum redeunt, quod ā patre suō vocātī sunt. 8. Hostēs sé dēdīdērunt, et magna laetitia in

---

\(^1\) The forms and uses of the perfect and past perfect subjunctive will be given later.
patriā nostrā est. 9. Barbarī ita terrentur ut ex omnibus partibus fugiant.

41. 1. Our soldiers made an attack so fiercely that they quickly captured the enemy's camp. 2. The general was so brave that he was loved by all the soldiers. 3. The forest was so large that we did not easily find our way in it. 4. The Trojans were so few that they did not resist longer. 5. The joy of the traveler was so great that he at once called his friend. 6. The forest in which I often hunt is in sight of (from) the village.

LESSON IX

THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF SUM AND POSSUM:
IMPERSONAL VERBS

THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF SUM AND POSSUM

42. The verbs sum and possum are conjugated as follows in the imperfect subjunctive:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>essem</td>
<td>essēmus</td>
<td>possem</td>
<td>possēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>essēs</td>
<td>essētis</td>
<td>possēs</td>
<td>possētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>esset</td>
<td>essent</td>
<td>posset</td>
<td>possent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. As has been seen in the case of regular verbs, these imperfect subjunctives are formed by adding the personal endings to the present infinitive.

IMPERSONAL VERBS

43. There are a few Latin verbs which do not have a noun or pronoun as a subject. They have as subject an infinitive, or an expression consisting of an infinitive with its subject in the accusative. Such verbs are called Impersonal. Two of the most important impersonal verbs are oportet, it is necessary or it is proper, and licet, it is permitted.
44. With *oportet* the subject is regularly an infinitive with subject accusative.

**Hominem mane re oportet**, *it is necessary that the man remain*, or *it is necessary for the man to remain*. This expression may also be translated *the man must remain*, or *the man ought to remain*. The latter translations seem to us in English to indicate a personal subject, but we must remember that in Latin the construction differs from the construction of the English equivalent.

**USE OF LICET**

45. The verb *licet* takes an infinitive as subject. The dative is commonly used to denote the person who is permitted to do the act denoted by the infinitive.

**Centuriônì redire licet**, *it is permitted (to) the centurion to return*, or *the centurion is permitted to return*. As in the use of *oportet*, the English translation commonly employs a personal verb; but it must be remembered that the word for *centurion* as used in this sentence is not to be expressed in Latin by the nominative.

**VOCABULARY**

*comes, comitis, m.*, companion, comrade  
*contemnō, -temnere, -tempsi, -temptum*, scorn, despise  
*eques, equitis, m.*, horseman; *pl.* horsemen or cavalry  
*jūs, jūris, n.*, right, law  
*licet, licère, licuit*, it is permitted, it is allowed  
*oportet, oportère, oportuit*, it is necessary, it is proper, one must, one ought  
*rēmus, -ī, m.*, oar  
*turris, turris, -īum, f.*, tower

*a*. The accusative singular of *turris* is regularly *turrim* and the ablative is *turri*. A few other *i*-stem nouns have the accusative in *-im* and the ablative in *-i*. 
EXERCISES

47. 1. Accidit¹ ut nāvis sine rēmīs esset. 2. Rīpae flū¬
minis tam altae erant ut equitēs eās ascendere nōn possent. 3. Fīēbat ut illī hominēs jūs contemnerent. 4. Turris tanta
erat ut eam ex mūrō vidēre possēmus. 5. Exercitum in hōc
locō manēre nōn oportet. 6. Cūr in viā ambulāre nōn licet?
7. Imperātōrem castra et arma dēdere nōn oportet. 8. Tībi
hunc librum auferre nōn licet. 9. Comitēs meī tam ignāvī
erant ut nihil efficere possem. 10. Ea vīctōria erat tanta
ut per tōtam urbem laetitia esset.

48. 1. Our companions were so brave that the enemy
could not (were not able to) frighten them. 2. It happened
that the horsemen were in the village. 3. I worked so ener-
ggetically that I was soon tired out. 4. It is necessary that
help be sent (help to be sent) at once. 5. The traveler
ought to set out today.

______________

LESSON X

DATIVE OF PURPOSE: DATIVE OF REFERENCE

THE DATIVE OF PURPOSE

49. A noun in the dative is sometimes used to denote the
purpose or end which something serves or is intended to
serve.

Hunc librum dōnō mīsi, I sent this book as a gift (lit. for
a gift).

a. The dative of purpose is sometimes employed where
the English usage would require a predicate nominative.

Haec fāma auxiliō erit, this reputation will be a help.

¹The form accidit may be either present, it happens, or perfect, it happened. See
the principal parts. The use of esset in the subordinate clause shows by the sequence
of tenses that accidit is here perfect.
THE DATIVE OF REFERENCE

50. The dative is sometimes used to denote the person with reference to whom an act is said to be done or a situation to exist. This use is especially important in expressions which contain a dative of purpose.

Legiō equitātui auxiliō missa est, the legion was sent as aid (lit. for aid) to the cavalry.

a. Sometimes the dative of reference refers to a thing instead of a person.

Cohors castrīs praesidiō relictā est, the cohort was left as a guard to the camp.

51. VOCABULARY

amnis, amnis, -ium, m., river  lapis, lapidis, m., stone
cēna, -ae, f., dinner  pedes, peditis, m., foot soldier:
cōnscribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, enroll  pl., infantry
   subsidium, -ī, n., reënforcement
   dextra, -ae, f., right hand  
imprōvisō, adv., unexpectedly  

a. The noun dextra is merely the feminine form of the adjective dexter, -tra, -trum, used as a noun.

EXERCISES

53. 1. Labienus at once sent the infantry as aid (for aid) to the town. 2. Two legions were sent as aid to our allies whose towns were being burned. 3. We have come as reinforcements to you, because your nation ought not to be defeated. 4. The friendship of the Romans was (for) a great help to this leader. 5. The consul is permitted (it is permitted to the consul) to enroll another legion.

LESSON XI

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE: CUM CAUSAL CLAUSES

THE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, ACTIVE VOICE

54. The perfect active subjunctive is formed on the perfect stem with the tense sign -eri.

Singular

laudāverim  monuerim  duxerim  audīverim
laudāveris  monuerīs  duxerīs  audīverīs
laudaverit  monuerit  duxerit  audīverit

Plural

laudāverimus  monuerimus  duxerimus  audīverimus
laudāverītis  monuerītis  duxerītis  audīverītis
laudāverint  monuerint  duxerint  audīverint

a. The perfect subjunctive of sum is formed in like manner on the stem fu-: fuerim, fuerīs, etc.

THE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, PASSIVE VOICE

55. The perfect passive subjunctive is made up of the past participle and the present subjunctive of sum.

portātus sim  monitus sim  ductus sim  audītus sim
portātus sis  monitus sis  ductus sis  audītus sis

etc.  etc.  etc.  etc.
56. A subordinate clause introduced by *cum* meaning *since* has its verb in the subjunctive.

Cum nūlla nāvis in cōnspectū *sit*, domum revertar, *since there is no ship in sight, I shall return home.*

57. **VOCABULARY**

*apud, prep. with acc., among, with*

*cum, conj., since, although, when*

*cursus, -ūs, m., course*

*flectō, -ere, flexī, flexum, turn, bend*

*minae, -ārum, f. pl., threats*

*reverter, revertī, revertī, revertum, return*

*sinistra, -ae, f., left hand*

*videor, -ērī, visus sum, seem, appear*

*a. The verb *reverter* is commonly used as a deponent in the present, imperfect, and future tenses. In the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect it has active forms. Sometimes active forms are found in the present system.*

*b. The verb *videor*, meaning *seem*, is merely the passive form of *videō*, see. It will be possible to decide from the context whether a doubtful form should be translated *seem* or as a passive of *videō.*

58. 1. Cum hunc puerum laudāveris, amīcus fidelis tuus semper erit. 2. Cum Helvētī cum cursum suum flexerint, eōs diūtius sequī nōn possimus. 3. Cum nihil hīc efficere possimus, domum revertēmur. 4. Cum auctōritās tua magna apud Gallōs sit, tē cum hāc epistulā in Galliam mittam. 5. Ille dux nōn mihi fortis vidētur. 6. Cum exercitus meus numquam victus sit, minās tuās nōn vereor. 7. Puer sinistra epistulam tenet quam eī ā sorōre data est. 8. In his dolōribus amīcitia tua mihi magnō auxiliō est. 9. Gladius
quem frater meus tibi donō dedit est gravis. 10. Factum est ut tē juvāre nōn possēmus.

59. 1. Since you have often praised this picture, I will give it to you. 2. Since no enemy has been seen today, we shall return to (into) the village. 3. Since the cavalry has not yet arrived, we cannot make an attack. 4. Since the traveler has turned his course toward (ad) the river, we shall soon see him. 5. Caesar left one legion as a guard (Section 49) for the bridge. 6. The soldiers are so brave that they do not fear the threats of the enemy.
The Past Perfect Subjunctive: *Cum Adversative Clauses*

**The Past Perfect Subjunctive, Active Voice**

60. The past perfect subjunctive in the active voice is formed on the perfect stem with the tense sign *-isse*.

*Singulär*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Portāvissem</th>
<th>Monuissem</th>
<th>Dūxissem</th>
<th>Audīvissem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Portāvissēs</td>
<td>Monuissēs</td>
<td>Dūxissēs</td>
<td>Audivissēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portāvisset</td>
<td>Monuisset</td>
<td>Dūxisset</td>
<td>Audivisset</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Plural*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Portāvissēmus</th>
<th>Monuissēmus</th>
<th>Dūxissēmus</th>
<th>Audivissēmus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Portāvissētis</td>
<td>Monuissētis</td>
<td>Dūxissētis</td>
<td>Audivissētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portāvissent</td>
<td>Monuissent</td>
<td>Dūxissent</td>
<td>Audivissent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a.* The past perfect subjunctive of *sum* is formed in like manner with the stem *fu-*: *fuissem, fuissēs, etc.*

**The Past Perfect Subjunctive, Passive Voice**

61. The past perfect subjunctive in the passive voice is made up of the past participle and the imperfect subjunctive of *sum*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Portātus essem</th>
<th>Monitus essem</th>
<th>ductus essem</th>
<th>audītus essem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Portātus essēs</td>
<td>Monitus essēs</td>
<td>ductus essēs</td>
<td>audītus essēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>etc.</em></td>
<td><em>etc.</em></td>
<td><em>etc.</em></td>
<td><em>etc.</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Cum Adversative Clauses*

62. A subordinate clause introduced by *cum* meaning *although* has its verb in the subjunctive.

*Cum ea urbs parva esset, tamen magnam glōriam habēbat, although that city was small, nevertheless it had great fame.*
a. The adverb *tamen* frequently stands in the principal clause with which an adversative clause is connected.

### VOCABULARY

- **certus, -a, -um**, certain
- **cēterī, -ae, -a**, the other
- **ob, prep. with acc., on account**
- **ōrdō, ordinis, m., order, rank**
- **potestās, -tātis, f., power**

- **puerīlis, -e**, childish, of a child, of children
- **retardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, keep back, check
- **vāgitus, -ūs, m.,** wailing, crying

  a. The singular forms of *cēterī* are rare, and may be disregarded for the present.

  b. The most important use of *ob* is in phrases containing a form of *causa* or *rés*.

### EXERCISES

**64.**
1. *Cum puer saepe monitus esset, tamen impigre non laborabat.*
2. *Cum nūllus certus ārdō esset, tamen quisque in suo locō hostibus (App. 51) restitit.*
3. *Ob eam rem impetus hostium retardātus est, sed dēnique castra capta sunt.*
4. *Cum Gallī potestātem ejus rēgis semper timuissent, tamen eī fortiter restitērunt.*
5. *Cum cēterī pervēnissent, decem equitēs viam per silvam reperire non poterant.*
6. *Cum (Section 56) libertātem semper laudāverītis, vōs patriam nunc dēfendere oportet.*
7. *In eō locō vāgitus puerīlis auditus est.*
8. *Verba tua mihi tum magnō auxiliō erant.*
9. *Cēterī domī manēre nōlunt.*

**65.**
1. Although the Romans had not sent aid, the townspeople were trying to defend the town.
2. Although the attack had been checked, we were not safe.
3. Since you have received my letter, you know the cause of this delay.
4. Although I had never injured him (App. 51), he was always my enemy.
5. Since you are a young man, you ought to defend your country.
Lesson XIII

Conjugation of *ferō*: *Cum Descriptive Clauses of Situation*

Conjugation of *ferō*

66. The irregular verb *ferō* is conjugated as follows in the present indicative:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ferō</td>
<td>ferimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fers</td>
<td>fertis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fert</td>
<td>ferunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>feror</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ferris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fertur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ferimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>feriminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>feruntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A synopsis of *ferō* in the first person singular is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicative</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active</td>
<td>Passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>ferō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Impf.</td>
<td>ferēbam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>feram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>tulī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. Pf.</td>
<td>tuleram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. Pf.</td>
<td>tulerō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>ferre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>tulisse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>lātūrus esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a*. Other forms of *ferō* will be found in section 34 of the Appendix.

*Cum Descriptive Clause of Situation*

67. The imperfect or past perfect subjunctive is often used in a clause introduced by *cum* meaning *when*. Such a clause describes the situation or makes known the time of the main act.
a. The meaning of the principal clause will usually make it easy to decide whether *cum* should be translated *since*, *although*, or *when*. If the tense of the subjunctive is present or perfect, *cum* will mean *since* or *although* (not *when*).

### 68. VOCABULARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>avus, -ī, m., grandfather</td>
<td>nepōs, nepōtis, m., grandson</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, rear, bring up</td>
<td>pāstor, pāstōris, m., shepherd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>latrō, latrōnis, m., robber, brig-and</td>
<td>pecus, pecudis, f., beast; <em>pl.</em>, flock, herd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lūdus, -ī, m., game</td>
<td>spectāculum, -ī, n., spectacle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 69. EXERCISES

1. *Cum pāstor pecudēs suās in montēs ageret, latrōnis eum aggressī sunt.*
2. *Cum latrō praedam auferret, ā militibus captus est.*
3. *Cum Rōmulus urbem suam consolidisset, gentēs finitimās ad spectāculum lūdōrum invitāvit.*
4. *Cum Rōmulus et frāter ejus apud pāstōrem ēducārentur, nēmō scīvit eōs esse nepōtēs rēgis.*
5. *Cum (Section 62) fortis semper fuerīs, nunc pugnāre nōn vis.*
7. *Cum (Section 56) multi latrōnēs in eīs locīs essent, pāstōrēs semper tēla ferēbant.*
8. *Propter hās injūriās dēnique barbarīs bellum intulimus.*

### 70. When the robber saw the shepherds, he fled.

1. When the city had been *founded*, Romulus gave a name to it.
2. When we were *in* Rome, we saw the king and queen.
3. Although Romulus and his brother were grandsons of the king, they were reared at the house of *(apud)* a shepherd.
4. It happened that the brother of Romulus had been captured by the robbers.

---

1 *at the house of.*
2 Perfect subjunctive of *sum.*
### Lesson XIV

#### Subjunctive of *volo* and *eo*: Indirect Questions

The Subjunctive of *volo*

**71.** The irregular verb *volo* is conjugated as follows in the subjunctive mood:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>velim</td>
<td>velīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>velīs</td>
<td>velītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>velit</td>
<td>velint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect**

- voluerim
- volueris
- *etc.*

**Past Perfect**

- voluissem
- voluissēs
- *etc.*

The Subjunctive of *eo*

**72.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eam</td>
<td>eāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eās</td>
<td>eātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eat</td>
<td>eant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect**

- ierim (īverim)
- ierīs (īverīs)
- *etc.*

**Past Perfect**

- īssem (īvissem)
- īssēs (īvissēs)
- *etc.*

#### Indirect Questions

**73.** An indirect question is a question which is quoted with changed form.

*He asked who the man was.* (Direct, *Who is the man?*)

Indirect questions depend on words of *asking*, *knowing*, *perceiving*, and the like.
74. In Latin, an indirect question has its verb in the subjunctive.

Quaesivi quis hoc fecisset, I asked who had done this.

75. VOCABULARY

forte, adv., by chance

gemini, -orum, m. pl., twins

ignōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, not know, be unaware

Remus, -i, m., Remus, the brother of Romulus

suspicor, -āri, -ātus sum, suspect

trānsiliō, -īre, -uī, jump over

uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of two)

vultur, vulturis, m., vulture

a. When only two persons are referred to, each is translated by uterque; when more than two are thought of, by quisque.

EXERCISES


77. 1. The lieutenant asked why the cohort had not been sent. 2. The shepherd did not know (ignōrō) who was the grandfather of these boys. 3. Remus asked why the robbers wished to lead him to (ad) the king. 4. Since you are going alone, take your sword. 5. When I was crossing the valley, I saw a fire on the hill.
LESSON XV

FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE: DATIVE OF AGENT

THE FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

78. In addition to the present active participle, the past passive participle, and the future active participle, which have been given, Latin has also a future passive participle. It is formed on the present stem, and ends in -ndus, -nda, -ndum.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>portandus, -a, -um</td>
<td>monendus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcendus, -a, -um</td>
<td>audiendus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiendus, -a, -um</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. This participle is often used with forms of the verb sum to denote an act which must be done or ought to be done.

**Auxilium mittendum est**, help must be sent (or ought to be sent).

THE DATIVE OF AGENT

79. With the future passive participle, the person by whom the act must be done or ought to be done is regularly denoted by the dative.

**Epistula mihi mittenda est**, a letter ought to be sent by me.

a. Expressions which contain a future passive participle are often best translated by changing the verb to the active voice. The dative of agent is then represented by the subject of the active verb.

**Epistula mihi mittenda est**, a letter ought to be sent by me—I ought to send a letter.
80. VOCABULARY

conditor, -ōris, m., founder
divitiae, -ārum, f. pl., riches, wealth
labor, -ōris, m., labor, toil
nōtus, -a, -um, known
origō, -inis, f., origin

ostendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tendī, -tendēre, -ten-
tum, show, point out
perterreō, -ēre, -uí, -itum, terrify
tantopere, adv., so greatly

EXERCISES


82. 1. The city ought to be defended by the citizens. 2. The robbers ought to be led to the king by the young man. 3. The weapons ought not to be left in camp by the soldiers. 4. This book ought to be read by boys and girls. 5. Many did not know why the barbarians wished to fight.
LESSON XVI

THE PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF FİŌ AND NŌLŌ: INDIRECT DISCOURSE, COMPLETED

THE PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF FİŌ

83. The irregular verb fİō is conjugated as follows in the subjunctive:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th></th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fİam</td>
<td>fiāmus</td>
<td>fierem</td>
<td>fierēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fİās</td>
<td>fiātis</td>
<td>fierēs</td>
<td>fierētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fİat</td>
<td>fiānt</td>
<td>fieret</td>
<td>fierent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Perfect
factus sim
factus sis

etc.

a. The present subjunctive is made like that of capiō.

THE PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF NŌLŌ

84. The irregular verb nōlō is conjugated as follows in the subjunctive:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th></th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōlim</td>
<td>nōlīmus</td>
<td>nōllem</td>
<td>nōllēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōlīs</td>
<td>nōlītis</td>
<td>nōllēs</td>
<td>nōllētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nōlit</td>
<td>nōlīnt</td>
<td>nōllet</td>
<td>nōllent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Perfect
nōluerim
nōluerīs

etc.

Past Perfect
nōluissem
nōluisēs

etc.

a. The imperfect subjunctive, like that of regular verbs, is formed by adding the personal endings to the present infinitive.
We have already seen the use of the infinitive with its subject in the accusative in indirect discourse. But all the examples given represented simple sentences consisting of statements in direct discourse. The following rules apply to complex sentences and also to sentences expressing commands.

I. The verb of a principal clause expressing a statement is in the infinitive in indirect discourse, and its subject is in the accusative.

II. The verb of a subordinate clause in indirect discourse is in the subjunctive.

III. A verb expressing a command in indirect discourse is in the subjunctive.¹

VOCABULARY

benignē, adv., kindly
explōrātor, -ōris, m., scout
inde, adv., thence, from that place
régius, -a, -um, royal, of the king
supplicium, -ī, n., punishment
terror, -ōris, m., terror, fright
Tiberis, -is, m., the Tiber, a river of Italy
tractō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, treat

EXERCISES

1. Miles dixit barbarum magnō in terrōre esse quod supplicium timēret. 2. Cum cópiae rēgiae pugnāre nōllent, tamen dux eōs impetum facere jussit. 3. Obsidēs tam benignē tractātī sunt ut domum redire nōlint. 4. Explōrātor inde vidēre poterat quid in castrīs hostium fieret. 5. Cum periculum sociōrum nostrōrum majus fiat, auxilium statim mittēmus. 6. Tiberis, quī nōn longē ab hōc locō abest, magnum flūmen est. 7. Ea urbs Rōmānīs nōn dēlenda est. 8. Pāstor crēdidit puerōs quōs invēnisset esse nepōtēs frātris

¹ No examples of commands in indirect discourse are given for the present, but this statement is included for the sake of a complete presentation of the subject.
rēgis. 9. Cum patriam dēfendere nōlis, tē cīvem esse nōn oportet.

88. 1. The terror of the townspeople is so great that they are unwilling to go out from the town. 2. Although the attack was made fiercely, the legions did not fear. 3. Romulus said that he would give a name to the city which he had founded. 4. Since Ascanius was unwilling to remain longer in the city, the royal power was given to his mother. 5. The scout said that he had remained in the forest because he did not wish to be seen by the enemy.

LESSON XVII

PRESENT PASSIVE IMPERATIVE: IMPERSONAL USE OF CERTAIN VERBS IN THE PASSIVE

THE PRESENT PASSIVE IMPERATIVE

89. The present passive imperative of regular verbs of the four conjugations is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
<th>IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sing. laudāre, be praised (spoken to one person)</td>
<td>monēre</td>
<td>dūcere</td>
<td>capere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur. laudāmini, be praised (spoken to more than one)</td>
<td>monēmini</td>
<td>dūcimini</td>
<td>capimini</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

THE PRESENT IMPERATIVES OF DEPONENTS

90. The present imperative of deponent verbs of the four conjugations is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
<th>IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cōnāre</td>
<td>pollicēre</td>
<td>sequere</td>
<td>potire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnāmini</td>
<td>pollicēmini</td>
<td>sequimini</td>
<td>potimini</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. The imperative of ēgresķor is formed like that of sequor.
91. Certain intransitive verbs are sometimes used impersonally in the passive.

Pugnātur, it is being fought (a fight is going on).

a. Such impersonal verbs are usually translated in the active, with whatever subject is implied by the general sense of the passage. Thus, pugnātur may be translated they are fighting. Perventum est may be translated they arrived or they have arrived. These impersonal uses generally refer to the acts of plural subjects.

b. An intransitive verb cannot be used in the passive with a personal subject.

92. VOCABULARY

adjuvō, -juvāre, -jūvī, -jūtum, help, assist
regō, -ere, rēxi, rēctum, rule
successus, -ūs, m., success
dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum, decide
toga, -ae, f., toga, a garment worn by the Romans
dives, gen. divitis, rich, wealthy
Vesta, -ae, f., Vesta, a goddess
praeter, prep. with acc., except
worshiped by the Romans

EXERCISES


¹ Not an infinitive.
² See App. 80, note.
³ See App. 79.
aedificātum est. 9. Cum mē adjuvāre antea nōlueris cūr auxiliōn meum nunc postulās?

94. 1. Promise your help to my friend. 2. Use your swords, soldiers. 3. They fought (it was fought) long and fiercely in the streets of this town. 4. We have decided to help our allies at once. 5. No one except the centurion dared to go out from the camp. 6. Lavinia ruled the city which the Trojans had built.

LESSON XVIII

THE GERUNDIVE

95. The future passive participle of a transitive verb is often used in agreement with a noun or pronoun in phrases which are equivalent in meaning to a gerund with an object.¹

Spēs urbīs capiendae, hope of capturing the city. The meaning is the same as spēs urbem capiendi.

The future passive participle when thus used is called the Gerundive. The gerundive may be used in either number and in any case, to agree with the noun or pronoun to which it belongs.

a. Since the gerund cannot stand as the object of a preposition and at the same time govern an object, gerundive phrases are frequently used with the forms of transitive verbs. The English translation of such phrases is the same as if the gerundive were a gerund having as its object the word with which the gerundive agrees.

¹The gerundive construction was not a substitute for the gerund in the thought of the Romans, but was probably the usage from which the gerund was derived.
b. The case uses of the gerundive construction are in general the same as those of the gerund.

cupidus oppidī expugnandī, desirous of storming the town.
auxiliī ferendi causā, for the purpose (sake) of bringing aid.
ad eās rés cōnficiendās, for accomplishing these things (or to accomplish these things).
dē auxiliō mittendō, about (concerning) sending aid.
lapidībus portandīs, by carrying stones.

96. The following distinctions between the gerund and gerundive are to be observed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>GERUND</th>
<th>GERUNDIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A noun</td>
<td>A participle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active in meaning</td>
<td>Passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuter gender</td>
<td>All genders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Used only in the singular</td>
<td>Both numbers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

97. VOCABULARY

agnōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nī-tum, recognize
comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, compare, prepare
confestim, adv., at once, immediately
conjūnx, conjugis, m., f., wife, husband

maestus, -a, -um, sad, sorrowful
mulier, mulieris, f., woman
permittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mis-sum, permit; entrust
Sabīnī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Sabines, an ancient Italian people

EXERCISES

98. 1. Haece fēmina spem filiae suae videndae habet. 2. Ad eās rés cōnficiendās hominēs confestim missī sunt. 3. Barbarī lapidībus jaciendīs multōs vulnerāverunt. 4. Sabīnī pācis petendae causā légātōs misērunt. 5. Tum conjugēs
Rōmānōrum maestae erant, quod bellum inter Rōmānos et Sabinōs gerēbatur. 6. Ille juvenis sorōrem agnōvit, quam multōs annōs nōn viderat. 7. Illa terra cum terrā nostrā nōn comparanda est; itaque barbarī nostrōs agrōs occupāvērunt. 8. Tē adjuvāre volēbam, sed id non permissum est. 9. Proficiscere, puer, ut domum redeās.

99. 1. The cohort was left for the purpose of defending the bridge. 2. By throwing javelins the Romans drove back the enemy, who were trying to cross the river. 3. A leader has been chosen for accomplishing these things. 4. Soldiers, defend your wives and your children. 5. There were so many soldiers in the town that an attack was not made.

——

LESSON XIX

CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH UT AND NE

EXPRESSIONS OF PURPOSE IN ENGLISH

100. In the sentence I went to see the fire the infinitive to see tells the purpose of the act expressed by the verb went. The use of the infinitive to express purpose is very common in English. Sometimes we use the phrase in order before the infinitive in expressions of purpose. Thus, I stayed in order to hear the music. In this sentence the expression in order to hear denotes the purpose of the act which is expressed by the verb stayed.

a. Occasionally we use a subordinate clause introduced by that or in order that in expressions of purpose. Thus, we may say I stayed that I might hear, or in order that I might hear, the music. The clause that I might hear, or in order that I might hear, expresses the purpose of the act denoted by the main verb.

1 See section 78.
101. In Latin, purpose may be expressed by a subordinate clause introduced by *ut*, with its verb in the subjunctive. The Latin infinitive is not used to express purpose. The sentence *I went to see the fire* is translated as if it read *I went that I might see the fire*; the sentence *I stayed in order to hear the music* is translated as if it read *I stayed that I might hear the music.*

\[ \text{Vēnī ut tē vidērem, I came to see you, literally, I came that I might see you.} \]

**NEGATIVE EXPRESSIONS OF PURPOSE**

102. Negative clauses of purpose are introduced by *nē* instead of *ut*. *Mīlitēs missī sunt nē urbs caperētur*, soldiers were sent that the city might not be captured.

\[ \text{a. Negative clauses of result are introduced by *ut* and contain *nōn*. Tarn celeriter fūgit *ut nōn caperētur*, he fled so swiftly that he was not captured.} \]

**VOCABULARY**

- aliquot, *indeclinable*, several
- hospitium, *-ī, n.*, hospitality
- nē, *conj.*, that ... not
- parēns, parentis, *m.*, *f.*, parent
- profugiō, -fugere, -fūgi, flee
- rapiō, rapere, rapui, raptum, seize, carry off
- violō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, violate
- virgō, -inis, *f.*, young woman

**EXERCISES**

104. 1. Eae virginēs raptae sunt, ut Rōmānī conjugēs habērent. 2. Parentēs virginum profugērunt, nē injūriam acciperent. 3. Rōmulus novam urbem mūnīvit, ut hostēs repellere posset. 4. Post aliquot diēs Sabīnī exercitum conduxeōrunt, ut cum Rōmānīs bellum gererent. 5. Patrēs nostri mare trānsīērunt, ut in terrā liberā habitārent. 6. Sabīnī dixērunt hospitium à Rōmānīs violātum esse. 7. Multī vēnē-
runt novae urbis videndae causā. 8. Ad pācem petendam lēgātī dēlectī sunt. 9. Ācriter ab hostibus pugnātur, sed spēs ā nostrīs nōn āmissa est.

105. 1. The Gauls collected an army to defend (that they might defend) their homes. 2. We fled that we might not be captured. 3. These men will cross the sea in order to find (that they may find) wealth. 4. We did not come into your city to receive injury. 5. The boys said they had defended themselves by throwing stones.

____________________

LESSON XX

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE: THE ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

106. Sometimes a relative pronoun is used instead of ut to introduce a purpose clause.

Puerum mittam qui tē adjuvet, I will send a boy to help you, literally, who shall help you.

a. The relative clause of purpose is found chiefly after mittō and its compounds, and after relinquō and a few other verbs.

THE ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

107. With a comparative, if quam, than, is omitted, the noun or pronoun denoting the person or thing with which comparison is made is put in the ablative.

Ille puer fortior frātre est, that boy is braver than his brother.

a. If quam is used, the word denoting the person or thing with which comparison is made stands in the same case as the thing compared. Ille puer fortior quam frāter est, that boy is braver than his brother.
108. VOCABULARY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>arx, arcis, f., citadel</td>
<td>repente, adv., suddenly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neptūnus, -ī, m., Neptune, god of the sea.</td>
<td>secundus, -a, -um, favorable, successful</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orior, orīrī, ortus sum, rise</td>
<td>spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, observe, watch, look at</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -duc-tum, lead back</td>
<td>umquam, adv., ever</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MARBLE RELIEF IN ROMAN FORUM

EXERCISES

109. 1. Decem militēs missī sunt quī arcem dēfenderent. 2. Repente tōta legiō ex castrīs missa est quae in Gallōs venientēs impetum faceret. 3. Hoc flūmen lātius est flūminibus in patriā nostrā. 4. Ex eō colle in quō templum Neptūnī stat proelium spectābāmus. 5. Ille rēx potentior erat omnibus rēgibus quī umquam anteā eam urbem rēxerant. 6. Post proelium secundum dux Rōmānōrum cōpiās suās in castra redūxit. 7. Cum sōl ortus esset, ex vīcō cum equīs prefectī sumus, ut ad montēs īrēmus. 8. Temporibus antiquīs urbēs in collibus conditae sunt, nē ab hostibus caperentur. 9. Sitūs urbium nostrārum dēlēctī sunt in vallibus aut campīs.

110. 1. I have sent a boy to announce (who shall announce) your arrival. 2. We sent a lieutenant to observe the battle. 3. The enemy are not braver than our allies. 4. All who have ever seen this famous temple of Neptune say that it is beautiful. 5. The sun was rising when (ubi) we arrived at the river. 6. The townspeople fortified the citadel that the enemy might not dare make an attack.
LESSON XXI

THE SUPINE: DECLENSION OF ISTE

THE SUPINE

111. The supine is a form of the verb which has the case endings of a masculine noun of the fourth declension. It is found only in the accusative and ablative singular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
<th>IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>portātum</td>
<td>monitum</td>
<td>ductum</td>
<td>captum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>portātū</td>
<td>monitū</td>
<td>ductū</td>
<td>captū</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>auditum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>auditū</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. The accusative of the supine may be used to express purpose in a clause in which the verb expresses motion.

Lēgātī pācem petitum vēnērunt, the envoys came to ask peace.

b. The ablative of the supine is used with a few adjectives as an ablative of respect. It is usually translated by the English present infinitive.

Optimum factū, best to do (the best thing to do).

THE DEMONSTRATIVE ISTE

112. Besides hic, ille, and is, there is another demonstrative, iste, translated that of yours, or simply that. It is used less frequently than the others and commonly refers to something connected with the person addressed. It is declined exactly like ille.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mas.</th>
<th>Fem.</th>
<th>Neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>iste</td>
<td>ista</td>
<td>istud</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>istūs</td>
<td>istīus</td>
<td>istīus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Isto is sometimes used to express contempt.
**113. VOCABULARY**

**affe**-rō, -ferre, attulī, allātum, bring to, bring

**ambō, -ae, -ō, both**

**dispār, gen. dispersis, unequal**

**ingenium, -ī, n., intellect, ability**

**iste, ista, istud, that of yours, that**

**mirābilis, -e, wonderful**

**nocturnus, -a, -um, nightly, at night, night (as adjective)**

**superbia, -ae, f., pride, haughtiness**

---

**EXERCISES**

114. 1. *Ista superbia tibi magnum detrimentum afferet.*
2. *Potentia istius gentis crūdēlis nōn jam timētur.*
3. *Istud periculum dē quō scripsisti nōn magnum vidētur.*
4. *Oppidānī impetum nocturnum in nostra castra fēcērunt.*
5. *Frāter meus in externās terrās divītiās petītum īre vult.*
6. *Ingenia filiōrum tuōrum dispersa sunt, sed ambō impigrē labōrant.*
7. *Agri nostrī vāstātī sunt; itaque lēgātōs ad Caesarem questum mittimus.*
8. *Difficile dictū est quanta superbia istius gentis fuerit (Section 73).*
9. *Tum gaudium illōrum captīvōrum qui domum redierant mirābile visū erat.*
10. *Patria huic virō est cārior vītā ipsā.*
11. *Gallus missus est quī epistulam ad castra portāret.*

115. 1. *We despise that army (of yours) which you are sending.*
2. *The centurion set out alone to ask help.*
3. *This is easy to say, but difficult to do.*
4. *Nothing is dearer to us than friends.*
5. *A night attack was made by the townspeople, who had concealed their arms in the houses (tēcta).*
LESSON XXII

NOUN CLAUSES OF DESIRE

116. We have already seen (Section 33) that the subjunctive is used in noun clauses of fact introduced by ut which are employed as subjects or objects of verbs.

There is another class of noun clauses which are slightly different from these. The difference in their form consists in the fact that when they are negative they are introduced by nē instead of ut, and they do not have nōn. When they do not contain a negative idea, they are introduced by ut, like the noun clauses of section 33.

Lēgātus hortātur ut auxilium statim mittātur, the envoy urges that aid be sent at once.

Amici nostri hortābantur nē in urbe manērēmus, our friends urged that we should not remain in the city.

a. Noun clauses of this class are often translated by the English infinitive with a subject accusative. The second sentence above might be translated, Our friends urged us not to remain in the city.

b. The verbs with which this construction is most frequently found are those meaning persuade, urge, direct, and some verbs meaning command, wish, and decide.

117. VOCABULARY

alloquor, -loqui, -locūtus sum, speak to, address

certāmen, certāminus, n., struggle, rivalry

extrā, prep. with acc., outside of

hortor, -āri, hortātus sum, urge

imperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, command

mūnītiō, -onis, f., fortification, intrenchment

plēbs, plēbis, f., the common people

prōditiō, -onis, f., treason, betrayal
EXERCISES

118. 1. Cōnsul hortātur ut major exercitus statim mittātur. 
2. Lēgātus militibus quī extrā mūnitionēs erant imperāvit nē in hostēs impetum facerent. 
3. Ōrātor plēbī persuāsit ut iste homō propter prōditionem interficerētur. 
4. Imperātor militēs allocūtus est, et hortātus est nē hostēs timērent. 
5. Inter hūs duōs centurīōnēs erat magnum certāmen, et difficile dictū erat uter esset fortīor. 
6. Cōnsulēs ad plēbem nūntium misērunt colloquium petītum. 
7. Ūna cohors extrā oppidum missa est quae adventum equitum expectāret. 
8. Centurīō nōbīs imperat nē extrā mūnitionēs eāmus.

119. 1. The general commanded the soldiers (dative) to remain (that they remain) in the town. 
2. No one can persuade (is able to persuade) me to go (Section 116) outside the fortifications. 
3. I urge you not to fear (that you do not fear) the common people. 
4. On account of your treason there was a great struggle in the city, and many lost their lives. 
5. The leader addressed the townspeople and persuaded them not to surrender their arms.

LESSON XXIII

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF DESCRIPTION

120. All the relative clauses which we have seen thus far have had their verbs in the indicative, except relative clauses of purpose and relative clauses in indirect discourse.

There is, however, a rather important class of relative clauses which serve to tell what kind of person or thing is meant by the antecedent to which they refer. Such clauses have their verbs in the subjunctive.

Rōma erat cīvitās quae cīvēs suōs défenderet, Rome was a state which defended its citizens.

In this sentence the relative clause makes known, not
what state is meant, but what kind of state, and hence its verb is in the subjunctive.

\[a. \text{ In the sentence } \textit{Urbs quam Rōmulus condidit}\]
\[\textit{Rōma appellāta est}, \textit{the city which Romulus founded was called Rome}, \textit{the relative clause does not tell what kind of city is meant, but merely what city, and hence its verb is in the indicative}.\]

121. VOCABULARY

carcer, carceris, m., prison

casa, -ae, f., cottage
dolus, -i, m., trick, treachery, deceit
effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, escape

nix, nivis, f., snow

perturbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, throw into confusion, throw into disorder

prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -ītum, restrain

recuperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, regain, recover

EXERCISES


123. 1. There were two roads by which we could cross the mountains. 2. The centurion chose a place which was easily defended. 3. There are many who do not love their country. 4. The two men who escaped from prison have not yet been captured. 5. The slave was killed when he attempted to regain his liberty.
LESSON XXIV

CLAUSES OF FEAR

124. With verbs and other expressions of fear a dependent clause with its verb in the subjunctive may be used to tell what one fears will happen. Such clauses are introduced by ne meaning that or by ut meaning that . . . not.

Hostes verebantur ne urbēs suae délērentur, the enemy feared that their cities would be destroyed.

Timēmus ut fortis sis, We are afraid that you are not brave.

a. The English future tense in a clause of fear is translated by the Latin present subjunctive.

I am afraid that he will not arrive today, Timeō ut hodiē perveniat.

b. With English expressions of fear the conjunction (that) is sometimes omitted. We may say I am afraid he will not arrive today. In Latin the conjunction (ne or ut) is always employed.

c. It must be remembered that with other subjunctive clauses ut means that and ne means that . . . not.

125. VOCABULARY

abeō, -ire, -ii (-ivi), -itum, go away
colō, -ere, -uī, cultivate, till
factiō, -ōnis, f., faction, party
īra, -ae, f., anger

militāris, -e, military
ōtium, -ī, n., peace, quiet
senex, senis, m., old man
voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtum, vow, promise solemnly

EXERCISES

126. 1. Senex timēbat nē filius suus vulnerāretur. 2. Verēmur nē bellum inter hās factiōnēs oriātur. 3. Agricola

127. 1. The old man was afraid that his son would go away. 2. The woman is afraid (that) military life will please her son (App. 51). 3. The general vowed a temple to the gods, because he feared that his army would be defeated. 4. Our allies were afraid (that) we would not send aid that year. 5. No one who wishes to work will be sent home.

LESSON XXV

REVIEW OF PARTICIPLES

128. The Latin verb has four participles, the present active, the past passive, the future active, and the future passive. The four participles of portō are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>portāns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>portāturus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>portātūrus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>portātūrus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Deponent verbs have the same number of participles as other verbs: cōnāns, cōnātus, cōnātūrus, cōnandus. The past participle of a deponent verb is usually, but not always, active in meaning. The sense of the sentence in which the past participle stands will make it possible to decide in which voice it is used.
THE COMPARATIVE WITH **too** OR **rather**

129. A comparative form is sometimes translated by the English positive with *too* or *rather*.

Erat mōns altior, *there was a rather high mountain.*

130. **Vocabulary**

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, perceive, observe
dēspondeō, -spondere, -spōn- dī, -spōnsum, betroth, promise in marriage

indignātiō, -ōnis, f., indignation

lūmen, lūminis, n., light
tālis, -e, such

vērē, adv., truly

foedus, foederis, n., treaty

**Exercises**

131. 1. Hostēs ab exercitū nostrō victī foedus facere volunt. 2. Viātorēs montem ascendentes magnum lūmen in valle subitō cōnspexērunt. 3. Dux Helvētiōrum filiam suam illī rēgī dēspōnsūrus est. 4. Filius tuus inter tālēs hominēs nōn ēducandus est (Section 78, a). 5. Tum magna indignātiō Rōmae (Section 1) erat propter injūriās sociōrum. 6. Ingenium ejus juvenis vērē rēgium vidēbātur, itaque rēx creātus est. 7. Nūlla gēns quae foedera violat amīcōs et sociōs habēre potest. 8. Multī verēbantur nē nāvēs hostium Ōceanum trānsīrent. 9. Hostēs bellum in Galliā gerentēs multōs ē suīs āmisērunt.

132. 1. The treaty made with that king is not just. 2. The soldier, standing on the tower, observed the fire. 3. Help should be sent (Section 79, a) at once, because the army is in danger. 4. We are going to cross (App. 125) the ocean next year with a friend. 5. The king is afraid (that) he will lose his power (**imperium**).
THE VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES

EXPRESSIONS OF DESIRE OR WILL

133. In English one sometimes expresses the desire or will that an act should be done by the use of *let* with the verb expressing the act desired. Thus, *Let us defend our homes bravely.* Such expressions have the present subjunctive in Latin, and no separate word for *let* is used. The sentence given above will be translated *Domōs nostrās fortiter dē-fendāmus.*

Centuriō legiōnem ex castrīs ēdūcat, let the centurion lead the legion out of camp.

THE NEGATIVE WITH EXPRESSIONS OF DESIRE

134. The negative word used with the subjunctive in expressions of desire or will is *nē.*

*Nē diūtius maneāmus,* let us not remain longer.

135. VOCABULARY

dēmum, *adv.*, at last, at length, finally

dīvinus, *-a, -um,* divine, of the gods

hūmānus, *-a, -um,* human

impiger, *-gra, -grum,* industrious, energetic

laetor, *-āri, laetātus sum,* rejoice, be delighted

mātūrō, *-āre, -āvī, -ātum,* hasten

portendō, *-tendere, -tendi, -tentum,* indicate, foretell
totiēns, *adv.*, so many times, so often

EXERCISES

136. 1. Puerōs impigrōs in eum locum mittāmus. 2. Nē idem totiēns dīcāmus. 3. Hōs puerōs ita ēducēmus ut civēs

137. 1. Let us cross the river with the other soldiers. 2. Let us work industriously today. 3. Let him not remain longer in the city. 4. The shepherd was delighted (a form of laetor) when he saw the light in his cottage. 5. This boy is industrious and pleases the farmer.

LESSON XXVII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN WISHES

THE OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

138. In older English, wishes were often introduced by would that, or O that, as in the sentence Would that (or O that) I had never seen this place. Such sentences take the subjunctive in Latin, and are commonly introduced by utinam, if the wish refers to present or past time. Thus, the sentence given above would be translated, Utinam hunc locum numquam vīdissem.

a. In modern English we should usually say I wish I had never seen this place. In some of the exercises of this book the old form of expression is used.

TENSE IN WISHES

139. The present subjunctive is used in wishes referring to future time, the imperfect subjunctive in wishes referring to
present time, and the past perfect subjunctive in wishes referring to past time.

(Utinam) imperātor auxilium mittat, O that the general may send help.

Utinam frāter meus mē nunc vidēre posset, O that (I wish that) my brother could see me now.

Utinam heri pervēnissēs, would that (I wish that) you had arrived yesterday.

a. The negative adverb with wishes is sometimes nē and sometimes nōn.

140. **VOCABULARY**

expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -posuit, set forth, explain
facinus, facinoris, n., crime
ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, beg, entreat, ask for
peregrīnus, -ī, m., foreigner
rēgia, -ae, f., palace
specīēs, -ēī, f., appearance
sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tenuī, sustain, withstand
tum, sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tenuī, sustain, withstand
vestibulum, -ī, n., entrance

**EXERCISES**

141. 1. Utinam rēgia ā fortīōribus mīlitibus dēfēnsa esset. 2. Utinam illī peregrīnī in patriā suā essent. 3. (Utinam) dux sapiēns sis. 4. Ille homō propter facinora sua ex urbe expellendus est. 5. Rēx in vestibulō rēgiae ā duōbus pāstōribus interfectus est. 6. Speciēs hōrum hominum honesta est, sed nōn sunt cīvēs boni. 7. Tum nūntius exposuit quid factum esset. 8. Utinam legiō impetum barbarōrum diūtius sustinuisset. 9. Auxilium Caesaris ōrēmus, quod hostēs magnīs cum cōpiīs appropinquant.

142. 1. Would that we had never seen this city. 2. I wish that (would that) I were crossing the sea with my friends. 3. May the fame of our country increase (a form of crēscere). 4. I wish (would that) we had a braver and wiser leader. 5. Although you are (Section 62) a foreigner, you have all the rights of a citizen.
THE ANTICIPATORY SUBJUNCTIVE: DATIVE OF POSSESSION

THE ANTICIPATORY SUBJUNCTIVE

143. The subjunctive may be used in subordinate clauses to denote an act which is anticipated or expected.

Expectábam dum frāter rediret, I was waiting until my brother should return (or for my brother to return).

a. The Anticipatory Subjunctive is most frequently used after conjunctions meaning until or before.

THE DATIVE OF POSSESSION

144. The possessor of something may be denoted by a noun or pronoun in the dative case, with the word denoting the thing possessed in the nominative as the subject of a form of the verb meaning to be.

Puerō duo frātrēs sunt, the boy has two brothers.

145. VOCABULARY

administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, manage, direct
breviter, adv., briefly
clāmor, -ōris, m., shouting, noise
dum, conj., until
firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, strengthen
priusquam, conj., before
superior, -ius, higher; previous, preceding
tumultus, -ūs, m., confusion, disturbance

EXERCISES

146. 1. Legiōnēs pervēnērunt priusquam oppidum cāpere-tur. 2. Caesar expectāre nōn poterat dum reliquae nāvēs pervenirent. 3. Gallī magnō cum (App. 145) clāmōre et tumultū ex castrīs ēgressī sunt, priusquam cōpiæ Rōmānae

147. 1. The boy has a sword (Section 144), which was given him by his father. 2. We made a bridge before we crossed the river. 3. The Gauls waited until the first legion was in sight. 4. The Romans had many brave generals. 5. The boy has two brothers, but no sister.
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES: FUTURE CONDITIONAL SENTENCES, MORE VIVID AND LESS VIVID CONDITIONS AND CONCLUSIONS

148. A complex sentence in which the subordinate clause is introduced by *if* is called a Conditional Sentence. The subordinate clause of a sentence of this kind is called the Condition and the principal clause is called the Conclusion.

FUTURE MORE VIVID CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

149. A conditional sentence which refers to future time and which is translated with *shall* or *will* in the conclusion and with a present tense with future meaning in the condition is called a Future More Vivid conditional sentence. Thus, *I shall start tomorrow if the weather is pleasant.* In this sentence the verb *is* has future meaning.

a. Sometimes a future tense with *shall* is used in the condition. Thus, *If he shall prove efficient, he will be promoted.*

150. In Latin a future more vivid conditional sentence commonly has its verbs in the future indicative.

*Sī impigřē labōrābis, praemium accipiēs,* if you work industriously you will receive a reward.

a. Sometimes the future perfect is used instead of the future to indicate that the act will take place before another act or before some future time.

FUTURE LESS VIVID CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

151. A conditional sentence which refers to future time and which is translated with *should* or *would* in both the condition and the conclusion is called a Future Less Vivid conditional sentence. Thus, *If it should rain, no one would come.*
152. In Latin the verbs of a future less vivid conditional sentence are commonly in the present subjunctive.

Sī hostēs nōs videant, impetum faciant, if the enemy should see us, they would make an attack.

a. Occasionally the perfect subjunctive is used instead of the present to indicate that an act would take place before another act or before a particular time.

153. **VOCABULARY**

cēnsus, -ūs, m., census, enumeration
commūniter, adv., commonly
cōnsēnsus, -ūs, m., agreement
excūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, excuse
instituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, establish, institute, arrange
nōbilis, -e, famous, well known
officium, -i, n., duty
prīnceps, principis, m., chief, prominent man

154. 1. Si in terram nostram veniēs, nōbilēs urbēs vidēbis.
2. Si in terram nostram veniās, nōbilēs urbēs videās.
3. Si cēnsus īnstituātur, numerus Rōmānōrum magnus esse reperiātur.
4. Si cōnsul officium suum faciet, urbs ex periculō servābitur.
5. Ex cōnsēnsū ārum gentium pāx est facta, et spērāmus eam pācem firmam futūram esse.
6. Tum decem hominēs rēs Rōmānās alīquot annōs commūnītēr administrāvērunt.
7. Prīncēps Britanniae ad Caesarem vēnērunt, ut sē excūsārent.
8. Si patriam dēfendētis, omnēs vōs laudābunt.
9. Si illōs montēs ascēndās, magnum lacum videās.

155. 1. If the centurion leaves (future) a legion in the town, the enemy will not make an attack.
2. If the Romans should leave two cohorts in the camp, the barbarians would not make an attack.
3. If I should find the book, I would not give it to you.
4. If my father sends the money, I shall set out at once.
LESSON XXX

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES CONTRARY TO FACT

MEANING OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES CONTRARY TO FACT

156. The form of the verbs in a conditional sentence sometimes shows that the condition is not true, and that the actual situation is not that which is referred to in the conclusion. Such a conditional sentence is said to be contrary to fact.

*If the man had been honest, he would have paid his debts* (implying that the man was not honest and that he did not pay his debts).

MOOD AND TENSE IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES CONTRARY TO FACT

157. In Latin, conditional sentences contrary to fact have their verbs in the imperfect subjunctive to denote present time, and in the past perfect subjunctive to denote past time.

*Si periculum vidérēs, hīc nōn manērēs, if you saw the danger, you would not remain here.*

*Si periculum vidissēs, hīc nōn mānsissēs, if you had seen the danger, you would not have remained here.*

158. VOCABULARY

cōnfessiō, -ōnis, f., confession crīmen, crīminis, n., charge falsus, -a, -um, false irrumpō, -rupserē, -rupē, -rup-tum, break in, rush into occāsus, -ūs, m., falling down, setting; sōlis occāsus, sunset paulātim, adv., gradually postrēmō, adv., at last praecō, praecōnīs, m., herald EXERCISES

159. 1. *Si hoc crīmen falsum esset, amīcī tuī tē défenderent.*
    2. *Si cōnfessiōnem ejus audīvissēs, eum nōn laudāvissēs.*
    3. *Si ante occāsum sōlis pervēnissēs, porta nōn clausa esset.*
    4. *Si praecō in locō altiōre stāret, facilius eum audīrēmus.*
5. Si pater ejus puerē vīveret, puer nōn in tālī locō labōrāret.
7. Prīncīpēs hostium paulātīm ex castrīs excessērunt, ut bellum renovārent. 8. Si patriam tuam amārēs, eam nunc dēfenderēs.
9. Si ante occāsum sōlis perveniās, porta nōn claudātur.

160. 1. If you were standing on that hill, you would see the town. 2. If the enemy had crossed the river, they would have captured the town. 3. If the soldiers had a better leader, they would fight more bravely. 4. If I had seen the signal, I should have returned. 5. If I should see the signal, I should return.

LESSON XXXI

NON-COMMITTAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES: ABLATIVE OF ROUTE

NON-COMMITTAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

161. A conditional sentence which does not imply that the condition is either true or false regularly has both verbs in the indicative.

Si puerī in silvā errant, in perīculō sunt, if the boys are wandering in the forest, they are in danger.
Si pecūniam misistī, benignus erās, if you sent the money, you were kind.

a. Sometimes an imperative or a volitive subjunctive is used in the conclusion instead of an indicative.

Si pācem cupitis, arma trādite, if you desire peace, surrender your arms.

Note.—The future more vivid conditional sentence is merely a non-committal conditional sentence referring to future time.
THE ABLATIVE OF ROUTE

162. The route by which one goes is sometimes denoted by a noun or pronoun in the ablative case without a preposition.

Eādem viā ībimus qua ġōstēs profectī sunt, we shall go by the same road by which the enemy set out.

163. VOCABULARY

audācia, -ae, f., boldness  occidō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, kill
catēna, -ae, f., chain  refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum, break down
cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -tum, cons- spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, de-
sult  spoil, plunder
ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call vīvus, -a, -um, alive
out, call forth, summon

EXERCISES

164. 1. Si barbarī cum omnibus cōpiīs appropinquant, periculum nostrum est magnum. 2. Si hostēs flūmen trāns-
iērunt, nostrī pontem nōn dēfendērunt. 3. Si rēx senātum
cōnsulit, periculum timet. 4. Ille centuriō est vir magnā
audāciā (App. 77), qui numquam vīvus capiētur. 5. Captīvus ex catēnīs et carcerē effugere cōnātus est, sed in fugā
occīsus est. 6. Portae oppidī refrāctae sunt, et templae ab
militibus spoliāta sunt. 7. Tum prīncipēs ā Caesare ex opp-
idō ēvocātī sunt. 8. Hōc itinere profectī sumus, quod nūl-
lum aliud itera habēbāmus. 9. Eōdem itinere redībō, sī
poterō.

165. 1. If the barbarians are laying waste the fields, the
cities are in danger. 2. If the townspeople have weapons,
they are able to defend themselves. 3. We shall return by
a shorter route. 4. The two armies did not cross the moun-
tains by the same route. 5. If the enemy are collecting an
army, they wish to wage war.
LESSON XXXII

THE FUTURE IMPERATIVE: VOCATIVE IN ɪ

TENSE IN THE IMPERATIVE

166. English verbs have only the present tense of the imperative. Latin verbs have a future as well as a present imperative. The future imperative is not often used.

FORMS OF THE FUTURE IMPERATIVE

167. The future imperative is found in the second and third persons. Its forms in the four conjugations are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ACTIVE</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Plural</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>portatō</td>
<td>monētō</td>
<td>mittitō</td>
<td>capitō</td>
<td>auditō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>portatō</td>
<td>monētō</td>
<td>mittitō</td>
<td>capitō</td>
<td>auditō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>PASSIVE</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Plural</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>portatōte</td>
<td>monētōte</td>
<td>mittitōte</td>
<td>capitōte</td>
<td>auditōte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>portantō</td>
<td>momentō</td>
<td>mittuntō</td>
<td>capiuntō</td>
<td>audituntō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>(Lacking)</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>portantōtor</td>
<td>monentōtor</td>
<td>mittuntōtor</td>
<td>capiuntōtor</td>
<td>audituntōtor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. The future imperative is used when there is a clear reference to future time indicated by an adverb or other expression of time. It is translated you shall carry, he shall carry, or let him carry, etc.

b. The verbs memini and sciō regularly (and habeō occasionally) use the future imperative instead of the present.
168. Proper nouns ending in -ius and also the common noun filius form the vocative by replacing -ius of the nominative by -i. Thus Cornēlius, vocative Cornēlii.

169. VOCABULARY

carpentum, -i, n., carriage
Cornēlius, -i, m., Cornelius, name of a man or boy
gradus, -ús, m., step
injustus, -a, -um, unjust

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, enter,
go into
meminī, infin. meminisse, remember
sedeō, -ère, sēdī, sessum, sit
venia, -ae, f., pardon

a. The verb meminī is used only in the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses. The perfect is translated as a present, the past perfect is translated as an imperfect, and the future perfect is translated as a future. The infinitive meminisse is translated as a present infinitive.

EXERCISES


171. 1. Remember that you have never seen this place before. 2. Be assured (know) that your country is defended by a brave army. 3. Why do you not stay at home, my son? 4. Cornelius, where is the book that I gave you? 5. All knew that you were unjust.
LESSON XXXIII

THE CONJUGATION OF *MĀLŌ*: ADJECTIVES DENOTING A PART

THE CONJUGATION OF *MĀLŌ*

172. The verb *mālō*, *prefer*, is a compound of *magis* and *volō*. Its principal parts are *mālō*, *mālle*, *mālui*. It is conjugated as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th></th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Singular</em></td>
<td><em>Plural</em></td>
<td><em>Singular</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>mālō</em></td>
<td><em>mālumus</em></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>mālim</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>māvīs</em></td>
<td><em>māvultis</em></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>mālīs</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>māvult</em></td>
<td><em>mālunt</em></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>mālit</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>IMPERFECT</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>mālēbam</em></td>
<td><em>mālēbāmus</em></td>
<td><em>māllem</em></td>
<td><em>māllēmus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>mālēbās</em></td>
<td><em>mālēbātis</em></td>
<td><em>māllēs</em></td>
<td><em>māllētis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>mālēbat</em></td>
<td><em>mālēbant</em></td>
<td><em>māllet</em></td>
<td><em>māllent</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>mālam</em></td>
<td><em>mālēmus</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>mālēs</em></td>
<td><em>mālētis</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>mālet</em></td>
<td><em>mālent</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PERFECT</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>mālui</em>, <em>etc.</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>māluerim</em>, <em>etc.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>mālueram</em>, <em>etc.</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>māluissem</em>, <em>etc.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>FUTURE PERFECT</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>māluerō</em>, <em>etc.</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>INFINITIVES</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Pres.</em> <em>mālle</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><em>Perfect</em> <em>māluisse</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*a*. This verb has no imperatives or participles.
ADJECTIVES DENOTING A PART

173. There are a few adjectives which tell what part of a thing is meant, instead of telling what kind. Among the most important are summus, medius, extrémus, and imus. Thus, summus mōns, the highest part of the mountain, the mountain top.

174. VOCABULARY

color, colōris, m., color
imus, -a, -um, lowest part of, base of
mālo, mālle, mālui, prefer, choose
medius, -a, -um, middle, middle of
plānitiēs, -ēi, f., plain
summus, -a, -um, top of, highest part of
vestitus, -ūs, m., clothing

EXERCISES


176. 1. You know that I prefer to remain in the city in winter. 2. The top of the mountain can be seen (cōnspiciō) from this place. 3. You say that you prefer to be without companions. 4. The legion which had been enrolled in the province was drawn up half way up the hill (on the middle of the hill). 5. Although I preferred to remain at home, I set out to war with the other (reliquī) young men.
LESSON XXXIV

CLASSES OF PERFECT STEMS: NEGATIVE COMMANDS

CLASSES OF PERFECT STEMS

177. There are six different classes of perfect stems in regular verbs. They are as follows:

1. Perfects in -vi
   - amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum
   - compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētum
   - petō, petere, petīvī, petītum

2. Perfects in -uī
   - moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum

3. Perfects in -si (cs and gs give x).
   - maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsum
   - dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum

4. Reduplicated perfects
   - dō, dare, dedī, datum
   - pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum

5. Long vowel perfects
   - veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum
   - juvō, juvāre, jūvī, jūtum

6. Perfects with the stem unchanged, +ī.
   - défendō, défendere, défendi, défēnsum

   a. Most verbs of the first conjugation form the perfect with -vi, but a few belong to other classes.

NEGATIVE COMMANDS

178. Negative commands (prohibitions) in the second person are frequently expressed by the imperative of nōlō (nōli, nōlīte) with the infinitive of the verb denoting the act forbidden.

Nōli hīc manēre, do not remain here.
179.

**VOCABULARY**

argentum, -ī, n., silver

inopināns, *gen.* inopinantis, not expecting, unawares, off

one’s guard

obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -ses-

sum, besiege

offendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēn-

sum, offend

patior, pati, passus sum, permit, allow

speculātor, -ōris, m., scout

tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctum, touch

vetō, -āre, vetuī, vetitum, forbid

*a.* The verb *vetō*, like *jubeō*, takes the infinitive and accusative.

**EXERCISES**

180. 1. Frātrem tuum, Cornēli, offendistī, qui semper tē amāvit. 2. Caesar impetum in hostēs inopinantēs fēcit et

181. 1. Do not wait until the lands (fields) of our allies are laid waste by the army of the enemy. 2. Do not praise the nation that made war on your own country. 3. I warned you, but you remained in the dangerous place. 4. We routed (pellere) the enemy and we killed many. 5. I have helped you, but I will not help you again.

Lesson XXXV

Genitive with Certain Verbs: Subjunctive by Attraction

The Genitive with Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting

182. The verbs meminī and reminīscor, remember, and oblivīscor, forget, frequently take a noun or pronoun in the genitive as object.

Numquam illius diēī oblivīscar, I shall never forget that day.

a. If the object is a neuter pronoun or a neuter adjective used as a noun, it is always in the accusative.

Numquam haec oblivīscar, I shall never forget these things.
183. Sometimes a subordinate clause which would otherwise have its verb in the indicative takes the subjunctive because it is closely dependent on a subjunctive or an infinitive.

Ita ácriter pugnávérunt ut omnēs qui in pugnā essent vulnerárentur, they fought so fiercely that all who were in the battle were wounded.

184. VOCABULARY

dissēnsiō, -onis, f., disagreement
interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, cut off
liberātor, -ōris, m., liberator
oblīvīscor, oblīvīscī, oblītus
suscipīō, -cipere, -cēpī, -cep-
tum, undertake

palūs, -ūdis, f., swamp
remīniscor, remīnīscī, remember
studium, -ī, n., zeal, enthusiasm

EXERCISES

185. 1. Omnēs civēs nostrī virtūtis eōrum fortium hominum semper reminiscēntur.
2. Tum dissēnsiōnēs ortae sunt inter eōs qui liberātōrēs patriae appellātī sunt.
3. Rōmānī mōrum majōrum (of their ancestors) nōn oblītī sunt.
4. Hostēs id bellum magnō studiō suscepērunt, sed nunc pācem volunt.
5. Omnibus itineribus interclūsīs, pars barbarōrum sē Rōmānīs dēdidit, et reliquī in palūdēs et silvās fūgērunt.
6. Signum datum est ut eī qui profecti essent statim rediērent.
7. Caesar scūtum cēpit et in prīmam acīm prōcessit.
9. Gallī itinera interclūsērunt et castra obsidēre parāvērunt.

186. 1. The Romans remembered the victory of the Helvetians, with whom they had formerly waged war.
2. We cannot forget the wrongs of our allies, the Gauls.
Germans fled so swiftly that the legion which had crossed the river did not make an attack. 4. They came to the camp because they wished to beg for peace. 5. We shall find out who is in the town (Section 73).
THE ARGONAUTS

Jason, the leader of the expedition of the Argonauts, was the son of Aeson, king of Thessaly. Aeson had been deprived of this kingdom by his brother, Pelias, who also intended to kill Jason. Through the help of his friends Jason escaped, but the king was led to believe that he was dead.

Pelias was warned by an oracle to be on his guard against a man who should come to him wearing only one shoe, and when Jason, who had grown up, came into the city, having lost one of his shoes on the way, the king took fright. Thinking to be rid of this dangerous person, he ordered him to bring from Colchis the golden fleece which had been taken there by Phrixus. With a company of friends Jason set out in a ship called the Argo, which had been built by Argus, whence the name Argonauts was given the adventurers. After many adventures Jason obtained the golden fleece through the aid of Medea, daughter of the king of Colchis, who then fled from Colchis with the hero. When they had returned to Thessaly, Medea, who was famed for her power as a sorceress, brought about the death of Pelias by a trick, and as a result she and Jason were compelled to flee. They took refuge in Corinth, where Medea found a rival for the love of Jason in the person of the king’s daughter. She caused the death of the unfortunate princess, and then sought revenge on Jason for his faithlessness by killing the children she had borne to him. After this she escaped by the aid of the sun-god. Jason met his death by being crushed by his boat, near which he was sitting, as it was propped up on the shore.
PART III

THE ARGONAUTS

1. The Wicked Uncle


4, 5. in animō habēbat interficere, had it in mind to kill; interficere is the object of habēbat.

6. ex amīcis: see note on Her. 380.
8. cum: in this section three uses of the subjunctive are introduced: with cum meaning when, here and in l. 10; with cum meaning although in l. 12; in an indirect question, quae causa esset, in l. 11.
13. nescīō quam fābulam, some story or other; literally, I know not what story. This combination of nescīō and the interrogative pronoun constitutes virtually an indefinite pronoun.

6. sententia, -ae, f. [sentiō], opinion, thought, purpose.
8. posterus, -a, -um, adj. [post], following, next.
13. ne-sciō, -ire, -ivi, —, tr., not know, be ignorant.
14. fingō, fingere, finxi, fictum, tr., form, fashion, make up.
2. A Careless Shoe-String

Post breve tempus Peliās, veritus nē rēgnum suum tantā vī et fraude occupātum āmitteret, amīcum quendam Delphōs mīsit quī ōrāculum cōnsuleret. Ille igitur quam celerrimē Delphōs sē contulit, et quam ob causam vēnisset dēmōn-strāvit. Respondit ōrāculum nūllum esse in praesentīā perī-
culum; monuit tamen Peliam ut, sī quis venīret calceum ūnum gerēns, eum cavēret. Post paucōs annōs accidit ut. Peliās magnum sacrificium factūrus esset; nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimiserat, et certum diem conveniendi dixerat. Diē

15. veritus, fearing; past participle of a deponent verb with present force, like mīrātus, suspicātus, arbitrātus.
   nē . . . āmitteret, that he would lose; a noun clause after a verb of fear-
ing, App. 99.

16. Delphōs: accusative of a town name as the place to which.

17. qui . . . cōnsuleret: a relative clause of purpose, to be translated by an infinitive. What subordinate conjunctions also introduce clauses of purpose?

18. quam ob causam, for what reason; the subjunctive vēnisset can be explained by comparison with a similar clause in l. 11. For the position of the preposition see the note on Her. 73.

20. ut . . . cavēret: a noun clause, object of monuit.
   sī quis, if anyone; quis here is itself an indefinite pronoun, to be dist-
   tinguished from interrogative quis; it is found most frequently with sī and nē. Since this clause depends upon a subjunctive, cavēret, the verb venīret is itself made subjunctive by attraction.

21. gerēns, wearing.
   ut . . . factūrus esset: a noun clause of fact, subject of accidit, it happened that, etc. The future active participle, here factūrus, with a past tense of sum, expresses a past intention, was about to make.

23. conveniendi, for the people to assemble; literally, of assembling.
   dixerat, had appointed.

15. nē, conj., that . . . not, in order that . . . not; after words of fear, that; as adv., not; nē . . . quidem, not even, not either.

16. fraus, fraudis, f., deceit, deception, fraud.

19. re-spondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, intr., reply, respond, answer.

praesentia, -ae, f. [praesēns], pres-
ence; the present; in praesentīā, at the moment, for the present.

20. quis, qua, quid, indef. pron.,
anyone, anybody, anything; some-
one, somebody, something.

calceus, -ī, m., shoe.

21. caveō, cavēre, cāvi, cautum, tr.
and intr., beware of, beware.
constitūtō magnus numerus hominum undique ex agrīs convénit; inter aliōs vēnit Jāsōn, qui ā puerō apud Centaurum quendam vixerat. Dum tamen iter facit, calceum alterum in trānseundō nesciō quō flūmine āmisit.

26. alterum, one.
27. trānseundō, in crossing; ablative of the gerundive of trānsīre, App. 127.

3. The Golden Fleece

Jāsōn igitur, cum calceum āmissum nūlō modō recipere posset, alterō pede nūdō in rēgium pervēnit. Quem cum vidisset, Pelias subītō timōre affectus est; intellēxit enim hunc esse hominem quem ōrāculum dēmōnstrāvisset. Hoc igitur iniit cōnsilium. Rēx erat quīdam nōmine Aeētēs, qui rēgnum Colchidis illō tempore obtīnēbat. Huic commissum erat vellus illud aureum quod Phrixus ōlim ibi reliquerat. Ĉōnstituit igitur Pelias Jāsonī negotiōm dare ut hoc vellere potīrētur; cum enim rēs esset magnī periculi, spērābat eum in itinere perīturum esse. Jāsonem igitur ad sē accessīvit,

28. cum: here and in l. 36 with causal force, hence the subjunctive.
29. alterō pede nūdō, with one foot bare, an ablative absolute.
Quem cum: translate as if cum eum.
31. dēmōnstrāvisset: subjunctive in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse.
34. Phrixus: the story was that Phrixus, accompanied by his sister Helle, was forced to flee for his life from the intrigues of his stepmother Ino. The two were carried through the air on the back of a ram with a golden fleece sent by the god Hermes. Helle fell into the sea which was thereafter called the Hellespont. Phrixus arrived safely in Colchis, where he sacrificed the ram to Zeus and gave the fleece to king Aeetes. The king fastened the fleece to an oak tree in the grove of Ares.
35. ut . . . potīrētur: a noun clause of desire may depend upon a verb, as in l. 20, or be in apposition with a noun, here negotiōm; translate, the task of obtaining.
vellere: with potīrētur, which, like ātor, is one of the deponent verbs governing the ablative.

29. nūdus, -a, -um, adj., naked, 34. vellus, velleris, n., fleece, pelt. bare.
et quid fieri vellet dēmōnstrāvit. Jāsōn autem, etsī bene intellegēbat rem esse difficillīmam, negōtium libenter suscēpit.

38. quid fieri vellet: an indirect question.

4. The Building of the Good Ship Argo

Cum tamen Colchis multōrum dīērum iter ab eō locō abesset, nōluit Jāsōn sōlus proficīscī. Dīmisit igitur nūntiōs in omnēs partēs quī causam itineris docērent et diem certum conveniendi dicerent. Interea postquam omnia quae sunt ūsū ad armandās nāvēs comportārī jussit, negōtium dedit Argō cūdam, quī summam scientiam rērum nauticārum habēbat, ut nāvem aedificāret. In hīs rēbus circiter decem diēs cōnsūmptī sunt. Argus enim, quī operī praeerat, tantam diligentiam praebēbat ut nē nocturnum quidem tempus ad labōrem intermitteret. Ad multītūdinem homīnum transportandām nāvis paulō erat lātior quam quae fieri solitae

40. Cum: as cum with the subjunctive may mean either when, since, or although, one must decide from the context which meaning is the right one.

iter: an accusative of extent, further defined by the genitive of measure, multōrum dīērum.

44. ūsū, of service; dative of purpose, App. 53.

armandās: gerundive with ad expressing purpose. Two more examples occur in this section.

negōtium ... ut: the same combination was noted in l. 35.

47. operī: why dative?

48. ut ... intermitteret: a clause of result, App. 96.

nē ... quidem: this phrase encloses the word emphasized, here nocturnum.

50. quam quae: for quam eae quae.

44. com-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., carry together, bring together, collect.

46. circiter, adv. [circus], about, nearly.

49. inter-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, tr., suspend, interrupt; let pass; pass., intervene.
51. per-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, 
   tr., bear through; bear, endure, 
   rōbur, rōboris, n., oak.

---

5. The Anchor Is Weighed

Interea ea diēs appetēbat quam Jāsōn per nǔntios ēdīxerat, et ex omnibus regionibus Graeciae multi quōs aut rei novitās aut spēs gloriae movēbat undique conveniēbant. Tradunt autem in hoc numerō fuisse Herculem (de quō ante multa perscrīpsimus), Orpheum, citharoedum praeclārissimum, Thē-seum, Castorem et multōs aliōs quōrum nōmina nōtissima sunt. Ex hīs Jāsōn, quōs arbitrātus est ad omnia subeunda perīcula parātissimōs esse, eōs ad numerum quīnquāgintā délēgit et sociōs sibi adjūnxit. Tum, paucōs diēs commorā-tus, ut ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparāret, nāvem dēdūxit.

53. diēs: here feminine. It is always masculine in the plural and frequently so in the singular.
55. Tradunt, they say, it is commonly reported.
57. Orpheum: a mythical musician and poet, son of the Muse Calliope, reputed to have been so skilled as to move rocks and trees by the power of his song, to charm wild beasts, and to stay rivers in their course.
58. Castorem: Castor was the son of Zeus and Leda and the brother of Pollux. The latter was famed as a boxer, Castor as a tamer of horses.
59. quōs: subject of esse; eōs is its antecedent. A relative clause in Latin often precedes the antecedent. English order requires that the antecedent be translated first.
62. ut ... comparāret: a clause of purpose, App. 94.

54. novitās, -ātis, f. [novus], new-
   ness, novelty.
57. citharoedus, -ī, m., citharoedus, 
   one who plays on the cithara and 
   sings at the same time.
60. quīnquāgintā, indecl. n.ūm. 
   [quīnque], fifty.
61. com-morō, -āri, -ātus sum, 
   intr., tarry, linger.
et, tempestātem ad nāvigandum idōneam nactus, magnō cum plausū omnium solvit.

63. tempestātem: not "tempest" or "storm."
   nāvigandum: gerund or gerundive?

64. plausus, -ūs, m. [plaudō, to clap], clapping, applause.

6. A Fatal Mistake

Haud multō post Argonautae (ita enim appellātī sunt quī in istā nāvī vehēbantur) īnsulam quandam nōmine Cyzicum attigērunt et, ē nāvī ēgressī, ā rēge illūs regiōnis hospitiō exceptī sunt. Paucās ĕrōs ibi commorātī, ad sōlis occāsum rūrsus solvērunt. At, postquam pauca milia passuum prōgressī sunt, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est ut cursum tenēre nōn possent, et in eandem partem īnsulae unde nūper profectī erant magnō cum perīculō dējicerentur. Incolae tamen, cum nox esset obscura, Argonautās nōn agnōscēbant, et, nāvem inimīcam vēnisse arbitrātī, arma rapuērunt et eōs ēgredī prohibēbant. Ācriter in lītore pugnātum est, et rēx

65. Argonautae: the word means the sailors of the Argo; we have Anglicized it as Argonauts.

66. nāvī: the ablative singular of nāvis is occasionally written nāve, but usually nāvī.

70. ut . . . nōn possent: a negative clause of result; what is the introductory word in a negative clause of purpose? In the second part of this sentence the result becomes positive, et . . . dējicerentur, but were driven along.

73. cum: is the meaning when, since, or although?

75. pugnātum est: certain intransitive verbs may be used impersonally in the passive, the subject of such a passive being suggested by the meaning of the verb itself; here, with ācriter, a fierce battle was fought. Compare Her. 280.

65. haud, adv., not at all, by no means, not.

multō, adv. [abl. of multum], by much, much, by far, far.

66. vehō, -ere, vexī, vectum, tr., bear, carry, bring.

71. nūper, adv., newly, lately, recently.

73. obscūrus, -a, -um, adj., dark, dim.
A JUNIOR LATIN READER

ipse, qui cum aliis dēcucurrerat, ab Argonautīs occīsus est. Mox tamen, cum jam dīlūcēseret, sēnsērunt incolae sē errāre, et arma abjēcērunt. Argonautae autem, cum vidērent rēgem occīsum esse, magnum dolōrem percēpērunt.

76. dē-currō, -currere, -cucurri, or -currī, -cursum, intr., run down; maneuver.
77. dī-lūcēscō, -lūcescere, -lūxi, —

intr. [lūx], grow light, dawn.
tr. [ab+jaciō], throw away, throw aside.

7. The Loss of Hylas

Postrēdīē ejus dīēī Jāsōn, tempestātem satis idōnēam esse sō arbitrātus (summa enim tranquilliūtās jam cōnsecūtā erat), ancorās sustulit et, pauca mīlia passuum prōgressus, ante noctem Mýsiam attigīt. Ibi paucās hōrās in ancorīs expec-tāvit; a nautīs enim cognōverat aquae cōpiām quam sēcum habērent jam dēficere; quam ob causam quīdam ex Argonautīs in terram ēgressī aquam quaerēbant. Hōrum in numerō erat Hylās quīdam, puer fōrmā praestantissīmā; quī dum fontem quaerīt, ā comitibus paulum sēcesserat. Nymphae autem quae fontem colēbant, cum juvenem vidīssent, ēi persuādēre cōnātae sunt ut sēcum manērēt; et cum ille negāret sē hoc factūrum esse, puerum vī abstulērunt.

80. ejus dīēī: these words are, strictly speaking, unnecessary, since postrēdīē alone means the next day. The use of the full phrase is, however, quite common.
83. in ancorīs, at anchor.
84. cōpiām ... dēficere: indirect discourse; why is habērent subjunctive?
87. quī: the relative at the head of an independent sentence, to be translated by a personal pronoun.
90. ut ... manērēt: a noun clause, object of persuādēre, App. 97; to be translated by an infinitive.
91. negāret: negō is the normal Latin for say that not.

80. postrēdīē, adv. [posterō dīē], the next day.
88. fōns, fontis, m., spring, fountain.
Comitēs ejus, postquam Hylam āmissum esse sēnscērunt, magnō dolōre affectī, diū frustrā quaeērēbant. Herculēs autem et Polyphēmus, qui vestīgia puēri longius secūtī erant, ubi tandem ad lītus rediērunt, Jāsonem solvisse cognōvērunt.

8. Dining Made Difficult


98. quis . . . obtinēret: the original form of the question would be quis . . . obtinet? Why the subjunctive?

99. certīōrēs factī sunt, were informed; the phrase is followed by indirect discourse. What is the literal translation?

106. accubuerat: the Roman custom of assuming a half reclining position at table is here attributed to a much earlier period.

107. Quae cum ita essent: a clause frequently employed by Latin authors; literally, since these things were so; better, in consequence, or in view of these facts.

108. famē: the ablative of this word has the ending of a fifth declension noun, although its other forms belong to the third declension.

100. caecus, -a, -um, adj., blind.
104. volucris, -is, f. [volucer, flying], bird.
106. molestia, -ae, f. [molestus], vexatioī, annoyance.
accumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, -cu-
107. appōnō, -pōnerē, -posui, -pos-
situm, tr. [ad+pōnō], place near; serve, set before.
108. famēs, -is, f., hunger.
9. The Harpies Beaten

Rēs igitur in hōc locō erant, cum Argonautae nāvem appulērunt. Phīneus autem, simul atque audīvit eōs in suōs fīnēs ēgressōs esse, magnopere gāvisus est. Scīēbat enim quantam opiniōnem virtūtis Argonautae habērent, nec dubitābat quīn sibi auxilium ferrent. Nūntium igitur ad nāvem mīsit quī Jāsonem sociōsque ad rēgiam vocāret. Eō cum vēnissent, Phīneus dēmōnstrāvit quantō in periculō suae rēs essent, et prōmīsit sē magna praemia datūrum esse, si illī remedium repperissent. Argonautae negotīōnem libenter suscepērunt, et, ubi hōra vēnit, cum rēge accubuērunt; at simul ac cēna apposita est, Harpyīae cēnāculum intraverunt, et cibum auferre conabantur. Argonautae prīnum ēnsibus volucrēs petierunt; cum tamen viderent hoc nihil prōdesse, Zētus et Calais, quī ēlis instrūctī erant, in āēra sē sublevāvērunt, ut dēsuper impetum facerent. Quod cum sēnsissent

109. cum . . . appulērunt: when cum introduces a new event in the narrative instead of describing a situation, it takes the perfect indicative.

112. quantum: this word may be either a relative or an interrogative; the subjunctive habērent shows the clause to be an indirect question.

opiniōnem: the word sometimes means opinion, but not here.

113. quīn . . . ferrent, that they were coming to his rescue; the use of quīn with the subjunctive is explained in App. 106.

117. repperissent: representing a future perfect indicative, second person, in direct discourse; translate with the auxiliary "would."

121. nihil: accusative of extent; with prōdesse, availed nothing, had no effect.

122. āēra: for the case see note on Per. 33.

123. Quod cum: do not translate which when.

112. dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. [dubius], doubt, hesitate.

113. quīn, conj. and adv. [qui, how, + -ne]; as conj., after words of doubt, that; after words of hindering, from; as adv., quīn etiam, nay, nay even, nay in fact.

116. prōmittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missum, tr., send forth, promise.

117. remedium, -i, n. [re-, compare medeōr, heal], remedy, cure.

119. cēnāculum, -i, n. [cēna], dining-room.

120. ēnsis, -is, m., sword.

122. āla, -ae, f., wing.
Harpyiae, reī novitātē perterritae, statim aufūgerunt, neque postea umquam rediverunt.

124. aufugiō, -fugere, -fūgi, —, intr. [ab + fugiō], flee away, run away.

10. The Symplegades

Hoc factō, Phineus, ut prō tantō beneficiō meritam grātiam referret, Jāsonī démonstrāvit quā ratiōne Symplēgadēs vitāre posset. Symplēgadēs autem duae erant rūpēs ingenti magnitudine, quae ā Jove positaē erant eō cōnsiliō, nē quis ad Colchida pervenerit. Hae parvō intervāllō in mari natābant et, sī quid in medium spatium vēnerat, incredibilī celeritāte concurrebant. Postquam igitur ā Phineō doctus est quid faciendum esset Jāson, sublātīs ancorīs, nāvem solvit et, lēnī ventō prōvectus, mox ad Symplēgadēs appropinquāvit; tum in prōrā stāns columbam quam in manū tenēbat emīsit. Illa

126. Hoc factō: ablative absolute, to be translated by a clause with "when," App. 75.

129. eō cōnsiliō, with this design (purpose); explained by the clause which follows.

nē quis, that no one; the force and use of quis were explained in the note on sī quis, l. 20.

132. quid faciendum esset, what had to be done. For the use of the future passive participle see App. 126.

133. sublātīs ancorīs: ablative absolute; we say weigh anchor. When the perfect passive participle in an ablative absolute phrase, as here, denotes an act by the subject of the principal verb, it is usually best rendered in the active voice. Here are typical translations:

by a past active participle: having weighed anchor
by a coordinate verb: weighed anchor and
by a prepositional phrase: after weighing anchor
by a temporal clause: when he had weighed anchor.

127. ratiō, -ōnis, f., reckoning, account; list, record; plan, course, manner; principle, reason.

130. natō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. [freq. of nō, swim], swim, float.

133. lēnis, -e, adj., mild, gentle.

135. prōra, -ae, f., bow, prow.

columba, -ae, f., dove, pigeon.

ē-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mīssum, tr., send forth, release; utter.
rectā viā per medium spatiōm volāvit et, priusquam rūpēs confīxērunt, incolūmis ēvāsit, caudā tantūm āmissā. Tum rūpēs utrimque discessērunt; antequam tamen rūrsus concurrerent, Argonautae, bene intellegantēs omnem spem salūtīs in celeritātē posītām esse, summā vi rēmīs contendērunt, et nāvem incolūmem perdūxērunt. Hoc factō, dīs grātiās libenter ēgūrunt, quōrum auxiliō ē tantō perīculō ēreptī essent; bene enim sciēbant nōn sinc auxiliō deōrum rem ita fēliciter ēvēnisse.

136. rectā viā, straignt; how literally? The ablative is employed to denote the road or route.

138. antequam . . . concurrerent: heretofore antequam and priusquam have taken an indicative, signifying merely that one event occurred before another. In this passage is an example of the anticipatory use of the subjunctive with antequam, App. 100. The person anticipating may view the event in various ways. The Argonauts evidently wished to forestall the closing in of the movable cliffs, which we can indicate by translating should rush together.

142. ēreptī essent: the subjunctive is due to the informal indirect discourse, App. 106; that is, while no verb of saying is employed, one is implied in grātiās ēgūrunt: they thanked the gods, by whose help (as they said), etc. At the same time the clause expresses the reason assigned for their prayer of thanks.

136. rectus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of regō], straight, direct; upright. 138. utrimque, adv. [uterque], on both sides. 137. cōn-fīgō, -fīgere, -fīxi, -fīctum, intr., dash or strike together. 143. fēliciter, adv. [fēlix], happily, luckily.

11. A Heavy Task

Brevī intermissō spatiō, Argonautae ad flūmen Phāsim vēnērunt, quod in finibus Colchōrum erat. Ibi, cum nāvem appulissent et in terram ēgressī essent, statim ad rēgem Aeētem sē contulērunt, et ab eo postulāvērunt ut vellūs aureum sībi trāderētur. Ille, cum audīvisset quam ob causam Argonautae vēnissent, irā commōtus est, et diū negāvit

145. Brevī intermissō spatiō, after a short time; ablative absolute. 148. ut . . . trāderētur: a noun clause, object of postulāvērunt.
sē vellus tradītūrum esse. Tandem tamen, quod sciēbat Jāsonem nōn sine auxiliō deōrum hoc negotītium suscēpisse, mūtātā sententiā, prōmisit sē vellus tradītūrum, si Jāsōn labōrēs duōs difficillimōs prius perfēcisset; et, cum Jāsōn dīxisset sē ad omnia perīcula subeunda parātum esse, quid fieri vellet ostendit. Prīnum jungendī erant duo taurī speciē horribili, quī flammās ex ōre ēdēbant; tum, īs jūncēs, ager quīdam arandus erat, et dentēs dracōnis serendī. His audītīs, Jāsōn, etsī rem esse summī perīculi intellegēbat, tamen, nē hanc occasīōnem reī bene gerendae āmitteret, negotītium suscēpit.

154. perfēcisset: for a future perfect indicative of direct discourse, as in l. 117.
156. jungendī erant: had to be, must be, were to be (yoked) illustrate possible renderings of the future passive participle with sum.
159. nē ... āmitteret: in order not to lose, a negative clause of purpose.
160. reī bene gerendae, of successfully accomplishing his purpose; a gerundive construction, App. 128.

154. prius, adv. [n. of prior], before, 158. serō, -ere, sēvī, satum, tr., sow, first.
157. flamma, -ae, f., flame.

12. THE MAGIC OINTMENT

At Mēdēa, rēgis filia, Jāsonem adamāvit, et, ubi audīvit eum tantum perīculum subitūrum esse, rem aegrē ferēbat. Intellegēbat enim patrem suum hunc labōrem prōposuisse eō ipsō cōnsiliō, ut Jāsōn morerētur. Quae cum ita essent, Mēdēa (quae summam perītiām medicīnāe habēbat) hoc cōn-

163. rem aegrē ferēbat, was deeply grieved; literally, bore the thing with distress.
165. ut ... morerētur: a clause explaining cōnsiliō, as in l. 129.

162. ad-amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., fall in love with.
163. aegrē, adv. [aeger], painfully; with difficulty; with grief; with resentment.
166. perītia, -ae, f. [peritus], experience, knowledge.

medicina, -ae, f. [medeor, heal], the healing art, medicine.
silium iniit. Media nocte [insciente patre] ex urbe évāsit; et, postquam in montēs finitimōs vēnit, herbās quāsdam carpsit; tum, sūcō expressō, unguentum parāvit, quod vī suā corpus aleret nervōsque cōnfīrmāret. Hoc factō, Jāsonī unguentum 170 dedit; praecepit autem ut cō diē quō istī labōrēs cōnficiendī essent corpus suum et arma māne oblineret. Jāsōn, etsi paene omnibus magnitūdine et viribus corporis praestābat (vīta enim omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiis reī militāris cōnstiterat), cēnsēbat tamen hoc cōsilium nōn neglegendum 175 esse.

167. insciente patre, without her father's knowledge, ablative absolute.
170. aleret, cōnfīrmāret: employ the auxiliary “should” in translation; the clause is a relative clause of purpose.
171. quō: for quō diē, when.
cōnficiendī essent, were to be performed; the principle of subjunctive by attraction is explained in the note on sī quis, l. 20.
175 cōnstiterat, had consisted; from cōnsto.

167. in-sciēns, gen. -scientis, adj., unknowing, without knowledge, unaware.
168. herba,-ae, f., herb; grass, turf.
carpō, carpere, carpsi, carptum, tr., pluck.
169. sūcus, -ī, m., juice, sap.
exprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressūm, tr. [ex+premō], press out; wring out; elicit.
unguentum, -i, n. [ungō, anoint], ointment.
170. alō, alere, alui, altum, tr., nourish, sustain.
nervus, -ī, m., sinew, muscle, power, strength.
172. māne, adv., in the morning, early in the morning.
ob-linō, -linere, -lēvi, -litum, tr., daub, smear over.
174. vēnātiō, -ōnis, f. [vēnor], hunting, the chase.
175. cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēn-sūm, tr., estimate, think, believe.
neglegō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctum, tr. [nec+legō], disregard, neglect, slight.

13. Sowing the Dragon’s Teeth

Ubi is diēs vēnit quem rēx ad arandum agrum ēdixerat, Jāsōn, ortā lūce, cum sociīs ad locum cōnstitūtum sē contulit. Ibi stabulum ingēns repperit, in quō taurī inclusī erant. Tum,

178. ortā lūce, at daybreak.
portis apertīs, taurōs in lūcem trāxit, et summā cum difficul-
tāte jugum imposuit. At Aeētēs, cum vidēret taurōs nihil
contrā Jāsonem valēre, magnopere mīrātus est; nesciēbat
enim filiam suam auxilium ei dedisse. Tum Jāsōn, omnibus
aspicientibus, agrum arāre coepit; quā in rē tantam diligen-
tiam praebuit ut ante merīdiem tōtum opus cōnfēcerit. Hōc
factō, ad locum ubi rēx sedēbat adiit, et dentēs dracōnīs
postulavit; quōs ubi accepit, in agrum quem arāverat magnā
cum diligentiā sparsit. Hōrum autem dentium nātūra erat
tālis ut in eō locō ubi sparsī essent virī armātī mīrō quōdam
modō gignerentur.

181. nihil: accusative of extent, as in l. 121; with valēre, had no power.
184. quā in rē: the position of the preposition is like that of ob in l. 18.
tantam: this word (also tālis in l. 189) indicates clearly whether the ut
clause following is one of purpose or of result.
185. cōnfēcerit: the perfect subjunctive where an imperfect would seem
to be required by sequence of tenses, App. 144, 1.

181. jugum, -ī, n., yoke.
182. valeō, -ēre, valui, valitūrus,
intr., be strong, have power; be
valid.
184. aspiciō, aspicere, aspexi, as-
pectum, tr. [ad+speciō, look], look
at, behold, look on.
185. meridiēs, -ēi, m. [medius+
diēs], mid-day, noon; the south.
188. spargō, -ere, sparsi, sparsum
tr., strew, scatter, sprinkle.
190. gignō, -ere, genui, genitus, tr.,
give birth to; beget.

14. A Strange Crop

Nōndum tamen Jāsōn tōtum opus cōnfēcerat; imperāverat
enim eī Aeētēs ut armātōs virōs quī ē dentibus gignerentur
sōlus interficeret. Postquam omnēs dentēs in agrum sparsit,
Jāsōn, lassitūdine examinātus, quiētī sē trādidit, dum virī

192. ut . . . interficeret, to kill; a noun clause with its verb in the active
when used as the object of a verb of commanding, persuading, or warning
is usually to be translated by an infinitive.
193. sōlus, without assistance.

194. lassitūdō, -dinis, f. [lassus, weary], weariness.
isti gignerentur. Paucās hōrās dormiēbat; sub vesperum, 195
tamen, e somnō subitō excitātus, rem ita ēvēnisse ut praedic-
tum erat cognōvit; nam in omnibus agri partibus virī in-
gentī magnitūdine corporis, ēnsibus galeisque armātī, mīrum
in modum ē terrā oriēbantur. Hōc cognōtō, Jāsōn cōnsiliō
quod dederat Mēdēa nōn omissendum esse putābat; saxum
igitur ēngēns (ita enim praeceperat Mēdēa) in mediōs virōs
conjectit. Illī undique ad locum concurrērunt, et cum quīs-
que sībi id saxum (nesciō cūr) habēre vellet, magna contrō-
versia orta est. Mox, strictīs ēnsibus, inter sē pugnāre
copedūrunt, et, cum hōc modō plūrimī occīsī essent, reliquī
vulneribus cōnfectī ā Jāsone nūllō negotiō interfēctī sunt.

195. gignerentur, should be born; an anticipatory subjunctive with dum, until. In l. 138 the event was one to be forestalled; here it is one to pre-
pare for.

196. ut: with the indicative this word means as or when; in the sense of
as, it may be correlative with īta or sic, as in this sentence.

198. mūrum in modum: a prepositional phrase equivalent to mūro modō.

203. nesciō cūr, for some reason or other; in l. 13 occurred nesciō quam
fābulam.

204. inter sē, one another; a phrase denoting reciprocal action, and of
frequent occurrence.

196. ē-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ven-
tum, intr., come out; result, turn
out. praedīcō, -dīcere, -dīxi, -dictum, tr.,
foretell, predict.

200. omittere, omittere, omis-
sum, tr. [ob + mittō], let go; neg-
lect.

203. contrōversia, -ae, f. [contrō-
versus, disputed], dispute, quarrel.

204. stringō, -ere, strinxi, strictum,
tr., strip off; draw, unsheathe.

15. Flight of Medea

At rēx Aeētēs, ubi cognōvit Jāsonem labōrem prōpositum
cōnfēcisse, ērā graviter commōtus est; intellegēbat enim id
per dōlum factum esse, nec dubitābat quīn Mēdēa auxilium

209. quīn . . . tulisset: quīn and the subjunctive after a verb of doubt-
ing, as in l. 113.
ei tulisset. Mēdēa autem, cum intellegeret sē in magnō fore perīcūlō, sī in rēgiā mānsisset, fugā salūtem petere cōnstituit. Omnibus igitur ad fugam parātīs, mediā nocte, īnsciente patre, cum frātre Absyrto ēvāsit, et quam celerrīmē ad locum ubi Argō subducta erat sē contulit. Eō cum vēnisset, ad pedēs Jāsonis sē prōjēcit, et multīs cum lacrimīs obsecrāvit eum nē in tantō discrimine mulierem dēsereret quae ei tantum prōfuisset. Ille, quod memoriā tenēbat sē per ejus auxilium ē magnō perīcūlō ēvāsisse, librēnt eam excēpit et, postquam causam veniendi audīvit, hortātus est nē patris īram timēret. Prōmīsit autem sē quam prīnum eam in nāve suā āvectūrum.

210. fore: a future infinitive, often employed instead of futūrus esse.
214. subducta: the size of ancient ships made it possible to "beach" them; for "launch" we have found dēdūcō.
216. nē, not to.
220. quam prīnum, as soon as possible. What is the force of a superlative with quam? Point out another example a few lines above.

214. sub-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -duc-tum, tr., lead up, lead away; draw up, beach.
215. obsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [ob+sacrō, make sacred], entreat, implore.
216. discrimen, -inis, n. [discernō, separate], crisis, peril.
217. tantum, adv. [acc. n. of tāntus], so greatly; this much, only.
221. ā-vehō, -vehere, -vexi, -vec-tum, tr., carry off, take away.

16. Seizure of the Fleece

Postridīē ejus diēi Jāsōn cum sociīs suīs, ortā lūce, nāvem dēdūxīt et, tempestātem idōneam nactī, ad eum locum rēmīs contendērunt, quō in locō Mēdēa vellus cēlātum esse dēmōn-strāvit. Eō cum vēnissent, Jāsōn in terram ēgressus est et, sociīs ad mare relīctīs qui praesidiō nāvi essent, ipse cum

224. quō in locō = ubi.
226. qui praesidiō nāvi essent, to guard the ship; the clause is one of purpose; praesidiō is a dative of purpose, nāvi a dative of reference, App. 53, 54.
Medea in silvās viam cēpit. Pauca milia passuum per silvam prōgressus,vellus quod quaerēbat ex arbo re suspēnsum vīdit. Id tamen auerre rēs erat summæ difficīltātis; nōn modo enim locus ipse ēgregiē et nātūrā et arte mūnitus erat, sed 230 etiam dracō quīdam, speciē terribilī, arbo rem custōdiēbat. At Mēdēa, quae, ut supra dēmōnstrāvimus, artis medicae summam scientiam habuit, rāmum quem ex arbo re proximā dēripuerat venēnō īnfectit. Hōc factō, ad locum appropinquāvit, et dracōnem, qui faucibus apertīs adventum expectābat, venēnō sparsit; proinde, dum dracō somnō oppressus dormit, Jāsōn vellus aureum ex arbo re dēripuit, et cum Mēdēa quam celerrīmē pedem rettulit.

238. pedem rettulit: see referō in final vocabulary.

228. suspendō, -pendere, -pendi, -pensus, tr. [sub+pendō], hang up, suspend.

230. ēgregiē, adv. [ēgregius], excellently, unusually.

232. medicus, -a, -um, adj. [medeor, heal], of healing, medical.

233. rāmus, -i, m., branch, bough.

234. dēripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -repustum, tr. [dē+rapiō], tear away, pull off.

236. pro-indē, adv., therefore, accordingly.

opprimō, -primère, -pressī, -pressūm, tr. [ob+premō], press down, weigh down, overwhelm; overpower.

17. Back to the Argo

Dum tamen ea geruntur, Argonautae, quī ad mare relictī erant, animō ānxiō reditum Jāsōnis expectābant; bene enim 240 intellegēbant id negotium summī esse periculi. Postquam igitur ad occasūm sōlis frūstrā expectāverant, dē ejus salūte despērāre coepērunt, nec dubitābant quīn aliquī cāsus accidisset. Quae cum ita essent, mātūrandum sibi cēnsuērunt, ut auxilium duēi ferrent; at, dum proficīscī parant, lūmen 245 quoddam subitō cōnspicuīnt, mīrum in modum inter silvās

244. mātūrandum (esse) sibi, that they ought to make haste; impersonal use of the passive of an intransitive verb; sibi is a dative of agent, App. 56.

240. ānxius, -a, -um, adj., anxious.

248. Quō cum: translate as if eo cum.
251. dis: the form regularly employed for the dative and ablative plural of deus.
252. quod ... évēnisset: the indicative is used with quod causal unless the reason is regarded as a quotation. Here the causal clause contains the reason assigned in the Argonauts’ prayer; compare l. 142.

247. re-fulgeō, -fulgēre, -fulsi, —, intr., flash back, glitter.
248. Quō, adv. [qui], interrog., whither? where? relative, to which place or point, whither; indef., to any place, anywhere; with compar., in order that.
249. ad-venīō, -venire, -vēnī, -ven-tum, intr., come to, come up, approach.

18. Pursued by the Angry Father

His rēbus gestīs, omnēs sine morā nāvem rūrsus cōnscen-dērunt et, sublātīs ancorīs, primā vigiliā solvērunt; neque enim satis tūtum esse arbitrātī sunt, in eō locō manēre. At rēx Aeētēs, qui jam ante inimīcō in eōs fuerat animō, ubi cognōvit filiam suam nōn modo ad Argonautās sē recēpisse, sed etiam ad vellus auferendum auxilium tulisse, hoc dolōre gravius exārīt. Nāvem longam quam celerrimē dēdūcī jussit

254. vigiliā: a method of reckoning time in the night, which was divided, from sunset to sunrise, into four equal “watches.”
256. inimīcō in eōs fuerat animō, had entertained hostile feelings toward them; animō is a descriptive ablative in the predicate.
258. hoc dolōre: for hūc reī dolōre, in resentment at this; literally, because of this resentment.
259. nāvem longam, a war ship.

254. vigilia, -ae, f. [vigil, awake], a watching; a watch (as a division of time).
259. ex-ārdēscō, -ārdēscere, -ārsī, -ārsūm, intr., blaze out; be inflamed, be enraged.
et, militibus impositis, fugientes insecutus est. Argonautae, qui bene sciebant rem in discriminate esse, summis viribus remis contendebant. Cum tamen nāvis quā vehēbantur ingenti esset magnitudine, nōn eadem celeritāte quā Colchī prōgregī poterant. Quae cum ita essent, ā Colchī sequentiibus paene capti sunt; neque enim longius intererat quam quo tēlum adjici posset. At Mēdēa, cum vīdisset quō in locō rēs essent, paene omni spē dēpositā, infandum hoc cōnsilium cēpit.

260. fugientes: the present participle again as a noun, fugitives.

261. summis viribus rēmis contendebant, plied (literally strove with) the oars with all their might; viribus is an ablative of manner, rēmis of means.

262. quā, in which; an ablative of means.

265. neque enim, etc., for the distance between them was not greater than a javelin's throw; quō... posset is a clause of result, literally greater than to which a javelin could be thrown.

266. ad-jiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, tr. [ad+jacio], hurl to, hurl upon, throw.

267. in-fandus, -a, -um, adj., unspeakable, shocking.

19. A Fearful Expedient

Erat in nāvē Argonautārum filius quidam rēgis Aeētae, nōmine Absyrtus, quem, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, Mēdēa, ex urbe fugiēns, sēcum abdūxerat. Hunc puerum Mēdēa cōnstituit interficere eō cōnsiliō, ut, membriē ejus in mare conjectis, cursum Colchorum impedīret; prō certō enim sciēbat Aeētem, cum membra filiī vīdisset, nōn longius prō-secūtūrum esse; neque opīniō eam fēfellit. Omnia enim ita

273. prō certō sciēbat, she felt certain; literally, knew it for certain.

275. neque opīniō eam fēfellit, and she was not mistaken; literally, the expectation did not deceive her.

271. ab-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -duc-tum, tr., lead away, bring away.

274. prō-sequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, tr., follow, follow after.
evénérunt ut Mēdēa spērāverat. Aeētēs, ubi primum membra vīdit, ad ea colligenda nāvem statuī jussit. Dum tamen ea geruntur, Argonautae, nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre, mox (quod necesse fuit) ē conspectū hostium remōtī sunt, neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Ėridanum pervēnērunt. At Aeētēs, nihil sibi prōfutūrum esse arbitratūs, si longius progressus esset, animō dēmissō domum revertit, ut filīi corpus ad sepsultūram daret.

276. ubi primum: a phrase with the same meaning as simul ac; cum primum is more common.
278. nōn intermissō ... labōre, by uninterrupted labor at the oars, ablative absolute.
279. quod: neuter, because reference is made to the following statement of fact.
280. prius: to be translated with quam, before; the two are often written as one word.
282. si longius prōgressus esset: in form a condition, in thought the subject of prōfutūrum esse, it would do him no good to go farther.

animō dēmissō, dejected.

277. colligō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctum, tr. [com-+legō], collect
status, -ere, statuī, statūtum, tr. [status, a standing], cause to stand, stop; resolve, determine.
278. rēmigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr. [rēmex, rower], row, ply an oar.
279. re-moveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, tr., move back; take away, remove.
282. de-mittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missūm, tr., send down, let fall.

20. THE BARGAIN WITH PELIAS

Tandem post multa pericula Jāsōn in eundem locum per-vēnit unde ōlim profectus erat. Tum ē nāvī ēgressus, ad rēgem Peliam, qui rēgnum adhuc obtinēbat, statim sē contulit et, vellere aureō mōnstrātō, ab eō postulāvit ut rēgnum sibi trāderētur. Peliās enim pollicitus erat, si Jāsōn vellus rettulisset, sē rēgnum ei trādītūrum. Postquam Jāsōn quid fierī vellet ostendit, Peliās primum nihil respondit, sed diū

289. rettulisset, should bring back. In direct discourse the future perfect indicative, rettuleris, would be used.
in eādem tristitia tacitus permānsit; tandem ita locūtus est:
"Vidēs mē actāte jam esse cōnfuctum, neque dubium est
quīn diēs suprēmus mihi adsit. Liceat igitur mihi, dum
vivam, hoc rēgnnum obtinēre; tum, postquam ego ē vitā
dissēsserō, tū in meum locum venīēs." Hāc črātiōne adductus,
Jāsōn respondit sē id factūrum quod ille rogāset.

293. mihi (adsit): a dative of reference, for me; best translated here by
a possessive, my last day.
adsit: like nōn dubitō, the phrase nōn dubium est takes quīn and the
subjunctive.
Liceat: the subjunctive expresses an entreaty, allow me, etc.; literally,
may it be permitted me; App. 92.
294. vivam: future indicative with dum meaning as long as.
ego, tū: the personal pronouns are here employed for emphasis and
contrast.

291. tristitia, -ae, f. [tristis], dejection, sadness.
tacitus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of
taceō], silent, still.
per-maneō, -manēre, -mānsi, -mān-sum, intr., remain, continue.

292. dubius, -a, -um, adj., doubtful, uncertain.
293. suprēmus, -a, -um, adj. [superl. of superus], highest; last.
ad-sum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, intr.,
be at hand, be near.

21. A Magical Transformation

Hīs rēbus cognītīs, Mēdēa rem aegrē tulit et rēgni cupiditāte adducta cōnstituit mortem rēgī per dolum ĭnferre.
Hōc cōnstitūtō, ad filiās rēgis vēnit atque ita locūta est:
"Vidētis patrem vestrum aetāte jam esse cōnfuctum, neque 300
ad labōrem rēgnandi perferendum satis valēre. Vultisne eum
rūrsus juvenem fierī?" Tūm filiāe rēgis ita respondērunt:
"Num hoc fierī potest? Quis enim umquam ē sene juvenis

297. rem aegrē tulit: a combination commented on in connection with
1. 163.
298. mortem rēgī ĭnferre, to cause the death of the king. What is the
literal translation? Rēgī is a dative with the compound verb ĭnferre.
301. Vultisne: the enclitic -ne serves as sign of a direct question, with-
out indicating whether a positive or a negative answer is expected.
303. Num: this particle indicates that "no" is the expected answer,
this can not be done, can it?
factus est?” At Mēdēa respondit, “Scitis mē artis medicae summam habēre scientiam. Nunc igitur vōbis dēmōnstrābō quō modō haec rēs fierī possit.” His diētīs, cum arietem aētāte jam cōnfectum interfēcisset, membra ejus in vāse aēneō posuit et, igne suppositō, in aquam herbās quāsdam infūdit. Tum, dum aqua effervēsceret, carmen magicum cantābat. Post breve tempus ariēs ē vāse exiluit et, viribus refectīs, per agrōs currēbat.

22. A Dangerous Experiment

Dum filiae rēgis hoc mīrāculum stupentēs intuentur, Mēdēa ita locūta est: “Vidētis quantum valeat ars medica. Vōs igitur, si vultis patrem vestrum in adulēscentiam redūcere, id quod fēcī ipsae faciētis. Vōs patris membra in vās conjicite; ego herbās magicās praebebo.” Filiae rēgis cōnsilium quod dederat Mēdēa nōn omittendum putāverunt. Patrem igitur Peliam necāverunt, et membra ejus in vās aēneum conjecērunt; nihil enim dubitābant quīn hoc maximē

Vōs, you (also). In 315 and 316 vōs and ego are in contrast.

319. nihil: not at all; accusative of extent, a stronger negative than nōn.

Vōs, you (also). In 315 and 316 vōs and ego are in contrast.

319. nihil: not at all; accusative of extent, a stronger negative than nōn.

Vōs, you (also). In 315 and 316 vōs and ego are in contrast.

319. nihil: not at all; accusative of extent, a stronger negative than nōn.

312. mīrāculum, -i, n. [mīrōr], marvel, miracle.

stupeō, -ēre, stupui, —, intr., be astounded, amazed, aghast.

in-tueor, -tuērī, -tuitus sum, tr., look upon, gaze at; protect.

314. adulēscentia, -ae, f. [adulēscēns], youth.
ei profutūrum esset. At rēs omninō aliter evēnit ac spērā-
verant; Mēđēa enim nōn ēāsdem herbās dedit, quibus īpsa
ūsa erat. Itaque, postquam diū frūstrā expectāvērunt, pa-
trem suum rē vérā mortuum esse intellexērunt. His rēbus
gestis, Mēđēa spērābat sē cum conjuge suō rēgnum accep-
tūram esse. At cīvēs, cum intellegērent quō modō Peliās
periisset, tantum scelus aegre tulērunt; itaque, Jāsone et
Mēđēa ē rēgnō expulsīs, Acastum rēgem creāvērunt.

320. prófutūrum esset, would benefit; a simple form of the subjunctive
dependent upon a verb of doubting would not express futurity; Latin
therefore resorts to the future active participle with the subjunctive of sum.
ac: after aliter and similar words ac is translated than.
323. ré vérā, really, in truth.
324. sē . . . acceptūram esse: the infinitive with subject accusative is
used after spērō as after verbs of thinking, knowing, etc.
326. aegre tulērunt: were incensed at.

320. aliter, adv. [alius], otherwise.

23. A Fatal Gift

Post haec Jāsōn et Mēđēa, ē Thessaliā expulsi, ad urbem
Corinthum vēnērunt, cujus urbis Creōn quīdam rēgnum tum
obtinēbat. Erat autem Creōntī filiā ūna, nōmine Glaucē; 330
quam cum vidisset, Jāsōn cōnstituit Mēđēam uxōrem suam
repudiāre eō cōnsiliō, ut Glaucēn in mātrimōnium dūceret.
At Mēđēa, ubi intellexit quae ille in animō habēret, īrā
graviter commōta, jūre jūrandō cōnfīrmāvit sē tantam in-
jūriam ultūram. Hoc igitur cōnsilium cēpit. Vestem parāvit
summā arte contextam et variīs coloribus tīnetam. Hanc

330. Erat Creōntī filiā ūna = Creōn filiām ūnam habēbat; Creōntī is a
dative of possession, App. 52.
332. Glaucēn: accusative; see note on Danaē, Per. 6.
335. Vestem: like the robe of Nessus in the story of Hercules.

334. jūs jūrandum, jūris jūrandī, n., an oath.
336. con-texō, -texere, -texuī, -tex-
tum, tr., weave.
338. tingō, -ere, tīnxī, tīntum, tr., dip,
dye.

338. induisset: the clause si quis . . . induisset depends upon a subjunctive, ūrerētur; by what principle is induisset made subjunctive?

338. ūrō, -ere, ussi, ustum, tr., burn.

24. FLIGHT OF MEDEA, AND DEATH OF JASON


342. cum . . . sēnsit: the same use of cum, when, noted in connection with l. 109.

351. itaque: the two parts of the word are here to be translated separately, and so. What is the usual meaning?

344. ămentia, -ae, f. [āmens, out of one's mind], madness.

348. prex, precis, f. (usually pl.), prayer, entreaty.

349. currus, -ūs, m., chariot.

350. umbra, -ae, f., shadow.

345. prēx, precis, m., prayer, entreaty.

351. itaque: the two parts of the word are here to be translated separately, and so. What is the usual meaning?
The city of Rome was believed by the Romans to have been founded by Romulus, who was the grandson of the king of Alba Longa, a town situated in the Alban Hills, not far from Rome. According to legend Romulus was the descendant of Aeneas, who had fled from Troy to Italy when Troy was captured by the Greeks.

Following Romulus six other kings ruled over Rome, the last of whom was driven from his throne and compelled to go into exile. A republican form of government was then established which continued nearly to the beginning of the Christian era.

The stories of Romulus and the other heroes of Rome's early history are so involved with legend and myth that they have but little historical value. But because of the large place which they hold in the literature and art of the Romans they are scarcely less significant than the more truthful narrative of later times.

The stories of the republican period and probably of the greater part of the period of the kings, as here given, deal with historical facts. Since the civilization of today is so closely bound up with that of the Romans, these stories of Rome may be said to have a direct connection with the life of the great nations of the present time, our own nation included.

The narrative is not given in the exact form in which it has come down to us in the works of the Roman writers, but the incidents are told substantially as they are found in their works.
STORIES FROM ROMAN HISTORY

1. AENEAES SETTLES IN ITALY

Ölim in Asia erat urbs antiqua, quae Troja appellāta est. Eam urbem Graeci decem annōs obsēdereunt tandemque cēpērunt. Priamō rēge filiīisque ejus interfectīs, urbem dēlēvērunt. Sed Aenēas, qui inter clārissimōs dēfēnsōrēs urbis fuerat, cum paucīs comitibus ex urbe effūgit; cum profugōs ex omnibus partibus coēgisset, in Italiam migrāre cōnstituit.

Post septem annōs vēnit in eam partem Italiae ubi erat urbs Laurentum. Ibi cum Trojānī praedam ex agrīs agerent, Latinus rēx Aborigīnēsque, qui tum ea loca tenēbant, agrōs dēfēndere parāvērunt. Sed Latīnus, postquam in colloquīo originem multitūdinis ducisque cognōvit, pācem cum Aenēā fēcit atque postea ēl Lāviniam filiam in mātrimōnium dedit. Trojānī urbem condiderunt, quam Aenēās ab nōmine uxōris Lāvinium appellāvit.

Deinde Turnus, rēx Rutulōrum, cui Lāvinia ante adventum Aenēae dēspōnsa erat, bello Latīnum Trojānōsque aggressus est. Victī sunt Rutulī, sed victōrēs ducem Latinum āmīsērunt. Inde Turnus auxilium petīvit ab Etrūscīs, quibus

---

5. cum, when; with the subjunctive in a descriptive clause of situation, App. 102.
8. praedam: since booty consisted largely of cattle, agō, drive, is an appropriate verb; in English, “collect,” “carry off,” are the usual terms.
16. bēllo, in war, ablative of means.
18. Etrūscīs: the Etruscans were a people whose origin is unknown. They were not of the same racial stock as the Romans and other peoples of Italy. They attained a high degree of civilization and exercised a marked influence on Roman civilization.

---

4. dēfēnsōr, -ōris, m. [dēfendō], dēfender.
5. profugus, -i, m. [profugiō], fugitive, refugee.
Italiam fāmā nōminis sui implēverant; illī metuentēs novam urbem multitūdine opibusque crēscentem laetī auxilium tu-lērunt. Aenēās in tantō discrimīne, ut Aborīginēs Tro-jānōsque sub eōdēm jūre atque nōmine habēret, Latīnōs utramque gentem appellāvit. Cum adversus Etrūscōs sē moenibus dēfendere pōsset, tamen in aciem cōpiās ēdūxīt. Etrūsci victī sunt; victōrēs tamen ducem ut anteā āmīsē-runt; post pugnam enim Aenēam reperīre nōn potuērunt; multī igitur eum ad deōs trānsīsse crēdīdērunt.

20. multitūdine, opibus: ablatives of respect.
   laetī: to be translated by an adverb; an adjective is frequently employed in Latin where English requires an adverb.
21. ut . . . habēret: a clause of purpose, App. 94.
22. Latinōs utramque gentem appellāvit, called both nations Latīni; two accusatives with the active of a verb of naming; likewise in l. 13.
23. Cum: that the conjunction is adversative, although, is shown by tamen, nevertheless, in the principal clause.
24. dēfendere posset, could have defended.
27. trānsīsse: since Aeneas was by legend the son of the goddess Venus, it was not unnatural to represent his disappearance as a “translation” to the ranks of the gods.

23. adversus, prep. with acc., opposed to, against.

2. Founding of Alba Longa

Lāvinia inde rēgnāvit, quoad Ascanius, Aenēae filius, adolēvit. Tum ille propter abundantem Lāvīnī multitūdinem mātrī urbem reliquit; ipse novam aliam urbem sub Albānō monte condidit, quae Alba Longa appellāta est. Multī rēgēs post Ascanium imperium Albānum gessērunt. Quīdam ex

3. sub: with an ablative the meaning is under, or at the foot of.
Albānō monte: this mountain in historical times was the site of a temple of Jupiter Latiaris, i.e., Jupiter as the god of the towns belonging to the Latin League.

1. quo-ad, adv. and conj., until, as long as.
his, cui nomen Proca erat, duōs filiōs, Numitōrem atque Amūlium, habuit. Numitōrī, qui major erat, rēgnum reliquit. Pulsō tamen frātre, Amūlius rēgnāvit. Filium frātris necāvit; filiam Rhēam Silviam per speciem honoris sacerdōtem Vestae lēgit.

6. cui nomen Proca erat, whose name was Proca; cui is a dative of possession, App. 52.
7. major, older; a frequent meaning, the full expression being major nātū, (literally) greater by birth.
9. sacerdōtem: a second accusative after lēgit, which belongs to the list of verbs of “naming,” “choosing,” etc.; one accusative denotes the person named or chosen, the other what he is named or the office to which he is chosen.
10. Vestae: goddess of the hearth of each home, but also worshiped by the state. In the Roman Forum stood the small round temple which was the seat of the state cult. Here was kept burning a never-dying fire tended by the Vestal Virgins, who during their service of thirty years were not allowed to marry.

7. major, majus, adj. [compar. of magnus], larger, greater; major nātū, older; subst., majōrēs, -um, m. pl., ancestors.
9. sacerdōs, -ōtis, m. and f. [sacer], priest, priestess.

3. Romulus and Remus

Ex hac filiā nātī sunt duo filīī, Rōmulus et Remus. Pater eōrum, ut fāma est, Mārs deus erat. Sed nec deī nec hominēs mātrem et puerōs ā crudēlītāte rēgiā défendērunt. Sacerdōs in custōdiam data est; puerōs rēx in Tiberim injicī jussit. Forte Tiberis abundāverat, neque ēi quī puerōs ferēbant adire ad altam aquam poterant. Itaque puerōs in alveō posuērunt atque in tenuī aquā reliquērunt. Sed alveus

2. ut fāma est, according to tradition; literally, as the report is.
4. Tiberim: what common noun has the accusative in -im?
5. neque: the common word for and not; the negative should be taken with poterant.
7. reliquērunt: supply eōs as object.

4. custōdia, -ae, f. [custōs], watch, 7. alveus, -i, m., trough.
custody, guard.

Dum quoddam lūdicularum celebrātur, latrōnēs irātī ob prae-

10
dam āmissam impetum in Rōmulum et Remum fēcērunt; captum Remum rēgī Amūliō trādidērunt. Puerōs praedam ex agris Numitoris egisse incusabant. Sic ad supplicium Numitōri Remus dēditur.

Ab initiō Faustulus crēdiderat puerōs jussū rēgis expositōs

8. in sicco sedit, drifted ashore; literally, settled on dry ground.

sic enim est trāditum: translate in the same manner as ut fāma est, l. 2.

10. nūtrientem: a verb of “finding” often takes a participle as a second accusative.

11. educātī sunt: although we derive “educate” from this verb, it should regularly be translated rear, bring up. What is the difference between ēduco and ēdūcō?

Cum prīnum, as soon as; as we have seen, cum in this combination regularly takes the indicative, like simul atque, postquam, ubi.

13. pāstōribus: dative of indirect object, although we say “among” with the verbs “divide,” “distribute.”

14. Dum . . . celebrātur: for the present indicative with dum see note on Per. 46; the verb should be translated by a past tense.

15. āmissam: the past passive participle in a prepositional phrase is sometimes best translated by an English noun, here loss of.

17. incūsābant, brought as an accusation, with dependent indirect dis-

19. expositōs: equivalent to a relative clause, who had been abandoned.

8. succus, -a, -um, adj., dry; subst., succum, -i, n., dry land.

lupa, -ae, f., a she-wolf.

sitiēns, gen. -entis, adj. [pr. part. of sitiō, to thirst], thirsty.

9. circā, adv. and prep. with acc., around, round about.

10. nūtriō, -īre, -īvi, -ītum, tr., nourish, nurse.

13. onustus, -a, -um, adj. [onus, a burden], loaded, burdened.

14. celebrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [celeber], throng; celebrate.

17. incūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [in+causa], accuse, complain of.

19. (jussus, -ūs, m.), only in the abl., jussū, by order, command, decree.
apud sē ēducārī. Tum perīculō Remī mōtus rem Rōmulō 20
aperit. Forte Numitor quoque audīverat frātrōs gēminōs
esse; tum comparāns et aetātem cōrum et nōbilem animum
Remī nepōtem agnōvit. Rōmulus cum manū pāstōrum in
rēgem Amūliōnum impetum facit; Remus aliā parātā manū
adjuvat. Ita rēx interfectus est. Imperium Albaīnum Numi-
tōri avō ab juvenibus restitūtum est. Deinde Rōmulus et
Remus in iīs locīs ubi expositī ubique ēducāti erant urbem
condere cōstituērunt.

20. apud sē, at his house, in his home; apud is frequently used in the
sense here indicated with a pronoun or a person's name.

22. comparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. 26. restituō, -stituere, -stituí, -stītū-
[compar, like], compare. -tum, tr. [re-+stātuō, station], re-
store.

4. Founding of Rome

Uterque juvenis nōmen novae urbī dare eamque regere
cupiēbat. Sed quod gēmini erant, nec rēs aetāte dēcernī
poterat, auguriis ūsī sunt. Ā Remō prius visī sunt sex
vulturēs. Rōmulō postēa duodecem sēsē ostendērunt. Uter-
que ab amīcis rēx appellātus est atque rēgnum postulābat. 5
Cum īrātī arma rapuissent, in pugnā Remus ecclīt. Ex
aliā fāmā Remus illūdēns frātrem novōs mūrōs urbis trānsi-
luit, inde interfectus est ab īrātō Rōmulō, qui haec verba
quoque addidit: "Sic deinde pereat quīcumque aūius trān-

3. ūsī sunt, resorted to; notice the case of the object.
6. Ex, according to.
7. illūdēns, in mockery of.
9. Sic pereat, so perish; optative subjunctive, App. 93.

3. augurium, -i, n. [augur, augur],
augury, divination.
7. illūdō, -lūdere, -lūsi, -lūsum, tr.
in+lūdō, play], make sport of,
ridicule.
9. quīcumque, quaecumque, quod-
cumque, indef. pron., whoever,
whatever, everyone who, every-
thing that.
siliet moenia mea." Ita sólus potítus est imperió Rómulus; conditam urbem á suó nómine Rónam appellávit.


10. imperiō: the same case use as auguriís, l. 3.
11. conditam: a past participle equivalent to a relative clause, as in 3, 19.
12. Palátiúm: the Palatine Hill was doubtless the location of the ear-liest settlement made on the site of Rome. Its isolated position and considerable area made it the natural situation for a fortified town dominating the surrounding hills.
13. júra dedit, gave them laws.
14. sellam curúlem: an ivory stool without back, with curved legs, and with a seat of plaited leather straps.

togam praetextam: the toga of the Roman citizen was white. Boys and curule magistrates wore a toga with a scarlet border.
15. líctórēs: the lictors were attendants upon the Roman kings, later upon certain magistrates of the republic. They accompanied the official in public, clearing the way, and exacting due obeisance from passers-by. As symbols of the king’s power to scourge and to put to death, the lictors carried the fasces, a bundle of rods with an ax enclosed. The magistrates of the republic, however, were obliged to remove the ax within the city and to lower the rods before the popular assembly.

Asýlum in monte Capítólínó: the Capitoline was the smallest of the hills of Rome. It had two peaks. On the northern was the citadel, on the southern the Capitolium, or temple of Jupiter. The saddle between the two peaks was the site of the asýlum, place of refuge.
16. quō: an adverb.
17. honóris causā, as a mark of distinction; remember that causa and grátia in the ablative with the meaning for the sake of stand after the accompanying genitive.

14. sella, -ae, f. [sedeó], chair, seat.
curúlis, -e, adj., curule.
praetextus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of praetexó, to border], bordered; toga praetexta, the toga of a Roman magistrate, which was edged with scarlet.
15. asýlum, -i, n., a place of refuge; asylum.
5. The Sabine Women


Sed ipse Rōmulus circumībat ostendēbatque id patrum

---

1. rēs Rōmāna: virtually equivalent to rēs pūblica Rōmāna.
   civitātibus: dative depending on pār; give the list of adjectives governing the dative.
   bellō: ablative of respect. What English preposition is regularly used in translating this ablative?
   4. qui . . . peterent, to ask for; a relative clause of purpose.
   13. in lūdōs, on the games.

---

1. pār, paris, adj., equal, like.
3. cōnūbium, -ī, n. [com-+nūbō], marriage.
4. vicīnus, -a, -um, adj. [vicus], neighboring.
   societās, -ātis, f. [socius], association, alliance.
6. sōlum, adv. [sōlus], only, merely, alone.
   spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētum, tr., despise, scorn, spurn.
13. intentus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of intendō], attentive, intent.
16. meliōr, -ius, adj. [compar. of bonus], better.
   minor, minus, adj. [compar. of parvus], less, smaller; minor nātū, younger.
18. circum-eō, -ire, -ī (-īvi), -ītum, tr. and intr., go around, go from one to another.
superbia factum esse. “Quamquam vi captae estis,” inquit, “omnia jūra Rōmānōrum habēbitis.”


Tum Sabīnæ mulierēs ausae sunt sē inter tēla volantia īnferre, ut pācem ā patribus virīisque implōrārent. Ducēs eā rē mōtī nōn modo pācem sed etiam cīvitātem ūnam ex

19. superbia: ablative of cause.
Quamquam: this conjunction takes an indicative. What mood is used with cum meaning although?
21. raptārum: the past passive participle is frequently employed as a noun, here of the captured women.
29. templum: this temple lay outside the Palatine city. It was probably situated somewhere near the spot where the Arch of Titus now stands.
31. optimus maximus: a set phrase applied to Jupiter; English inserts “and” between the adjectives in translation.
resistere: here in the less frequent meaning make a stand.
32. Restitērunt: emphatic by its position as first word in the sentence; the emphasis is reproduced in English by translating, the Romans did make a stand.
34. sē īnferre, rush in.

23. pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -; intr. [per+teneō], stretch out, extend; relate, pertain.
con-citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., vōx, vōcis, f., voice, cry, utterance, word.
duābus faciunt; rēgnum quoque cōnsociant atque Rōmam faciunt sēdēm imperī. Multitūdō ita aucta nōmine Quiritēs appellāta est ex Curibus, quae urbs caput Sabīnōrum erat. Deinde Rōmulus, populō in cūriās trīgintā dīvisō, nōmina mulierum raptārum cūriās dedit.

Post aliquot annōs Tatius ab Laurentibus interfecτus est. Rōmulus posteā sōlus rēgnāvit. Annīs sequentibus bella secunda cum Fidēnātibus Veientibusque, populīs Etrūscīs, gesta sunt.

Dum Rōmulus quōdam tempore exercitum in campō Mārtiō recensēt, tempestās subītō coūrta eum nimbō operuit. Patrēs quī proximī steterant dīxērunt rēgem sublimem rapt-

37. faciunt: for the historical present consult the note on Per. 64.
39. quae urbs: we say a city which, putting city in apposition with the name. Latin writers avoided putting an appositive directly before a relative, preferring to include it in the relative clause.
41. cūriās: this division by “wards” continued through the republic as the basis of a curiate assembly of the people which was convened for certain purposes.
42. ab Laurentibus: Tatius was killed in revenge for ill treatment inflicted by certain of his relatives upon envoys from Laurentum.
44. secunda: derived from sequor, follow; from one point of view that which “follows” is “second”; from another, that which “follows” or “goes with you” is “favorable,” “successful.” Which meaning is appropriate here?
46. campō Mārtiō: the northern part of the Campus Martius was devoted to athletic purposes, the southern part was a place of meeting for public assemblies.
47. recēnset: why is the present tense used? What English tense should be employed in translation?
48. sublimem: predicate adjective after raptum esse; translate, had been carried away on high.

37. cōn-sociō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., associate, unite.
40. cūrīa, -ae, f. [cūrīa, a division of the Roman people], ward; senate-house.
trīgintā, indecl. numeral, thirty.
47. re-cēnseo, -cēnsēre, -cēnsuī, -cēnsum, tr., number, reckon; review.
48. sublimis, -e, adj., uplifted, high; up, aloft.
nimbus, -ī, m., rain-storm; thunder-cloud.
operiō, -īre, operuī, operūtum, tr., cover, cover over, conceal.
tum esse. Deinde uni
eri clāmant: "Salvē, deus deō nāte."

Rōmulus dicitur postea cuidam cīvi sē ostendisse et eum hīs verbīs allocūtus esse: "Nūntiā Rōmānīs deōs velle meam Rōmam caput orbīs terrārum esse; profīnde rēs mīlitāris colenda est; nām nūllae opēs hūmānae armīs Rōmānīs re-
sistere possunt." Posteā nōmen Quirīnus Rōmulō additum

55 est. Rēgnāvit septem et trīgintā annōs.

6. Numa Pompilius

Certāmen inde dē rēgnō inter factiōnēs ortum est. Sabīnī rēgem suae factiōnis creārī cupiēbant. Rōmānī veterēs pere-
grīnum rēgem recūsābant. Interrēgnō secūtō, senātus imperi

um gessit. Deinde plōbs clāmāre coepit multōs dominōs prō ūnō factōs esse. Optimum igitur visum est sine morā rēgem creārē.

Habitābat cō tempore Curibus Numa Pompilius, vir jūs-
tissimus peritusque omnis divīni atque hūmāni jūris. Rēg-

2. rēgem . . . creārī: object of cupiēbant, like Rōmam . . . esse, object of velle in 5, 52.

3. interrēgnō: this word was employed originally of the time interven-
ing between the death of one king and the accession of another; it con-
tinued in use in the republic with reference to those periods in which the
state was without consuls.

7. Curibus, at Cures; a locative, App. 81.

8. jūris: an objective genitive with peritus; we say skilled in or familiar

with.

3. inter-rēgnum, -i, n., interregnum.

7. jūstus, -a, -um, adj. [jūs], just, upright.

8. peritus, -a, -um, adj., experi-

enceed, skilled.
num eī omnium cōnsēnsū dēlātum est. Is urbem novam, quae ā Rōmulō armīs condita erat, jūre lēgibusque firmāvit. Arcum portīs inṣtrūctum fēcit, qui arcus Jānī appellātus est; apertus bellī index erat, clausus pācis. Per omne rēgnum Numae clausus fuit. Pax cum cīvitātibus fīnitimīs sociētāte ac foederībus facta est.

Rēx inde ad mōrēs populī cultumque deōrum animum convirtit. Ut populī fidem conciliāret, simulāvit sē cum deā Ėgeriā congressīs habēre et monitū ejus sācra īnstituere sacerdötēsque legere. Annum ad cursum lūnae in duodecim mēnsēs discrispīt. Quōsdam diēs nefāstōs fēcit, per quōs diēs comitia nōn habēbantur. Virginēs Vestālēs lēgit, quās caerimōnīīs quibusdam sānctās fēcit.

Multa etiam alia ā rēge īnstitūta sunt, rītūs, caerimōnīae, sacerdōtīa. Multitūdō hīs rēbus ā vi et armīs conversa rēgis

11. inṣtrūctum, provided with.
12. apertus, when open; arcus is to be understood.
17. monitū: an ablative expressing accordance.
18. ad cursum lūnae, according to, etc.; this old lunar year of 355 days stood as the official year until Julius Caesar reformed the calendar in 46 B.C. See note on 26, 93.
20. Virginēs Vestālēs: see the note on 2, 10.

25. tōtam, wholly; an adjective where English would employ an adverb; compare laetī in 1, 20.

24. imitor, -āri, -ātus sum, tr., imitate, copy after.

26. deinceps, adv., in succession.

7. TULLUS HOSTILIUS


5. vidēbātur, causās undique bellī quaerēbat. Bellum cum Albānīs prīmum ortum est. Albānī prīōrēs magnō exercītū in agrum Rōmnānum impetum fēcērunt. Ibi Cluilius, Albānus rēx, moritur. Albānī dictātōrem Mettium Fufetium creant. Ubi is ab Tullō colloquium petiit, rēx Rōmānus nōn re-

10. cūsāvit. Mettius sic locūtus est: “Uterque populus sē bellum gerere propter iūnīriās dīcit. Rē vērā cupīdō imperiī duōs cognātōs vicīnōsque popūlōs ad arma concītat. Sed potius metuere dēbēmus Etrūscōs, qui, cum dēfessī cōn-

2. Rōmulō rēgnante, in the reign of Romulus, ablative absolute.

6. magnō exercītū: ablative of accompaniment without a preposition in a military expression.

8. dictātōrem: in the time of the republic the Romans also occasionally replaced their consuls by a dictator in order better to conduct a war. The dictatorship amounted to a temporary restoration of the kingship. Here the Albas are represented as employing the dictatorship to fill in an interregnum.


4. torpēo, -ēre, —, —, intr., be inactive, languish.

6. prior, prius, compar. adj., former, previous; first.

11. cupīdō, -inis, f. [cupidus], passion, greed.

12. cognātōs, -a, -um, adj. [com- + (g)nāscor], related.

13. potius, adv. [compar. of potis, able], rather, preferably.
fectique erimus, simul victorem ac victum aggregentur. Certàmen igitur de imperio paucorum proelió potius dcecernámus." Tullus cónsiliórum probást, quamquam magnam spem victóriæ habébat.


Prímó congressú duo Rómáni interfécti sunt et trés Albáni vulneráti. Eum qui integer fuit trés Cúriátií circumstistere cóñatī sunt. Cum jam Rómánum paulum fúgisset, respexit atque vidit trés Cúriátiós magnús intervállis sequentes. Subitó cónstitit et in proximum Cúriátiónum impétum facit; duó exercitiús Albáni Cúriátiós obsecrant ut frátrí auxilium ferant, Horátiús eum interfécit; deinde victor secundum frátem petit. Tum magnó clámore Rómáni adjuvant militem suum et ille cónficere proelium properat. Priusquam cónsecútus est tertius, Horátius alterum Cúriá-

15. dcecernámus: an instance of the subjunctive in an independent use, App. 92. The proposal was that the people whose champions should be victorious should rule the other people.
18. trigemini frátrés, three brothers who were triplets.
23. terní: a distributive numeral, employed because two groups of three each are involved.
25. vulneráti: est or sunt is often omitted in the perfect passive; here sunt is readily supplied from the preceding verb.

18. trigeminus, -a, -um, adj. [très+geminus, born together], born three at a birth; subst. trigemini, -orum, m. pl., triplets.
21. medium, -i, n. [n. of medius], the middle, the intervening space.
23. terni, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [ter], three each.
25. integer, -gra, -grum, adj., untouched, unhurt; fresh, vigorous.
27. re-spiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, tr. and intr. [re+speciō, look], look back; have regard for.
33. tertius, -a, -um, adj. [ter], third.
tium conficit. Jamque singuli supererant, sed nec spē nec
vīribus parēs; alter integer et ferōx superiōribus victōriis
erat; alter défessus vulnere, animō frāctus, in certāmen vēnit.
Nec illud proelium fuit. Cūriātium vix sustinentem arma
Horātius caedit et jacentem spoliat.

Ad sepultūram inde suōrum Rōmānī atque Albānī nēqua-
quam paribus animīs vertuntur, alterī victōrēs alterī victī.
Exercitūs domōs abductī sunt. Horātiī soror, quae ūnī ex
Cūriātiīs dēspōsa erat, cognōvit inter spolia paulūdāmentum
spōnsi, quod ipsa confecerat. Solvit crīnēs et multīs cum
lacrimīs spōnsum mortuum appellat. Frāter, īrātus propter
maerōrem sorōris in victōriā suā tantōque pūblico gaudīo,
glādiō eam interfēcit. Rēs ad populum relāta est. Hominēs
vehementer motī sunt in eō judiciō, Pūbliō Horātiō patre
clāmante filiam jūre caesam esse. Sed magis admirātiōne
virtūtis quam jūre causae juvenem absolvērunt.

40. vertuntur, turn; the passive voice in a reflexive sense, as explained
in the note on Her. 301.
alteri ... alterī: alter ... alter mean the one (person) ... the other;
the plural is here employed to mean the one people ... the other.
41. domōs: the plural of this noun may be used like the singular
domum to denote the place to which without a preposition.
43. Solvit crīnēs: a common sign of mourning in antiquity.
44. appellat: here in the less usual sense of call upon.
47. Pūbliō Horātiō ... clāmante: ablative absolute, expressing an addition-
   al reason for the excitement of the people.
48. jūre: ablative of accordance.
   admirātiōne, jūre: ablatives of cause.

34. singuli, -ae, -a, adj., one at a
time; distrib., one on a side.
36. frangō, -ere, frēgi, frāctum, tr.,
break; weaken, dishearten.
39. nē-quāquam, adv., by no means,
not at all.
42. spoliōm, -i, n., skin; booty, spoil.
palūdāmentum, -i, n., mili-
tary cloak.
43. spōnsus, -i, m. [p. part. of spon-
deō, promise], betrothed, lover.
   crīnis, crīnis, -ium, m., hair.
45. maerōr, -ōris, m. [maereō, be
sad], mourning, sorrow.
pūblicus, -a, -um, adj. [populus], of
the people or state, public.
47. jūdicium, -i, n. [jūdex], judg-
ment; trial; court.
48. magis, compar. adv., mōre,
rather.
   admirātiō, -ōnis, f. [admīrōr], admi-
ration, surprise.
49. ab-solvō, -solvere, -solvī, -solv-
tum, tr., set free; acquit.


58. Latīnē sciēbant, understood Latin; our idiom leads us to expect a noun instead of the adverb Latīnē.
59. Proelīō factō, at the conclusion of the battle.
61. Populō ... Rōmam trāductō: the transfer and incorporation of a related people within the Roman state occurred more than once.
64. sacrīs, to religious observances.
65. quia, conj., because.
66. fulmen, n., lightning-flash, thunderbolt.
8. Ancus Marcius

Ancus Mārcius, nepōs Numae Pompiliī, quārtus rēx cēātus est. Ut Numa in pāce religiōnēs instituerat, sic Ancus caeri-
mōniās instituit, quibus bella postea indicata sunt. Sacerdōtēs, quibus id negotium mandatum est, fētiālēs appellant.

Bellis cum urbibus Latinōrum gestīs, cīvēs Rōmam trādūxīt. Jāniculum, quī collis trāns Tiberim est, ēum urbe ponte subliciō conjūnxīt. Carcer, quī etiam nunc extat, sub

7. Carcer: a small stone structure with a vaulted roof. Beneath it is a dungeon where criminals were sometimes executed. The Carcer is now a church.

3. in-dicō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum, tr., proclaim, declare, appoint.
4. mandō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [manus + dō], consign, intrust.

fētiālis, -e, adj., diplomatic, fetial; subst., fētiālis, -is, m., a fetial priest.

7. sublicius, -a, -um, adj. [sublica, pile, stake], of piles, resting on piles.

extō, -āre, —, —, intr. [ex + stō], stand forth; be extant, exist.
monte Capitolino aedificatus est. Imperium usque ad mare prōlātum est, et in õre Tiberis Óstia urbs condita.


9. Óstia: extensive remains of this city, as it was later, have been unearthed in modern times.

11. Tarquiniiis: what is the locative form of the names of cities which are used in the plural? of those which are used in the singular, in the first and second declensions?

15. Rōmam: migrō as a verb of motion is followed by an accusative of the place to which. Why no preposition?

18. id augurium, this as a token.

19. prōdigiōrum: objective genitive with perītī, as in 6, 8.

9. prō-ferō, -iffe, -tuli, -lātum, tr., bring forth, carry forward, extend, defer.

14. exul, -ulis, m., an exile.

indignitās, -ātis, f. [indignās], indignity, outrage.

16. pilleus, -ī, m., a cap.

18. futūrus, -a, -um, adj. [fut. part. of sum], yet to be, to come, future.

19. prōdigium, -ī, n., omen, portent, prodigy.

21. insignis, -e, adj. [in+signum], noted, eminent, distinguished, conspicuous.

23. tūtor, -ōris, m. [tueor], defender; guardian.

testāmentum, -ī, n. [testor, call to witness], a (last) will.

24. vigintī, indecl. num., twenty.
9. Tarquinius Priscus


Tarquinius Latinis bellò victis ludos magnificos fecit. Tum primum locus circo, qui Maximus dicitur, designatus est. Ludi sollemnès mänserunt, Romaní aut magni appellatí.


Eò refer tempore in régia prodigium mirábile fuit. Caput

2. primus petiit, was the first to canvass for. What is the literal translation?

6. circo: dative of purpose with désignatus est. The Circus Maximus lay between the Palatine and Aventine hills.

7. Römāni aut magni: the “Roman games” were celebrated in September each year.

8. non quietior, quite as busy; the clause ut . . . esset is one of purpose, non going closely with quiétior.

11. jecit, laid.

13. cui: dative of possession, as in 2, 6.
17. virō: vir is frequently used to mean husband.
18. cultū: manner of life, station.
19. nōbis praesidiō futūrum esse, will be a support to us; dative of reference and dative of purpose.
20. erudiendus est, must be educated; what is the meaning of educō?
22. Etsi: like quamquam takes the indicative. What other conjunction, meaning "although," takes the subjunctive?
23. servō: dative after patēre.
26. in sē... convertērunt, attracted (to themselves) the attention of.
28. rem, the (pretended) quarrel.

14. restinguō, -stinguere, -stīnxi, -stīunctum, tr., put out, quench.
16. sēcrētus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of sēcrnō, to separate], secret; subst., sēcrētum, -ī, n., secret; privacy.
18. profectō, adv. [prō+factō], actually, in fact, assuredly, certainly.
19. aliundō, adv., at some time or other, once.
20. liberālis, -e, adj. [liber], befitting a freeman; honorable, liberal.
26. rixa, -ae, f., quarrel, dispute.
27. appāritor, -ōris, m., servant.
28. vicis, f. gen. (no nom.), change; in vicem, in turn.

29. ēlātam: Latin frequently employs a past passive participle in agreement with an object where we use coordinate verbs, raised his ax and brought it down.

34. Tuum: emphatic and balanced by the possessive genitive eōrum, which is likewise used predicatively, to you belongs . . . , not to those.

36. ducēs: an appositive; we may translate, the guidance of the gods.

37. sequere: imperative. Review the imperative of deponent verbs.

38. Nōli perturbārī: negative commands in Latin are explained in App. 112.

42. Cum: what word in the principal clause determines the meaning of cum? What meaning for cum in l. 45 is required by the context?

29. ā-vertō, -vertere, -vertī, -ver-sum, tr., turn away, avert.

efferō, efferre, extuli, ēlātum, br. [ex +ferō], carry forth, remove; lift up, raise.

secūris, -is, f., axe.

30. forās, adv. [compare foris], out of doors, out.

31. moribundus, -a, -um, adj., [morior], dying.

36. pessimus, -a, -um, adj. [superl of malus], worst.

39. subitus, -a, -um, adj., sudden, unexpected.

44. interim, adv., meanwhile, in the meantime.
dēmum mors rēgis nūntiāta est. Servius, praesidiō firmō mūnitus, prīmus injussū populi voluntāte patrum rēgnāvit.

48. prīmus: to be translated as in l. 2.
   injussū, voluntāte: ablatives of accordance.

10. Servius Tullius

Servius prīnum cēnsum instituit et populum in classēs prō opibus discrīpsit. Ex cēnū postea officia bellī pācisque tribūta sunt. Ad multitudinem crēscentem duo collēs,

1. prīnum: an adverb.
2. Ex, in accordance with, on the basis of.

1. classis, classis, -ium, f., class, 3. tribuō, -ere, tribuī, tribūtum, tr. fleet.
   [tribus, tribe], assign, bestow.


5. hōc, the following.
9. ut ... facerent: a noun clause, object of persuāsit; to be translated by an infinitive.
10. caput ... Rōmam esse, that Rome, etc.; indirect discourse after erat cōnfessīō.
11. cērūtum erat, there had been a contest; impersonal passive, see on Arg. 75.
12. quod ... rēgnāret: for quod causal with the subjunctive see App. 110.
15. Populus ... eum rēgnāre jussit: their action merely ratified the authority which he already held.

5. fānum, -i, n., shrine, temple.
11. certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. [freq. of cernō], contend, strive.
14. virītīm, adv. [vir], man by man, to each man.
19. mītis, -ē, adj., mild, gentle, kind.
20. item, adv., likewise, also.
21. similītūdō, -inis, f. [similis], likeness, resemblance.
22. con-trahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, tr., draw or bring together.

23. prope continuīs, almost without an interval between.
27. agendi, for action.
armātīs: a participle as a noun; see vocabulary.
30. quod . . . occupāvisset: the subjunctive as in l. 12.
33. quid tibi vīs, what do you mean? How, literally? From what does vīs come?
34. mē vivō, while I am alive; ablatīve absolute.
36. rēgni hērēdem: the kingship had been elective; here was an attempt to create a dynasty.
medium, around the waist.
37. ēlātum: in agreement with eum, to be supplied; a past participle for a coordinate verb, as in 9, 29; translate, carried him out and hurled.
per, down; in l. 41 it means over.

24. nūptiae, -ārūm, f. pl. [nūbō], marriage, wedding.
27. stipō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., pack, crowd; attend, accompany.
30. muliebris, -e, adj. [mulier], of a woman.
32. inter-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, intr., come upon, come in.
35. cōn-sidō, -sidere, -sēdi, -ses-sum, intr., sit down, take one’s seat.
ferōciter, adv. [ferōx], courageously, fiercely, arrogantly.
36. hērēs, -ēdis, m. and f., heir, heiress.
arripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, tr. [ad+rapiō], grasp, seize.

40. in-vehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, 42. scelerātus, -a, -um, adj. [scē-tr., carry in; pass., be carried, lus], wicked, criminal.

**11. Tarquinius Superbus**


Cum jam magna Tarquiniī auctōritās inter Latinōrum

4. Jūdicia capitālium rērum, trials in capital cases.
   cōnsiliīs: these were boards from among the senators which assisted the king with advice in the administration of the courts.

5. bonīs: ablative of separation.

7. domesticīs cōnsiliīs: i.e., Tarquin was the first king to rely for advice solely upon personal friends.

1. cognōmen, -inis, n. [com-+(g) nōmen], cognomen, surname.
2. superbus, -a, -um, adj., haughty, proud; substl., Superbus, -ī, m., the Proud, an epithet applied to the second King Tarquin as a cognomen.
3. diligō, -ligere, -lēxi, -lēctum, tr. [dis-+legō], single out; esteem, love.
   circum-saepio, -saepire, -saepsi, -saeptum, tr., hedge around, encircle, surround.
4. capitālis, -e, adj. [caput], of the head; of the life, capital.
7. domesticus, -a, -um, adj. [domus], of the house; private, personal.


Rēx, auctōritāte inter Latīnōs ita auctā, cum eīs renovāvit foedus quod ā Tullō rēge anteā factum erat. Latīnī nōn repugnāvērunt, quamquam in ēō foedere rēs Rōmāna

14. quidem: with concessive force, it is true, as explained in the note on Her. 346.
20. auctōre Tarquiniō, at the instigation of Tarquinius.
21. Turnō: dative with inimīcī, but to be translated as if genitive.
24. certiōrēs fēcit, informed; how, literally?
31. indicē causā, without a trial; literally, his case unpleaded, ablative absolute.

14. frequēns, -entis, adj., crowded, in large numbers.
17. patientia, -ae, f. [patiēns], patience, endurance.
affectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [frequ. of affīcio], strive after, aim at.
20. auctor, -ōris, m. [augeō], promoter, instigator.
21. dēversōriōm, -i, n. [dēversor, turn aside, lodge], inn, lodging-place.
26. nex, necis, f., death, murder.
28. manifestus, -a, -um, adj., clear, evident, manifest.
31. in-dīctus, -a, -um, adj. (not said), not pleaded, unheard.
34. re-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., fight back, resist, oppose.
superior erat. Mors enim Turnī docēbat potentiam Tarquiniī ac periculum eōrum qui resistēbant.


41. aggressus est: *cum (urbem) is to be supplied as object.*
42. *minimus, youngest; what does *major* mean with reference to age?*
43. *dōnō, by gift.*
44. *ex suīs, of his followers.*
45. *qui ... peteret: a relative clause of purpose.*
46. *interrogandō: the ablative of the gerund may be employed to express cause; observe that *expectandō has a direct object, respōnsum.*
47. *quid pater fierī vellet: for the indirect question consult App. 107.*

41. *minimus, -a, -um, adj. [superl. of parcus], least, smallest, very small; youngest.*
42. *intolerābilis, adj., intolerable, unbearable.*
43. *adhībeō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, tr. [ad +habeō], apply; summon, admit, employ.*
44. *mandātum, -ī, n. [p. part. of mandō], injunction, command.*
45. *tamquam, adv., as if, just as if.*
46. *dē-liberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and instr., ponder, meditate.*
47. *in-ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, instr., walk up and down.*
48. *papāver, -eris, n., a poppy.*
49. *baculum, -ī, n., staff.*
civitatis variis criminibus necavit. Rēs Gabīna ita spoliāta cōnsiliō auxiliōque rēgī Rōmānō sine certāmine gravi tràditur.


Dum haec aguntur, portentum terribile visum est: anguis ex columnā lignae ēlapsus terrōrem fugamque in rēgiā fēcit atque ipsius rēgis pectus ānxisiēs cūris implēvit. Itaque Tarquinius filiōs, Tītum et Arruntem, Delphōs ad clārissimum in terrīs órāculum mittere statuit. Comes eīs additus est L. Jūnius Brūtus, ex Tarquinīā, sorōre rēgis, nātus. Cognōmen ejus hoc modō parātum erat: rēx eōs princīpēs civitātis quōs timēbat interficere solēbat, in quibus frātrem Brūti interficēt. Hic, ut crūdēlitātem rēgis vitāret, consultō stultitiam imitātus bona sua rēgem spoliāre passus est neque...
cognomen Brūtī recusāvit. Is tum igitur ab Tarquiniis ductus est Delphōs, lūdibrium vērius quam comes. Tulit tamen dōnum Apollinī aureum baculum inclūsum in baculō corneō, tamquam effigiem ingenii sui.

Postquam juvenēs Delphōs vēnērunt patrisque mandāta cōnfēcērunt, statuērunt quacerere ex ōrāculō ad quem eōrum rēgnum esset ventūrum. Vōx reddita est: "Imperium summum Rōmae habebit qui vestrum primus, Ō juvenēs, mātrems osculābitur." Tarquiniī, Brūtum contemnentēs, īpsi inter sē iūs mātris osculandae Rōmae sortī permittunt. Brūtus, qui aliō modō ōrāculum interpretātus erat, cecidit terramque osculātus est, scīlicet quod ea communis māter est omnium mortālium. Rediērunt inde juvenēs Rōmam.

76. Brūti: the word is properly an adjective, dull, then as a noun the dullard. With nōmen, urbs, and the like, an explanatory genitive is sometimes used instead of an appositive.

81. ad quem eōrum, etc.: an indirect question; eōrum, like vestrum in l. 83, is a genitive of the whole.

82. esset ventūrum, was destined to come. The direct question would have a future indicative: ad quem nostrum rēgnum veniet? The future indicative in a question of fact is regularly represented in an indirect question by the future active participle with the subjunctive of the verb sum.

85. mātris osculandae: a gerundive construction.

Romae: a locative.

77. lūdibrium, -i, n. [compare lūdus], object of ridicule, mockery.

79. corneus, -a, -um, adj. [cornum, cornel-cherry], of cornel-wood.

effigiēs, acc. -em, f., semblance, effigy.

84. ósculor, -ārī, -ātus sum, tr. [ós-
culum], to kiss.

85. sors, sortis, f., lot, casting of lots.

86. interpreter, -ārī, -ātus sum, tr. [interpret], explain, interpret.

87. scīlicet, adv. [scīre + licet], of course, no doubt, doubtless.

12. Banishment of Tarquinius Superbus

Paulō post Rōmānī, qui jam dūdum superbiam Tarquiniī rēgis atque filiōrum aegrē ferēbant, ita scelere quōdam Sex.

1. jam dūdum ... aegrē ferēbant, had long resented; the use of tenses with jam dūdum is explained in the note on Per. 24.

Ubi nūntīi hārum rērum in castra perlātī sunt, rēx Rōmam 10 perrēxīt. Brūtus adventum rēgis sēnsit flexitque viam. Ita eōdem ferē tempore diversīs itineribus Brūtus Ardeam, Tarquinius Rōmam vēnērunt. Hic portās clausās invēnit; Brūtum liberātōrem urbīs laeta castra accēpērunt exāctique sunt liberī rēgis; duo patrem secūtī exulēs Caere, quae 15 urbs Etrūsca erat; Sextus Tarquinius Gabiōs, tamquam in suum rēgnum, profectus ab ultōribus veterum injūriārum quās ipse intulerat interfectus est.


---

3. ut ... statuerent: a clause of result, App. 96.
8. domō: why no preposition?
13. Hic: to be translated as in 11, 74.
15. quae: the antecedent of quae, Caere, is neuter; but the relative is made to agree in gender with a predicate noun instead of with the antecedent, a common usage.

---

3. familia, -ae, f. [famulus, servant], household establishment, slaves in a household; family.
5. jūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. [jūs], swear, take oath.
6. exercor, -ārī, -ātus sum, tr. [ex+ sacrō], doom, curse.
9. pergo, -ere, perrexī, Perrēctum, intr. [per+regō], go on, proceed.
11. ferē, adv., about, nearly; in general, usually.
14. exigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, tr. [ex+agō], drive out, expel; exact; spend.
17. ultor, -ōris, m. [ulciscor], avenger.
20. ducentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. [duo + centum], two hundred.

diversus, -versa, -versum, adj., turned different ways, opposite.
dūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr. [dūrus], harden; last, endure.
13. Horatius Cocles


Cum hostēs adessent, omnēs in urbem ex agrīs veniunt urbemque ipsam mūniunt praesidūs. Alia loca mūrīs, alia Tiberī objectō vidēbantur tūtā. Pons sublicius tamen iter paene hostibus dedit, nī unus vir fuisset, Horatius Cocles, qui forte ad pontem positus erat. Clusinī repentīnō impetū Janiculum cepērunt atque inde velociter ad flūmen dēcurrēbant. Cocles, cum suōs fugere vidisset, ōrāvit eōs ut manērent et pontem rescinderent: sē impetum hostium, quantum ūnus

Horatius Cocles: Macaulay has celebrated this exploit in one of his Lays of Ancient Rome.

2. nē . . . paterētur, not to permit; object of persuāsit.
3. regnō: ablative of separation.
4. rēs Clusinā = rēs publica Clusina, the state of Clusium.
5. Alia, alia: how are correlative forms of alius translated?
6. Tiberī objectō: ablative absolute; but like mūrīs it expresses the cause or means; translate, because of the interposition of the Tiber, or with the Tiber as a defense.
7. Pons sublicius: this bridge was preserved for centuries, restored doubtless from time to time.
8. nī . . . fuisset Horatius Cocles, had it not been for one man, Horatius Cocles; a condition contrary to fact, App. 120; the proper conclusion is only implied, paene dedit (atque dedisset), almost afforded (and would have afforded).
9. suōs fugere vidisset, had seen his men fleeing. How do you account for the case of suōs and the mood of fugere?
10. sē . . . exceptūrum esse: dependent on a verb of saying implied in the preceding sentence.

quantum, so far as.

3. privō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [privus, privatel, deprive, rob. sudden], sudden, unexpected.
4. ad-eō, adv., to such a degree, so.
5. nī, conj., if not, unless.
6. repentīnus, -a,-um, adj. [repēns, -scindō, -scindere, -scīdi, sudden, unexpected. -scissum, tr., cut down, break down.}
7. ad-eō, adv., to such a degree, so.
8. nī, conj., if not, unless.
posset id facere, exceptūrum esse. Processit inde in primum aditum pontis ipsāque audāciā turbāvit hostēs.


14. posset: subjunctive in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse.
primum aditum = the farther end.
17. genere, factis: ablatives of respect.
prīmam: an adjective denoting a part, App. 85.
in tūtum, to safety; the adjective is used as a noun.
24. agri: genitive of the whole with quantum, as much land as.

14. Secession of the Plebs

Primis temporibus rei publicae liberae magna dissēnsiō orta est inter patrēs et plēbem propter aes aliēnum, quō paene tōta plēbs premēbantur. Crēditōri enim licēbat debi-

1. liberae: the phrase rēs publica means state or commonwealth and implies nothing as to form of government. Rēs publica libera means republic, or free commonwealth.
2. aes aliēnum, “another’s money” is a striking way of denoting debt.

2. aliēnus, -a, -um, adj. [alīus], another’s; out of place; unfavorable; aes aliēnum, debt.
3. premō, -ere, pressi, pressum, tr., press; burden, weigh down.
crēdor, -ōris, m. [crēdō], creditor.
dēbitōr, -ōris, m. [dēbeō], debtor.

Posteā tamen ĵus dē crēditīs pecūniīs crūdēliter, ut anteā, dictum est. Tandem plēbs, cum exercitus, aliō bellō coōrtō, in armīs esset, dēspērātō cōnsulum senātūsque auxiliō, in Sacrum montem sēcessērant. Hic mōns trāns Anīēnem flūmen est, tria ab urbe mīlia passuum. Patrēs arbitrātī nūl-

5. qui magistrātus . . . patēbat, an office which was open only to patricians.

6. postulārent: a collective noun (here plēbs) may take a singular verb, or, if the individuals of the group are thought of, the plural may be used, as here.

8. inter sē, one another.

nē nōmina darent, not to enlist.

10. quoad, so long as. The subjunctive essent is due to the indirect discourse implied in pollicitus est, App. 109.

11. plēbī: cōnslō meaning consult the interest of takes a dative; when meaning consult, ask the advice of, it takes an accusative.

14. ĵus . . . dictum est: with the same meaning as ĵus reddēbātur, l. 4. crēditīs, loaned.

18. arbitrātī: it should not be forgotten that the past participles of some deponent verbs are to be rendered as present.

5. magistrātus, -ūs, m. [magister], magistracy, office; magistrate.

14. crūdēliter, adv. [crūdēlis], cruelty.

17. sacer, -cra, -crum, adj., sacred; subst. sacra, -ōrum, n. pl., sacred rites, religious customs; Mōns Sacer, a hill near Rome.
lam spem nisi in concordia civium reliquam esse, ad plebem misērunt Menēniōm Agrippam, ipsum plēbeium et plēbī cārum. 20

19. concordia, -ae, f. [concors, harmonious], concord, harmony. 20. plēbeius, -a, -um, adj. [plēbs], of the common people, plebeian.

15. Menēniōs Agrippa

Menēnius hoc narrāsse fertur: "Ōlim reliquaes partēs corporis humānī indignābantur quod suā cūrā, suō labōre ac ministeriō ventrī omnia quaerentur, venter in mediō quīetus datis voluptātibus fruerētur; conjūrāvērunt inde nē manūs ad ōs cibum ferrent, nēve ōs datum cibum acciperet, nēve dentēs cōnficerent. Sed dum ventrem famē domāre volunt, ipsa membra totūmque corpus paene periērunt. Inde sēnsērunt ventris quoque ministerium baud iners esse." Ostendit deinde dissēnsiōnem inter partēs corporis similem esse īrae plēbis in patrēs et ita flexīt mentēs hominum.

Concordiā reconciliātā, plēbī permissum est suōs magistrā-
tūs creāre tribūnōs plēbeiōs, qui auxilium plēbī adversus cōnsulēs ferrent.

12. qui . . . ferrent: what kind of clause? Observe the mood. The tribunes at first possessed merely the power to nullify the act of a patrician magistrate in a particular case. In time the authority and prestige of the tribunate were so increased as to render it the most powerful magistracy in the state.

12. tribūnus, -ī, m. [tribus, tribe], tribune, title of a Roman official.

16. LUCIUS QUINCTIUS CINCINNATUS

Posteā, dum tribuni imperium cōnsulāre lēgibus dēfinire cōnantur, L. Quinctius Cincinnātus cōnsul factus est. Ut magistrātum iniit, reprehendit et senātum et plēbem, quod eidem tribūnī etiam atque etiam creātī cīvitātem turbārent. Senātus igitur dēcrēvit magistrātūs continuāri contra rem pūblicam esse. Plēbs tamen cōsdem, quōs anteā, tribūnōs creāvērunt. Patrēs quoque, nē quid cēderent plēbī, Lūcium Quinctium cōnsulem fēcērunt. At is “minimē mīrum est,” inquit, “si nihil auctōritātis, patrēs cōnscripī, habētis apud plēbem. Vōs cam minuitis, qui in continuandīs magistrātibus plēbem imitāmini. Ego mē contra senātūs cōnsultum

1. dēfinire: the laws had not hitherto been put into written form. To reduce them to writing would somewhat diminish the advantage enjoyed by the patrician magistrates who dispensed justice.

2. Ut: here in a temporal sense, when.

5. magistrātūs continuāri: infinitive with subject accusative used together as subject of esse; the English idiom is, for magistrates to be reélected.

rem pūblicam, the general interest, public policy. What does the phrase usually mean?

7. nē quid cēderent plēbī, not to yield anything to the plebeians, i.e., not to be outdone by the plebeians; a clause of purpose.

10. qui imitāmini, by imitating. How, literally?

1. cōnsulāris, -ē, adj. [cōnsul], of a consul, consular.

dē-finiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, tr., limit, define.

3. re-prehendō, -prehendere, -prehendi, -prehēnsum, tr., hold back, seize; censure, rebuke.

5. continuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [continuus], make continuous, hold without an interval.

10. minuō, -ere, minuī, minūtum, tr., diminish, weaken, impair.

11. cōnsultum, -i, n. [cōnsulō], decree.
17. The Gallic Invasion


Galli ingressī urbem nēmini parērunt, diripiunt incenduntque tēctā. Post aliquot diēs, tēstūdine factā, impetum in arcem fēcērunt. At Rōmānī mediō ferē colle restitērunt,

3. nē . . . oppugnārent, not to attack; a noun clause, object of monērent.
5. jūs gentium: the ancient equivalent of our “international law.”
6. prō, in return for, in satisfaction of.
11. Allīnēnse: this day was always regarded as one of ill omen, on which no official assemblies of the people were held.
13. nē clausis quidem, without even closing; remember that the words nē . . . quidem enclose the emphatic word.
15. nēmini: give the list of “special” verbs that govern the dative.
16. tēstūdine: a formation with shields in close array in front and overhead.
17. mediō ferē colle, about the middle of the hill; mediō is an adjective denoting a part, like prīmam, 13, 17.

12. per-fugīō, -fugere, -fugi, —, intr., flee for refuge, flee.
13. quidem, adv., certainly, in fact; to be sure, it is true; nē . . . quidem, not even, not either.
15. parco, -ere, peperci, parsūrus, intr. (takes dative), spare, treat with forbearance.
16. tēstūdō, -dinis, f. [tēsta, shell, hard covering], tortoise; covered column (a military term).

    Camillus: he had previously taken the Etruscan city of Veii after a long siege, but had subsequently been exiled on the charge of having unfairly divided the spoils of that place.
23. solūtōs somnō, while sleeping; how, literally?
    animī: plural; compare English “their spirits.”
    in diēs, day by day.
27. placuit: the subject is the infinitive clause Camillum arcessī.
28. cōnsulī: passive infinitive; the meaning was explained in the note on 14, 11.
29. cortice: a float made of bark.
    secundō Tiberī, down the Tiber; literally, the Tiber being favorable, ablative absolute; in like manner adversō flūmine means up stream.
31. dictus est = creātus est.
Interim arx Rōmae Capitoliumque in ingenti periculō fuit. Nocte enim Gallī, praemissō milite qui viam temptāret, tantō silentiō in summum évāserunt ut nōn sōlum custōdēs falle-

Sed famēs jam utrumque exercitum urgēbat, Gallōs pestilentia etiam. Diem ex diē Rōmānī frūstrā auxilium ab dictātōre expectabant. Postrēmō mīlle pondō aurī cum Gallīs pactī sunt ut obsidiōnem relinquenter. Huic reī per sē turpissimae indignitās addīta est; nām pondera ab Gallīs allāta sunt inīqua. Rōmānīs recūsantibus gladius a Brennō, rēge

32. fuit: the verb often agrees in number with the nearest part of a compound subject.
33. temptāret, try, reconnoiter.
34. évāserunt, made their way up.
35. nōn fallerent: App. 96.
36. Diem ex diē, day after day.
37. mille pondō aurī: a peculiar phrase, meaning a thousand pounds of gold. Translate, they bargained with the Gauls for a thousand pounds of gold that they should abandon the siege.
38. pactī sunt: from paciscor.
39. per sē, of itself; to be taken closely with turpissimae.
40. pondera, weights; i.e., for the scales.
41. sprecessps, -cipitis, adj. [præ, before, +caput], head foremost, headlong.
42. urgeō, -ère, ursi, —, tr., press, press hard, beset, urge.
43. pondō, adv. [compare pondus], by weight, in weight.
44. paciscor, pacisci, pactus sum, intr., bargain, agree.
45. inīquus, -a, -um, adj. [in++aequus], uneven; unfair, unjust.

34. silentiō, -i, n. [sileō, be still], silence.
35. custōs, -ōdis, m. and f., guard, guardian, keeper.
36. ānser, -ēris, m., goose.
37. ēgregius, -a, -um, adj. [ē+grex, flock], distinguished, eminent.
38. clangōr, -ōris, m., noise.
39. prō-pellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, tr., drive forward; drive off, repel, rout.
Gallōrum, ponderī additus est cum hīs verbīs, "vae victīs." Sed priusquām rēs perfecta est, dictātor pervēnit auferriāque aurum dē mediō et Gallōs summovēri jussit. Cum illī dicent sē pactōs esse, negat eam pactōnem valēre, quae, postquam ipse dictātor creātus esset, injussū suō facta esset; tum dēnuntiāt Gallī ut sē ad proelium parent.


47. vae victīs, woe to the vanquished.
51. creātus esset, facta esset: subjunctives in subordinate clauses in indirect discourse.
53. viā Gabīnā, on the road to Gabii.
54. Rōmulus: predicate nominative.
55. servātām: to be translated by a relative clause.
57. plēbem agitārent ut . . . migrārent, were instigating the people to migrate; migrārent takes a subject supplied from plēbem; how is the plural verb to be accounted for?
59. Centuriō . . . mōvit: this incident illustrates the very common tendency of the Romans to find omens in chance utterances.
62. et . . . et, both . . . and.

47. vae, interj., woe!
49. summoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, tr. [sub + moveō], drive away, remove.
50. pactio, -ōnis, f. [paciscor], agreement, bargain.
52. dē-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., announce, proclaim; give warning.
57. agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [freq. of agō], drive; impel, instigate. ruīna,-ae, f. [ruō, fall in ruins], ruin, downfall; pl., ruins.
59. opportūnē, adv. [opportūnus], fitly, opportunely.
61. signifer, -i, m. [signum + ferō], standard-bearer.
optimē, superl. adv. [optimus], best.
62. ōmen, -inis, n., omen.
63. con-clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr., cry out together, cry out loudly, exclaim. circum-fundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, tr., pour around.
18. Gaius Fabricius

Rōmāni ā Pyrrhō, rēge Ėpīrī, proelīō superātī lēgātōs Tarrentum ad eum dē redimendis captīvis misērunt. Inter lēgātōs Rōmānōs erat C. Fabricius, vir bonus et bellō ēgregius, sed admodum pauper. Pyrrhus, qui cum Rōmānis pācem facere volēbat, lēgātīs magna dōna obtulit, sī Rōmānīs pācem suādērent. Quamquam haec omnia sprēta sunt, rēx tamen captīvōs dīcitur sine pretiō Rōmam mīsisse.

Pyrrhus Fabriciī virtūtem admirātus illī sēcrētō quārtam etiam rēgnī sui partem obtulit sī patriam dēsereret sēcumque vīveret; cui Fabricius ita respondit: "Sī mē virum bonum jūdicās, cūr mē vīs corrumpere? sīn vērō malum, cūr meam amīcitiam cupīs?" Annō interjectō, omnī spē pācis inter Pyrrhum et Rōmānōs conciliandae ablātā, Fabricius cōnsul factūs contrā eum missus est. Cumque vīcēna castra ipse et rēx habērent, medicus rēgis nocte ad Fabricium vēnit eīque

---

1. Pyrrhō: Pyrrhus came into Italy at the invitation of the people of Tarentum as their ally in war with the Romans. In a more general way he stood as the champion of the Greek cities of southern Italy against Roman aggression.

5. si ... suādērent, if they would urge peace upon the Romans; the subjunctive is due to the informal indirect discourse, Pyrrhus said that he would make large presents, if, etc.

12. pācis ... conciliandae: genitive of the gerundive construction.

---

2. redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, tr. [red-+emō], buy back, ransom, buy up.
4. ad-modum, adv., fully, very, quite.
pauper, -eris, adj., poor, of small means.
6. suādeo, -ēre, suāsi, suāsum, tr. and intr. [compare suāvis], advise, recommend, urge.
7. pretium, -ī, n., price, value; reward, recompense.
8. sēcrētō, adv. [sēcrētus], separately, secretly, in private.
11. jūdicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [jū-ex], judge, decide.
corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, tr. [com-+rumpō, burst], ruin; corrupt.
sīn, conj. [sī-ne], but if.
vērō, adv. [vērus], in fact, certainly; but in fact, however.
12. interjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, tr. [inter+jaciō], throw between, interpose.
15. medicus, -ī, m. [medicus, medical], physician, surgeon.
pollicitus est, si praemium sibi próposuisset, sē Pyrrhum ve-
nēnō necātūrum. Hunc Fabricius vīncetum ad Pyrrhum
remīsit atque eum certiōrem fēcit quae medicus pollicitus
esset. Tum rēx admīrātus eum dīxisse fertur: “Ille est
Fabricius, qui difficilius ab honestāte quam sōl ā suō cursū
20 potest āvertī.”

Fabricius cum apud Pyrrhum rēgem lēgātus esset, cum
Cīnēā, lēgātō Pyrrhī, sermōnem contulit. Hic dīxit quendam
philosophum esse Athēnīs, quī diceret omnia quae facerēmus
ad voluptātem esse referenda. Tum Fabricium exclāmāsse 25
ferunt: “Utinam id hostibus nostrīs persuādeāmus, quō facil-
us vincī possint, cum sē voluptātibus dederint!” Nihil
magis ab ejus vītā aliēnum erat quam voluptās et lūxus.
Tōta ejus suppellex argentea ex salīnō ūnō cōnsūtūbat et ex

16. sē . . . necātūrum esse: a verb of “promising” may take either a
future infinitive with subject accusative, as here, or simply a present
infinitive without subject.

18. quae medicus pollicitus esset, what the physician had promised;
indirect question depending on certiōrem fēcit.

19. fertur, is said, the same meaning as in 15, 1; in l. 26 occurs the
active fērunt, they say.

23. Cīnēā: for the declension of this Greek word see the note on Aeneās,
1, 4. Cineas was famed for his powers of persuasion and was Pyrrhus’
favorite adviser. The king was reported to have said that he had taken
more cities through the eloquence of Cineas than by force of arms.

sermōnem contulit, engaged in conversation.

Hic, the latter.

25. ad voluptātem, to the standard of pleasure.

26. Utinam id hostibus nostrīs persuādeāmus, would that we might
persuade our enemies of this; the accusative id replaces an infinitive clause,
id vērum esse. The optative subjunctive persuādeāmus and the clause of
purpose following are explained in App. 93 and 95.

28. ab . . . vītā: with aliēnum; we say “foreign to.”

18. re-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mis-
sum, tr., send back; relax, discon-
tinue.

20. difficīliter, adv. [difficilis], with
difficulty.

honestās, -ātis, f. [honor], honesty, honor.

24. philosophus, -i, m., philosopher.

28. lūxus, -ūs, m., luxury, splendor.

29. suppellex, -lectilis, f., domestic
utensils, furniture.

argenteus, -a, -um, adj. [argentum],
of silver.

salīnum, -ī, n. [sāl], salt-cellar.
patellā ad ūsum sacrōrum, quae corneō pediculō sustinēbātur. Cēnābat ad focum rādicēs et herbās, cum lēgātī Samnītium ad eum vēnērunt māgnamque eī pecūniam obtulērunt; quibus sic respondit: "Quamdiū cupiditātibus imperāre poterō, nihil mihi deerit; vōs autem pecūniam eīs quī eam cupiunt dōnāte."

Fabricius omnem vitam in glōriōsā paupertātē exēgit, adeōque inops dēcessit ut unde dōs fīliārum darētur nōn relinqueret. Senātus patris sibi partēs sūmpsit et, datīs ex aerāriō dōtibus, fīliās collocāvit.

30. patella, -ae, f. [dim. of patina], a small pan, a small dish.
31. cēnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr. and tr. [cēna], dine, dine upon.
32. focus, -i, m., fireplace, hearth.
33. rādix, -dicis, f., root, radish; lower part, foot, base (of a mountain).
34. dē-sum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, intr., be wanting, be lacking.
35. glōriōsus, -a, -um, adj. [glōria], glorious, famous, renowned.
36. inops, -opis, adj. [in-+ops], poor, destitute.
37. aerārium, -i, n. [aes], treasury.
38. decedo, -cedere, -cessi, -cessum, intr., withdraw, depart; die.
39. colloco, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [com-+locō, place], station, arrange; give in marriage.

19. Marcus Atilius Regulus

Cum prīmō Punicō bellō Rōmānī contrā Carthagīnīēnsēs dē imperiō Siciliae contenderent, M. Atilius Rōgulus, cōnsul Rōmānus, nāvāli pugnā classem Pūnicam superāvit. Proelīō factō, Hannō, dux Carthagīnīēnsis, ad eum vēnit simulāns sē

Deinde Rēgulus et collēga, L. Mānlius Vulsō, in Āfricam prūmī Rōmānōrum ducum trānsiērunt. Ibi, multīs castellīs expugnātīs magnāque praedā captā, Tūnētem occupāvērunt, 20 quae urbs decem tantum mīlibus passuum ā Carthāgine aberat. Vulsō in Italiam cum parte mīlitum re-dīit, collēgā ad agrōs vāstandōs relictō. Dum Rēgulus ita hiemem in

5. rē vērā, in fact, in reality, as in 7, 11.
6. advenīrent: anticipatory subjunctive with dum, until, App. 100.
7. oportēre: the infinitive is due to the indirect discourse; its subject is another infinitive with subject accusative, Rēgulum . . . facere.
8. in, in the case of.
9. Poenīs: Poenī and Carthāginiēnsēs are used of the same people, the former referring to their Phoenician origin, the latter derived from the name of their chief city.
13. pār parī, like for like, as good as they sent.
15. ex animō, sincerely; literally, from his heart.
17. nōn convēnit, no agreement was reached; convēnit is used impersonally.
21. mīlibus: ablative of degree or measure of difference; what part of speech is the plural of mīle?
11. callidus, -a, -um, adj. [callēo, be callous, be skilled], shrewd, adroit.
12. nihilum, -i, n. [ne + hilum, a shred], nothing; esp. in the abl. with a compar., e. g. nihilō minus, none the less.
13. conveniens, gen., -entis, adj. [pr. part. of conveniō], agreeing, appropriate.
14. gravitās, -ātis, f. [gravis], heaviness; importance; dignity.
18. collēga, -ae, m., colleague.
Āfricā agit, vīlicus in agellō septem jūgerum, quem Rēgulus cōnsul habēbat, mortuus est; occasiōnem nactus mercennārius, ablātō rūsticō īnstrumentō, aufūgit. Ita periculum erat nē, désertō agrō, alimenta uxōrī Rēguli ac liberīs deessent. Dicitur litterīs ā cōnsulibus petisse ut sībī successor mitterētur. At senātus agrum colī públicē et alimenta conjugī ejus ac liberīs praebēri rēsque quās āmiserat redimī jussit.

Īnsequenti anno Rēgulus, arbitrātus Carthāgiēnsēs jam sē dēdere parātōs esse, ad colloquium eōs invitāvit. Laetī vēnērunt, ut dē pāce agerent. Sed cum postulāta Rēguli audīvissent, cōnstituērunt condicionēs tam dūrās recūsāre bellumque renovāre.

Eō ferō tempore Lacedaemonius quīdam, nōmine Xanthippus, reī militāris perītissimus, Carthaginem cum conductīs vēnit. Carthāgiēnsibus celeriter persuāsit ut sē ducēm facerent. Quō factō fortūna mūtāta est. Nam nōn sōlum

26. nē ... deessent: the noun clause is used with perīculum erat exactly as with a verb of fearing, App. 99, b; observe that nē is to be translated that.

27. uxōrī: a dative with dēsum, like mihi, 18, 34.

28. rei: objective genitive with perītissimus.
exercitum Rōmānum vīcērunt sed etiam Rēgulum imperā-
tōrem cēpērunt.

Paucis post annīs, cum iterum dē pāce agere cōnstituissent, Rēgulum cum lēgātīs Rōmam mīsērunt quī Rōmānīs pācem suādēret et dē commūtandīs captīvīs ageret; jūre jūrandō autem adstrictus est ut, nisi dē captīvīs impetrāret, redīret 45 ipse Carthāginem. Is, cum Rōmam vēnisset, ēgit aliter ac Poenī mandāverant. Nam senātūrī suāsīt nē pāx cum Poenīs fieret; illōs enim frāctōs tot cāsibus spēm nūllam habēre; reddī captīvōs negāvit esse �HQile; adulēscentēs esse et bonōs ducēs, sē jam cōnfectum senectūte; dixit etiam malum ex-

42. Paucis post annīs: an ablative of degree of difference with post; we have also had post paucōs annōs.

43. Rōmānīs . . . suādēret: translated in the note on 18, 5.

44. jūre jūrandō . . . adstrictus est ut . . . redīret, bound himself by an oath to return; because of the implied indirect discourse (he said he would return), the subordinate clause, nisi . . . impetrāret, has the subjunctive.

46. ac, than, a meaning explained in the note on Arg. 320.

48. illōs . . . habēre: dependent on a verb of “saying” implied in the preceding sentence.

49. reddī captīvōs: for the infinitive clause as subject of esse, see the note on 16, 5. Why is útile neuter?

52. eō auctōrē, by his advice, ablative absolute.

53. ut captīvus, as a prisoner; and so not the equal of free Romans.

54. ā sē remōvit, shunned.

44. com-mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., change, exchange.

45. ad-stringō, -stringere, -strīnxī, -strictum, tr., bind to, bind.

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr. [in + patrō, perform], gain, gain one’s request.

49. útīlis, -e, adj. [ūtor], useful, ex-

pedient.

50. senectūs, -ūtis, f. [senex], old age.

exemplum, -ī, n., example, preced-
dent.

53. retineō, -tīnēre, -tinui, -tentum, tr. [re-+ teneō], restrain, retain.
20. Hannibal

Carthaginiensis post primum Punicum bellum imperium opèisque in Hispànià diligenter auxèrunt. Dux hujus operis Hamilcar erat, qui imperàtor prùmò bellò fuerat atque indig-nàbàtur quod Carthàgò eò bellò Siciliàm Sàrdiniàmque ámìserat.


---

6. annòs novem nátus, at the age of nine; how, literally?
patre incitante, at the instigation of his father, ablative absolute.
8. patri: dative with similis, which sometimes takes the genitive.
10. párendum, imperandum: accusative of the gerund in apposition with rès.
12. ei successor, successor to him. Hasdrubal was a brother-in-law of Hannibal.
13. alìum quemquam, any other.
14. militibus: dative with the compound praeficere, of which quemquam is the direct object.
aliò duce, under another leader, ablative absolute.
15. plùs cònfìdèbant aut audèbant, displayed more confidence or daring.
Plùrínum audàciàe, the utmost boldness; substantive use of the adjective with dependent genitive of the whole.

---

6. in-citò, -âre, -âvì, -âtum, tr. [citò, rouse], rouse, incite, instigate.
8. vultus, -ús, m., face, features, expression.
11. aptus, -a, -um, adj., fit, adapted.
15. plùs, adv. [n. acc. of plùs], more.
16. capessò, -ere, —, —, tr. [capio], seize (eagerly), undertake, undergo.
17. fatígò, -âre, -ávì, -átum, tr., weary, tire, fatigue.
vincī poterat. Calōris ac frīgoris patientia erat pār. Cibī
modus pōtīōnisque dēsideriō nātūrālī, nōn voluptātē, finitus
est; tempora vigiliārum somnīque nec diē nec nocte discri-
mināta sunt; id quod gerendīs rēbus supererat quiētī datum est;
ea neque molī strātō neque silentiō accessītā est; multī saepe
eum militāri sagulō opertum humī jacentem inter custōdiās
stātiōnēsque mīlitum cōnspexērunt. Vestītus nihil inter
aequālēs excellēns; arma atque equī cōspiciēbantur. Equi-
tum peditumque idem longē prīmus erat; prīnceps in proelī-
um ibat, ultimus commissō proelīō excēdēbat.

Hasdrubale interfectō, Hannibal, nātus annōs vīgintī sep-
tem imperātor creātus, cōnstituit Rōmānōs vincere, ut Car-
thāginem in prīstinam auctōritātem restitueret. Prīnum
obsidiōne urbem Saguntīnōrum cēpit, quī sociī Hispāniēnsēs
Rōmānōrum erant. Deinde per montēs Pyrēnaeōs atque
Alpēs iter difficīle in Italian fēcit. Ibi Rōmānōs exercitus
superāvit ad Tīcinum flūmen, ad Trebiam, ad Trasumennum
lacum, in Āpuliā ad Cannās. In Āpuliām vēnerat eō cōn-

36. ut . . . sollicitāret: a clause explaining cōnsiliō.
37. amīcitiam Hannibalīsecūtī sunt, made friends with Hannibal.

36. sollicitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., disturb, tempt, incite.
40. dé-vincō, -vincere, -vici, -vīc-
tum, tr., conquer completely.
sēdecim, indecl. num. [sex+decem], sixteen.

21. QUINTUS FABIUS MAXIMUS


2. num: this word may introduce indirect questions as well as direct; with indirect questions it should be translated whether.

públicō cōnsiliō, with the sanction of the government.
8. utrum, whichever; literally, which of the two.
11. quibus animīs . . . īsdem: here, as often in Latin, the antecedent animīs is placed in the relative clause, with a demonstrative standing after; it is best to translate as if we had īsdem animīs gerēmus quibus accipimus.

6. légātiō, -ōnis, f. [lēgō, appoint as deputy], embassy, legation.

Ratiō Fabīāna bellī gerendī, propter quam Fabīō cognōmen Cōncētātor datum est, Rōmānīs grāta nōn erat. Cum Minucius, absente dictātōre, aliquantum victōriae forte adeptus esset, lēx lāta est ut jūs magistrī equitum et dictātōris aequāretur. Injurīum tamen Fabius aequō animō tulit, satis fidēns haudquāquam cum imperīi jūre artem imperandi aequātam esse. Legiōnēs inter dictātōrem et magistrum dividēsunt. Dēnique Minucius, temere proeliō commissō, a Fabīō servātus est. Tum sub imperium dictātōris rediit

20. ūnī, alone; a not infrequent meaning of ūnus.
21. pecūniā redāctā, with the money realized, ablative absolute.
25. aliquantum victōriae, somewhat of a victory.
26. ut ... aequāretur: a noun clause defining lēx.
27. aequō animō, with composure. satis fidēns, quite convinced.
31. a Fabīō: to be taken with servātus est.

13. clādēs, clādis, -ium, f., disaster, misfortune; defeat.
16. dé-certō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr., fight it out, fight a decisive battle.
17. fortitūdō, -dinis, f. [fortis], fortitude, bravery.
18. invidia, -ae, f. [invidus, envious], envy, jealousy.
21. vendō, -dēre, -didi, -ditum, tr. [vēnum, sale, +dō], sell.
redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, tr. [red- +agō], force back; bring under, reduce; collect.
24. cōncētātor, -ōris, m. [cūnctor], a delayer; as a proper noun, bestowed informally as a cognomen on Q. Fabius Maximus.
25. aliquantum, -i, n. [aliquantus, some], something.
adipiscor, adipisci, adeptus sum, tr. [ad+apiscor, reach], attain, obtain, win.
26. aequō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [aequus], make equal, equalize.
28. fidō, -ere, fisus sum, intr., trust, rely upon.
30. temere, adv., rashly, heedlessly.
legionēsque restituit et Fabium patrem appellāvit. Rōmae, ut est perlāta fāma ejus reī, omnēs Maximum laudibus ad caelum ferēbant.

35 Multis post annīs, aliis rêbus interim gestīs, Fabius mortuus est. Quamquam alius dux prōmptior ad proelium Hannibalem dēnique dēvīcit, certum tamen est Fabium rem Rōmānam cōnsiliō cūntandī restituisse.

32. ut, when.
33. laudibus fērēbant, extolled.
37. rem Rōmānam, Roman fortunes.

36. prōmptus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of prōmō, bring forth], ready, prompt.
38. cūntor, -āri, -ātus sum, intr., delay, hesitate.

22. Publius Cornelius Scipio Africanus

P. Cornēlius Scīpiō filius erat cōnsulis qui exercituī Rōmānō in proeliō ad Tīcinum flūmen praefuerat. Fāma est patrem, cum in ēo proeliō vulnerātus ab hostibus circumvenīrētur, ā filīō septendecim nātō annōs servātum esse.


1. exercituī: dative with the compound verb praefuerat.
2. Fāma est, there is a story; governing indirect discourse, patrem . . . servātum esse.
6. Cum: of the three possible meanings, when, since, although, which one suits the context?

4. septendecim, indecl. num. [septem+decem], seventeen.
8. summa, -ae, f. [summus], chief place, supremacy; sum, total.
ubi conjurātī erant, strictōque gladiō eōs coēgit jūrāre sē numquam rem pūblicam dēsertūrōs esse.

Postea cum aedilitātem peteret, tribūnī plēbis resistēbant, quod nōndum ad petendum lēgitima aetās esset. Tum Scīpiō “sī mē,” inquit, “ōmnēs Quīrītēs aedilem facere volunt, satis annōrum habeō.” Aedilis magnō favōre populi nūllō tribūnō resistente créātus est.

Quattuor post annīs pater Scīpiōnis et patruus, qui bellum in Hīspāniā gesserant, intrā diēs trīgintā cecidērunt. Comitātis ēdictīs ad imperātorem creandum omnēs seniōrēs imperium Hīspāniēnse accipere nōlēbant; tum subitō P. Cornēlius Scīpiō, quattuor et vīgintī annōs nātus, professus est sē petere et in superiōre locō unde cōnspicī posset, cōnstitit. Deinde ad unum omnēs P. Scīpiōni imperium esse in Hīspāniā jussērunt. Postea tamen civēs ob aetātem imperātōris novī dubitāre incipiēbant num rēctē fēcissent. Scīpiō, hōc animadversō, cōntiōnem habuit et tam graviter dissērēvit ut animōs rūrsus excitāret omnēsque certā spē implēret.

14. quod . . . esset: what difference is there between the indicative and the subjunctive with quod causal?

petendum: peto is the technical term for “seek office,” “be a candidate.”

23. unde cōnspicī posset: a clause of purpose introduced by a relative adverb.

24. P. Scīpiōni imperium esse, that P. Scipio should have the command; Scīpiōni is a dative of possession.

26. num: see note on 21, 2.

11. conjurātī, -ōrum, m. pl. [pf. part. of conjūrō, conspire], conspirators.

13. aedilitās, -ātis, f. [aedilis], the office of an aedile, aedileship.

14. lēgitimus, -a, -um, adj. [lēx], fixed by law, legal.

15. aedilis, aedilis, -ium, m., aedile, title of a Roman magistrate.

16. favor, -ōris, m. [faveō], favor, good-will.

18. patruus, -ī, m. [pater], a father’s brother, uncle.

20. senior, gen. -ōris, adj. [compar. of senex], older; subst., m. pl., the older men, the elders.

22. profiteor, -ēri, -fessus sum, tr. [pro + fateor, confess], declare publicly, profess, avow.

26. rēctē, adv. [rēctus], straight; right, properly.

27. cōntiō, -ōnis, f. [compare come tand veniō], a public assembly; a speech.

dis-serō, -serere, -serui, -sertum, intr. [serō, join], discourse, argue.

Scīpiō, receptā Hispāniā, glōriam cōnsiciendī belli spectāre coepit. Cōnstituit prius conciliāre rēgēs Āfrōs, Syphācem et Masinissam, quī sociī Carthāgīniēnsium erant. Syphāx colloquium cum duce Rōmānō postulāvit. Scīpiō ab Carthāgīne Novā prefectus forte invectus est in rēgium portum eō ipsō tempore quō Hasdrubal, dux Carthāgīniēnsis, quī Hispāniā pulsus erat. Rōmānus et Carthāgīniēnsis, quamquam hostēs erant, ā Syphāce in hospitium invitātī eōdem lectō accubue-

31. amīcitīās: translate by the singular. The plural is employed because several nations are involved.
33. in, to, towards.
41. subsidiō Carthāgīniēnsibus: datives of purpose and reference, App. 53, 54.
50. in hospitium, to be his guests.

32. mānsuētūdō, -inis, f. [mānsuē-tus, mild], mildness, gentleness, clemency.
33. comitās, -ātis, f. [comis, courteous], courteousness, affability.
38. re-mūneror, -āri, -ātus sum, tr., repay, reward.
39. quadringentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. [quattuor+centum], four hundred.
40. avunculus, -ī, m. [avus], a (maternal) uncle.
43. recipiō, -cipere, -cipēri, -ceptum, tr. [re+-capiō], take back, regain; accept, receive; sē recipere, to recover oneself, to withdraw, to retreat.
50. lectus, -ī, m., couch, bed.

Posteā iter longum per Hispāniam fēcit, ut cum Masinissā quoque colloquerētur, quem comitāte atque majestāte facile conciliāvit. Numida grātiās ēgit quod Scīpiō frātris filium remīsisset dixitque sē velle atque amicitiā populī Rōmāni esse; Rōmānōs, sī Scīpiōnem ducem in Africam mitterent, brevī tempore Carthāginem captūrōs esse. Scīpiō, fidē datā acceptāque, in castra rediit atque mox Rōmam profectus est.

Cum iī cōnsul ingenti favōre factus esset, Sicilia eī prōvincia dēcrēta est permissumque ut in Africam trānsīret. Dum in Siciliā bellum parat, Rōmam ab inimicīs ejus nūntiātum est imperātōrem exercitumque Syrācūsārum amoenitāte licentiāque corrumpī. Lēgātīs ā senātū Syrācūsās ad haec cognōscenda missī, Scīpiō mīlitēs in terrā dēcurrentēs, classem in portū simulācrum nāvālis pugnæ ēdentem, armamentāria, horrea, bellī alium apparātum ostendit; tantaque admirātiō lēgātōs cēpit ut satis crēderent aut illō duce atque

57. in fidē atque amicitiā, under the friendly protection, a loose sort of alliance between the Roman government and less civilized peoples.

62. permissum (est), permission was given; the noun clause ut ... trānsīret is subject of permissum est.

63. Rōmam: accusative of the place to which. What suggests the idea of motion?

64. dēcurrentēs, drilling, maneuvering.

65. satis crēderent, were quite convinced.

51. in-sum, -esse, -fui, intr., be in, be upon.
55. colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum, intr. [com-+loquor], converse, confer.
56. majestās, -ātis, f. [major], dignity, majesty.
57. amoenitās, -ātis, f. [amoenus, charming], pleasantness, charm.
58. licentia, -ae, f. [licēns, free], freedom, license; boldness.
63. simulācrum, -i, n. [simulō], likeness, semblance.
65. armamentārium, -i, n. [arma], arsenals, armory.
68. horreum, -i, n., storehouse, granary.
69. apparātus, -ūs, m. [apparō, prepare], apparatus, equipment.
exercitū vincī Carthaginīiensēs aut nūllō aliō posse. Senātus igitur cēnsuit ut Scipió quam prīnum in Afrīcam trānsīret.

Scipiónī in Afrīcam adveniēntī Masinissa sē conjūnxit cum parvā manū equitum. Syphāx, qui ā Rōmānīs ad Poenōs dēfēcerat, captūs est Rōmanamque missus. Dēnique Carthagīniēnsēs, salūte dēspērātā ob multās victōriās Scipiónīs, Hannibalem ex Italīā revocāvērunt.

Frendēns gemēnsque ac vix ā lacrimīs temperāns dīcitur lēgātōrum verba audīsse. Respexit saepe Italiae lītora, sē accūsāns quod nōn victōrem exercitum statim ab Cannēnsī pugnā Rōmam duxisset. Zamam vēnit, quae urbs quīnque diērum iter ab Carthagīne abest. Inde praemissī speculātōrēs exceptī sunt ab custōdibus Rōmānīs et ad Scipiónem dēductī. Ille autem jussit eōs per castra circumdūcēt et ad Hannibalem dīmisit.


Pāx Carthagīniēnsibus data est eīs condicionibus quae

---

72. quam prīnum, as soon as possible.
89. convēnisset: impersonal, as in 19, 17.
90. dēcernendum esse, the matter must be decided; impersonal passive.
93. eīs . . . quae . . . facerent, such terms as made; quae . . . facerent is a clause of result introduced by a relative pronoun.

77. re-vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., call back, recall.
78. (frendō, -ere), only in pr. part., intr., gnash the teeth.
gemō, -ere, gemui, —, intr., groan, lament.
temperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [tempus], restrain, abstain from, refrain from.
79. litus, litoris, n., seashore, beach.
84. circum-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr., lead around.
87. con-gredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, intr. [com+gradior, step], come together, meet.
88. mútuus, -a, -um, adj. [mūtō], mutual.
dē-figo, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, tr., fasten down; strike motionless, stupefy.
Rōmānōs suae partis orbis terrārum dominōs facerent. Pāce terrā marīque partā, Scipió exercitū in nāvēs impositō Rō-

mam prefectus est. Per Italiam laetam pāce nōn minus qua

m victōriā iter fēcit. Nōn urbēs modo ad habendōs honōrēs effusae sunt, sed agrestium etiam turba viās obsidē-

bat. Triumphō omnium clārissimō urbem est inventus cog-

nōmenque Africānum sibi sūmpsit.

95. terrā marique, by land and sea; locative ablatives.

98. effusae sunt: translate in the active voice, poured out.

95. pario, -ere, peperi, partum, tr., bring forth, give birth to, produce.

98. agrestis, -e, adj. [ager], of the country; subst. agrestis, agrestis, -ium, m., a countryman, a peasant.

99. triumphus, -i, m., a triumphal procession, triumph.

23. Gaius Marius

C. Marius humilī locō nātus, prīma stipendia in Hispāniā duce Scipione fēcit. Imprimīs Scipioni ob ēgregiam virtūtem cārus erat; Scipio enim dīxit, sī quid sibi accidisset, rem pūblicam nūllum alium successōrem Mariō meliōrem in-

ventūram esse. Quā laude excitātus Marius spīritūs dignōs rēbus quās posteā gessit concēpit.

Posteā lēgātus fuit Q. Metellī, qui bellum in Numidiā contra Jugurtham rēgen gerēbat. Rōmam missus Metellum apud populum incūsāvit, quod bellum dūceret; sī sē con-

1. locō: the ablative of locus in the sense of station needs no preposition.

prīma stipendia fēcit, saw his first service.

2. Scipioni: the younger Scipio, the destroyer of Carthage.

6. rēbus: the ablative is regularly governed by dignus and its opposite indignus.

9. sī sē, etc.: dependent on a verb of “saying” implied in incūsāvit; with captūrum esse, sē is to be supplied as subject.

2. imprimīs, adv. [in+abl. pl. of primus], especially, chiefly.

5. spīritus, -ūs, m. [spirō, breathe], breath; spirit, pride, ambition, arrogance.

6. concipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr. [com+-capiō], take hold of; conceive.

Marius iterum cōnsul creātus in Galliam profectus est, ubi vīcit Teutonēs, gentem Germānicam, quī cum Cimbrīs novās sēdēs quaerēbant. Cum Teutonī vallem flūmenque medium tenērent, militēsque Rōmānī, quibus aquae nūlla cōpia erat, aquam flāgitārent, Marius "virī," inquit, "estis; ēn, illic aquam habēitis." Mīlitēs ita concitātī tam ācriter pugnāvērunt ut ducenta milia hostium caederentur et nōnāgintā caperentur.

İnequentī annō cum Marius contra Cimbrōs in Italiā castra habēret, illī légātōs ad eum mīserunt qui agrōs sibi et

18. quibus ... erat = quī ... habēbant; what kind of dative is quibus?

13. quaestor, -ōris, m. [for quaesitor, compare quaerō], quaestor, a Roman magistrate connected with state finances.

19. flāgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., demand urgently, demand.

ēn, interj., behold! see!

illīc, adv. [ille], there, yonder.

21. nōnāgintā, indecl. num., ninety.
frātribus postulārent; Teutonum enim clādem ignōrābant. 25
Cum quaereret Marius quōs illī frātrēs dicerent, Teutonēs
nōmināvērunt; tum rīdēns Marius “omittite,” inquit, “frā-
trēs; tenent hī acceptam ā nōbīs terram atque in perpetu"
menēbunt.” Proelīō commissō, Cimbri caesi sunt. In ipsā
pugnā Marius duās cohortēs Camerītium, quī mīrā virtūte
vīm Cimbrorum sustinebant, contra lēgēm civitātē dōnāvit.
Dē quā rē posteā reprehēnsus sē excūsāvit, quod inter
armōrūm strepitum verba jūris civīlis exaudire nōn potuisset.
Marius, quī semper factiōnem populārem in rē pūblicā
secūtus erat, cum senēsceret, invidēre coepit Bullae,
qua re postea reprehēsus sē excūsavit, quod inter
armōrūm strepitum verba jūris civīlis exaudire nōn potuisset.
Marius, qui semper factionem populi
in re publica secutus
erat, cum senesceret, invidere
copit. Itaque, cum Sulla in cōnsulātū bellō Mithridā-
ticō praefectus esset, tribūnus quīdam lēge imperium
Sullae abrogāvit Mariōque bellum dētulit. Quā rē commōtus
Sulla, qui ex Italia nōndum excesserat, Rōmam cum exercitū
rediit et urbe occupātā tribūnūm interfēcit Mariōque
fugāvit. Marius aliquamduī in palūde latuit; paulō post
repertus, injectō in collum lōrō, Minturnās raptus est et in

26. quōs . . . dicerent, whom they meant by “brothers.”
31. contrā lēgēm: Roman citizenship was normally the gift of
the senate.
32. sē excūsāvit, quod, offered as an excuse, that, etc. There is no verb
of “saying” here, yet we have the subjunctive in potuisset. Why?
34. in rē pūblicā, in politics.
36. Sulla, bellō: what would be the cases of these words if the compound
verb, praefectus esset, were in the active voice?
42. injectō . . . lōrō, with a rope, etc., ablative absolute.
27. nōminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [nōmen], call by name, mention.
31. dōnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [dōnum], present, bestow.
33. streitus, -ūs, m. [strepō, make
a noise], noise, uproar, confusion.
  ex-audiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., hear clearly, hear.
34. populāris, -e, adj. [populus],
of the people, democratic, popular.
35. senēscō, -ere, senuī, —, intr. [compare senex], grow old.
  in-vidēō, -vidēre, -vidī, -vidūm, intr.,
envy, be jealous of.
36. cōnsulātus, -ūs, m. [cōnsul],
consulship.
38. ab-rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,
annul; take away (an office).
41. aliquamduī, adv., for a while.
lateō, -ère, latuī, —, intr., lie hid,
be hidden.
42. lōrum, -ī, n., thong, strap.


44. nátióne: ablative of respect.
46. tūne: -ne is the enclitic particle employed as sign of a question.
54. quem... laesisset, since he had never injured him; a relative clause may express a reason or cause and take a subjunctive, the relative pronoun being equivalent to cum causal and a demonstrative pronoun, here cum eum.
56. nisi in sē animadvertī vellet, unless he wanted himself punished; animadvertō is a compound of animum and advertō, turn attention to, which easily comes to mean punish; here the passive infinitive is used impersonally. Even when active, animadvertō in the sense of punish takes in with the accusative.
57. ecquis, whether anything, introducing an indirect question.

44. nátiō, -onis, f. [nāscor], race, nation, people.
45. dē-terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, tr., frighten away, deter.
51. nāvicula, -ae, f. [dim. of nāvis], boat, skiff.
52. sólitārius, -a, -um, adj. [sōius], lonely, solitary.
53. praetor, -ōris, m. [for praetōr, from praeedō, go before], (a leader); praetor, title of a Roman magistrate charged with judicial duties.
54. laedo, laedere, laesi, laesum, tr., injure, offend.
55. húmānitās, -ātis, f. [hūmānus], culture; kindness.
56. torvē, adv. [torvus, stern], sternly, fiercely.
Cum Sulla ad bellum Mithridaticum profectus esset, Marius revocatus a Cinnā in Italiam rediit, calamitāte incēnsus magis quam frāctus. Cum exercītū Rōmam ingressus eam caedibus et rapīnīs vāstāvit; omnēs adversae factīōnis nōbilēs variis suppliciōrum generibus affēcit. Quīnque diēs continuōs totidemque noctēs īlla licentia scelerum omnium dūrāvit. Tandem Marius, senectūte et labōribus cōnfectus in morbum incidit et ingenti omnium laetitiā mortuus est. Cujus virī si comparentur cum virtūtibus vitia, haud facile sit dictū utrum bellō melior an pāce perniciōsior fuerit.

Marius dūrior ad hūmānitātis studia erat et liberālium artium contemtor. Cum aedem Honōris de manubīs hostium vōvisset, sprētā peregrīnōrum marmorum nōbilitātēs artificumque Graecōrum arte, eam vulgāri lapide per artificem Rōmānum aedificāri jussit. Graecās litterās contemptis quod doctōribus suīs parum ad virtūtem prōfuissest.

61. Cinnā: a leader of the anti-aristocratic faction.
67. si . . . comparentur: a future less vivid condition, App. 119.
68. dictū: ablative of the supine.

utrum . . . an, whether . . . or, introducing a double indirect question; utrum is in origin the neuter of uter, which of two things.

74. litterās: the singular of this word means a letter of the alphabet; the plural, a letter, i.e., an epistle, or literature; here, the latter.
75. doctōribus . . . parum . . . prōfuissest, had been of too little profit to its teachers.
24. Lucius Cornelius Sulla


### Notes and Definitions

3. molestē tulisse: molestē ferō has nearly the same meaning as aegre ferō, be vexed, annoyed, grieved, etc.

sibi: dative with obvēnisset.

4. sorte: the quaestors cast lots to determine the posts to which they should be assigned in the city or provinces.

6. bonam operam ēditidīt, did good service.

Cōnsul ipse factus, etc.: as told in the story of Marius, l. 34 ff.

9. odio: ablative of respect.


ut omnēs ... interficerentur: a noun clause of fact, object of effēcerat, had caused all Roman citizens to be put to death.

13. oppressisset, ... nisi ... māluisset: conclusion and condition contrary to fact, App. 120.

2. quaestūra, -ae, f. [quaestor], the office of quaestor, quaestorship.

lūxuriōsus, -a, -um, adj. [lūxuria, luxury], luxurious, voluptuous.

3. molestē, adv. [molestus], with difficulty, with vexation; molestē ferre, to be annoyed.

4. ob-veniō, -venīre, -vēniō, -venītum, intr., come to, befall; fall to the lot of.

5. ē-niteō, -nītere, -nītui, —, intr., shine forth, gleam; be displayed.

9. odium, -ī, n. [ōdī], hatred.

inferior, -ius, compar. adj., lower; inferior.

10. efficīō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum, tr. [ex + faciō], accomplish, bring about, cause.

13. fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum, tr., pour, pour out; rout, defeat.
redire properāns quālemcumque pācem facere māluisset. 15
Mithridātem tamen pecūniā multāvit; Asīā aliīisque prōvin-
ciis quās occupāverat décedere paternīisque finibus contentum
esse coēgit.

Sulla propter mōtūs urbānōs cum vīctōre exercitū Rōmam
properāvit; eōs qui Mariō favēbant omnēs superāvit. Nihil 20
autem eā victūriā fuit crūdēlius. Sulla, urbem ingressus et
dictātor creātus, vel in eōs qui sē sponte dēdiderant jussit
animadvertī. Quattuor milia dēditōrum inermium civium
in circō interfici jussit. Quis autem illōs potest ēnumerāre
quōs in urbe passim quisquis voluit occīdit? Dēnique admonuit 25
eum Fūfidius quīdam vivere aliqūōs dēbēre, ut essent quibus
imperāret. Novō et inaudītō exemplō tabulam prōscriptiō-
nis prōposuit, quā nōmina eōrum quī occīdēndī essent con-
tinēbantur; cumque omnium orta esset indignātiō, postrīdiē
plūra etiam nōmina adjēcit. Ingēns caesōrum fuit multitū-

16. pecūniā multāvit, exacted an indemnity from.
22. vel: this word alone means even, while vel . . . vel mean either . . . or.
in eōs animadvertī: for the translation consult the note on 23, 56.
25. quisquis voluit occīdit, any one killed who wanted to.
26. ut essent quibus imperāret, in order that there might be people to
rule; an idea of possibility is involved in the subjunctive imperāret, whom
he could rule.
27. tabulam prōscriptiōnis, a proscription list.
28. quī occīdēndī essent: subjunctive in implied indirect discourse;
with eōrum, such as were to be killed, App. 109.

15. quāliscumque, quālecumque,  
indef. pron., of any kind whatever.
16. multō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.  
[multa, a fine], punish, fine.
17. paternus, -a, -um, adj. [pater],
of a father, paternal.
19. mōtus, -ūs, m. [moveō], move-
ment; disturbance, tumult.
23. inermis, -e, adj. [in-+arma],
umarmed, defenseless.
24. ē-numerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.,
reckon up, recount.
25. passim, adv. [pandō], scattered,
here and there, in every direc-
tion.
27. in-auditus, -a, -um, adj., un-
heard of, unusual.
28. quisquis, quicquid, indef. pron., who-
ever, whatever, everyone who,
everything that.
ad-moneō, -monēre, -monuī, -mo-
nitum, tr., remind, admonish.
29. tabula, -ae, f., board, plank; tablet,
list, record.
prōscriptiō, -ōnis, f. [prōscribō], pro-
scription, outlawry.
dō. Nec sōlum in eōs saevīvit qui armīs contrā sē dīmicā-
verant, sed etiam quiētōs cīvēs propter pecūniae māgnītū-
dinem prōsciptōrum numerō adjēcit. Cīvis quīdam in-
noxius, cui fundus in agrō Albānō erat, legēns prōsciptōrum
nōmina sē quoque vīdit adscriptum. "Vae," inquit, "miserō
mihi! mē fundus Albānus persequitur." Neque longē prō-
gressus ā quōdam quī eum āgnōverat interflectus est.

Sulla, oppressīs inimīcōrum partibus, Fēlicem sē ēdīctō ap-
pellāvit; cunquē ejus uxor gēminōs eōdem partū ēdidisset,
puerum Faustum puellamque Faustum nōminārī voluit.
Sed paucīs post annīs repente contrā omnium expectātiōnem
dictātūram dēposuit. Dīmissīs līctoribus, diū īn forō cum
amicīs deambulāvit. Stupebat populus eum prīvātum vidēns,
cujus potestās modo tam metuada fuerat. Quamquam jam
privātus erat, nōn sōlum salūs, sed etiam dignitās manēbat,
qui tot cīvēs occiderat. Ŭnūs adulēscēns fuit quī audēret
querī et Sullam reediumque usque ad forēs domīs execrārī.
Atque ille, cujus ľaram potentissimī virī maximaeqe cīvitātēs
nec effugere nec plācāre potuerant, ūnīus adulēscēntūlī con-

35. Vae miserō mihi, woe to me, unhappy man! Compare vae victīs,
17, 47.

46. quī audēret: a relative clause of description.

31. saevīō, -āre, -āi, -ātum, intr. [saevus, savage], be furious, rage.

33. prō-scribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum, tr., publish; outlaw, proscribe.
in-noxius, -a, -um, adj., harmless, innocent.

34. fundus, -ī, m., farm, estate.

35. ad-scribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum, tr., write in addition, add.

36. per-sequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, tr., follow after, pursue.

38. ēdictum, -ī, n. [p. part. of ēdicō], edict.

39. partus, -ūs, m. [pariō], a bearing, birth.

41. expectātiō, -ōnis, f. [expectō], awaiting, expectation.

43. de-ambulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr., walk, stroll.

45. dignitās, -ātis, f. [dignus], worth; authority, prestige.

47. foris, -is, f., door; frequently pl. (with reference to the two leaves of
a double door).

49. plācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., soothe, appease, placate.

adulēscēntulus, -ī, m. [dim. of adulēscēns], a very young man.

contumēlia, -ae, f., insult, abuse.
tumelias æquō animō tulit, id tantum in limine jam dīcēns: 50
“Hic adulēscēns efficiet nē quis posthāc tāle imperium dé-
pōnat.”

Sulla in villā voluptātibus dēditus reliquam vitam ēgit. Ibi morbō corruptus mortuus est, vir ingentis animī, cupidus voluptātum, sed gloriae cupidior; litterīs Graecīs atque 55
Latīnīs ēruditus fuit et virōrum litterātōrum adeō amāns ut
diligentiam etiam malī cujusdam poētae aliquō praemīō
dignam exīstimāret; nam cum ille epigramma in Sullam
fēcisset eique misisset, Sulla statim praemium eī darī jussit,
sed eā lēge, nē quid posteā scriberet. Ante victōriam lau-
dandus erat, sed in iis quae secūta sunt numquam satis
reprehēnsus; urbem enim et Italiam civilis sanguinis flūmi-
bus inundāvit. Nōn sōlum in vivōs saevīt, sed nē mortuīs
quidem pepercit. Nam Gaī Mariī, cujus aliiquandō quaestor
fuerat, ērutōs cinerēs in flūmen prōjēcit. Quā crūdēlitāte
factōrum ēgregiōrum gloriām corrūpit.

---

50. aequō animō, with composure.
tantum, only; literally, so much (and no more).
51. efficiet nē quis . . . déponat: literally, will cause that no one, etc.;
better, will prevent anyone from laying down, etc.
56. adeō, to such a degree; a synonym for ita.
57. praemīō: the ablative with dignam, as in 23, 6.
58. in Sullam, in Sulla’s honor.
60. eā lēge, on this condition; explained by the appositive noun clause,
nē quid . . . scriberet.
laudandus, deserving of praise.
63. mortuis: account for the dative.
64. cujus: with quaestor.
65. ērutōs: past passive participle to be translated by a coördinate
verb, unearthed and threw into the river.

---

50. limen, -inis, n., threshold, door.
51. post-hāc, adv., hereafter, in the
future.
56. litterātus, -a, -um, adj. [littera],
of letters, learned, educated.
58. ex-istimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.
[ex+estimō, estimate], estimate;
judge, think.
epigramma, -atis, n., epigram.
63. in-undo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.,
overflow, inundate.
65. ē-ruo, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, tr.,
dig out, cast forth.
cinis, cinerēs, m., ashes.
25. Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus


Paulō post cum Numidiam intrā diēs quadrāgintā devicis-set, à Sullā jussus est exercitum dimittere atque cum ūnā legiōne successōrem expectāre. Quamquam aegrē id ferēbat,

---

2. partēs, party, faction.
8. habuit, held, treated.
9. Carbōnem: like Cinna, 23, 61, a political leader prominent in the troubled period of Marius and Sulla.
12. sibi: as to the case of sibi, observe that adversor is a verb of resisting.
13. dē . . . sūmere: as if punishment were something “taken from” the victim; the English idiom is inflict upon.
15. ille ūnus, that one person of whom he spoke.

---

4. saltus, -ūs, m. [saliō, leap], leaping, a leap.
lūctor,-āri,-ātus sum, intr., wrestle, contend, struggle.
5. reliquiae, -ārum, f. pl. [compare relinquō], remains, remnants.
11. clēmens, -entis, adj., merciful.
12. adversor, -āri, -ātus sum, intr. [adversus] (takes dative), resist, oppose.
păruit tamen et Rōmam rediit. Ei adveniēntī incrēdibilis hominum multitūdō obviam iit; Sulla quoque laetus eum excēpit et Magnī cognōmine salūtāvit. Nihilō minus Pom-
peiō triumphum petentī restītit; neque vērō Pompeius eā rē 
ā prōpositō dēterritus est aususque dīcere plūrēs adōrāre 
sōlem orientem quam occidentem; quae vōx signifīcābat 
Sullae potentiam minūi, Pompeīi crēseere. Eā vōce audītā 
Sulla audāciā adulēscēntis percussus "Triumphet! Triumphet! 
Triumphet!" clamāvit.

Dum in Hispāniā militat adversus Sertōrium, quī Sullae 
adversābātur, in proeliō quōdam maximum periculum subiit; 
eum enim miles ingenti corporis magnitūdine impetum in 
eum fēcisset, Pompeius ejus manum abscīdit; sed multīs in 
eum concurrentibus vulnus in femore accēpit et ā suīs 
fugientibus dēsertus in hostium potestāte erat. At praeter 
spem ēvāsit; barbarī enim equum ejus aurō phalerīsque

22. Eī: obviam īre, go to meet, takes a dative somewhat in the manner 
of verbs compounded with ob.
24. Magnī: an explanatory genitive instead of an appositive, as in 
11, 76.
26. prōpositō, purpose; a past participle as a noun; how is the meaning 
“purpose” developed from the literal meaning of the verb prōpōnō?
28. Pompeīi: potentiam is understood; we may say that of Pompeius. 
Latin, however, does not use a demonstrative pronoun with a genitive 
in dependence upon it.
31. Sertōrium: a follower of Marius. Afterwards as governor of Spain 
he set up a government of his own and for a number of years maintained 
his independence of Rome.

23. ob-viām, adv., in the way, to 
meet.
26. prōpositum, -ī, n. [p. part. of 
prōpōnō], plan, intention, purpose.
ad-ōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., wor-
ship.
27. orior, orīrī, ortus sum, intr., 
rise, arise; break out; oriēns, 
-entis, pres. part. as adj., rising.
occidō, -cidere, -cidi, intr. [ob+
cadō], fall, set (referring to the 
sun); occidēns, -entis, pres. part. 
as adj., setting.
significō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [sig-
num+faciō], point out; signify.
31. militō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr. 
[miles], serve as a soldier, wage 
war.
35. femur, femoris, n., thigh.
37. phalerae, -ārum, f. pl., decora-
tions of metal (for the breast).
eximiis inscrip tum cęperant. Dum de praedā inter sē certant, Pompeius effūgit.

40 Paucīs post annīs imperium extraōrdinarium Pompeō delātum est, ut opprimeret praedōnēs, quī omnia maria infesta reddēbant et quāsdam etiam Italiae urbēs diripuerant. Hoc bellum tantā celeritāte conśecit ut intra quadrāgingintā diēs omnēs praedōnēs aut interficerentur aut sē dederent.


Cum Tigrānēs, rēx Armeniae, celeriter sē dēdīsset atque ad genua victūris prōcubuisset, Pompeius eum benignīs

46. aliquot annōs: this phrase, like jam diū and jam duōdum, is used with an imperfect where we employ a past perfect; with contendēbant, had been contending for some years. See note on Per. 24.

47. castrīs, in camp; with contineō, a camp is regarded merely as the means of confinement; hence no preposition is used.

50. lūnā adjuvante, by the favoring light of the moon.

51. ā tergō, at their back.

56. Impetrāvit ... ā, prevailed upon; the verb has for object the noun clause ut ... interficeret.

38. eximius, -a, -um, adj., unusual, distinguished.

40. extra-ōrdinarīus, -a, -um, adj., extraordinary, uncommon.

41. praedo, -ōnis, m. [praeda], pirate.

50. saltus, -ūs, m., ravine, mountain pass, mountain valley.
verbis allocūtus est et diadēma, quod abjēcerat, capiti repōnere jussit. Inde Rōmānōrum prīmus Jūdaēōs vīcit Hierosolymaques, caput gentis, cēpit sāncēissimamque partem templī jūre victōris ingressus est.

Regressus in Italian triumphant ex Asiā ēgit, cum anteā ex Āfricā et ex Hīspāniā triumphantāvissent. Triumphus illūstrior fuit grātiorque populō, quod Pompeius nōn armātus, sīcut Sulla, ad Rōmam subīgendam, sed dīmissō exercīti redīssēt.

Posteā, ortā inter Pompeium et Caesarem grāvi dissēnsiōne, quod hic superiōrem, ille parem ferre nōn poterat, bellum cīvīle exārsit. Caesar īnffō exercītiū in Italian vēnit. Pompeius, relictā urbe ac deinde Italiā ipsā, Thessaliam petīvit et cum eō cōnsulēs senātūsque magna pars; quem īnsecūtus Caesar apud Pharsālum acīē fūdit. Vīctus Pompeius ad Ptolemæum, Aegyptī rēgem, cui tūtōr ā senātū datus erat, profūgit; ille Pompeium interfīci jussit. Ita Pompeius sub oculīs uxōris et liberōrum interfectus est,

---

63. triumphant ēgit = triumphantāvit. ex, over; literally, from. The country over which the victory is won is thought of as the source from which the triumph is derived.

cum . . . triumphantāvissent: a descriptive cum clause where English would employ a participle, having already celebrated a triumph.

68. dissēnsiōne: Pompeius, Caesar, and Marcus Crassus had in the year 60 B.C. formed a political combination known as The First Triumvirate. Caesar spent the years 58-50 B.C. in the subjugation of Gaul. The great military reputation won thereby, coupled with the widespread belief that he was planning the overthrow of the home government, aroused Pompeius’s jealousy and distrust. The break in friendship between the two men was rendered easier through the death of Crassus and of Julia, Caesar’s daughter and the wife of Pompeius.

59. diadēma, -atis, n., diadem.
63. regredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, intr. [re-gradior, step], go back, return.
64. illūstrīs, -e, adj., bright; distinguishted, illustrious.
66. sīc-ut, adv., just as, as.

subigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, tr. [sub + ago], drive under, reduce, subdue.

76. oculus, -ī, m., eye.
caput praecisum, truncus in Nilum conjectus. Deinde caput ad Caesarem delatum est, qui eò visò lacrimàs non continuit. Is fuit Pompeiì vitae exitus post trèś cònsulàtus et totidem triumphòs.

77. praecisum, conjectus: est is to be supplied.

77. praecidò, -cidere, -cidi, -cìsum, 
   tr. [praè, in front, +caedo], cut off.

truncus, -ì, m., trunk (of a tree);

79. exitus, -ús, m. [exeó], outcome, end, close.

26. GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR


1. agèns annum, etc., in his sixteenth year. Caesar was born 100 B.C.
3. in rì publicà: with the same meaning as in 23, 34.
4. dùxìset: the subjunctive is due to the indirect discourse implied in vidètur.
7. aliòs: i.e., men of the “popular” or “radical” faction.
9. morbò: ablative of cause; morbò is explained by the genitive quàrtànae.
12. datà pecùnià, by a bribe.

1. familia, -ae, f. [famulus, servant], household, establishment, slaves in a household; family.
4. amita, -ae, f., a (paternal) aunt.
9. quàrtànus, -a, -um, adj. [ quàrtus], occurring every fourth day, quarts.
10. latebrae, -árum, f. pl. [lateò], hiding-place.
per propinquos et affinis suos veriam impetravit. Satis tamen constat Sullam monuisse eós qui adulçentí veriam petebant eum aliquando nobilium partibus exitio futúrum esse; nam Caesarí multós Mariós inesse.

Stipendia príma in Asia fécit, ubi in expugnatióne Mytilénarum corona cívicá dónátus est. Mortuó Sullá, Rhodum sècédere statuit, ut per ōtium Apollóniú Molóni, tum cláris-simó dícendi magistró, operam daret. Húc dum tránsit, á praedónibus captus est mansitque apud eos prope quádráinta dies. Per omne autem illud spatium íta sē gessit ut praedónibus pariter terróri veneratióniíque esset. Redemptus inde ab amicís classem contráxit captósque praedones cruce affécit, quod supplicium saepe inter jocum minátus erat.

Quaestóri ulterior Hispáñia obvénit. Dum pauperem vicum Alpínnum tránsit, comités per jocum inter sē dis-

13. Satis cónstat, it is well known.
15. exitió: a dative of purpose, to be translated as if a predicate nominative.
16. Caesarí ... inesse, in Caesar there was many a Marius; Caesar is a dative with the compound inesse.
18. coróná cívicá: the civic wreath was bestowed upon one who had saved the life of a fellow-countryman in battle.
20. dicendí, of oratory.
23. terróri: the same dative as exitió, l. 15.
26. Quaestóri ... obvénit, fell to his lot as quaestor. A quaestor, whose duties were connected with state finances, was assigned to the staff of each provincial governor. Spain was divided into two provinces, Hispania citerior and Hispania ulterior.

13. propinquus, -a, -um, adj. [prope], near; subst., propinquit, -órūm, m. pl., relatives, kinsmen.
affinis, -e, adj. [ad+finis], related by marriage; subst., affinis, affinis, -ium, m. and f., a relative by marriage.
15. exitium, -i, n., destruction, ruin.
17. expugnatió, -onis, f. [expugnó], a taking by storm, capture.
18. coróna, -ae, f., garland, wreath, crown.
cívicus, -a, -um, adj. [civis], of citizens; civic.
19. sè-cédó, -cédere, -cessi, -cessum, intr., go apart, retire, withdraw.
23. pariter, adv. [pār], equally, in like manner, as much.
veneratió, -onis, f. [veneror, reverence], deep respect, reverence, veneration.
24. crux, crucis, f., gallows, cross.
25. jocus, -i, m., jest, joke.
CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR
putabant, num illic etiam esset ambitiōnī locus; tum Caesar sēriō dixit sē mālle ibi prīnum esse quam Rōmae secundum. Dominātiōnis cupidus ā prīmā aetāte fuisset existimātur; 30 dictus autem est semper hōs versus Eurīpidis, Graeci poētae, in ōre habuisse:

"Nam sī violandum est, rēgnandi gratia
Violandum est, aliis rēbus pictātem colās.”

Aedilis praeter comitium ac forum etiam Capitōlium ornāvit porticibus. Vēnātiōnēs autem lūdōaque apparātissimōs et cum collēgā M. Bibulō et sēparātīm ēdidit. His rēbus patrimōnium effūdit tantumque aes alienum conflavit ut ipse diceret sībi opus esse mīlliēs sēstertium, ut habēret nihil.

30. ā prīmā aetāte: compare ā puerō, l. 2.
33. grātiā: has the same meaning as causā, for the sake of, and is accompanied by a genitive, which always precedes.
34. aliis rēbus, in other circumstances.
35. Aedilis, as aedile. The Roman aediles had supervision of police regulations, of certain public games, of markets, and of the maintenance of streets and public buildings.
39. sībi opus esse mīlliēs sēstertium, that he needed a hundred million sesterces; with opus the thing needed may be expressed by an ablative, or, as here, it may be the subject of est, opus then being used in the predicate; in either case the dative is used of the person who needs the thing named.

sēstertium: a genitive plural; centēna mīlia is to be understood; with mīlliēs the full phrase means literally, a thousand times a hundred thousand sesterces.

28. ambitiō, -ōnis, f. [ambiō, go around], ambition.
29. sēriō, adv. [sērius, serious], seriously, in earnest.
30. dominātiō, -ōnis, f. [domīnōr], rule, supremacy.
31. versus, -ūs, m. [vertō], line; verse.
34. pietās, -ātis, f. [pius, pious], devotion, piety.
36. porticus, -ūs, f. [porta], colonnade, portico.
apparātus, -a, -um, adj. [apparō, prepare], prepared, splendid.
37. sēparātīm, adv. [sēparātus, separate], separately, severally.
patrimōnium, -i, n. [pater], paternal estate, patrimony.
38. cōn-flō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., blow together, kindle; aes aliēnum cōnflāre, to contract a debt.
39. mīlliēs, adv. [mīlē], a thousand times.

sēstertius, -i, gen. pl., sēstertium, sesterce, a small silver coin worth four and one-tenth cents.

Caesar, cōnsulātū perāctō, novem annīs Galliām in potestātem populi Rōmānīi redēgit. Germānōs quoque aggressus est atque prīmus imperātōrum Rōmānōrum in Britanniam.

40. societātem: the triumvirate, described in the note on 25, 68.
41. ǔlli: adjective used as prounoun, with ex tribus dependent, any of the three.
43. diurna: from this word the English word "journal" is indirectly derived.
44. ēderentur, be published. Despite the lack of printing, copies of a document were multiplied at a comparatively small cost, owing to the use of slaves as copyists. The reference here, however, is merely to the act of posting as a bulletin, from which anyone might have copies made.
47. domō: with abdō the ablative with or without in may be used of the place where.
49. Caesare et Bibulō cōnsulibus, in the consulship of Caesar and Bibulus; an ablative absolute, the form of expression regularly employed in designating the Roman year. Caesar and Bibulus were consuls in the year 59 B.C.

41. displicēo, -ēre, -uī, -ītum, intr. [dis-+placeō], displease.
43. diurnus, -a, -um, adj. [compare dies], of the day, daily.
āctum, -i, n. [p. part. of agō], deed, transaction.
47. ob-sistō, -sistere, -stītī, -stītum, intr., resist, oppose.
ab-dō, -dere, -didi, -dītum, tr., put away, hide, conceal.
48. abstineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, —, intr. [abs+teneō], keep or remain away.
nōn-nūllus, -a, -um, adj., some, several.
signō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [signum], affix a seal to, seal.
51. per-agō, -agere, -ēgī, -āctum, tr. (drive through); finish, complete.
transiit. Ipse commentariiōs rērum gestārum cōnfēcit, quibus aliōs ūtī in scribendā historiā voluit. Sed, ut ait Cicerō, "sānōs quidem hominēs ā scribendō dēterruit; nihil est enim in historiā pūrā et illūstri brevitāte dulcius."

Cum interea Crassus apud Parthōs interfactus esset, et mortua Jūlia, Caesariī filiā, quae nupta Pompeiō generī socerīQUE concordiam tenēbat, statim aemulatio erupit. Jam prīdem Pompeiō suspectae Caesariī opes erant, et Caesari Pompeiāna dignitas gravīs. Dēnique Caesar, ut sē tuerētur,

54. quibus aliōs ūtī... voluit: i.e., Caesar did not regard his commentaries as finished history, but merely as material from which historians might draw.

55. ait: for the forms of the defective verb āō, see App. 37 (1).

56. purā et illūstri brevitāte, an unembellished and luminous brevity; ablative of comparison.

57. apud Parthōs: Crassus, who was envious of the military reputation of Caesar and Pompeius, conducted an expedition against the Parthians, but was defeated and killed by them in 53 B.C.

58. generī socerīQUE, between the father-in-law and the son-in-law. What is it literally?

59. Jam prīdem... erant: the use of tenses with jam prīdem is the same as with jam dūdum, explained in the note on Per. 24.

60. Pompeiō, Caesariī: these words are datives of reference after suspectae and gravīs.

54. commentāriiōs, -i, m., notebook, memorandum; pl., memoirs, records.

55. historia, -ae, f., narrative, history.

aiō, defective verb, say, affirm.

56. sānus, -a, -um, adj., sound, healthy; sane, sensible.

57. purus, -a, -um, adj., clean, pure; unadorned.

brevitās, -ātis, f. [brevis], shortness, brevity.

dulcis, -e, adj., sweet, agreeable.

59. nūbō, -ere, nūpsi, nūptum, intr., cover, veil; of a bride, veil oneself, marry, be married.

gener, -erī, m., son-in-law.

60. socer, -erī, m., father-in-law.

aemulātiō, -onis, f., [aemulor, to rival], rivalry.

ē-rumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum, intr., break out, burst forth.

61. prīdem, adv., long ago.

suspectus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of suspicio, suspect], mistrusted, suspected.

tueor, -ēri, tūtus sum, tr., gaze upon; watch over, protect.
postulavit ut ex lēge ante lātā sibi absenti alterum cōnsulā-tum petere licēret. Hoc inimīci, Pompeīō probante, negā-vērunt atque jussērunt Caesarem ante certam diem exercitum prōvinciamque trādere.

Injūriā incēnsus ad Rubicōnem flūmen, quī prōvinciae finis erat, cum exercitū prōcessit. Ibi paulum morātus, ut fāma fert, "etiam nunc," inquit, "regredi possumus; quod si hoc flūmen trānsierimus, omnia armis agenda erunt." Post-trēmō exclāmāvit: "Jacta est ālea." Tum, exercitū flūmen trāductō bellōque civīlī inceptō, Brundisium prōfectus est, quō Pompeius cum magnā parte senātūs prōfugerat. Pompeium trānsīre in Ėpīrum prohibēre frūstrā cōnātus iter in Histāniam fēcit, ubi validissēmās Pompeīī cōpiās vīcit.

Deinde in Ėpīrum prōfectus Pompeium Pharsālicō prōeliō superāvit et fugientem ad Aegyptum persecūtus est. Ptole-maeum rēgem, quī Pompeium interficī jussērat īnsidiāisque Caesāri tendēbat, vīcit atque rēgnūm Cleopātrae frātrīque minōrī permīsit. Pharnacem, Mithridātīs filium, quī occāsi-

63. ex lēge ante lātā, in accordance with a law previously enacted. This was a law of the year 52 B.C., by which Caesar was to be allowed to be a candidate for a second consulship without coming to Rome or surrendering his provinces and army. These he hoped also to hold, in the event of his election, until the time to enter upon office. In this way he would step directly from a provincial office to office in Rome and so avoid a period of private life, in which his opponents might prosecute him on trumped-up charges and perhaps send him into exile. Their refusal to abide by this law resulted in civil war and the overthrow of the republic. The crossing of the Rubicon, l. 67 ff., occurred in January, 49 B.C.

70. agenda erunt, will have to be decided.

71. flūmen: a transitive verb compounded with trāns may take an accusative governed by the preposition in the compound; in the active, this passage would read, exercitum flūmen trādūxit.

73. quō: adverb.

Pompeium trānsīre: object of prohibēre, to prevent Pompeius from crossing.

80. occāsīone temporum, the favorable opportunity.

71. ālea, -ae, f., a game with dice; a die. 79. tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentum, tr., ambuscade, ambush; plot.

78. insidia, -ārum, f. pl., snare; stretch, aim, direct.

Bellis cīvilibus cōnfectīs conversus jam ad administrandam rem pūblicam fāstōs corrēxīt annūmque ad cūsum sōlis accommodatingāvit. Senātum supplēvit, comitīisque cum populō divisīs sībi sūmpsit jūs nōminandae dīmidiae partis candidātōrum. Eōs quī lēge Pompeī dē ambitū damnāti erant

87. suōs cōdentēs, his men who were giving way.

93. fāstōs corrēxīt, etc.: the Roman year prior to Caesar’s reform of the calendar consisted of 355 days. The discrepancy between this number and the true solar year was made up by inserting extra days every other year. For a decade, however, this intercalation, as it was called, had been almost entirely neglected. Caesar corrected the calendar, fāstōs, by inserting three extra months in the year 46 B.C., and further decreed that the year henceforth should count 365 days, with one day added to February every fourth year.

96. ambitū: the word means literally a going around (to ask for votes); since money would often be used, the word came to mean bribery.

81. citō, adv. [citus, swift], quickly, speedily.

87. in-crepō, -crepāre, -crepuī, -crepitum, tr., resound; upbraid.

89. re-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, intr., retire, withdraw.

verēcundīā, -ae, f. [compare vereor], shame, sense of shame.

91. quater, adv. [quattuor], four times.

93. fāstī, -ōrum, m. pl., calendar.
corrīgō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctum, tr. [com-+regō], correct, reform.

Dē ārnandā īnstruēndāque urbe multa cōgitābat, imprīmīs ingēns Mārtis templum extruere theātrumque summae magnītūdinis sub Tarpeiiō monte. Habēbat in animō etiam haec: jūs civīle ad certum modum redigere atque ex ingenti cōpiā honōres, politica officia.

tertīā parte: ablative of comparison after minus. The conversion of farming land into ranches with slaves as cattle-herders had long been a serious evil, inasmuch as slaves displaced the free farmers of old.

102. Dē repetundis, for extortion; with especial reference to provincial governors, who often oppressed their subjects; the full phrase is dē pecūnīā repetundis and means literally concerning the recovery of money.

103. Lēgem sūmp-tuāriām: a law regulating the amount that might be spent upon the table.

97. honōrēs, political offices.

98. pecuāriam facerent, engaged in stock raising.

99. pūbēs, gen. -eris, adj., grown up, adult; subst., pūberēs, -um, m. pl., adults, men.

100. medicīnam, Rōmae professōs et liberālium artium doctōrēs civitāte dōnāvit. The conversion of farming land into ranches with slaves as cattle-herders had long been a serious evil, inasmuch as slaves displaced the free farmers of old.

101. labōriōsē, adv. [labōriōsus, toil-some], laboriously.

102. re-petō, -petere, -petīvī, -petī-tum, tr., demand back; rēs repete-tere, to demand reparation.

103. merx, mercis, f., goods, merchandise.

104. dis-pōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, tr., place here and there, distribute.

105. obsōnium, -i, n., victuals, viands.

106. cōgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [com-+agītō], ponder; plan.

107. theātrum, -i, n., theater.
legum optima quaeque in paucissimōs librōs cōnferre; bibliothēcās Graecās Latīnāsque quās maximās posset insti-
tuere; siccāre Pomptīnās palūdēs; ēmittere Fūcīnum lacum; viam mūnire ā mari Superō per Appennīnī dorsum ad Ti-
berim; perfodere Isthmum Corinthium; Dācōs, quī ē in
Pontum et Thrāciam effūderant, coērcēre; mox Parthīs in-
ferre bellum per Armeniam.

Eum talia agentem et meditantem mors praevēnit. Dicta-
tor enim in perpetuum creātus agere īnsolentius coepit:
senātum ad sē venientem sedēns excēpit et quendam ut
assurgeret monentem īrātō vultū respexit. Cum Antōnius, 120
comes Caesaris in omnibus bellis et tum cōnsulātūs collēga,
capiti ejus in sellā aureā sedentis prō rōstrīs diadēma, īnsigne
rēgium, impōsiisset, id ita ab ēō est repulsum ut nōn of-
fēnsus vidērētur. Quārē amplius sexāgintā—vīrī, Cassīō et

110. optima quaeque, all the best things; when masculine or feminine, quisque with a superlative is usually singular; e.g., optimus quisque, all the best men.

112. Pomptīnās palūdēs: a marshy region on the western coast of Italy, about forty miles south of Rome.

113. mari Superō: the upper sea was the Adriatic; mare īnferum was the Etruscan sea, that part of the Mediterranean to the west of Italy.

119. ut assurgeret: a noun clause, object of monentem.

124. amplius sexāgintā vīrī: amplius, minus, and plūs may either have an ablative of comparison, as minus in l, 98, or may be used as equivalent to amplius quam, minus quam, plūs quam, and so have no effect on the case, as here.
230 A JUNIOR LATIN READER

125 Brūtō ducibus, in eum conjūrāvērunt atque cōnstituērunt eum Īdibus Mārtiūs in senātū interficere.


---

126. Īdibus: the Ides were the 15th of March, May, July, October, the 13th of the other months.
128. quod: a relative pronoun.
129. prōferrētur: why subjunctive? Observe that its clause is part of the warning.
130. rogātūrus: the future participle expressing intention.
131. ab: occasionally, as here, to be translated on or at.
132. adversum, in front, an adjective in agreement with (cum) clāmāntem.

---

126. Īdūs, Īduum, f. pl., the Ides, the middle of the month.
127. harūspex, -īcis, m., soothsayer.
128. noxa, -ae, f. [noceō], harm, injury.
129. praetereō, -īre, -īi, -itum, tr. and intr., go by, go past, pass; praeteritus, -a, -um, p. part. as adj., gone by, past.
130. assidō, -sidere, -sēdi, —, intr. [ad+sidō, sit], take a seat, sit down.
131. re-nuō, -nuere, -nui, —, intr., shake the head, refuse.
132. apprehendō, -hendere, -hendi, -hēnsum, tr. [ad+prehendō], take hold of, seize.
133. infrā, prep. with acc., below, underneath.
134. jugulum, -i, n. [jugum], throat, neck.
135. graphium, -i, n., stylus, pen.
136. prōsiliō, -silire, -silui, —, intr. [prō-saliō, leap], leap forward, spring up.
137. tardō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [tardus, slow], hinder, retard.
138. pūgiō, -ōnis, m., dagger, poniard.
obvolvit et tribus et vīgintī plāgīs cōnfossus est. 
Cum Mārcum Brūtum, quem filīī locō habēbat, in sē irruentem 
vīdisset, dīxisse fertur: "Tū quoque, mī filīī!"

Percussōrum autem nēmō ferē trienniō amplius supervīxit. 
Damnātī omnēs variīs cāsibus periērunt, pars naufragiō, pārs 
proelīō; nōnnūlli sēmet interfēcērunt eōdem illō pūgiōne, quō 
Caesarem cōnfōderant.

Quō rāriōr in rēgibus et prīncipibus virīs moderātiō, hōc 
laudanda magis est. Caesar vīctōriā cīvīlī clēmentissimē 
ūsus est; cum enim scrinīa deprehendisset epistulārum ad 
Pompeium missārum ab iīs quī vidēbantur aut in diversīs 
aut in neutrīs fuisse partibus, legere nōluit, sed combussit, 
ne forte in multōs grāvius cōnsulēndī locum darent. Cicērō 
hanc laudem eximiam Caesari tribuit, quod nihil oblīvīscī 
solēret nisi injūriās.

---

140. ob-volvō, -volvere, -volvi, -volvī, -vol-vūtum, tr., wrap round, enfold.
141. plāga, -ae, f., blow, wound.
cōnfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum, 
142. irrūo, -ruere, -ruī, —, intr., rush in, rush upon.
143. percussor, -ōris, m. [percutiō], assassin.
trienniūm, -ī, n. [trēs+annus], a 
144. naufragium, -ī, n. [compare 
nāvis and frangō], shipwreck.
145. -met, an enclitic suffix, self, own.
147. rārus, -a, -um, adj., rare, scarce.
moderātiō, -ōnis, f. [moderor, to control], moderation, self-control.
148. clēmenter, adv. [clēmēns], mercifully.
dē-prehendō, -hendere, -hendī, 
150. -hēnsum, tr., seize upon; discover.
151. combūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, 
tr. [com-+ūrō], burn up, consume.
Fuisse traditur excelsā statūrā, ōre paulō lēniōre, nigris vegetīisque oculīs, capite calvō; quam dēfōrmitātem, quod saepe obtrectātōrum jocīs obnoxia erat, aegre ferēbat. Ideō ex omnibus hōnoribus sībi a senātū populōque dēcrētīs nōn alium aut rećepit aut ūsūrpāvit libertius quam jūs laurēae perpetuō gestandae. Vīnī parcissīmum eum fuisse nē inimīcī quidem negāvērunt. Verbum Catōnis est, ūnum ex omnibus Caesarem ad ertendam rem pūblicam sōbrium accesisse. Armōrum et equitāndī perītissimus, labōris ultrā fidem patiēns; in agmine nōnnumquam equō, saepius pedibus anteībat, capite dētectō, seu sōl, seu imber erat. Longissi-

155. ōre paulō lēniōre, with a rather kindly expression.
158. dēcrētīs: a participle, with hōnoribus.
159. laurēae: the victor’s laurel crown served partly to hide Caesar’s baldness.
164. fidem, belief.
in agmine, on the march.
equō, on horseback.

155. excelsus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of excellō], lofty, tall; distinguished.
156. vegetus, -a, -um, adj., lively, animated.
calvus, -a, -um, adj., bald.
dēfōrmitās, -ātis, f. [dēfōrmis, misshapen], deformity, disfigurement, unsightliness.
157. obtrectātōr, -ōris, m. [obtrectō, disparage], traducer, disparager.
ob-noxius, -a, -um, adj., liable, exposed.
ideō, adv., for that reason, therefore.
158. dē-cernō, -cernere, -cρēvī, -cρētum, tr., decide, decree.
159. āsūrpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., make use of, use.
laurea, -ae, f., laurel-tree; laurel wreath.

160. perpetuō, adv. [perpetuus], continually.
gestō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [freq. of gerō], bear, carry, wear.
parcus, -a, -um, adj. [parcō], sparing, frugal.
162. ē-vertō, -vertere, -vertī, -ver- sum, tr., overturn, overthrow.
sōbrius, -a, -um, adj. [sē-+ēbrius, drunk], sober.
163. equitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. [eques], ride.
164. patiēns, -entis, adj. [pres. part. of patiō], enduring, tolerant, patient.
agmen, -inis, n. [agō], a marching army, a column.
nōn-numquam, adv., sometimes, a few times.
165. ante-eō, -īre, -īi, or -īvī, intr., go before or ahead.
dētectus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of dētēgō, uncover], uncovered, bare.
mās viās incrēdībīli celeritāte cōnficiēbat, ut persaēpe nūnti-ōs dē sē praevenīret; neque eum morābantur flūmina, quae vel nandō vel innīxus inflātīs ūtribus trānsībat.

168. nandō: gerund, ablative of means.

166. per-saēpe, adv., very often.  

168. in-nītor, -nīti, -nīxum, intr., lean upon, support oneself by.

Marcus Tullius Cicero

Marcus Tullius Cicerō, equestri genere, Arpīnī, quod est Volscōrum oppidum, nātus est. Nōndum adultus ā patre Rōmam missus est, ut celeberrimōrum magistrōrum scholis interesset atque ēas artēs disceret, quibus aetās puerīlis ad hūmānitātem solet īnformārī; quod magnō successū magnāque admirātiōne et praeceptōrum et cēterōrum discipulōrum fēcit; cum enim fāma dē Cicerōnis ingeniō et doctrīnā ad aliōs perlāta esset, multī repertī esse dicuntur quī ejus videndī et audiendī grātiā scholās adīrent.

Cum nūllā rē magis ad summōs in rē públicā honōrēs viam 10 mūnīri posse intellegēret quam arte dicendī et ēloquentiā, tōtō animō in ejus studium incubuit; in quō quidem ita ver-

2. nātus est: in 106 B.C.
5. quod, and this; referring to the purpose in the sentence preceding.
8. quī . . . adīrent: a relative clause of description.
9. grātiā: what case do grātiā and causā meaning for the sake of take, and what is their position?
11. mūnīri: mānōre with viam as object means construct; this passage may be translated freely, entrance into public life was made possible.

1. equester, -tris, -tre, adj. [eques], of a horseman, equestrian, cavalry (as adj.).
5. īn-fōrmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., shape, mold; instruct, educate.
6. praeceptor, -ōris, m. [praecipiō], teacher, instructor.
discipulus, -ī, m. [discō], learner, pupil.
7. doctrīna, -ae, f. [doceō], teaching, learning, erudition.
12. incumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitum, intr. lean upon; bend to, apply oneself to.

versor, -āri, -ātus sum, intr. [dep. and freq. of vertō], occupy oneself, engage, conduct oneself.
MARCUS TULLIUS CICERO
satus est ut non solum eös qui in forō et judiciis causas dicerent studiōsē sectārētur, sed privātim quoque diligentissimē sē exercēret. Primum eloquentiam et libertātem adversus Sullanōs ostendit. Erat enim Rōscius quīdam, de parricidio accusātus, quem ob potentiam Chryssogonī, Sullae liberti, qui in ejus adversāriīs erat, nēmō alius dēfendere audēbat; Cicerō tamen tantā eloquentiae vī eum dēfendit ut jam tum in arte dīcendi nēmō ei pār esse vidērētur. Postea Athēnās studiorum grātīā petiit, ubi Antiochum philosophum studiōsē audīvit. Inde eloquentiae causa Rhodum sē contulit, ubi Molōnem, Graecum rhetorem tum disertissimum, magistrum habuit. Quī cum Cicerōnem dicentem audīvītur, quod per hunc Graecia eloquentiae laude privārēetur.

Rōmam reversus quaestor Siciliam habuit. Nūllius vērō quaestūra aut grātior aut clārior fuit; cum enim magna tum esset annōnae difficultās, initiō molestus erat Siculis, quōs cōgeret frūmenta in urbem mittere; posteā vērō, diligentiam privārētur.

13. in forō: i.e., in political discussions.
14. sectārētur: attendance upon the law courts and upon political debates was a common method of studying law and the art of public speaking in Cicero’s time.
20. jam tum, even then; Cicero was only 26 years old.
26. privārētur: account for the subjunctive.
27. Siciliam habuit: i.e., as a province; see note on 26, 26.
29. initiō, at first.
quōs cōgeret, since he forced them; a relative clause of reason or cause, as explained in the note on 23, 54.

14. studiōsē, adv. [studiōsus], eagerly, devotedly.
sector, -āri, -ātus sum, tr. [freq. of sequor], follow after, attend.
privātim, adv. [privātus], in a private capacity, privately.
17. parricidium, -ī, n. [compare pater and caedo], parricide, murder of a father.
18. adversārius, -a, -um, adj. [adversor], opposed, hostile; subst., adversārius, -i, m., an opponent, adversary.
23. rhētor, -oris, m., a teacher of oratory, rhetorician.
disertus, -a, -um, adj. [from p. part. of disserō], fluent, eloquent.
25. fleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, intr., weep, cry.
29. annōna, -ae, f. [annus], the year’s produce; supplies, provisions.
et justitiam et comitātem ejus experti, honōrēs quaestōrī suō majōrēs quam āullī unquam praetōrī dētulērunt. Ė Siciliā reversus Rōmam in causīs dicendīs ita flōruit ut inter omnēs causārum patrōnōs et esset et habērētur princeps.

Cōnsul deinde factus L. Sergii Catilīnae conjūrātiōnem ēgregiā virtūte, cōnstantiā, cūrā compressit. Catilīna reī familiāris, quam profūderat, inopiā et dominandī cupiditātē incēnṣus erat indignātusque quod in petītiōne cōnsulātūs repulsam passus esset; conjūrātiōne igitur factā senātum interemere, cōnsulēs trucīdāre, urbem incendere, dīripere aerārium cōnstituerat. Cicero autem in senātū, praeṣente Catilinā, vehementem ōratiōnem habuit et consilia ejus patefecit; tum ille, incendium suum ruīnā sē restīncēturum

34. habērētur, was regarded.
35. Catilīnae: Catiline was of an aristocratic family, but of a depraved character. He was ambitious to gain political power, and succeeded in attaching to himself the discontented and unprincipled of all classes. Cicero through a sort of secret service of friends and political associates kept informed of his plans and finally aroused the senate to the adoption of energetic measures.
42. habuit, delivered.
43. ruīnā: an allusion to the practice of demolishing houses in order to prevent the spread of a fire.

31. experior, -perīri, -pertus sum, tr., prove, test.
33. flōreō, -ere, -ui, —, intr. [flōs], blossom; flourish, be eminent.
34. patrōnus, -ī, m. [pater], protector, patron; defender, advocate.
35. conjūrātiō, -onis, f. [conjūrō], conspiracy.
37. familiāris, -e, adj. [familia], of a household; rēs familiāris, private property, estate; subst. familiāris, -is, m., a friend, an intimate acquaintance.
pro-fundō, -fundere, -fūdi, -fūsum, tr., pour out; spend freely, squander.
inopia, -ae, f. [inops], want, lack; poverty.
dominor, -āri, -ātus sum, intr., rule.
38. petītiō, -onis, f. [compare petō], (a seeking), candidacy, canvass.
39. repulsa, -ae, f. [p. part. of repellō], repulse, defeat.
40. interīmō, -imere, -ēmī, -emptum, tr. [inter+emō, take out], destroy, slay, kill.
41. praeṣēns, gen. -entis, adj. [pr. part. of praeium], at hand, present, in person.
43. incendium, -i, n. [incendō], fire, conflagration.
esse mimitāns, Rōmā profūgit et ad exercitum, quem parāverat, prefectus est signa illātūrus urbī. Sed sociī ejus, qui in urbe remānserant, comprehendī in carcere necātī sunt.

Neque eō magis ab inceptō Catilīna dēstitit, sed īnfestīs signīs Rōmam petēns exercītū Antōnīi, Cicerōnīs collēgae, opprimītur. Quam ātrōcītēr dimicātūm sit exitūs docuit: nemō hostium bellō superfuit; nam quem locum quīisque in pugnandō cēperat, eum mortuus tegēbat. Catilīna longē ā suis īnter hostium cadāvera repertus est — pulcherrīma mors, si prō patriā sic concidisset! Senātus populūsque Rōmānus Cicerōnem patrem patriae appellāvit.

Paucēs post annīs Cicerōnī diēm dīxit Clōdiōs, tribūnūs plēbis, quod civēs Rōmānōs īndictā causā necāvisset. Senātus maestus, tamquam īn publicō luctū, vestē mutāta, pro eo deprecābatur. Cicerō, cum possēt armīs salūtem suam défendere, māluīt ex urbe cēdere quam suā causā caedem fierī.

44. Rōmā: ablative of the place from which, App. 65.
45. signa: with illātūrus; literally intending to advance the standards, i.e., to attack.
46. carcere: the prison said to have been built by Ancus Marcius; compare 8, 7 and note.
47. eō magis, the more; eō is an ablative of degree of difference.
48. Quam ātrōcītēr dimicātūm sit, how desperate the decisive battle was; dimicātūm sit is an impersonal passive. Why the subjunctive?
49. quem . . . locum, eum: in English order this should be, eum locum quem.
50. sī . . . concidisset: but he did not so fall; what sort of condition?
51. diēm dīxit: a legal expression, literally, appointed a day (for appearance in court), equivalent to preferred a charge. The accomplices of Catiline who were strangled in prison had no trial, but were put to death by the order of the consul at the advice of the senate.
52. veste mutātā, having put on mourning.
53. sūā causā: the genitive with causā, for the sake of, may be replaced by a possessive adjective.

44. minitor, -āri, -ātus sum, tr. [freq. of minor, threaten], threaten, menace.
45. re-maneō, -manēre, -mānsi, -mānsum, intr., remain.
46. inceptum, -i, n. [p. part. of incipiō], beginning; attempt, undertaking.
47. ātrōcītēr, adv. [ātrōx, savage], fiercely.
48. concidō, -cidere, -cīdī, —, intr. [com-+cadō], fall, be slain.
49. lūctus, -ūs, m. [lugeō, mourn], sorrow, mourning, affliction.

Gravissimae inimicitiae illà tempestàtè inter Cæsarem et Pompéium ortae sunt, ut réì nisi bellò compòni nòn posse vidéretur. Cicerò quidem summò studió énìtèbátur ut eòs inter sè reconciliàret et á bellì civìlis calamitàtibus dèterritur; sed cum neutrum ad pácem inéundam movère posset, Pompéium secútus est. Tamen á Cæsare victòre veniam accépit. Cum Cæsar occíus esset, Octáviánò, Cæsaris hérèdì, fàvit Antònióque adversátus est, atque effécit ut ille á senátù hostis jùdicàretur.

61. igní et aquà: ablatives of separation with interdiceretur; literally, should be interdicted (the use of) fire and water; since fire and water are absolute necessities of life, the phrase is equivalent to should go into exile. The name of the person so interdicted is put in the dative, here Márcò Tulliò; interdiceretur is an impersonal passive.

66. itinere: ablative of comparison with jùcundius.

67. ei: the dative with obviam iérunt, as in 25, 22, explained in the note there.

75. Octáviánò: Octavianus was a grandnephew of Julius Caesar. He is best known under his later title Augustus, first Roman emperor.

76. Antònió ... adversátus est: Marcus Antonius after Caesar's death endeavored to seize the power which Caesar had held. Cicero showed favor to Octavian, in the hope, however, that the free republic might be restored. The course of events brought him into sharp conflict with Antonius.

62. inter-dicò, -dicerè, -dixi, -dic-tum, tr., forbid, interdict.
63. diùturnus, -a, -um, adj. [diù], lasting, long.
69. inimícìtìa, -ae, f. [inimicus], enmity, hostility.

Quamdiū rēs pública libera stābat, Cicerō in eam cūrās cōgitātīōnēsque ferē omnēs suās consērēbat et plūs operae pōnēbat in agendō quam in scribendō. Cum autem omnia potestāte unīus C. Jūlii Caesaris tenērentur, nōn sē angōri-

80. villam: this was situated not far from the little city of Formiae, on the Gulf of Gaeta. Cicerō possessed several country houses, of which this was probably his favorite.
82. trānsītūrus: the participle has the same force as illātūrus, l. 45.
87. ipse = Cicerō: subject of jussit.
88. Prōminentī, praebentī: supply et; the dative of reference (App. 54) is not infrequently employed where we should expect a possessive genitive; here, e.g. (Cicerōnis) prōminentis . . . et cervīcem praebentīs caput praecīsum est. Translāte with a clause, when he leaned out . . . his head was cut off.
93. plūs operae pōnēbat in agendō, he devoted more attention to action.

80. trānsversus, -a, -um, adj., lying across, cross (as an adjective).
82. aliquoteīns, adv. [aliquot], several times.
83. jactātīō, -onis, f. [jactō], tossing, motion.
84. taedium, -ī, n. [taedēt, it wea-riches], weariness, loathing.
86. adventō, -ventāre, —, —, intr. [intens. of adventīō], advance, approach.
87. lectīca, -ae, f. [lectus], a litter, sedan.
88. prōmineō,-minēre,-minui, intr., stand out; project, lean out.
89. cervīx, -icis, f., neck, throat.
93. cōgitātīō, -onis, f. [cōgitō], reflection, meditation.
96. angor, -oris, m., anguish, torment; pl. melancholy.

Multa extant facētē ab eō dicta. Cum Lentulum, gene-

98. nihil agere nōn posset: the two negatives are to be taken closely with the two verbs (not a case of two negatives making an affirmative), was unable to be idle.

103. aliquid prōdesse, to benefit, to be of some use; aliquid is an accusative of extent.

106. hominēs ... ēligere: an infinitive clause, subject of oportēre, App. 114.

108. sī quid īnsit bonī, whatever good there is in them.

96. in-dignus, -a, -um, adj., unworthy, undeserving.
97. rūs, rūrīs, n., the country; pl., the fields, the country.

peragrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [per+ager], wander through, traverse.

99. philosophia, -ae, f., philosophy.

100. honestē, adv. [honestus], honorably, properly.

103. ōtiōsus, -a, -um, adj. [ōtium], at leisure, unoccupied.

106. praeceptum, -ī, n. [p. part. of praecipiō], maxim, precept, order.

107. ēligō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctum, tr. [ē+legō], choose, select.

excerpō, -cerpere, -cerpsī, -cerptum, tr. [carpō], pick out, select.

109. facētē, adv. [facētus, witty], wittily, humorously.

110. exiguus, -a, -um, adj., scanty, small.

111. accingo, -cingere, -cinxī -cinctum, tr. [ad+cingō], gird to, gird.

112. mātrōna, -ae, f. [māter], married woman, wife, matron.

junior, adj. [compar. of juvenis], younger.
lāns dictitābat sē trīgintā tantum annōs habēre; cui Cicerō "vērum est," inquit, "nam hoc vīgintī annōs audīō." — Caesar, alterō cōnsule mortuō diē Decembris ultimā, Canīni- um cōnsulem hōrā septimā in reliquam diēi partem renūn- tiāverat; quem cum plērique īrent salūtātum dē mōre, "festīnēmus," inquit Cicerō, "priusquam abeat magistrātū." Dē eōdem Canīniō scripsit Cicerō: "Fuit mīrā vigilantia Canīnius, qui tōtō suō cōnsulātū somnum nōn viderit."

115. alterō cōnsule, one of the consuls; the consuls went out of office the last day of December.

117. salūtātum: the accusative of the supine expressing purpose, App. 130.

118. abeat: what name is given to the subjunctive with words meaning before, until?

120. qui . . . viderit: a relative clause of cause or reason; another occurred in 1, 29.

113. dictitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr. [intens. of dictō, dictate], say often, maintain.

116. septimus, -a, -um, adj. [septem], seventh.

117. plērique, plēraeque, plēraque, adj., a very great part, very many; the greater part of, most of.

118. festīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. [festīnus, hasty], hasten.

119. vigilantia, -ae, f. [vigilāns, watchful], watchfulness, vigilance.
GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

Gaius Julius Caesar, the conqueror of Gaul, was born at Rome in the year 100 (some authorities give 102), B.C. He held the office of quaestor in 68, aedile in 65, praetor in 62, and consul in 59. At the end of his consulship he was made governor of Gaul for a period of five years, his term of office being afterward extended for five years longer.

About the time of his arrival in Gaul, the Helvetians, a warlike tribe of the Gauls occupying a region roughly corresponding to modern Switzerland, began a migration from their homes with the intention of settling in a more desirable location. As a result of their attempt to cross territory which was under Roman protection Caesar made war upon them and thoroughly defeated them. Following this he came into conflict with the German king Ariovistus, who with his people had taken possession of a part of Gaul. He inflicted a crushing defeat upon the Germans and drove them back across the Rhine. This was the beginning of a series of campaigns which lasted through the greater part of nine years, and which resulted in the whole of Gaul being brought under Roman control.

During Caesar's absence from Rome his political enemies succeeded in organizing strongly the opposition to him, and his return to Rome was followed by civil war, in which his enemies were defeated. Caesar was made dictator for life, and the foundation for the Roman imperial government was laid. But a conspiracy was formed against him and he was assassinated in the year 44 B.C.

He wrote a history of his campaigns in Gaul in seven Books. The first, which is here given (with some changes), describes the campaign against the Helvetians and the Germans under Ariovistus.
CAESAR'S ARMY

In the earlier periods of Roman history a Roman army consisted of citizens serving without pay. They were therefore not professional soldiers, and like the soldiers who made up our own army in the World War, they went back to their ordinary occupations when relieved of their military duties.

Late in the second century B.C. the well-to-do citizens began to look upon service in the army as something to be avoided. As a result the army came to be recruited from the lower classes, although only citizens were enrolled in the legions, and a professional class of soldiers developed. In Caesar’s time the period of service of the legionary soldier was twenty years. These soldiers might be enlisted from all parts of Italy. Caesar’s troops, however, were doubtless composed of inhabitants of the valley of the Po, in northern Italy, which was one of the provinces he was given to govern at the end of his consulship in 58 B.C. The military age was from seventeen to forty-five.

1. The Legion: The most important division of the army was the legion. It corresponded more nearly to the regiment than to any other division in modern armies, but legions were not grouped into larger units of the nature of brigades. The exact number of men in one of Caesar’s legions is not known but it was somewhere between 3400 and 6000.

A legion was divided into ten cohorts (cohortēs), each cohort was divided into three maniples (manipuli), and each maniple was again divided into two centuries (centuriae).

2. Auxiliaries: Besides the legions, which as we have seen were made up of Roman citizens, the army included other forces which were not citizens. These included both infantry and cavalry. Caesar’s cavalry, in fact, was made up entirely of these non-citizen troops. Infantry auxiliaries were supplied by the Roman provinces and by peoples allied with, or friendly to, the Roman people. They were light-armed troops, e.g., slingers (funditōrēs) and archers (sagittārīi). Caesar’s cavalry
was of Gallic, Spanish, and German origin, and numbered from 4000 to 5000 men.

3. Officers: The officers of the army were the commander-in-chief (dux, imperātor), lieutenants (lēgātī), military tribunes (tribūnī militum), centurions (centuriōnēs), and prefects (praefectī). Of the subordinate officers, the lieutenants were the most important. They commanded divisions of the army or single legions, at the will of the commander-in-chief. Each legion had six tribunes, who were assigned duties of various kinds by the commander-in-chief, and commanded smaller bodies of troops than a legion. The officers most closely in touch with the rank and file were the centurions, who had risen from the ranks themselves. There were sixty in each legion. Caesar set great store by his centurions and he often mentions their faithful and important services. The prefects commanded auxiliary troops.

4. Engineers and Musicians: A Roman army had a body of engineers (fabrī), commanded by a prefect. There were also musicians, who gave signals with various instruments, such as the trumpet (tuba), the horn (cornū), and the clarion (lituus).

5. The Quaestor: The army was accompanied by an officer known as quaestor, who attended to the pay of the troops, to the sale of booty and prisoners, and had charge of provisions.

6. Dress and Arms: A Roman legionary soldier wore a short-sleeved woolen tunic (tunica), something like a long sweater, fastened at the waist by a belt, and extending to a point midway between the hips and knees. For protection in bad weather he wore in addition a woolen cloak (sagum). His shoes (caligae) were of thick leather soles, hob-nailed, with uppers of open-work leather strips.

The soldier’s defensive armor comprised a metal helmet (galea), a coat-of-mail (lōrica) composed of metal plates on a leather backing, and a concave shield (scūtum) consisting
of wooden boards covered with cloth and leather. The dimensions of the shield were about two feet by four.

Offensive weapons were a heavy javelin (pīlum) and a sword (gladius). The former was approximately six and one-half feet long, consisting of a wooden shaft ending in an iron head. The sword, which was about two feet long, was straight and pointed, Roman tactics calling for the use of the sword as a dagger rather than for slashing. It was a deadly weapon in the hands of trained legionaries.

7. The Soldier's Pack: On the march the legionary carried, in addition to arms and armor, a certain amount of provisions, a cooking utensil, and tools for entrenching. All but arms and armor were held together in a pack (sarcinae) fastened to a forked pole, which was carried over the shoulder.

8. Cavalry Equipment: The cavalryman was protected by a round shield (parma) and by a metal helmet. He carried a sword, longer than that of the legionary, and a spear (trāgula).

9. The Baggage Train: Extra arms, clothing, provisions, and all tents were carried by pack-animals (jūmenta) and in wagons. The baggage train was appropriately called impedīmenta (compare impedīre, to impede).

10. Artillery: We are apt to think of artillery as depending exclusively on the use of explosives. The Romans employed instead of explosives twisted strands of rope or hair attached to a frame-work in such a way as to propel stones of considerable size or large arrows. The name for artillery, tormenta (compare torquĕre, to twist), suggests the form of the propelling power used in these machines. The names of the machines were ballista, employed in hurling stones, catapulta, and scorpiō, employed to shoot arrows.

11. Standards: The large flags of modern times were not in use in Caesar's time. The standard of the Roman legion was a silver eagle (aquila), held up at the top of a pole. There were also standards for the maniples, consisting of streamers attached to a cross-bar on a pole, with silver ornaments of
various sorts below. A small, square, banner-like flag (vexillum) served as a standard for the cavalry, and also as a signal for battle when raised above the commanding general's tent.

12. A Roman Camp: When in an enemy's country, a Roman army built a fortified camp (castra) after each day's march, a work in which the Roman legionary was an adept. A rampart (vallum) was thrown up enclosing a square space large enough to quarter the whole army. The excavation of course left a trench (fossa) outside, which afforded additional protection. On the rampart, in addition, was planted a row of heavy wooden stakes. On each of the four sides of the camp was a gateway (porta) through an elbow-shaped turn in the rampart, which exposed to attack the right side of an enemy who attempted to enter.

13. The Army on the March: On the march the army was divided into a vanguard (primum agmen), then the legions in column, followed each by its heavy baggage, and a rear guard (novissimum agmen). In case there was danger of an attack, all the heavy baggage might be placed together in the center of the column, amply protected front and rear, and sometimes by detachments at the sides. Occasionally it was necessary to have the troops march even without their packs, ready for speedy formation in battle array.

14. The Battle Line: Caesar placed his chief reliance in battle on the legions. To the auxiliaries he seems to have given no very definite part, using them as circumstances dictated. The legions in battle array were formed in three lines (triplex aciēs) usually, the third line constituting a reserve. Each line was several, perhaps eight, ranks deep. Upon charging the enemy, javelin volleys were first delivered by the soldiers in the first line. The ranks back of the first two lines may have had to hurl their javelins over the heads of those in front. Then followed the hardest and most effective fighting, that with the deadly short swords. The battle
from that point on consisted of individual combats, man to man. The men in the second line mixed in the fray as those in the first line fell out from the casualties of battle. The third line, acting as reserves, performed whatever duties became necessary, and were of course especially entrusted with repelling flanking movements of the enemy.

15. Attacks on Fortified Places: The Gallic towns which Caesar attacked were often fairly well fortified by walls and trenches. The army was sometimes able, however, to take a town by quick assault (oppugnātiō repentina). In such cases the trench would be filled with earth and other materials, after which the wall or gates would be broken down, or the wall scaled with the help of ladders (scālae). Here the light-armed troops came into play in driving defenders from the wall with arrows and sling-shots.

Towns with stronger fortifications were taken by siege (oppugnātiō) or by blockade (obsidiō). In siege operations the devices employed were: the battering-ram (ariēs), used to demolish a wall; movable sheds of various sorts, which enabled attacking parties to come close to the wall in order to breach it; wheeled towers filled with soldiers, which could be pushed close to the wall, thus making it easier to strip the wall of defenders; and finally, where the ground was broken, the siege-mound (agger), a broad causeway run up to the foot of the wall and affording a smooth road on which to operate the various devices mentioned above.

The blockade was employed where the two methods of attack already described were impossible or inadvisable. Its purpose was to cut off the defenders from supplies and thus force a surrender. Strong lines of entrenchments (circumvāllātiō) were constructed around the town, with redoubts (castella) at intervals. In one case Caesar had to construct double lines of entrenchments, the outer one to ward off outside forces of the enemy who sought to raise the blockade.
16. The World War and Caesar: The World War, so recently concluded, was fought, along its western front, over ground traversed by Caesar's legions. If the great Roman general could have come to life, he would have needed no guide to find his way over the terrain which he had so often traveled. He would have been surprised by the novel instruments of destruction devised by modern ingenuity. Yet with his versatility and adaptability he would doubtless have been able quickly to play a large part in the defense of the Gallic land which he won for Italy; for the larger elements of strategy remain what they have always been.

In more than a few details Caesar would have found resemblances between the methods of war of his own time and of the present. He would have found, for example, the helmet once more come into its own. The highly developed technique of bayonet fighting would have reminded him of the skill which his own legionaries displayed with the sword, a weapon with which he himself was very proficient. Defenses below the level of the ground would not have confused him, for they were in relation to modern weapons of offense what his own ramparts were to the short-range weapons of his day.

While Caesar would not have been able to understand the languages of the allied armies immediately, a great multitude of the printed words would have looked familiar, since French is only a modernized Latin, while our English vocabulary is indebted for its important words to Latin more than to any other language. Doubtless it would have afforded him no little satisfaction to find preserved in the name Rheims a reminiscence of the Remi, the Gallic tribe that made friends with him at an opportune moment and whom he frequently mentions; while Paris would have recalled to him another Gallic tribe, the Parisii, and Soissons the Suessiones.
PART IV
CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR
BOOK I

GEOGRAPHY AND PEOPLES OF GAUL

1. Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres; unam partem incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam qui ipsorum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hi omnēs linguā, institūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānīs Garunna flūmen, ā Belgis Matrona et Sēquana dividit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important, proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī

1. est divisa, is divided; an instance of the perfect participle to be taken as a predicate adjective with est.
   omnis, as a whole; including the three parts mentioned immediately after.

2. qui = ī quī, those who. ipsōrum, their own.
   linguā: ablative of means.

3. nostrā: supply linguā. linguā: ablative of respect; also institūtīs and lēgibus.

4. inter sē, from one another.
   Gallōs: object of dividit. Latin order may often be retained by translating an active verb by a passive; the object then becomes subject.

5. dividit: singular, because the two rivers are conceived of as constituting one boundary.

7. prōvinciae: Rome's province of Transalpine Gaul (in southern France) is meant. It had been brought under Roman authority and organized about sixty years before Caesar's invasion of northern Gaul.
   minimē: with saepe.

8. effēminandōs: the gerundive in a prepositional phrase; translate ad . . . pertinent, tend to break down character.

trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Qua de causae Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute praeceedunt, quod feret cotidiana proelii cum Germanis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt. Eorum una pars, quam Galli obtinent, initium capit ad flumine Rhodano; continetur Garumna flumine, Oceano, finibus Belgarum; attingit etiam ab Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; vergit ad septentriones. Belgae ab extremis Galliae finibus oriantur; pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheini; spectant in septentriones et orientem solem. Aquitania ad Garumna flumine ad Pyreneaeos montes et eam partem Oceanis quae est ad Hispaniam pertinent; spectat inter occasum solis et septentriones.

**The Conspiracy of Orgetorix**

2. Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messalae M. Pisone consulibus, regni cupiditati inductus conjurationem nobilitatis fecit et civibus persuasit ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent: "Perfacile est," inquit, cum virtute omnibus praeestemus, totius Galliae imperio potiri." Id hoc facilior iis persuasit, quod

---

14. *Eorum:* we should expect the name of the country, Galliae, rather than a pronoun referring to the people.
15. *Galli:* those who in the Gallic language were called Celts; see l. 3.
16. *ab,* on the side of.
17. *Galliae:* central, or Celtic, Gaul is meant, as described in ll. 14-17.
18. *est ad,* is next to.
19. *M. Messalae M. Pisone consulibus,* in the consulship of, etc.; ablative absolute. The year was 61 B.C.
20. *ut . . . exirent:* a noun clause, object of *persuasit,* to be translated by an infinitive.
21. *est:* the subject of this verb is the infinitive *potiri.*
22. *Id iis persuasit,* he persuaded them to this. Here the object of *persuasit* is the pronoun *Id;* in l. 4 it was a clause.
23. *hoc facilior,* the more easily; *hoc* is ablative of degree of difference, and at the same time ablative of cause in anticipation of the causal clause, *quod . . . continentur.*
undique loci nātūrā Helvētiū continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētiūm ā Germānīs dīvidit, alterā ex parte monte Jūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs, tertīā ex parte lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiūs dīvidit. Itaque et minus lātē vagābantur et minus facile finitimīs bellum īnferre poterant; quā dē causā hominēs bellardī cupidī magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum ccxl, in lātitūdinem clxxx patēbant.

The Helvetians Prepare to Migrate

3. His rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōnstituērunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent comparāre, jūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs civítātibus pācem et amīcitiam 5 cōnfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiēndās biennium sībī satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfirma. Orgetorīx dux dēlīgitur. Is lēgātiōnem ad civitātēs suscipit. In eō itinere persuādet Castīcō, Sēquanō, ut rēgnum in civitāte suā occupāret; pater enim ejus rēgnum in 10 Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amicus appellātus erat; itemque Dumnōrīgī Haeduō, quī eō

7. ūnā ex parte, on one side.
13. finitimīs, on their neighbors; dative with the compound verb īnferre, which as a transitive verb takes also the direct object bellum; contrast the intransitive praestēmus, l. 5, which has only the dative omnibus.
14. Prō, in proportion to.
2. ea, those things, explained in the following lines, jūmentōrum . . . cōnfirmāre.
3. quam maximum numerum, the greatest number possible.
6. Ad eās rēs cōnficiēndās, for the accomplishment of these things; the gerundive in a prepositional phrase expressing purpose.
7. dūxērunt: here in the sense of regarded, thought.
tempore principātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque filiām suam in mātrimōnium dat. "Perfacile factū est," inquit, "cōnāta perficere, proptereā quod ipse meae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus sum; nōn est dubium quīn tōtius Galliae plurimum Helvētiī possint; meīs cōpiīs meōque exercitū vōbīs rēgna conciliābō." Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et jūs jūrandum dant et, rēgnō occupātō, per trēs potentiissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtius Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērānt.

The Death of Orgetorix

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinculīs causam dīcere cōgērunt; si damnārētur, ignī eum cremātūrī erant. Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad jūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem, undique cōgīt et omnēs clientēs obaerrātosque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem conductī; per eōs, nē causam dīceret, sē ēripīt. Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs jūs suum exequī cōnārētur multi-

13. plēbī: dative with acceptus, acceptable.
15. factū, to do; the supine, ablative of respect.
17. quīn, that, with the subjunctive, is regularly employed after expressions of doubt, when these are accompanied by a negative.
plurimum possint, are the strongest (people).
19. inter sē dant, they exchange; the phrase inter sē denotes mutual or reciprocal action, as in 1, 4.
21. Galliae: with potīrī, which sometimes governs the genitive instead of the ablative.
1. indicium: translate as if indicēs, informers.
2. ex vinculis, in chains; how, literally?
si damnārētur, if he should be convicted.
3. causae: objective genitive after dictiōnis.
4. ad (hominum): used adverbially, about.
5. coegīt: here and in l. 9 with the meaning collected, while in l. 2 it meant compelled.
7. per eōs, through their help.
se ēripīt, he escaped.
tūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; Helvētiī arbitrantur ipsum sibī mortem cōnscīvisse.

**The Helvetians Complete Their Preparations**

5. Post ejus mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī ē finibus suīs exīre cōnantur. Ubi jam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrāti sunt, oppida sua omnia numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua privāta aedificia incendunt, frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt; haec fēcērunt, ut, domum reditīōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia pericula subeunda essent; trium mēnsum molitā cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre jubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrīgis, fīnitimīs, ut, oppidīs suīs vicisque exustīs, ūnā cum īs proficīscantur; Boīōs, qui trāns Rhēnum incoluereant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōreiamque oppugnābant, ad sē sociōs recipiunt.

**Two Routes Open to the Helvetians**

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent; ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Jūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī

---

2. *Ubi jam*, when at last.

3. *numerō*: ablative of respect. *ad*: see the note on *ad*, 4, 4.

4. *privāta aedificia*: scattered dwellings not in towns and villages.

6. *spē sublātā*, by destroying the hope; ablative absolute, expressing means.

    *ad . . . subeunda*, to undergo all dangers.

7. *trium mēnsum*, for three months; genitive of measure.

10. *Boīōs*: the word Boii survives in the modern name Bohemia.

12. *ad sē sociōs recipiunt*, they admit to their numbers as allies.

1. *quibus . . . possent*: a relative clause of description, hence the subjunctive.

**itineribus**: the antecedent in Latin is occasionally repeated in the relative clause; it may be omitted in translation.
ducerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile per-
paucī prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram,
multō facillus atque expeditius, propterēa quod inter finēs
Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nūllīs
locīs vadō trānsītur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est
proximumque Helvētiōrum finībus Genava. Ex eō oppidō
pons ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Cōnsilium erat Helvētiōrum vel
persuādēre Allobrogibus, quī nūper pācātī erant et nōndum
bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidēbantur, vel vi cōgere
ut per suōs finēs iter darent. Omnibus rēbus ad profectionem
comparātīs, diem dīcunt, quā dīē ad ripam Rhodanī omnēs
Gabīniō cōnsulibus.

Caesar Determines to Stop the Helvetians

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nos-
tram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī et quam
maximīs potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et

4. ducerentūr, could be drawn; the clause vīx quā ... ducerentur is
somewhat different from the one in ll. 1-2, in that the idea of possibility
enters into the subjunctive itself.
   altissimus, very high.
   ut ... possent: a clause of result.
5. prohibēre: supply eōs as object.
6. vadō trānsītur, is crossed by fording.
7. finībus: dative with proximum.
8. bonō animō, kindly disposed; ablative of description in the predicate
   after vidēbantur.
   ut ... darent: a noun clause, object of persuādēre and cōgere.
9. quā dīē ... conveniant, on which (day) they are to assemble; a rela-
tive clause of purpose; dīē may be omitted in translation, as itineribus, l. 1.
10. a. d. v. Kal. Apr., =ante diem quāntum Kalendās Aprilēs, five days
   before the Kalends of April, i.e., Mar. 28th.
   id, it, explained by the indirect discourse following, eōs ... cōnārī.
11. quam maximīs potest itineribus, by the longest journeys possible; the
   plural itineribus is employed with reference to the daily distance; potest
   might have been omitted, since quam and a superlative alone express
   the highest degree possible, as in 3, 3.
ad Genavam pervenit. Ā prōvinciā tōtā quam maximum potest militum numerum postulat (erat omnīnō in Gallīā ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem quī erat ad Genavam jubet rescindī. Ubi dē ejus adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs civitātīs. Hī dīxērunt Helvētiōs habēre in animō sine ūlō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāvĕrunt ut ejus voluntāte id sībi facere licēret. Caesar memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum exercitumque ejus ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub jugum missum; concedendum

4. ad, into the neighborhood of. No preposition would be employed if the meaning were “to Geneva.”
6. ad, near, at.
10. habērent: subjunctive in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse.
11. ejus voluntāte, with his approval.
12. L. Cassium . . . occīsum: in 107 B.C.
13. concedendum (esse), the privilege should be granted; the verb is used impersonally, i.e., its subject is the fundamental idea in the verb itself, to be represented in English by a noun; in like manner pugnātum est means a battle was fought.
igitur nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimīcō animō temperā-
tūrōs ab injūriā et maleficiō existimābat. Tamen, quod militēs quōs imperāverat nōndum convēnerant, lēgātūs re-
spondit diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum; si quid vellent, ad Īd. Apr. reverterentur.

**Caesar Denies the Helvetians Right of Way Through the Roman Province**

8. Interea ā lacū Lemānō ad montem Jūram mīlia pas-
sum xviii mūrūm secundum flūmen in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perduēcit. Eō opere perfectō, praesidiae dis-
posīt, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invitō trānsīre cōnārentur, prohibēre posset. Ubi lēgātī ad eum diē cōn-
stituērō revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populi Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibītūrum ostendit. Helvētīī ēā spē dējectī nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, perrumpere cōnātī sunt. Eōrum aliī nāvēs jūnxerant ratēsque complūrēs fēcerant; aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitudō flūmineis erat, trānsīre cō-
ñabantur. Sed operis mūnitiōne et militum concursū et tēlīs repulsi hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.
The Helvetians Arrange to March Through the Country of the Sequani

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustiās ire nōn poterant. His cum sua sponte persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Hae-duu[m mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largītiōne apud Sēquanōs plurimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā civitāte Orgetorīgis filiām in mātrimōniōm dúxerat, et cupiditāte rēgīi adductus novis rēbus studēbat et quam plurīmās civitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per finēs suōs Helvētiīs ire patiantur, obsidēsque uti inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquani, nē itinere Helvētiīs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et injūriā trānseant.

Caesar Secures Reinforcements and Pursues the Helvetians

10. Caesari nūntiātur Helvētiīs habēre in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santōnum finēs facere; hī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae civitās est in

---

1. Relinquēbātur, there was left.
ūna via, only the road.
Sēquanīs invītīs, against the wish of the Sequani, an ablative absolute.
2. angustiās: the narrow passage along the bank of the Rhone described in 6, 2-5.
cum, since.
5. plurimum poterat, had the greatest influence; the adverb plurimum is in reality the accusative neuter of plurīmus expressing degree.
8. novis rēbus, revolution; dative with studēbat.
9. habēre obstrictās, to have bound (to him).
10. ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut . . . patiantur, prevails upon the Sequani to allow; ut . . . patiantur is a noun clause, object of impetrat.
11-13. nē . . . prohibeant, ut . . . trānseant: these clauses contain the purpose of the exchange of hostages; translate freely, the Sequani agree not to prevent etc., the Helvetii agree to pass through, etc.
provinciā. Id si fieret, hominēs bellicōsī, populī Rōmānī inimīcī, partī provinciāe patentī maximēque frumentāriāe fīnitimi futūri erant. Ob eās causās ei mūniōnī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnūm lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Italiam magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscribit et trēs, quae circum Aquileiam hiemābant, ex hibernis ēducit et prox- imō itinere in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit. Ibi Ceutronēs et Graiōcelī et Ca-turīgēs, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, itinere exercitum pro-hibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extra prōvinciae trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

Several Gallic Tribes Appeal to Caesar for Protection

11. Helvetīī jam per angustiās et finēs Séquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant eōrum-quae agrōs populābantur. Haeduī, cum sē suaque ab iīs dē-fendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: "Ita nōs," inquint, "omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meriti sumus, ut paene in cōnspectū exerciūs vestrī agrī vāstāri, liberī in servitūtem abduci, oppida expugnāri

4. Id si fieret, if this should be done.
6. ei mūniōnī: dative with the compound verb praeficit, with Labiē-num as direct object.
12. itinere: ablative of separation, with prohibēre.
13. Complūribus: with proeliīs, while hīs and pulsīs go together and form an ablative absolute.
14. citeriōris prōvinciae: the Roman province in northern Italy, also called Gallia Cisalpīna.
4. rogātum, to beg; the accusative of the supine expressing purpose; it governs the object, auxilium.
5. Ita nōs . . . meriti sumus, we have always so deserved of the Roman people.
6. ut . . . nōn debuerint: a negative clause of result.
nōn dēbuerint." Eōdem tempore Ambarrī, necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Haeduōrum, Caesarem certōrem faciunt sēsē, dē-populātīs agrīs, nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. 10 Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum vicīs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sē praeter agrī solum nīhil habēre reliquam. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn expectāre statuit dum, omnibus fortūnis sociōrum cōnsūmpūtīs, in Santōnōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

**Caesar Defeats a Portion of the Helvetians**

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Haeduōrum et Sēqua-nōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit, incrēdibilī lēnītāte, ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat jūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus jūctīs trānsibant, trēsque jam partēs cōpiārum trādūxerant. Caesar dē tertīā vigiliā cum legiōnibus trībus dī castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flū-men trānsierat. Eōs impēdītōs et inopīnantēs aggressus mag-nam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdīderunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnūs; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētiā in quattuor pāgōs dīvisa est. Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīsset patrum nost-rōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et ejus

9. dēpopulātīs: although deponent verbs are regularly active in meaning, the perfect participles are sometimes used as passives.
15. pervenīrent, should come; an anticipatory subjunctive with dum, until.
2. lēnītāte: ablative of description.
in utram partem fluat: an indirect question.
5. dē tertīā vigiliā, in the third watch; literally, dē would mean out of.
7. aggressus: the perfect participle of a deponent verb is regularly active; it can therefore be used in agreement with the subject to denote an act of the subject. With the perfect participle of a non-deponent verb, the ablative absolute is the construction necessary to denote an act of the subject.
8. mandārunt: a form contracted from mandāvērunt.
9. abdīderunt (sēsē), hid in; the accusative silvās with in is used instead of the ablative owing to the motion implied in abdīderunt.
12. memoriā: ablative denoting the time when.
exercitum sub jugum miserat. Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars cīvitātis Helsētiae insigne calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās, sed etiam privātās ińjūriās uītus est; nam Tīgrīnī interfēcerant L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, avum L. Pīsōnis, socērī Caesāris, eōdem proelīo quō Cassium.

**Negotiations Between Caesar and the Helvetians**

13. Hoc proelīo factō, reliquās cōpiās Helsētīorum ut cōsequī posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque īta exercitum trādūcit. Helsētīī repentinō ejus adventū commōtī sunt; ille enim ūnō dīe flūmen trānsierat, id quod ipsī dīēbus xx aegerrimē cōnfēcerant. Lēgātōs igitur ad eum mittunt, cujus lēgātīonis Dīvīcō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helsētīorum fuerat. Is īta cum Caesare ēgit: "Si pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helsētīīs faciet, in eam partem ībunt Helsētīī atque ībi erunt ubi eōs cōnstitueris atque esse volueris; sī bellō persequī persevērābis, reminīscere et vete-

---

14. quae pars...ea: translate as if ea pars quae.

15. intulerat: with bellum as object this verb means make (war) on; with such a word as calamitās or iñjūria as object it means inflict...on. Why the dative populō?

prīnceps, first, (was the) first.

1. ut: introducing a clause of purpose, and to be translated before cōpiās.

2. pontem faciendum cūrat, he causes a bridge to be built; the gerundive in agreement with an object noun is employed after dō, cūrō, and similar verbs, to express purpose.

in Ararī: observe that "over" a river, with reference to a bridge, is expressed by in and the ablative; "across" and "over," in the sense of "to," or "on, the other side of," are expressed by trāns and the accusative.

Ararī: several i-stem nouns of the third declension have an ablative ending in -i and an accusative in -im. Tīberīn has previously occurred, R. 3, 4.

6. bellō Cassiānō: the campaign of 107 B.C., in which Cassius was defeated by the Tīgrīni. It is plain that Dīvīco was an old man when he met Caesar.

7. cum Caesare ēgit, he addressed Caesar; literally, ēgit would mean treated, dealt.

10. reminīscere: imperative.
The Helvetians Refuse Caesar's Terms

14. His Caesar ita respondit: "Eò mihi minus dubitatiònis datur, quod eòs rès quàs commemoràvistis memorià teneò, atque eò gravius ferò quò minus merítò populì Ròmàní acci-
derunt; quì sì alicujus injúriae sìbi cònscient fuisset, nòn fuit
dificile cavère; sed eò dèceptus est, quod sè causam timändì habère nòn intellegèbat. Quòd sì vèteris contumèliae oblì-

11. incommodì: the genitive, depending upon a verb of remembering.
12. Quod, as to the fact that.
13. nòli . . . tribuere, do not on that account attribute much to your own valor. Nòli, imperative of nòlo, with an infinitive, is the common and polite form of expressing a negative command in Latin.
16. virtùte: ablative of means.

dolò, insidiis: nìtor takes an ablative of the thing relied upon.
17. ut is locus . . . pròdat: a noun clause, object of committère, bring about, cause.

1. Eò minus, the less; èò is a combination of ablative of degree of difference and ablative of cause.
3. eò gravius, quò minus, the more seriously, the less; èò and quò are ablatives of degree of difference.

merítò: ablative of accordance.
4. sì fuisset, if they had been; a condition contrary to fact.
sìbi: with cònscient, but to be omitted in translation.
5. èò, quod, by the fact that; quod here introduces a noun clause of fact.
6. Quod sì vellem, but if I were willing; another condition contrary to fact.

contumèliae: for the genitive with verbs of remembering and forgetting, compare incommodì, 13, 11.
visce vellem, num etiam recentium injuriarum, quod me invitō iter per provinciam per vim temptāvistis, quod Hae-
duōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāvistis, memoriam
dēpōnere possum? Quod vestrā victoriā tam insolenter
glōriāmini quodque tam diū vōs impūnē injuriās tulisse ad-
mīrāmini ēōdem pertinent. Čonsuēvērunt enim dei immor-
tālēs, quō gravius sceleraṭī hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum
doleant, ĕs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūtūrnīōrem im-
pūnitātem concēdere. Ĉum ea ita sint, tamen, si obsidēs
mihi dabitis, et si Haeduīs sociīsque ēōrum, item si Allobrog-
ibus, dē injuriis satisfacētis, vēbiscum pācem faciam.”
Dīvicō respondit: “Ita Helvētīī ā majōribus suis ĕnsitūtī
sunt ut obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; ejus reī
populus Rōmānus est testis.” Hōc responsō datō discēsit.

**Defeat of Caesar's Cavalry**

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caes-
ar equītātumque omnem ad numerum quattuor mīlium,
quem ex omnī provinciā et Haeduīs atque ēōrum sociīs coāc-

---

7. quod ... temptāvistis, *that you attempted*; this and the following
quod clauses are noun clauses of fact in apposition with injuriārum; the
latter word depends on memoriam. The quod clauses in ll. 10-12 are also
noun clauses, subjects of pertinent.

9. Allobrogas: the ending -as is a Greek accusative plural ending some-
times found in nouns of the third declension, particularly in names of
peoples.

11. vōs ... tulisse admīrāmini, *are surprised to have inflicted.*

13. quō, *in order that*; see the note on 8, 4.

14. secundiōrēs rēs, *extraordinary prosperity.*

15. concēdere: depending on cōnsuēvērunt.

19. cōnsuērint: contracted from cōnsuēverint, perfect subjunctive.

3. coāctum habēbat, *had collected*; the participle coāctum agrees with
quem; the combination of the participle with the imperfect habēbat is to
be translated in the same way as coēgerat, past perfect of cōgō; it makes
of habēbat, however, almost an auxiliary corresponding to English “had”
as an auxiliary. The present of habēō can be used with a participle in
the same way as the imperfect.
Caesar Censures the Haeduans for Failing to Furnish Supplies

16. Interim cotidiē Caesar frūmentum quod Haeduī essent publicē pollicitiī flāgitābat. Nam propter frīgora, quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābuli quidem satis magna cōpia supplētābat; eō autem frūmentō quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat, proptereā ūtī minus poterat, quod īter ab Ararī Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcunt Haeduī; cōnferrī, comportāri, adesse dīcunt. Ubi sē

4. qui videant: relative clause of purpose.
quās in partēs, etc.: indirect question.
9. novissimō agmine, from their rear line; agmine is ablative of means.
11. satis habēbat prohibēre, regarded it as sufficient to prevent.
13. primum: supply agmen.
nōn amplius ... interesset, there was a distance of not more than five or six miles (a day).
1. essent pollicitiī: subjunctive of informal indirect discourse.
3. posita, situated; see the note on divīsa, 1, 1.
5. frūmentō: object of āūtī, l. 6.
flūmine Ararī: ablative of the way or route.
6. proptereā: take with quod, for the reason that.
7. Diem ex diē, day after day.
8. dūcunt, put off; cūm is to be understood as object.
cōnferrī, comportāri, adesse: supply frūmentum as subject.
diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstaēre, quō diē frūmentum militibus mētīrī oportēret, convocāvit eōrum prīncipēs, quōrum magnam cópiam in castrīs habēbat. In hīs erant Divi-
ciācus et Liscus, qui summō magistrātūrī praeerat, quem ver-
gobretum appellant Haedūī, qui créātur annuus et vitæ necisque in suōs habet potestātem. Tum Caesar grāviter eōs accūsat, quod, cum frūmentum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī possit, hostibus tam propinquis, ab īis nōn sublevētur, praeśertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit.

**Two Factions Among the Haeduans Pro-Roman and Anti-Roman**

17. Tum dēnum Liscus ēratiōne Caesarianīs adductus quod anteā tacuerat prōpōnit: "Sunt nōn nūlli, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plurīrimum valeat, qui privātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Propter hōrum sēditiōsam atque im-
probam ēratiōnem multitūdō frūmentum nōn cōnferunt quod dēbent: 'Praestat,' inquiunt, 'si jam prīcipātum Galliāe obtinēre nōn possimus, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; si Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs libertātem sine dubīō ēripient.' Ab īsdem tua ēōnsilia quaeque in castrīs geruntur hostibus ēnūntiantur;

9. diūtius, too long.
12. magistrātūrī: dative with the compound verb praeerat.
14. in suōs, over his fellow-citizens.
15. quod . . . nōn sublevētur: the same explanation applies to the sub-
junctive here as in l. 1.
16. hostibus tam propinquis, with the enemy so near.
17. magnā ex parte, to a great extent.
1. quod: for id quod.
3. plūs possint, have more influence.
6. Praestat: the subject is the infinitive perferre, l. 8.
inquiunt: the subject is "they," referring to the trouble-makers of the preceding lines.
9. Haeduīs, from the Haeduī; dative of separation with ēripient.
hōs coërcēre nōn possum. Quīn etiam intellegō quantō cum perīculō hanc necessāriam rem tibi ēnūntiāverim, et ob eam causam quam diū potuī tacuī.”

DUMNORIX THE LEADER OF THE ANTI-ROMAN FACTION


11. Quīn etiam, nay more, more than that; this phrase has a corrective force.

13. quam diū potuī, as long as I could.

2. pluribus praeuentibus, in the presence of too many, ablative absolute.

4. sōlō: supply eō, referring to Liscus.

Dīcit: supply Liscus as subject.

6. magnā: with grātīā.

9. redēmpta habet, has bought in; see the note on coāctum habēbat, 15, 3. Allusion is made here to the ancient practice of letting out on contract to private individuals the collection of taxes. Dumnorīx’s prestige in his state was so great that none dared compete with him even though he offered low bids to the state officials.

14. largiter potest, is very influential.

16. uxōrem: the daughter of Orgetorīx, as told in 3, 14.
ódit etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia ejus dēminūta et Dīviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātiae atque honōris sit restitūtus. Si quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendi habet; imperiō populi Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam habet grātiā dēspērat." Initium fugae equitātūs paucīs ante diēbus, ut Caesar in quaerendō repperit, factum erat à Dumnorīge atque ejus equitibus (nam equitātuī quem auxiliō Caesari Haeduī miserant Dumnorīx praerat); eōrum fugā reliquis erat equitātus perterritus.

**Caesar Plans to Punish Dumnorix**

19. Ad hās suspicīōnēs certissimae rēs accēdēbant, quod per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxerat, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāverat, quod ea omnīa nōn modo injussū Caesaris et cīvitātīs, sed etiam īnscientibus ipsīs fēcerat, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accusābātur. Statuit igitur Caesar in eum aut ipse animadvertere aut cīvitātem animadvertere jubēre. Hās omnībus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Dīvī-


quod, etc.: this clause contains a reason attributed to Dumnorix by the speaker, and so on the principle of informal indirect discourse has its verbs, dēminūtā sit and restitūtā sit, in the subjunctive.

22. accidat, *should befall*.

23. imperiō, *under the sovereignty*; ablative of attendant circumstance.

24. eā: with grātiā.

25. in quaerendō, *upon investigation*.

27. auxiliō Caesari, *to the aid of Caesar*; auxiliō is dative of purpose, Caesarī dative of reference.

1. quod trādūxerat, *that, etc.*; a noun clause in apposition with rēs, as in 14, 7.

2. obsidēs dandōs cūrāverat: the use of the gerundive with cūrō is explained in the note on 13, 2.

4. īnscientibus ipsīs, *without their knowledge*; ablative absolute.

6. in eum animadvertere, *inflict punishment upon*; literally, *turn the attention to*.

7. rēbus: dative with repugnābat, which as a verb of opposing belongs to the list of special verbs governing the dative.
ciācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, jūstiam, temperantiam cognōverat; nam nē ejus suppliciō Diviciācī animum offenderet verēbātur. Itaque priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum ad sē vocāri jubet et, cotidiānīs interpretibus remōtīs, per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō colloquītur; simul commonefacit quae ipsō praesente in conciliō dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit quae sēpārātim quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit. Petīt atque hortātur ut sine ejus offensīōne animī vel ipse dē eō, causā cognītā, statuat, vel cīvitātem statuēre jubeat.

**CAESAR YIELDS TO THE PLEAS OF DIVICIACUS, BROTHER OF DUMNORIX**

20. Diviciācūs multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret: “Sciō,” inquit, “illa esse vēra, neque quisquam ex eō plūs quam ego dolōris capit, propterē quod, cum ipse grātiā plurimum possem domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter 5 adulēscēntiam posset, per mē crēvit; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuēndam grātiam, sed paene ad perniciem meam ūtitur. Commoveor tamen et amōre frāternō et ex-

9. in, towards.
10. nē, that; how is ut to be translated after a verb of fearing?
11. cōnārētur, should attempt; the anticipatory subjunctive with priusquam.
14. cui, in whom; dative with fidem habēbat.
15. ipsō praesente, in his own presence; ipsō refers to Diviciacus.
18. ipse: refers to Caesar; translate, that either he himself (be allowed to) decide, or to order the state to decide.
2. nē, not to; the clause is a noun clause, object of obsecrāre.
gravius, too severe.
4. dolōris: genitive of the whole after plūs.
plurimum possem, I was very influential.
6. quibus: to be translated not by a relative, but by a demonstrative.
Caesar Plans to Surprise the Helvetians

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus quī cognōscerent mīsit. Renūntiātum est faciēm esse. Dē tertiā

9. Quod sī quid, but if anything.
ā tē, from you, at your hands.
13. rogat . . . faciat: translate as if rogat utfaciat; ut is sometimes missing in noun clauses after verbs of requesting and commanding.
14. tanti: of so much value, worth so much; the genitive of this word (in the neuter) as well as parvī, magnī, quantī, plūris, is employed to express indefinite value.
15. voluntātī ac precibus, to meet his wish and prayers; the datives are dependent upon condōnet. Explain the mood of this last word.
18. in reliquum tempus, for the future.
19. frātrī, for the sake of his brother.
20-21. agat, loquātur: subjunctives in indirect questions, while possit is subjunctive in a clause of purpose.
1. certior factus: remember that this phrase takes the construction of indirect discourse, hostēs cōnsēdisse.
3. in circuitū, on all sides.
quī cognōscerent: relative clause of purpose; supply explōrātōres as antecedent of quī; the verb has for object the indirect question quālis esset nātūra.
vigilia T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum daūbus 5 legiōnibus et iīs ducibus quī iter cognōverant summum jugum montis ascendere jubet; quid suī cōnsiliī sit ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigilia eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī militāris perītissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. 10 Sullae et posteā in M. Crassi fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

The Surprise Fails, Owing to the Mistake of an Officer

22. Prīmā lūce summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenēbātur; ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus aberat, neque, ut posteā ex captīvīs comperit, aut ipsīs adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus erat; sed Cōnsidius equō admīssō ad eum accurrit, dicit montem quem ā Labiēnō 5 occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenēri; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque Īnsignibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proxīmum collem subdūcit, aciem īnstruit. Labiēnus monte occupātō nostrōs expectābat proeliōque abstīnebat. Caesar enim

5. prō praetōre, with praetorian rank. Labienus was Caesar’s most trusted lieutenant. He had been assigned to Caesar’s staff with the honorary designation prō praetōre, as if he had held the office of praetor in Rome.

6. iīs ducibus, those men as guides.

7. quid suī cōnsiliī sit, what his plan is; cōnsiliī is genitive of the whole with quid.

10. reī militāris, in military affairs; the genitive is dependent on the adjective perītissimus.


1. summus mōns, the top of the mountain; “the highest mountain” would be mōns altissimus.

3. neque: take with aut . . . aut, and neither . . . nor.

ut, as.

4. equō admīssō, with his horse at a gallop.

5. accurrit: connect this verb with dīcit by supplying et. Look for another instance below of an omitted conjunction.

6. id, this fact; object of cognōvisse.

9. proeliō: what kind of ablative?
Caesar Turns Aside Toward Bibracte, Pursued by the Helvetians


Both Sides Prepare for Battle

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque quī sustinēret hos-

11. Multō diē, well on in the day; this need not imply anything more than "well on into the morning."
13. quod: for id quod.
14. pró visō, as seen.
quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, at the customary interval.
1. ejus diēi: this phrase may be omitted in translation.
biduí frúmentum, a two days’ supply of grain.
2. reí frúmentáriae: dative with próspticiendum (esse), must look out for; the verb is used impersonally.
8. à novissimō agmine, on the rear line; the positions were now reversed, with the Helvetians following the Roman army.
1. animum advertit: this phrase is equivalent to animadvertit and takes id as a direct object.
2. qui sustinēret: relative clause of purpose.
tium impetum misit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem instruxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; in summō jugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscripserat et omnia auxilia collocāvit; impedimenta sarcināsque in ūnum locum cōnferrī, et eum ab hīs qui in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant mūnīri jussit. Helvētiī eum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī impedimenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, rejectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

The Battle Begins

25. Caesar prīmum suum, deinde omnium ex cōnspectū remōvit equōs, ut aequātō omnium perīculō spem fugae tolleret; cohortātus inde suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs, ē locō superiōre pilis missīs, facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disjectā, gladiīs destrictīs, in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs magnō ad pugnam erat impedimentō quod plūra eōrum scūta ūnō ictū pilōrum trānsfīxa et colligāta erant; nam cum

3. in colle mediō, half way up the hill; mediūs, like summus, is one of the adjectives denoting a part.

triplicem aciem: these lines were arranged one behind another; each line consisted of about eight ranks.

7. eum: supply locum.

9. cōnfertissimā aciē, in closest array.

10. phalange: a close formation, in which the mass was protected by the shields of the front rank held out before them and by the shields of the ranks behind held overhead.

1. suum: supply equum.

omnium: the officers only are meant.

2. aequatō . . . perīculō, by making the danger of all equal.

5. gladiīs: the most effective part of a Roman attack was with the sword, which was short and necessitated close fighting.

Galliīs . . . erat impedimentō, it was a great hindrance to the Gauls in the battle; impedimentō is a dative of purpose or end; the subject of erat is the noun clause following, quod . . . colligāta erant, that, etc.

6. plūra, in many cases; the word limits scūta. In the phalanx formation the shields overlapped, thus making it possible for a javelin to pierce two shields at one time.
ferrum sē ĕnflexisset, neque id ēvellere neque sinistrā impeditā satis commodē pugnāre poterant; multī igitur, diū jactātō bracchiō, praeoptāvērunt scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pugnāre. Tandem vulneribus défessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns suberat circiter mille passuum spatīō, ēō sē recipere coopērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōi et Tulingi, qui homīnum milībus circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō aggressī circumveniēbant; id cōnspicāti Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus īnstāre et proelium redintegrāre coopērunt. Rōmānī signa bipertūtō intulērunt; prima et secunda acīēs, ut victīs ac sum-mōtīs resisteret, tertia, ut venientēs sustinērēt.

Defeat and Flight of the Helvetians — Caesar Pursues

26. Ita ancipitī proelīō ēi atque ācrier pugnātum est. Diūtiūs cum sustinērer nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī

8. ferrum: this refers to the iron head of the javelin, the neck of which was of softer metal than the tip.

sinistrā impeditā, with the left hand encumbered, ablative absolute; the shield was carried on the left arm.

9. jactātō bracchiō, after tossing their arms about; ablative absolute.

10. nūdō corpore, with unprotected bodies.

12. eō: an adverb.

13. Captō: the verb is here used in the sense of reach, gain.

14. agmen claudēbant, brought up the rear.

15. novissimīs praesidiō erant, served as a rear guard; two datives, one of reference, the other of purpose.

ex itinere, forthwith, at once; literally, from their march, i.e., without waiting to effect the usual battle formation.

16. ab, on.

18. signa bipertūtō intulērunt, advanced in two divisions; how is it literally?

19. victīs ac summōtīs: referring to the Helvetians, while venientēs refers to the Boii and Tulingi.

1. pugnātum est: translate as if pugnāvērunt, they fought; or combine with proelīō and translate, a long and stubborn double battle was waged.

2. alterī . . . alterī, the one party . . . the other, referring respectively to the Helvetians and to the Boii and Tulingi.
sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hoc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum 5 hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnātum est, propterēā quod prō vāllō carrōs objecerant et e locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla conjiciēbant, et nōn nūllī inter carrōs raedāsque matarās ac trāgulās subjiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset 10 pugnātum, impedimentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis filia atque unus e filiīs captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continentēr iērunt; in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera militūm et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūntiōsque mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē juvārent; aliter sē eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse, trīduō intermissō, cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

**SURRENDER OF THE HELVETIANS**

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopīa adductī lēgātōs dē dēdītiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere con-

---

5. *cum*, although.

āversum hostem, an enemy in flight, the back of an enemy.

6. Ad multam noctem, till the night was well advanced.

ad impedimenta, at the baggage.

7. prō vāllō, as a rampart.

15. occīsōrum, of the slain; perfect participle as a noun.

17. nē ... juvārent, not to assist; a noun clause depending on the idea of command in litterās nūntiōsque mīsit.

nēve: the regular word for and not between subjunctives in clauses of purpose, noun clauses of will, or indirect commands.

18. sē ... habitūrum (esse): indirect discourse depending on the idea of saying suggested by litterās ... mīsit.

eōdem locō quō, in the same position as.

2. Quī cum: translate as if cum ū.

convēnissent: usually an intransitive verb, but transitive here with *cum* as direct object.
venissent, sē ad pedēs prōjēcērunt suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petiērunt. Caesar eōs in cō locō quō tum essent suum adventum expectāre jussit. Eō postquam pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs, quī ad eōs perfūgissent, poposcit. Dum ea conquīruntur et cōnferuntur, circiter hominum mīlia vi ejus pāgi quī Verbigenus appellātur prīmā nocte ē castris Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum conten-dērunt.

Terms Granted the Helvetians

28. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quōrum per finēs ierant, hīs ut conquirerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgāti esse vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus armīs perfugis trāditīs, in dēditionem ac-cēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs ē finēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī jussit et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut īs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque

3. flentēs, with tears.
5. Eō: an adverb.
6. Dum ea conquiruntur, while these were being hunted up; remember that dum denoting a situation takes the present indicative, whatever the tense of the principal verb.
   ea: neuter, because its antecedents are of mixed gender, one of them, arma, being neuter.
8. prīmā nocte, at nightfall.
1. Quod, this, referring to the fact related at the end of the preceding chapter.
   quōrum . . . hīs: translate in the order hīs per finēs quōrum.
2. conquirerent, redūcerent: supply as object eōs.
   sī . . . vellent, if they wished to be free from guilt before him; sībī is dative of reference.
3. reductōs: agreeing with eōs to be supplied.
   in hostium numerō habuit, treated them as enemies; i.e., he either put them to death or sold them as slaves.
6. omnibus frūgibus āmissīs: they had burned all the grain except what they were going to take with them, 5, 5.
7. quō famem tolerārent, with which they could prevent starvation; the clause is descriptive, with an added idea of possibility.
8. facerent, furnish.
quos incenderant restituere jussit. Id ea maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant 10 vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suīs finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trāns- ĭrent et finitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boiōs in finibus Haeduōrum collocāvit; id enim petēbant Haeduī, quī Boiōs ēgregiā virtūte cognōverant; posteā eōs in 15 parem jūris libertātīisque condicionem atque ipsī erant recēpērunt.

The Numbers of the Helvetians and Allies

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litterīs Graecīs cōnfectae et ad Caesarem relātæ, quibus in tabulis nōminātīm ratiō cōnfecta erat, quī numerus domō exīsset eōrum quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātīm quot puerī, senēs, mulierēsque. Quārum omnium ratiōnōm summa erat 5 capītum Helvētiōrum milium cclxiii, Tulingōrum milium xxxvi, Latobrīgōrum xiii, Rauracōrum xxiii, Boiōrum xxxii; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia nonāgintā duo.

9. ea ratiōne, for this reason; explained by the noun clause quod nōluit, that he did not wish, etc.
11. nē, for fear that; introducing a clause of purpose.
13. Galliae prōvinciae: the two words are in apposition.
15. ēgregiā virtūte: ablative of description, in the predicate after cog- nōverant.
16. parem atque, the same as; atque and ac after words of likeness may be employed to mean as.
1. litterīs Graecīs, in the Greek alphabet; the Gauls had devised no alphabet of their own. The language of the records was of course Gallic. Familiarity with the Greek alphabet was due to intercourse with traders and with the city of Massilia, modern Marseilles, a Greek settlement in origin.
3. ratiō, list, record.
qui numerus exīsset: an indirect question depending on ratiō.
4. possent: subjunctive in a relative descriptive clause.
6. capītum, of persons; but the word may be omitted in translation. Compare our use of “head” in speaking of cattle.
8. ad, about; used adverbially here and in 9.
Summa omnium fuérunt ad milia ccclxviii. Eórum qui domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, reper-tus est numeros milium c et x.

Envoys from Gallic States Congratulate Caesar

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō, tōtīs fērē Galliae lēgātī, principēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarēm grātulātum convēnērunt et ita locūtī sunt: "Tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum injūriīs populus Rōmānus ab hīs poenās bellō repetiit, tamen ea rēs nōn minus ex ūsū Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidit; eō enim cōnsiliō florentissimīs rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī re-liquērunt, ut tōtī Galliae bellum īnferrent imperiōque poteri- rentur locumque domiciliō opportūnissimum ac frūctuōsissi-mum dēligerunt, ut totius Galliae bellum inferrent imperioque postulerent locumque domiciliō opportūnissimum et frūctuōsissimum dēligerunt, ut totius Galliae bellum inferrent imperioque postulerent locumque domiciliō opportūnissimum habērent.

Petimus ut tuā voluntāte nōbis conciliō tōtius Galliae in diem certam indicēre liceat: habēmus quāsdam rēs, quās ex commūnī cōnsēnsū ā tē petere volumus." Ea rē permīssā, diem conciliō cōnstituērunt et jūre jūrandō, nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

---

10. cēnsū habitō, when a count was made.

2. grātulātum: supine, expressing purpose. What limitations are there with regard to the use of this construction? See app. 130.

3. prō, in retaliation for.

5. ex ūsū, to the advantage.

eō cōnsiliō, with the purpose; cōnsiliō is explained by the clause, ut...

6. florentissimīs rēbus: ablative absolute, which may be translated by a concessive clause, although, etc.

8. domiciliō, for a home, dative of purpose.

10. ut nōbis liceat, that it be permitted us; a noun clause, object of petimus. The subject of liceat is the infinitive indicēre.

11. ex, by; ex means from, (starting) from, and so easily comes to mean in accordance with, or as here, by; compare ex ūsū, l. 5.

13. jūre jūrandō... inter sē sānxērunt, bouna each other by an oath; the substance of the oath is given in the clauses nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus... mandātum esset, that none should announce their conclusions but those commissioned to do so by common consent.
Gallic Envoys Appeal to Caesar for Aid Against the Germans


Caesārī ad pedēs, at Caesar's feet; Caesārī is a dative of reference, where we should expect a possessive genitive.

6. si ēnūntiātum erit, if (what we say) is reported.

10. contenderent, had contended; multōs annōs has the same value as jam prīdēm and jam diū in giving the present and the imperfect tenses the meanings of perfects and past perfects.

11. mercēde, for hire.

14. ad, about; an adverb.

19. virtūte, hospitiō, amīcitia: ablatives of cause.

20. ante, before; an adverb.

21. obsidēs, as hostages.

22. sēsē, etc.: the substance of the oath is given in indirect discourse, that they would not ask back their hostages, etc.
á populo Römānō implorāturōs, sed perpetuō sub illōrum dicōne atque imperiō futūros esse. Ěnus ego sum ex omni cīvitāte Haeduōrum qui addūcī nōn potuerim, ut jūrārem aut liberōs meōs obsidēs darem. Ob eam rem ex cīvitāte prōfugi et Rōmam ad senātum vēnī auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque jūre jūrandō neque obsidibus tenēbar. Sed pejus victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs accidit, prop-
terea quod Ariovistus, ἐξ Germānōrum, in eōrum finibus cōnsēdit tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quiēst optimus tōtius Galliae, occupāvit, et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere jubet, propōterea quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia homīnum xxiii ad eum vēnērunt, quibus locus ac sēdēs parantur. Futūrum est paucīs annīs ut omnēs Gallī e finibus pellantur atque omnēs Germānī Rhē-
um trānseant; neque enim cōnferendus est Gallicus cum Germānōrum agrō, neque haec cōnsuētūdō victūs cum illā comparanda. Ariovistus autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vicit, superbē et crūdeliter imperat, obsidēs nōbilissimī cu jusque liberōs poscit et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque

23. illōrum = Sōquanōrum.
25. qui addūcī nōn potuerim: a relative descriptive clause.
   ut jūrārem, to take oath; dependent on addūcī.
27. auxilium postulātum: for the supine with a direct object see the note on 11, 4.
29. pejus, a worse fortune; an adjective used as a noun.
31. tertiam partem agri Sēquanī: this was a part of Alsace.
35. Futūrum est, the result will be; the subject is the noun clause ut... trānseant.
37 cōnferendus: with the same meaning as comparanda, l. 39.
38. haec = Gallica.
39. ut semel vicit, having once defeated; this was probably in 60 B.C. Gallōrum: it is possible that this word is intended to include the Sequani. If so, it would mean that the Sequani had regretted their alliance with Ariovistus and had combined with the Haedui in an attempt to drive him back across the Rhine.
41. in eōs ēdit, inflicts upon them.
   omnia exempla cruciātūsque, cruelties of every kind; literally, all ex-
   amples and cruelties.
edit, sì qua rést nón ad nútum aut ad voluntátem ejus facta est. Homō est barbarus, irācundus, temerārius; nón possunt ejus imperia diūtius sustinēri. Nisi quid in tē populōque Rōmānō erit auxiliī, omnēs Gallī cōgentur, ut Helvētīi ante, domō ūmigrāre, aliud domiciliūm, aliās sēdēs, remōtās ā Ger-

mānīs, petere fortūnamque, quaecumque accidet, experīrī. Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō erunt, nón dubītō quīn dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum sunt gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Tū vel auctōritātē tuā atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populi Rōmānī cēterōs Germānōs Gallī prohibēre potes Gallōsque omnēs ab Ariovistī injūriā dēfendere.’’

The Sad Plight of the Sequani

32. Hāc ērātiōne ab Diūiciācō habītā, omnēs qui aderant magnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepērunt. Animad-

vertit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere quās cēterī facerent, sed trīstēs, capite dēmissō, terram intuērī. Ejus reī quae causa esset mīrātus ex ipsīs quaesiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondērant sed in eādem trīstitiā tacitī per-

mānsērunt. Cum ab hīs saepius quaereret neque ūllam

42. ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem, at his nod or in accordance with his wish.

45. auxiliī: genitive of the whole; with quīd, some assistance.

48. quīn, that; this is the regular meaning after a word of doubting with a negative.

dē, on; with supplicium sūmat; what is the literal translation?

50. recentī victōriā: the victory over the Helvetians.

51. Gallīā: ablative of separation, with prohibēre.

1. habitā, having been delivered.

2. animadvertit: like some other verbs meaning “see,” “notice,” this verb may take indirect discourse, ūnōs Sēquanōs facere.

3. ūnōs, alone.

4. capite dēmissō: ablative absolute.

5. quae causa esset: indirect question, depending on mīrātus. Remem-

ber that the perfect participles of several deponent verbs are to be trans-

lated as present; so mīrātus, wondering.

7. saepius, again and again.
omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset, idem Diviciācus Haeduus respondit: “Hōc est miserior et gravior fortūna Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audent absensisque Ariovistī crūdēlitātem sīcūt praeresentis horrent; reliquīs enim Gallīs fugae facultās datur, Sēquanīs vērō, qui intrā fīnes suōs Ariovistum recē-pērunt, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte ejus sunt, omnēs cruciātūs sunt perferendi.”

**CAESAR RESOLVES TO STOP GERMAN ENCROACHMENTS UPON GAUL**

33. His rēbus cognītīs, Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs cōnfirmāvit pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram: magnam sē habēre spem et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum finem injūriīs factūrum. Hāc orātiōne habita, concilium dīmisit. Secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur ad eam rem cōgitandam et suspiciendam: imprimis, quod Haeduī, frātrēs cōnsanguineīque saepenumeroā senātū appellātī, in servītūte atque in dicione Germānōrum tenēbantur, eōrumque obsīdēs apud Ario-vistum ac Sēquanōs erant; quod in tantō imperiō populi Rōmānī turpissimum sibi

8. **idem**, again; literally, the same (person).
9. **Hōc**: for the case see the note on hōc, 2, 6.
10. **reliquōrum**, that of the remainder.
12. **sīcūt prae-presentis**, as if (he were) present.
13. Sēquanīs omnēs cruciātūs sunt perferendi, the Sequani have to submit to all cruelties. Sēquanīs is a dative of agent, the regular construction used to express agency with the second periphrastic conjugation.
2. sībī eam rem cūrae futūram (esse), that he would give attention to their case; sībī and cūrae are datives of reference and purpose respectively.
3. sē habēre: indirect discourse, depending on a verb of saying implied in pollicitus est.
5. Secundum ea, in addition to these things, i.e., the facts alleged by Diviciacus.
7. quod, the fact that.
10. quod, a thing which; relative pronoun, neuter because referring to the fact contained in the preceding sentence.
et rei publicae esse arbitrabatur. Paulatim autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsire et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitūdinem venire populō Rōmānō periculōsum vidēbat; existimābat autem hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs, omni Galliā occupātā, ut ante Cīmbrī Teutōnīque fēcisissent, in provinciam atque inde in Italian exitūrōs esse, praeserītim cum Sēquānōs ā provinciā nostrā Rhodanus dividerēt; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē occurrendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spiritūs, tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat ut feren-dus nōn vidērētur.

**Caesar Is Refused a Conference with the German King Ariovistus**

34. Quam ob rem, lēgātīs ad Ariovistum missīs, ab eō postulāvit ut aliquem locum medium utriusque colloquiiō dēligeret: velle sēsē dē rē publicā et summīs utriusque rēbus cuīm eō agere. Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit: "Si quid

11. Germānōs trānsire: elsewhere in his commentaries Caesar says that at an earlier time the Gauls had made war on the Germans and had taken possession of territory on the German side of the Rhine.

13. periculōsum: predicate adjective after esse (to be supplied); the subject of esse is the infinitives with subject accusative preceding, Germānōs cōnsuēscere et multitūdinem venire; translate, he saw that it was dangerous to the Roman people for the Germans gradually to form the habit of crossing the Rhine and for a large number of them to come into Gaul.

15. ut, as; fēcisissent is subjunctive in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse.

Cīmbrī Teutōnīque: these were the German tribes that Marius conquered. See his life, page 208, l. 15 ff.

17. Rhodanus, the Rhone (alone).

quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē occurrendum putābat, this state of affairs he thought must be met as soon as possible; rēbus is dative with the compound verb occurrendum (esse), which is itself used impersonally.

20. nōn: take with ferendus and translate, unbearable.

2. medium utriusque, midway between them.

3. velle sēsē, he wished (he said).

rē públicā, affairs of state.

summīs utriusque rēbus, questions of the greatest interest to both.
5 mihi a Caesare opus esset, ad eum veniisse; si quid ille me vult, illum ad me venire oportet. Praeterea neque sine exercitu in eas partes Galliae venire audeo quas Caesar possidet, neque exercitum sine magnō commœatū atque mollimentō in unum locum contrahere possum. Mihi autem mirum videtur quid in meā Galliā, quam bellō vici, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populo Rōmānō negotiī sit.”

CAESAR SENDS ENVOYS TO ARIOVISTUS WITH DEMANDS

35. His respōnsis ad Caesarem relātis, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: “Quoniam in cōnsulātū Caesaris rēx atque amicus a senātū appellātus nunc in colloquium venīre invitātus gravāris atque dē commūnī rē dīcere et cognōscere nōn vis, haec sunt quae ā tē postulat: primum, nē quam multitudīnem homīnum amplius trans Rhēnum in Galliam trādūcās; deinde ut obsidēs quōs habēs ab Haeduīs reddās Sēquanīsque permittās ut idem faciant; nēve Haeduōs injūriā laecessās nēve hīs sociīisque eōrum bel-lum inferās. Si id ita fēceris Caesarī populōque Rōmānō perpetua grātia atque amīcitia tēcum erit; si Caesar nōn impetrāverit, Haeduōrum injūriās nōn negleget. Nam ex

5. esset: quid is the subject, opus is predicate nominative; translate, if I needed anything of Caesar, I should have come to him.

si quid ille me vult, if he wishes anything of me; volō, like some verbs of asking, may take two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing, provided the latter is the accusative of a neuter pronoun or adjective.

10. quid Caesarī . . . negotiī sit, what business Caesar has; the clause is an indirect question depending on mīrum; Caesarī is dative of possession, and negotiī a genitive of the whole with quid.

3. rēx atque amicus appellātus, after receiving the title of king and friend.

4. invitātus, when invited.

6. nē . . . trādūcās, that you shall not lead, etc.; this and the clauses following are noun clauses defining haec.

10. Caesari, populō: datives of possession.

12. impetrāverit: impetrāre is often used without an object, gain one’s request.
senātūs consulō, quod paucīs ante annīs factum est, quīcumque Gallīam prōvinciam obtinēt Haeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populi Rōmānī dēfendere dēbet."

**Ariovistus' Defiant Reply**

Complaints by the Haeduans and the Treveri of German Aggressions

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur, et lēgātī ab Haeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant; Haeduī querēbantur, quod Harūdēs, qui nūper in Galliam trānsportātī essent, finēs eōrum populārentur: sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovisti redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem dicēbant pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad rīpās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur; hīs praeesse Nasuam et Cūmberium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar vehemens commōtus mātūrandum sibi existimāvit, nē, sī nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovisti sēsē conjūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē potuit comparātā, magnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

Caesar Seizes the Stronghold of Vesontio

38. Cum trīduī viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est eī Ariovistum cum suīs omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, contendere. Id magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar existimābat. Namque omnium rērum quae ad bellum ēsuī erant summa erat in eō oppidō facultās, idemque nātūrā locī sic mūniēbātur, ut magnam ad dūcendum bellum darem facultātem, propterēā

4. sēsē . . . potuisse: indirect discourse depending on a verb of saying implied in querēbantur.

obsidibus datīs, by giving hostages; ablative absolute.

9. mātūrandum (esse) sībī, that he must make haste; for the dative of agent compare 32, 13, and note.

10. minus facile resistī posset, resistance could be made less easily; resistī is an impersonal use of the passive.

1. viam: accusative of extent, further defined by the genitive of measure, trīduī.

4. praecavendum (esse), must be forestalled.

5. ēsuī, of use; dative of purpose.

7. dūcendum: the verb dūcere is sometimes used with the meaning prolong.
quod flūmen Dūbis, ut circīnō circumductum, paene tōtum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum DC, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet magnā altitūdine, ita ut rādīcēs montis ex utrāque parte ripae flūminis contingant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppidō conjungit. Hūc Caesar magnīs nocturnīs diurnīsque itineribus contendit occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium colloca. 15

Caesar’s Army Panic-Stricken from Stories of German Prowess

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem reī frūmentāriae commētūsque causā morātur, nostri Gallōs ac mercātōrēs dē Germānīs interrogant; illī ingenti magnītūdine corporum Germānōs, incrēdibili virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant (saepenumero sēsē cum hīs congressōs nē vul· tum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dicēbant ferre potuisset); quibus ex vōcibus tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit ut nōn mediocrīter omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret. Hic prīnum ortus est ā tribūnīs militum, praefec-

8. ut, as if.
9. spatium: object of continet.
10. pedum DC: genitive of measure in the predicate; it is to be noted that the comparative amplius is here used as an adverb and so without the ablative of comparison.
12. mūrus circumdatus, an encircling wall. A modern French fort is located at about this point.
1. ad, in the vicinity of.
3. magnītūdine, virtūte, exercitātiōne: ablatives of description, in the predicate.
6. aciem, flash.
9. tribūnīs militum: the military tribunes were officers in the army alone, and not to be confused with the tribunes of the people. They were men of less experience than the légātī.
praefectīs: the prefects were officers of auxiliary forces, some of them Romans, some of the same nationality as their troops. The Roman prefects are meant in this instance.
tis, reliquisque qui ex urbe amicitiae causa Caesarem secuti non magnum in re militari usum habebant; hi, variis causis domum proficiscendi illatis, petebant ut ejus voluntate descendere liceret; nonnulli pudore adducti, ut timoris suspicionem vitarent, remanebant. Hi neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimas tenere poterant; abditi in tabernacula aut suum fatum querebantur aut cum familiariibus suis commune periculum miserabantur. Vulgo totis castris testamenta obsignabantur. Horum vocibus et timore paulatim etiam i qui magnum in castris usum habebant, milités centuriōnesque quique equitati praeerant, perturbabantur. Qui se ex his minus timidōs existimari volebant, dicabant: "Non hostem veremur, sed angustias itineris et magnitudinem silvarum quae intercedunt inter nos atque Ariovistum; timemus etiam ut res frumentaria satis commodē supportari possit." Nonnulli etiam Caesari nuntiabant militēs propter timorem neque castra mōtūros neque signa lātūros.

CAESAR HOLDS A COUNCIL OF OFFICERS AND ALLAYS THEIR FEARS

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō consiliō omniumque ordinum ad id consilium adhibitīs centuriōnibus, vehemēre:

10. reliquīs: sons of good families who accompanied Caesar without performing military service.
12. illātis, alleging.
13. ut... vitārent, a clause of purpose.
17. totīs castrīs, all through the camp; some words in very common use may be employed as locative ablatives without a preposition to express the place where.
20. centuriōnēs: the centurions were seasoned veterans who had been promoted from the ranks.
21. Qui ex his, such of them as.
24. ut rēs frumentāria... possit, that grain supplies can not be brought up to sufficiently good advantage; what is the meaning of nē after verbs of fearing?
1. omnium ordinum: it is evident that grades were recognized among the centurions; what the basis of distinction was is not known.
menter eōs incūsāvit: "Vestrum nōn est," inquit, "aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcāmini quaerere aut cōgitāre. Ariovistus mē cōnsule cupidissimē populi Rōmānī amīcitiam appetit; eūr hunc tam temere quisquam ab officiō discessūrum jūdicat? Equidem existimō, cognitis meis postulātīs atque aequitāte condicionum perspectā, cum nēque meam neque populi Rōmānī grātiam repudiārum. Quod si furōre atque amentiā impulsus bellum intulerit, quid tandem verēminī aut ērō vestrā virtūte aut ē meā diligentia dēspērātis? Factum est ejus hostis periculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, Cimbrīs et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō pulsīs; factum etiam nūper in Italiā servīli tumultū, quī tamen aliquid ūsūs ac disciplīnae ā nōbīs accēperant. Ex quō jūdicārī potest quantum habeat ērō sē boni cōnstantia, propterē quod quī aliquamdiū inermēs sine causā timēbantur, hī posteā armātī ac victōrēs ā militibus Rōmānīs superātī sunt. Dēnique hī sunt ēīdem quōs saepenumberō Helvētīī nōn sōlum ē suīs sed etiam in illōrum finibus superāverunt; quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn potuērunt. Nēmō adversō proeliō et fugā Gallōrum commoveātur. Ariovistus enim multōs mēn-

3. Vestrum nōn est, *it is not for you; literally, it is not yours.* The subject of *est* is quaerere and cōgitāre.

7. Equidem, *for my part.*

12. periculum, *trial;* with ejus hostis as dependent objective genitive.

13. Cimbrīs . . . pulsīs, *in the defeat of the Cimbri and Teutons by Marius;* the ablative absolute defines the occasion.

factum: supply *est periculum.*

14. servīli tumultū, *in the uprising of slaves.* This was a war in 73-71 carried on by an army of runaway slaves led by the gladiator Spartacus. The slaves in many cases were German prisoners of war or their descendants.

quī: the antecedent is servōrum, implied in servīli.

ūsūs, disciplīnae: genitives of the whole, depending on aliquid.

16. quantum bonī, *how much good;* bonī is genitive of the whole.

quī . . . hi: translate in the order hī, quī.

20. quī: the Helvetii; the sentence is a reference to the recent successful campaign against the Helvetii.

21. Nēmō commoveātūr, *let no one be disturbed.*
sēs castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuerat neque sui potestātem fēcerat; deinde cum Gallī déspērārent jam dē pugnā et dis-
persī essent, subitō eōs adortus magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō
quam virtūte vīcit. Hāc ratiōne nē ipse quidem spērat nos-
trōs exercītūs capī posse. Quī suum timōrem in reī frūmen-
tāriae simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris cōnferunt faciunt
arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris déspērāre vide-
antur aut praescībere audeant. Haec mihi sunt cūrae; frū-
mentum Sēquani, Leucī, Lingonis subministrant, jamque
sunt in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsī brevī tempore
jūdicābitis. Quod vōs signa nōn lātūrōs dicitur, nihil eā rē com-
moveor; quibuscumque enim exercītus nōn pārui, aut male
rē gestā fortūna défuit aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritia
est convicta; mea innocentia perpetua vītā, fēlicitās Helvē-
tiōrum bellō est perspecta. Itaque quod in longīōrem diem
collātūrus fui repraesentābō, et proximā nocte dē quártā
vigiliā castra mōvēbō, ut quam prīnum intellegere possim
utrum apud vōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valeat.
Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequētur, tamen cum sōlā decimā
legiōne ībō, dē quá nōn dubitō, mihiquē ea praetōriā cohors
erit.” Huic legiōni Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter
virtūtem cōnfidēbat maximē.

23. sui potestātem, a chance at him.
27. Quī: for ī quī.
in reī frūmentāriāe simulātiōnem, to a pretended concern about the supply of grain.
29. cum, since, in that.
33. Quod, as to the fact that.
nihil, not at all.
35. défuit: supply īs, dative, has failed them.
aliquo facinore compertō avāritia est convicta, through the disclosure of some misdeed avarice has been proved (against them).
36. fēlicitās: a Roman general set great store by his “good fortune.”
37. in longīōrem diem collātūrus fui, what I was going to postpone.
43. legiōni: dative with indulserat and cōnfidēbat, both belonging to the class of special verbs that govern the dative.
Arrangements for an Interview Between Caesar and Ariovistus

42. Cognitō Caesaris adventū, Ariovistus per lēgātōs ei nūntiāvit sē jam in colloquium venīre velle; quoniam Caesar propius accessisset, sē id sine periculō facere posse existimāre. Nōn respuit condicionem Caesar jamque eum ad sānitātem revertī pertināciāque dēsistere arbitrābātur. Diēs colloquīō
dictus est ex eō diē quintus. Interim saepe cum légātī ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus dīxit sē īnsidiās verēri postulāvitque ut uterque cum sōlō equitātū ad colloquium venīret; aliā ratiōne sē sē nōn esse ventūrum. Cae-
sar hāc condiciōne acceptā, salūtem suam tamen Gallōrum equitātūi committere nōn audēbat; itaque legiōnāriōs militēs legiōnis decimae in equōs Gallōrum equitum imposuit, ut praesidium quam amīcissimum habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn irrīdiculē quīdam ex militibus decimae legiōnis dīxit:

"Plūs quam pollicitus est Caesar facit; pollicitus sē in co-
hortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad equum rescribīt."

---

**The Interview—Caesar's Address to Ariovistus**

43. Plānitiēs erat magna et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hic locus aequum ferē spatium a castrīs utrīusque aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium vēnērunt. Legiō-
nem Caesar quam eōs dēvezerat passibus cc ab eō tumulō

5 constituit. Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervāllō constitērunt. Ariovistus ex eōs ut colloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ut ad colloquium addūcerent postulāvit. Ubi eō ventum est,

6. **saepe cum**: translate as if *cum saepe*.

9. **alīa ratiōne**, otherwise; literally, on other terms.

10. **Gallōrum equitātīui**: Caesar's cavalry was composed, at various times, of Gauls, Germans, Spaniards. His infantry legions only were Romans.

16. **ad equum rescribīt**: the words are capable of two meanings, *is enrolling us among the knights*, or *is enrolling us in the cavalry*. The knights, equītēs, were a social and semi-political order at Rome drawn from the well-to-do middle class that at an earlier period furnished the Roman cavalry. Admission to their ranks would be an honor. Now, however, as observed above, the cavalry was furnished by non-Romans, so that transfer to that branch of the service was no mark of distinction.

4. **equis**, on horseback.

6. **ut**: twice in this line *ut* is crowded out of its normal place at the head of its clause in order to emphasize other words, *ex equīs* in one case and *praeter sē dēnōs* in the other.

7. **ventum est**: they had come; impersonal passive.
Caesar initiō orātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia com-
memorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amīcus, 
quod mūnera amplissimē missa; "haec rēs," inquit, "et pauēs 10 
contigit et prō magnīs homīnem officīīs cōnsuēvit tribuī; tū, 
cum neque adītum neque causam postulāndī jūstam habērēs, 
beneficiō ac liberālitāte meā ac senātūs ca praemiā cōnsecūtus 
es. Veterēs jūstāsque causās necessitūdinīs Rōmānī cum 
Haeduīs habent; multa senātūs cōnsulta honōrīsca in ēos facta 15 
sunt; omni tempore tōtīus Galliāe principātum Haeduī tenuē-
runt, prius etiam quam nostram amīcitiam appetīrēunt. 
Populi Rōmānī haec est cōnsuētūdō, ut sociōs atque amīcōs 
nōn modo sui nihil déperdere, sed grātiā, dignitāte, honōre 
auctiōrēs velit esse; quod vērō ad amīcitiam populi Rōmānī 20 
attulērunt, id īūs ēripī quis patī potest?" Postulāvit deinde 
eadem quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat: nē aut Haeduīs aut 
eōrum sociōs bellum īnferret; obsidēs redderet; sī nūllam par-
tem Germānōrum domum remittere posset, at nē quōs 
 amplius Rhēnum trānsīre paterētur.

**Ariovistus Claims the Rights of a Conqueror**

44. Ariovistus ad postulātā Caesaris pauca respondit, dē 
suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: "Trānsī Rhēnūm," inquit, 
"nōn meā sponte, sed rogātus et arcessītus ā Gallīs; nōn sine 
magnā spē magnīisque praemiīs domum propinquōsque reliquī; 
sēdēs habeō in Galliā ab īpsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum 5 
volutāte datōs; stipendium capiō jūre bellī, quod victōrēs

---

9. quod, etc.: the quod clauses define beneficia. 
18. cōnsuētūdō: explained by the clause ut . . . velit, to wish, etc. 
19. suī nihil, nothing that belongs to them; suī is a genitive of the whole; 
literally, of theirs. 
20. quod . . . attulērunt, as for what they brought (with them) when they 
became friends of the Roman people. The antecedent of quod is the follow-
ing id. 
22. nē . . . īnferret, that he should not make war, etc. This clause and 
the following explain eadem, l. 22  
5. īpsīs: i. e., the Gauls.
victis impônere cōnsuērunt. Nōn ego Gallī sed Gallī mihi bellum intulērunt; omnēs Galliae civitātēs ad mē oppugnandum vēnērunt ac contrā mē castra habuērunt; eae omnēs cōπiae ē mē ūnō proelīō pulsae ac superātae sunt. Si iterum experīrī volunt, iterum parātus sum dēcertāre; si pāce ūtī volunt, inīquum est dē stīpendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad hoc tempus pependērunt. Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī mihi ōrnāmentō et praesidīō, nōn dētrimentō esse oportet, idque ē hac spē petī. Si per populum Rōmānum stīpendium remittētur et dēditiciī subtrahentur, nōn minus libenter recūsābō populī Rōmānī amīcitiam quam appetīi. Quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcō, id meī mūniendi, nōn Galliae oppugnandae causā faciō; ejus reī testimōniō est quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnī et quod bellum nōn intulī sed dēfendī. Ego prius in Galliam vēnī quam populus Rōmānus. Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitus populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae finibus ēgressus est. Quid tibi vis? Cur in meās possessīōnēs venīs? Prōvincia mea haec est Gallia, sicut illa vestra. Ut mihi concēdī nōn oportēret, si in vestrōs finēs impetum facerem, sic item vōs estis inīquī, quod in meō jūre mē interpellātīs. Quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs

7. ego: supply bellum intulī.
12. dé stīpendiō recūsāre, to refuse to pay the tribute.
14. ōrnāmentō et praesidīō, an honor and a safeguard; datives of purpose.
17. Quod: not because.
18. meī mūniendi: with the genitives of the pronouns meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, vestrī, the gerundive takes only the form in -endī without attempt to show actual gender; i.e., a woman speaking would say also meī mūniendi causā.
19. est: the subject is the following clause, quod . . . vēnī . . . dēfendī; testimōniō is a predicate dative of purpose or end served. Translate, the proof of this is, that, etc.
24. haec Gallia, this part of Gaul.
25. vestra: used instead of tua to include the Roman nation, not merely Caesar alone.
concēdī nōn oportēret, no concession should be made (me); concēdī is an impersonal passive.
dicis, neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haedui Rōmānīs auxilium tulērunt neque ipsī in hīs contentiōnibus quās Haedui mēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuērunt auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsī sunt. Neque tam barbarus neque tam imperitus sum rērum ut haec nōn sciam. Dēbeō suspicāri tē, simulātā amīcitiā, exercītum in Gallīā meī opprimendī causā habēre. Nisi dēcēdēs atque exercītum dēdūcēs ex hīs regiōnibus, tē nōn prō amīcō sed prō hoste habēbō. Quod sī tē interfēcerō, multīs nōbilibus principibusque populī Rōmānī grātum fēcērō; id ab ipsis per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēbō, quōrum omnium grātiam atque amīcītiam tua morte redimere possīm. Quod sī dēcesseris et liberam possessionem Galliae mihi trādideris, magnō tē praemīō remūnerābor et quaeque bēlla volēs sine ullō tuō labōre et periculō cōnficiam."

CAESAR DEFENDS ROMAN AGAINST GERMAN CLAIMS


28. bellō Allobrogum proximō: this war occurred in 62-61 B.C.
32. simulātā amīcitiā, while pretending friendship.
35. habēbō, I shall treat.
36. grātum, a welcome thing, a favor; an adjective used as a noun.
37. compertum habēbō: translate as if comperī, and see the note on 15, 3.
1. in eam sententiam, quārē, to show why; quārē . . . posset is an indirect question; in eam sententiam means literally, in the direction of the opinion.
3. ut . . . dēseram: patior may take either an infinitive with subject accusative or a noun clause; translate as if mē . . . dēserere.
5. Bellō: in 121 B.C.
6. quibus: dative with a verb meaning "pardon"; from this dative an accusative is to be supplied as the object of redēgit.
7. antiquissimum quodque tempus, mere priority; literally, the time furthest back in each case. Since the Roman conquest in this region went back as far as 121 B.C., Caesar argues that Roman claims were better founded than German.
simum quodque tempus spectārī oportet, populī Rōmānī jūstissimum est in Galliā imperium; sī jūdīciuṃ senātūs observārī oportet, libera débet esse Gallia, quam bellō victam suīs légibus útī voluit.”

A Treacherous Attack by the Germans
Ends the Interview

46. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est equītēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere et ad nostrōs adequitāre et lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conjicere. Caesar loquenti finem fēcit sēque ad suōs recepit suisque imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rejicerent. Nam etsī sine ūllō periculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen nōlēbat hostēs dicere posse, sī pulsī essent, sē ā Rōmānīs per fidem in colloquiō circumventōs. Ita colloquiōm dirēmp tum est. Postquam militēs dē his rēbus certiorēs factī sunt, multō major alacritās studiumque pugnandī majus exercituī injectum est.

Ariovistus Asks for Another Conference — Caesar Sends Envoys Instead — Ariovistus Throws Them into Chains

47. Biduō post Ariovistus, ad Caesarem légātīs missīs, nūntiāvit sē velle dē īs rēbus quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent agere cum eō; petīvit ut aut iterum colloquiō diem cōnstitueret aut, sī id minus vellet, ē suīs légātīs aliquem ad sē mitteret. Colloquendi Caesarī causa

10. victam, although vanquished.
2. tumulum: accusative; the adverb propius may govern an accusative.
8. per fidem, through their faith in him; i.e., treacherously.
11. exercituī injectum est, was inspired in the army.
2. agī coeptae essent, had begun to be discussed; with a passive infinitive, coepī itself is most often put in the passive.
4. sī id minus vellet, if he were not quite willing for that.
ē suīs légātīs aliquem, some one of his lieutenants; légātōrum, genitive of the whole, might have been employed.

**Caesar Offers Battle — Ariovistus Refuses — German Cavalry Tactics**

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et milibus passuum vi ā Caesaris castrīs sub monte cōnsēdit. Postridiē ejus diēi praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et milibus passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō, ut frūmentō commeātūque quī ex Sēquanis et Haedulis supportārētur 5 Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē continuōs v Caesar prō castris suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem iānstrētam habuit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus proelīō contendere, eī potestās nōn dees-

10. quā multā Ariovistus ūtēbātur, which Ariovistus spoke fluently.
12. in eō peccandi Germānīs causa nōn erat, in his case the Germans had no reason for doing wrong; Germānīs is dative of possession.
ūnā, along with him; an adverb, in origin perhaps from ūnā via.
13. ūtēbātur, enjoyed.
14. dīcere: subjunctive in an indirect question.
16. an speculandī causā, is it for the sake of spying?
17. Čōnantis dīcere, when they attempted to speak.
4. eō cōnsiliō, with this purpose; cōnsiliō is explained by the following clause, ut . . . interclūderet.
7. ut eī potestās nōn deesset, that he might not lack the opportunity; just as the dative is used with the verb sum to express possession, so it may be employed with the negative or opposite of sum.
Ariovistus his omnibus diēbus exercitum castrīs conti-
nuit, equestrī proelīō cotīdiē contendit. Genus hoc erat pug-
nae quō sē Germānī exercuerant. Equitum mīlia erant vi, 
totidem numerō peditēs vēlocissimī ac fortissimī, quōs ex omni cópiā singulī singulōs suae salūtis causā délēgerant; cum 
hīs in proelīis versābantur, ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant; ĕi, 
sī quid erat dūrius, concurrebant; sī qui graviōre vulnere 
acceptō equō déciderat, circumsistēbant; sī quō erat longius 
prōdeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum 
exercitātiōne celeritās ut jubīs sublevātī equōrum cursum 
adaequārent.

CAESAR FORTIFIES A SECOND CAMP

49. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius 
commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum, quō in locō Ger-
mānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs dīc ab hīs, castrīs idōneum 
locum délēgit aciēque triplīcī ĵnstrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. 
Prīnam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra 
mūnīre jussit. Hic locus ab haste circiter passūs dīc, ut dic-
tum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum xvi mīlia expeditā 
cum omnī equitātū Ariovistus mīsit, quae cópiae nostrōs per-
terrērent et mūnītiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētiūs Caesar, ut

11. quō, to which, in which; ablative.
12. quōs singulī singulōs délēgerant, whom they had chosen, one for each 
of them; singulī agrees with the subject of délēgerant, i.e., equitēs under-
stood, while singulōs agrees with quōs referring to the peditēs.
14. versābantur, would engage; this and the following imperfects denote 
habitual action.
15. dūrius, more dangerous than usual; the comparatives in this passage 
are employed without any definite standard of comparison expressed; they 
are to be translated by “too,” “more than usual.”
16. sī quō erat prōdeundum, if it was necessary to advance to any place.
1. nē . . . prohibērētur: the clause states the purpose of délēgit and 
vēnit.
3. castrīs: dative, dependent on idōneum.
7. expeditā: the adjective limits mīlia, but should be translated as if 
expeditōrum, in agreement with hominum.
8. quae cópiae . . . perterrērent: relative clause of purpose.
ante cōnstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere jussit. Mūnitūs castrīs, duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra majōra redūxit.

**ARIOVISTUS CONTINUES TO REFUSE BATTLE**

50. Proximō diē institūtō suō Caesar ē castrīs utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit paulumque ā majōribus castrīs prōgressus aciem īnstrūxit, hostibus pugnandī potestātem fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit, circiter merīdiem exercītum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum quae castra minōra oppugnāret mīsīt. Ācriter utrimque usque ad vesperum pugnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus, multīs et illātīs et acceptīs vulneribus, in castra redūxit. Cum ex captīvis quaerēt Caesar quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō non dēcertāret, illī respondērunt: "Apud Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō est, ut mātrēs familiae cōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārent utrum proelium committī ex ūsū sit necne; eae ita dīcunt: 'nōn est fās Germānōs superāre, si ante novam lūnām proeliō contenderint.'"

**CAESAR BY MARCHING ON THE GERMAN CAMP PROVOKES ARIOVISTUS TO BATTLE**

51. Postrīdiē ejus diēi Caesar praesidiō utrīsque castrīs quod satis esse visum est reliquit; omnīs ālāriōs in cōnspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōnstituit, quod minus multītū-
dine militum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numero valēbat, ut ad speciem alāriōs āterētur; ipse, triplicī instrūcta aciē, usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum necessāriō Germāni suās cópiās castrīs ēdūxērunt generātimque cōnstituērunt paribus intervāllīs, Harūdēs, Marcomānōs, Tribocōs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam raedīs et carrīs circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae ad proelium proficiēntēs militēs passis manibus flentes implōrābant nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs tradērent.

**Progress of the Battle**

52. Caesar singulis legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quaestōrem praeēcit, ut eōs testēs suae quisque virtūtis habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē firmam hostiūm esse animadverterat, proelium commīsit; et ita nostri ācriter in hostēs signō datō impetūm fecērunt, itaque hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt ut spatium pila in hostēs conjiciendi nōn darētur. Prōjectīs pilīs, comminus gladiīs pugnātum est. At Germāni, celeriter ex cōnsuētūdine suā phalange factā, impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Reperti sunt complūrēs nostri quī in phalangem insilīrent et scūta manibus

4. prō, *in proportion to, in comparison with.*
5. ad speciem: the phrase expresses purpose.
10. raedīs, carrīs: ablatives of means.
11. Eō = *in raedūs et carrōs.*
proficiēntēs: with mīlītēs.
1. singulōs lēgātōs et quaestōrem: Caesar had six legions and one quaestor; five legions were therefore commanded by lieutenants.
2. eōs testēs, *these men as witnesses.*
3. ā dextrō cornū, *on the right wing.*
5. itaque = *et ita.*
6. pila: object of the gerund conjiciendi, which depends on spatium.
7. comminus gladiīs pugnātum est, *they fought hand to hand with swords.*
8. ex, *according to.*
10. quī . . . vulnerārent: a relative descriptive clause.
revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent. Cum hostium acīs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam conjecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitudine suōrum nostram aciem premē-bant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscēns, qui equitātu praeerat, quod expeditior erat quam iī qui inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs subsiēdī mīsīt.

**German Defeat and Flight—Recovery of Caesar’s Envoys**

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum milia passuum ex eō locō circiter v pervēnērunt. Ibi perpauci aut viribus cōnfisī trānāre contendingērunt aut lintribus inventūs sibi salūtem reporrentur; in hīs fuit Ariovis-tus, qui nāviculam dēligātam ad ripam nactus eā profūgit; reliquōs omnēs cōsecūti equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt. Duae fuērunt Ariovisti uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, quam domō secum dūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Vociōnīs soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat, ā frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā perīit. Fuērunt duae filiae; hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est. C. Valerius Procillus, cum ā custōdibus in fugā trīnis catēnīs vīncitus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs equitātū in-sequentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesari nōn minōrem

11. ā: with the same meaning as in l. 3.
14. P. Crassus: son of the M. Crassus who with Caesar and Pompeius formed the first triumvirate. Publius lost his life in 53 B.C. at the battle of Carrhae, in which the army commanded by his father was defeated by the Parthians.

16. labōrantibus nostrīs subsiēdī, to the relief of our men in distress.
2. prius: with quam; the two are commonly written as one word.
4. viribus: ablative with cōnfisī, trusting in; the same verb in the sense of trust, with a person as indirect object, takes the dative.
6. eā, in it; ablative of means.
7. Duae fuērunt uxōrēs: polygamy was not common among the Ger-mans, being restricted to the chiefs.
13. in Caesarem incidit, fell in with Caesar.
quam ipsa victória volúptátem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum próvinciae Galliae, suum familiárem et hospitem, éreptum é manibus hostium sibi restitútum vídèbat, neque ejus calamitáte dé tantá volúptáte et grátulátióne quicquam fortúna déminuerat. Is sē praesente dé sē ter sortibus cónsultum dícèbat utrum igní statim necárétur an in aliud tempus reservárétur; sortium beneficio sē esse incolu-mem. Item M. Mètius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

**Caesar Places His Army in Winter Quarters and Goes to Italy**

54. Hóc proelió tráns Rhénum núnțiátō, Suébī, quī ad ripās Rhénī vēnerant, domum revertī coepérunt; ubi iī qui proximī Rhēnum incolunt eōs perterrítōs sēnsērunt, ínsecútī magnum ex iīs numerum occídērunt. Caesar, ūnā aestāte duōbus maximīs bellīs cónfectīs, mātūrius paulō quam tem-pus annī postulābat in hīberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hībernīs Labiēnum præposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

18. neque quicquam fortūna dēminuerat, and fortune had not subtracted anything.

19. dé sē ter sortibus cónsultum dícèbat, said that the lots had been cast three times with regard to him.

20. utrum . . . necárétur an . . . reservárétur, as to whether he should be put to death with fire or reserved, etc.

3. Rhēnum: the accusative of a place name may be governed by the adjective proximus; in 46, 2, the accusative with the comparative adverb proprius occurred.

7. ad conventūs agendōs, to hold the (provincial) courts. A governor of a province was also supreme judge in the provincial courts.
REVIEW OUTLINE FOR FIRST YEAR WORK

FIRST REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW

ager,   equus    rosa    magnus    stō
amicus  fēmina  servus  meus     sum
aurum   filia    silva   multus    nōn
avāritia  innocentia  templum  ambulō  saepe
bellum  īnsula  verbum    amō     semper
cōnsilium  liber  via    dō    quod
dominus  nauta    victōria  habitō  ā, ab
cloquentia  periculum  vir    laudō    cum
epistula  puer    bonus    portō    in

REVIEW OF FORMS AND SYNTAX

(1) First declension of nouns. App. 1.
(2) Second declension of nouns. App. 2.
(3) Adjectives of the first and second declensions. App. 6.
(6) Agreement of the verb, App. 40.
(8) Nominative as subject or predicate. App. 41.
(9) Genitive of possession. App. 42.
(10) Dative with adjectives. App. 50.
(11) Dative of indirect object. App. 49.
(12) Accusative as direct object. App. 57.
(13) Ablative of place where. App. 68.

301
EXERCISES


1. My friend loves good books. 2. The master gives a letter to the sailor. 3. The boy often walks in the street with the slave. 4. The woman praises the large roses. 5. The master’s daughter is in great danger. 6. The woman lives in the forest with the sailor’s daughter. 7. Good men praise the words of my friend. 8. The slaves carry letters and gold. 9. The boy’s horse stands in the street. 10. The woman gives much gold to the slaves.

SECOND REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW

agricola  nāsus  hic  tuus  pugnō
aquila    numerus  ille  vester  videō
arma      oppidānī  ipse  accūsō  volō
barbarus  oppidum  lātus  aedificō  ē, ex
campus    patria   liber  dēmonstrō  prō
carrus    poēta    longus  errō   sine
ciastra  puella  miser  habeō   et
causa     vīcus   noster  labōrō   sed
culpa     aequus  parvus  moneō
filius    benignus pulcher  mútō
folium    grātus  sacer  properō
EXERCISES


1. This farmer always has a large number of good horses. 2. Your son does not often work in the fields. 3. The boys are warned by the woman because they are in danger. 4. The man points out many beautiful villages. 5. That town has many broad streets. 6. The townspeople themselves often fight with the barbarians. 7. The men change their plans because they see the danger. 8. The poet's
daughter does not work, and she is censured. 9. Many boys and men are hastening from the villages and towns. 10. We are building a sacred temple in this forest.

THIRD REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW

aqua | nā́tūra | angustus | compleō | magnopere
barba | nihil | cā́rus | explṓrō | numquam
bḗstia | nū́ntius | clā́rus | invitṓ | nunc
dṓnum | pecū́nia | ferus | juvṓ | prī́mō
fā́bula | pictū́ra | īrā́tus | maneṓ | rū́rsus
fosṣa | poena | is | moveṓ | tamen
Gallia | populus | parā́tus | nā́rrṓ | tum
Gallus | potentia | quattuor | occupṓ | ad
Germā́nī | pugna | Rṓmā́nus | superṓ | ante
gladius | saxum | suus | terreṓ | circum
hortus | socius | vḗrus | timeṓ | per
inimicus | statua | quis | fortiter | post
locus | villa | clā́mṓ | hodiḗ | aut

REVIEW OF FORMS AND SYNTAX

(1) Declension of is. App. 20 c.
(2) Declension of the interrogative pronoun and adjective. App. 24.
(3) Perfect indicative active. App. 26, 28.
(4) Possessives of the third person. App. 19.

EXERCISES

1. Multa dṓna eí puerṓ dedī́. 2. Ea fā́bula nṓn vḗra est, et periculum in silvā nṓn timeṓ. 3. Hortus meus est pulcher, quod labṓrṓ. 4. Inimīcus meus poenam nṓn sine causā timet. 5. Tum Gallī́ erant socii populi Rṓmā́nī. 6. Puerī́ nihil timent, et hune locum explṓrā́bunt. 7. Ferae bḗstiae
tābant. 15. Puer epistulam ad poētam portābat.

1. This man has great power, but we do not fear him. 2. These barbarians are fierce, and they have seized our towns. 3. I was exploring the forest with your son. 4. There are many beautiful villas in our native country. 5. By whom (singular) has your daughter been invited? 6. We shall help our allies, because their danger is great. 7. This famous poet will not remain in our town. 8. The messenger was carrying money and a letter. 9. There are many large rocks in this place. 10. I shall see the statue and the pictures in the temple.

FOURTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW

| annus  | Italia  | stipendium | augeō | rogō  |
| auxilium | légātus | víta | cēlō | vītō |
| beneficium | mora | adversus | convocō | vulnerō |
| Britannia | mūrus | aeternus | dūcō | anteā |
| concilium | porta | altus | expectō | cūr |
| cópia | praedium | firmus | mittō | diū |
| domicilium | praesidium | honestus | necō | ibi |
| fortūna | proelium | novus | nūntiō | item |
| fuga | rota | periculōsus | postulō | longē |
| glòria | sælæ | quīnque | probō | ubi |
| hōra | schola | septem | relinquō | vix |
| initium | scūtum | sex | renovō | ultrā |
| injūria | signum | tantus | repudiō | sī |
REVIEW OF FORMS AND SYNTAX

(1) Past perfect and future perfect indicative active of regular verbs. App. 26, 28.
(2) Perfect system of sum. App. 31.
(3) Perfect system of regular verbs in the passive. App. 27, 29.
(6) Accusative of duration. App. 58.

EXERCISES


1. Shields are not carried in this war by our allies. 2. On account of your flight, the lieutenant was in great danger. 3. Why do you ask my help, if you do not fear? 4. We were awaiting our friends in the village. 5. We waited for five hours, but we did not see the signal. 6. I shall not demand so great a reward. 7. We shall reject the money, and we shall not send help. 8. A strong garrison has been left in the town, and the townspeople do not fear. 9. The sailor’s son was in the battle and was wounded.
A JUNIOR LATIN READER

FIFTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW

angulus sagitta défessus excédō veniō
animus sonus idem fació bis
biennium terminus incognitus fugió celeriter
captīvus flūmen novem gerō interdum
caput frāter octō interficiō iterum
castellum frūmentum prīmus jaciō mox
corpus Hibernia āmittō müniō nōndum
factum Hispānia audiō oppugnō posteā
jústitia homō capiō perveniō statim
lēx impedimentum cingō petō inter
miles iter cōnficiō pōnō propter
nēmō terra condemnō reperiō trāns
rēgnium tuba contendō scribō -que
rēx vāllum défendō tegō

REVIEW OF FORMS AND SYNTAX

(1) Present, imperfect, and future indicative, active and passive, of verbs of the fourth conjugation. App. 28, 29.

(2) Present, imperfect, and future indicative, active and passive, of -iō verbs of the third conjugation. App. 28, 29.

(3) Declension of idem. App. 21.

(4) Third declension nouns with genitive plural in -um. App. 3 (1), (2).


EXERCISES

1. Is rēx cum populō Rōmānō bellum saepe gesserat.
2. Lēgēs patriae nostrae ā multīs laudantur. 3. Frāter hujus hominis dōmina īum in Hiberniā habet, sed nunc in Britannīā

1. On account of the nature of this place, we shall not remain long. 2. These men praise justice, but they themselves are not honorable. 3. The soldiers were leading the prisoners through the streets of the town. 4. The small villages will not be fortified, and they will be seized by the forces of the barbarians. 5. We heard the sound of the trumpet and we came quickly. 6. The camp is fortified by a high rampart and a wide ditch. 7. We saw the river from the rampart of the camp. 8. Our allies are waging war again with these barbarians. 9. The king led his forces across the river and attacked our camp. 10. My brother and your son were wounded by arrows in the same battle.

SIXTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW

ancora centuriō legiō multitūdō stella
animal collis lūna nāvis tēctum
arbor fīnis lūx nox tempestūs
avis gēns mare nūbēs timor
caedēs hostis māter pars urbs
caelum ignis mōns pater ācer
calcar īnsignē mors pāx celer
fēlix  tūtus  caedō  incendō  teneō
fortis  ego  canō  incipiō  trādō
laetus  suī  claudō  incolō  vincō
omnis  tū  cupiō  jubeō  ōlim
paucī  aperiō  dēleō  parō  quoque
potēns  appropinquō  dividō  retineō  juxtā
sapiēns  arō  expugnō  rīdeō

REVIEW OF FORMS AND SYNTAX

(1) Third declension nouns with genitive in -ium. App. 3 (3), (4).
(2) Declension of vis. App. 3 (5).
(3) Third declension adjectives. App. 7.
(4) Declension of ego and tū. App. 17.
(5) Reflexive pronouns. App. 18.
(6) Ablative of time. App. 69.
(7) Genitive of the whole. App. 43.
(8) Complementary infinitive. 113.

EXERCISES

1. My house is on an island, among large trees. 2. From this hill we saw the sea and the ships. 3. We have come to the end of our journey, and we shall soon see our friends. 4. A multitude of barbarians came into Gaul and seized the lands (fields) of the Gauls. 5. We saw a great fire in the forest, and we sent a messenger to the village. 6. The boy is brave, and he will defend himself. 7. The legions have defeated part of the forces of the king. 8. The boy’s mother fears the sea, because her father lost his life in a storm. 9. Who ordered you to give me this letter? 10. This river is swift and dangerous.

SEVENTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW

| altitūdō | mōs | facilis | mille | praeceēdō |
| amicitia | nōmen | humilis | quī | prehendō |
| auctōritās | passus | malus | accipiō | prōcēdō |
| cīvis | pēs | neuter | ascendō | rēgnō |
| cornū | pilum | nūllus | circumveniō | repellō |
| dux | piscis | reliquus | commemorō | vāstō |
| exercitus | prōvincia | similis | condūcō | facile |
| flūctus | tempus | sinister | dēpellō | jam |
| hasta | virtūs | sōlus | dīcō | lātē |
| impetus | alius | tōtus | efficiō | quam |
| lacus | alter | üllus | emō | satis |
| lātitūdō | dexter | ūnus | impediō | subitō |
| libertās | difficilis | uter | legō | contrā |
| manus | dissimilis | validus | pateō | dē |

REVIEW OF FORMS AND SYNTAX

(1) Fourth declension of nouns. App. 4.
(2) Declension of the relative pronoun. App. 23.
(3) Comparison of adjectives. App. 10, 11.
(6) Ablative of respect. App. 76.
(7) Ablative of degree of difference. App. 74.
(8) Ablative of description. App. 77.
(10) Genitive of description. App. 44.

EXERCISES


1. On account of the height of the wall, the town was safe. 2. The legion which was in the province had often fought with these barbarians. 3. From that hill we heard the sound of the waves, and we saw the ships. 4. We love liberty, and we will fight for (pró) liberty. 5. Between these high mountains there is a beautiful lake. 6. The enemy fear the leader whom we have sent. 7. My friend ascended the mountain which you see across the river. 8. I have said this because I love my country. 9. I have received the letter which you sent. 10. We shall easily ward off all attacks in this place.
EIGHTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW

cāsus  respōnsum  varius  dēligō  servō
cīvitās  rīpa  decem  ēgregior  ūtor
cohors  Rōma  absum  implōrō  vereor
colloquium  uxor  agō  inveniō  vīvō
cōnsul  vulnus  arbitrōr  lūdō  ācriter
dīēs  vōx  cognōscō  migrō  bene
equitātus  armātus  condō  polliceor  hīc
imperātor  brevis  cōnor  potior  igitur
liberī  gravīs  cōnstituō  praemittō  itaque
lingua  idōneus  crēdō  reddō  male
praedā  invītus  currō  sequor  postquam
rēs  tot

REVIEW OF FORMS AND SYNTAX

(2) Present participle. App. 26, 28.
(3) Fifth declension of nouns. App. 5.
(5) Infinitives of the four conjugations. App. 26, 27, 28, 29.
(6) Ablative absolute. App. 75.
(7) Ablative with ūtor, fruor, etc. App. 79.
(8) Indirect discourse. App. 121.

EXERCISES


1. The general’s wife came to (in) the camp with her son. 2. We found much booty in these towns which we captured. 3. When the centurion was killed (the centurion having been killed), the cohort fled. 4. We followed these animals through the forest for many hours. 5. The men who promised their help at this time are true friends. 6. I was not in the army, and I did not receive this wound in war. 7. The lieutenant saw armed forces on the mountain, and he thought that they were Gauls. 8. Many wished to migrate from their native country, but others were unwilling. 9. We have gained possession of the letters which were sent by these men. 10. This answer having been given, the general at once withdrew.

NINTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCA LBULARY REVIEW

aciēs  mēnsis  victor  plānus  coepī
adventus  obses  acūtus  profundus  eō
aestās  pōns  avārus  proximus  ēripiō
arcus  rēgīna  commūnis  quīdam  exeō
ars  salūs  duplex  quīisque  faveō
calamitās  situs  ferōx  addō  īnstruō
canis  soror  fertilis  aggredior  jungō
dēns  vallēs  frīgidus  cadō  metuō
hiems  ventus  ingēns  concurrō  morior
EXERCISES


1. The bridge has been burned, and no one can cross the river. 2. We could hear the sound of the wind in the trees. 3. I have begun to read the book which your sister gave me. 4. The army was defeated because the soldiers did not obey
the general. 5. Each sought the first place and hastened to depart from the camp. 6. The soldier has never used a sword, but he will try to defend himself. 7. A certain man left this letter in the village yesterday. 8. The hostages were killed by the barbarians without cause. 9. The messenger remains in the street because he fears your dog. 10. The Romans made an attack on that part of the Helvetians which had not yet crossed the river.

TENTH REVIEW LESSON

VOCABULARY REVIEW

bōs  majōrēs  cupidus  cōnfiteor  loquor
CELERITĀS  opus  externus  conveniō  pereō
CIBUS  ōrātiō  fidēlis  creō  quaerō
CORONA  ōrātor  fīnitimīs  dēbeō  rebellō
CūRA  portus  necessārius  dēscendō  soleō
CRūDELITĀS  senātus  vacuus  dīmittō  volō
DEUS  sōl  aliquis  discēdō  clam
DICTĀTOR  spēs  accēdō  expellō  cotīdiē
DILIGENTIA  stultitia  appellō  ferō  etiam
DOLOR  tyrannus  audeō  fiō  quotannis
FLOS  vinum  bellō  fugō  intrā
GAUDIUM  voluntās  committō  gaudeō  nisi
JUVENTIS  civīlis  cōnferō  ingredior  quamquam
LACRIMA  contentus  cōnfidō  īnferō  ut

REVIEW OF FORMS AND SYNTAX

(2) Conjugation of ferō. App. 34.
(3) Conjugation of fiō. App. 36.
(4) Conjugation of volō. App. 37.
(5) Declension of aliquis. App. 25 d.
(6) Cardinal numerals. App. 15.
(7) Ordinal numerals. App. 15.
EXERCISES

1. Canis meus fidēlis est, et mē in perīculō dēfendet. 
2. In urbe diūtius manēre nōn audēs, quod omnēs arbitran-
tur tē esse tyrannum. 3. Juvenis quem vidēs est filius frā-
tris meī. 4. Mīlitēs in exercītū nostrō vīnō nōn ūtuntur. 
5. Pācem habēre volumus, sed hōc tempore spēs pācis nōn 
magna est. 6. In eā valle quae inter illōs collēs est, flōrēs 
 pulchri saepe inveniuntur. 7. Ōrātor bonus nōn semper civis 
 bonus est. 8. Vir fortis et sapīēns creātus est dictātor, et is 
 mox cōpiās hostium fugābit. 9. Quod templā deōrum et 
tēctā cīvium dēfendī, pater patriae appellātus sum. 10. 
Bovēs qui in colle errant frātris meī sunt. 11. Oppidānī ē 
tēctīs fūgērunt, et oppidum vacuum erat. 12. Hās ōrātiōnēs 
magnā (cum) cūrā légī, et iterum legam. 13. Exercitus in 
hīs locīs cībūm reperīre poterit, et mīlitēs castra mūnient. 
14. Gallī dīxērunt sē frūmentum cōnferre. 15. Exercitus ex 
perīculō eō diē ab imperātōre sapiente ēreptus est.

1. We heard the sound of the trumpet, and we returned to 
(in) camp with great speed. 2. On account of the great 
storm our ship remained in harbor two days. 3. You have 
money and friends, but you are not satisfied. 4. We shall 
elect two consuls yearly, and we shall have no king. 5. I 
have always been faithful, but I confess that I have not 
been wise. 6. The folly of certain men in the senate was the 
cause of this danger. 7. I have often talked with your 
brother who lives in this city. 8. In the winter these animals 
descend from the mountains into the valleys. 9. You are an 
enemy of the country (patria), and you will be driven out. 
10. I do not trust the man (dative) to whom you have given 
this letter.
LISTS OF ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

Note.—The following lists do not include all the words of Latin origin which are to be found among the terms employed in textbooks of the subjects named. They do, however, contain the greater number of those in common use. The Latin word which is given to explain the derivation is not always the word from which the English word is directly derived. For example, capacity is derived from capiō through the adjective capāx and the noun capācitās. So far as possible the derivation is given by indicating the connection with a word which is likely to be familiar to the pupil or which shows the fundamental idea appearing in the English word. Definitions are given only for those Latin words with which the pupil is not likely to be familiar from first-year work.

A number of grammatical terms of Latin derivation are omitted for the reason that the pupil will not easily trace the connection between the meaning of the original Latin and the derived English word.

WORDS OF LATIN DERIVATION USED IN GEOGRAPHY

adaptation, ad: aptō, fit, adjust
aggradation, ad: gradior, step, go. (An area goes to a higher level by continual additions to its surface)
agriculture, ager: cultūra, cultivation
alluvial, ad: luō, wash
animal, animal
annual, annus

aqueous, aqua
area, ārea, an open space
artificial, ars: faciō
axis, axis, axle
channel, canālis, pipe (for conveying water); channel
capacity, capiō
carnivorous, carō (genitive carnis), flesh: vorō, devour
cave, cavus, hollow
central, centrum, center
cereal, Ceres (goddess of harvests and of grain)
chart, charta, paper
circulation, circulus, circle
cirrus, cirrus, a curl
colluvial, con-, together: luō, wash
coloration, colorō, give color to commerce, commercium, traffic
concrete, concretum, solid matter
condensation, con-, with, together: dēnsō, make thick
conglomerate, con-, with, together: glomerō, roll together, collect
coniferous, conus, cone: ferō
conservation, conservō, preserve
continent, contineō, hold together
crater, crātēr, bowl
culture, cultura, cultivation
cumulus, cumulus, a heap
current, currō, run
date, datum (participle of dō, give)
deposition, dē, down from, down: pōnō, place
derive, dērivō (rivus, stream), draw off
desert, dēserō (past participle, desertum), abandon
disintegration, dis-, apart, not: integrō, make whole
dissect, dis-: secō, cut
domestic, domus, home
equator, aequus1, level, even, equal
estuary, aestus1, tide
fertilize, fertilis, fertile
fertilize, frētilis, fertile
glacier, glaciēs, ice
globular, globus, ball
gradation, gradior, step
gravity, gravitas, weight
herbivorous, herba, herb: vorō, devour
humus, humus, earth
igneous, ignis, fire
industry, industria
interior, interior, inner, inner part of
intermediate, inter: medius, middle
international, inter: nātiō, nation
irrigation, in: rigō, moisten
latitude, lātitūdō, width, breadth2

1 The Latin diphthong ae is commonly represented by e in English derivatives.
2 In the ancient maps the earth is represented as of greater extent from east to west than from north to south. That is, it had length east and west and breadth north and south. Hence the location of a place east or west of a standard meridian is longitude and its location north or south of the equator is latitude.
lignite, lignum, wood
line, linea, linen thread; line
longitude, longitūdō, length
marine, marīnus, of the sea
mature, mālūrus, ripe
Mediterranean, medius, middle: terra
migration, migrō, move
native, nātīvus, produced by
nature, native
natural, nātūra
navigation, nāvīgō, sail
nimbus, nimbus, rain-storm, cloud
ocean, Ōceanus, ocean
palm, palma, palm, palm tree
port, portus, harbor
pressure, premō (past participle, pressum), press
procession, prōcēdō (past participle, prōcessum), go forward
projection, prōjiciō (past participle, prōjectum), throw forward, extend
protection, protegō (past participle, prōtēctum), cover before, protect
province, prōvincia, province
region, regiō, region
relation, relātiō, bringing back; relation
residual, resideō, remain behind
revolution, revolvō (past participle, revolūtum), roll back, return
rodent, rōdō, gnaw
rotation, rota, wheel
sedentary, sedeō, sit
sediment, sedeō, sit
solar, sōl
species, speciēs, kind
structure, struō (past participle, strūctum), heap up
strata, strātum, layer
substratum, sub, under: strātum, layer
superior, superior, higher, upper
temperature, temperō, be moderate, be restrained
terminal, terminus, end
transportation, trānsportō, convey across
utilization, ātilis, useful

WORDS OF LATIN DERIVATION USED IN ELEMENTARY SCIENCE

absolute, absolvō (past participle, absolūtum), set free
absorption, absorbeō (past participle, absorptum), swallow
down
action, agō (past participle, āctum), do
altitude, altitūdō, height
ascent, *ascendō*, go up
assimilation, *ad: similis*
association, *ad: socius*
calcium, *calx* (genitive, *calcis*), lime
capillary, *capillus*, hair
carbon, *carbō*, charcoal
cell, *cella*, storeroom, cell
centigrade, *centum*: *gradus*, step, degree
city, *civitās*, state, city
combustion, *combūrō* (past participle, *combustum*), burn up
commercial, *commercium*, traffic
compare, *comparō*, compare
composition, *compōnō* (past participle, *compositum*), put together, arrange
compress, *comprimō* (past participle, *compressum*), press together
correlation, *con-* with, together: *nectō*, bind
contamination, *contāminō*, mingle, corrupt
decomposition, *dē: compōnō*, put together
density, *dēnsus*, thick
dependent, *dē: pendeō*, hang
deposit, *dēpōnō* (past participle, *dēpositum*), lay down
destruction, *dēstruō* (past participle, *dēstrūctum*), tear down
diffusion, *diffundō* (past participle, *diffūsum*), pour out, scatter
dissolve, *dissolvō*, take apart
distillation, *distillō*, drip, trickle
distribution, *distribuō* (past participle, *distributum*), distribute
efficient, *efficiō*, accomplish
erosion, *ē, ex: rōdō* (past participle, *rōsum*), gnaw
evaporation, *ē, ex: vapor*, vapor, steam
extinguish, *extinguō*, put out
factory, *faciō*
fermentation, *fermentum*, yeast
flame, *flammā*, flame
fluid, *fluō*, flow
formation, *fōrma*, form
heredity, *hērēs*, heir
humidity, *humidus*, damp
inclination, *inclinō*, bend
influence, *in: fluō*. flow
liquid, *liquidus*, flowing, fluid (as adjective)
location, *locus*
material, māteria (or māteriēs), material
mercury, Mercurius, Mercury, (the messenger and herald of the gods)
mixture, miscēō (past participle, mixtum), mingle
motor, moveō

nutrition, nūtriō, nourish

origin, origō (genitive, originis), origin

particle, particula, a small part
pollution, polluō (past participle, pollūtum), defile
potential, potēns, powerful
progressive, prōgredior (past participle, prōgressus), go forward

refrigerator, refrīgerō, make cool again, chill
relative, referō (past participle, relātum), bring back
residence, resideō, remain

respiration, respīrō, breathe out, breathe
sanitary, sānitās, health
saturation, saturō, fill
selection, sé, apart from: legō (past participle, lēctum), choose
simple, simplex, single
solid, solidus, firm
station, stō (future active participle, stātūrus), stand
submarine, sub: marīnus, of the sea

transformation, trāns: fōrmō, shape, form
transmission, trāns: mittō
transplant, trāns: plantō, plant, set
transpiration, trāns: spīrō, breathe
turbine, turbō, a top, a whirlwind

useful, ātor

variety, varius, varied

WORDS OF LATIN DERIVATION USED IN GRAMMAR

ablative, auferō (past participle, ablātum), take from
absolute, absolvō (past participle, absolūtum), set free
abstract, abstrahō (past participle, abstrāctum), draw from
active, agō (past participle, āctum), do
adherent, adhaereō, cling to
adjective, adjiciō (past participle, adjiectum), place near
adjunct, *adjungō* (past participle, *adjŭnctum*), join to
adverb, *ad*: *verbum*
adversative, *adversus*, against
alternative, *alter*, the other
antecedent, *antecēdō*, go before
apposition, *ad* (=ap-): *pōnō*
assimilate, *ad* (=as-): *similis*
assume, *ad* (=as-): *sūmō*
attribute, *attribuo*, assign
auxiliary, *auxilium*
causal, *causa*
clause, *claudō* (past participle, *clausum*)
cognate, *cognātus*, connected by birth
collective, *colligō* (past participle, *collēctum*), collect
colloquial, *colloquor*, talk
comparative, *comparō*, compare
complement, *compleō*, fill, fill out
complex, *com-*, with, together:
*plectō* (past participle, *plexum*), braid, interweave
concessive, *concēdō* (past participle, *concessum*), yield
condition, *conditīō* (earlier, *condiciō*), condition
conjunction, *conjungō* (past participle, *conjūctum*), join together
consequence, *cōsequor*, follow
construction, *cōnstrūō* (past participle, *cōnstrūctum*), put together
contraction, *contrahō* (past participle, *contractum*), draw together
coördinate, *co-* (com-), with, together; *ōrdinō*, arrange
copula, *cōpula*, a fastening
declarative, *dēclārō*, declare
definition, *dēfīniō*, set bounds to
demonstrative, *dēmōnstrō*, point out
dental, *dēns*
dependent, *dēpendeō*, hang from
descriptive, *dēscribō*, describe
determination, *dēterminō*, mark off, limit
equivalent, *aequus*
exclamation, *exclāmō*, cry out
exercise, *exerceō*, train
expletive, *expleō*, fill out
feminine, *fēmina*
finite, *fīniō* (past participle, *fī nitum*), limit
future, *futūrōs*, about to be
illiterate, *in-*, not: *literātus*, educated (from *littera*, also spelled *lītera*)
imperative, imperō (past participle, imperātum), command
imperfect, in-, not: perficiō (past participle, perfectum), accomplish
indefinite, in-, not; dēfiniō, mark off
independent, in-, not; dēpendeō, hang from, be dependent on
infinitive, in-, not; finiō (past participle, finitum), limit
inflection, inflectō, bend
instrumental, instrūmentum, instrument
interjection, interjiciō (past participle, interjectum), throw in
interrogative, interrogō, ask
intransitive, in-, not: trānseō introduce, intrōdūcō, lead or bring in
inversion, invertō, turn upside down
irregular, in- (= ir-), not: rēgula, rule
limiting, līmes (genitive, līmitis), path, boundary
locative, locus
masculine, masculīnus, male, masculine
negative, negō, deny
neuter, neuter, neither
nominative, nōmen, name
numeral, numerus, number
omission, omittō, pass by, omit
ordinal, ōrdō, rank, order
participle, pars: capiō
partitive, pars
passive, patior (past participle, passus), endure
perfect, perficiō (past participle, perfectum), accomplish
personal, persōna, person
plural, plūs (genitive plūris), more
position, pōnō (past participle, positum)
possession, possideō (past participle, possessum), possess
predicate, praedicō, proclaim, declare
preposition, praepōnō (past participle, praepositum), place before
present, praeśēns (genitive, praeśentis), present
progressive, prōgregdiōr (past participle, prōgressus), go forward
recipient, recipiō, receive
regular, rēgula, rule
restrictive, restringō (past participle, restrictum), restrain
sentence, *sententia*, opinion, thought
sequence, *sequor*, follow
simile, *similis*
subordinate, *sub*, under: *örđō*, rank
substantive, *sub*, under: *stō*
superlative, *super*, above
temporal, *tempus* (genitive, *temporis*)

**WORDS OF LATIN DERIVATION IN ELEMENTARY MATHEMATICS**

acute, *acūtus*, sharp
addition, *addō* (past participle, *additum*), add
adjacent, *ad*: *jaceō*, lie
alternate, *alter*
angle, *angulus*, corner
arc, *arcus*, a bow
ascending, *ascendō*, go up
associative, *ad*: *socius*

bisect, *bis*,¹ twice: *secō* (past participle, *sectum*) cut
center, *centrum*, center
circle, *circulus*, circle
circumscribe, *circum*: *scribō*, write, draw
coefficient, *co-*(con-), with, together: *efficiō*, bring about
coincide, *co-*(con-) with, together: *incidō*, fall
commutative, *commūtō*, change
termiology, *terminus*, boundary, limit
translation, *transferō* (past participle, *translatum*, carry across)
verb, *verbum*, word
vocative, *vocō*, call

complementary, *compleō*, fill out
cone, *cōnus*, a cone
congruence, *congruo*, agree, be in harmony
constant, *cōnstō*, stand firm
construct, *cōnstruō*, heap together, make
contact, *contingō* (past participle, *contactum*), touch
coördinate, *co-*(con-) with, together: *örđō*, rank
data, *dō* (past participle, *datum*)
decimal, *decimus*, tenth
difference, *differō*, differ
digit, *digitus*, finger
dissimilar, *dissimilis*, unlike
distance, *distō*, stand apart, be separated
dividend, *dividō* (future passive participle *dīvidendus*)

¹In derivatives *bi-* or *bis-* as a prefix sometimes means *two*. Hence "bisect" means to cut into two parts.
divisor, *dīvidō* (past passive participle, *dīvisum*)

*divide*

elevate, *ē*, *ex: levō*, lift up, raise

*raise*

eliminate, *ē*, *ex: līmen*, threshold

*threshold*

equal, *aequus*

*equal*

equiangular, *aequus*: *angulus*

*equiangular*

equidistant, *aequus*: *distō*, stand apart

*equidistant*

equilateral, *aequus*: *latus* (genitive *lateris*), side

*side*

exponent, *expōnō*, set forth

*set forth*

exterior, *extrā*, outside of

*outside of*

extreme, *extrēmus*, farthest, last

*farthest, last*

factor, *facciō*

*factor*

formula, *fōrmula*, form, regulation, rule

*form, regulation, rule*

fraction, *frangō* (past participle, *frāctum*), break

*break*

function, *fungor* (past participle, *fūnectus*), perform

*perform*

fundamental, *fundamentum*, foundation

*foundation*

inscribe, *in: scribō*

*inscribe*

intercept, *intercīpiō*, interrupt

*interrupt*

intersection, *inter: secō* (past participle, *sectum*)

*intersection*

inverse, *invertō* (past participle, *inversum*), turn upside down

*turn upside down*

lever, *levō*, lift up

*lift up*

literal, *littera* (also spelled *lītera*), a letter

*letter*

locus, *locus*, place

*place*

mariner, *marīnus*, of the sea

*mariner, of the sea*

member, *membrum*, limb

*member, limb*

minute, *minūtus*, very small

*minute, very small*

motion, *moveō*

*motion*

multiplication, *multus*: *plicāre*, fold

*fold*

negative, *negō*, deny

*deny*

normal, *nōrma*, rule

*rule*

notation, *notō*, mark, indicate

*mark, indicate*

oblique, *obliquus*, slanting

*oblique*

obtuse, *obtundō* (past participle *obtūsum*), make blunt, make dull

*oblind, dull*

operation, *opus* (genitive *opēris*), work

*work*

opposite, *ob*, towards, before: *pōnō*

*opposite, *ob*, towards, before: *pōnō*

partial, *pars*

*partial*

percent, *per: centum*

*percent, *per: centum*

perpendicular, *perpendiculum*, plumb-line

*plumb-line*

plane, *plānus*, level, flat

*plane*

prime, *primus*

*prime*

product, *prōducō*, bring forth

*bring forth*

protractor, *prōtrahō* (past participle, *prōtractum*), draw out, lengthen

*draw out, lengthen*
quadrant, *quadrāns*, a fourth part
quadrilateral, *quattuor*¹: *latus* (genitive, *lateris*)
quotient, *quotiēns*, how often
radius, *radius*, spoke of a wheel ratio, *ratiō*, relation
rectangle, *rēctus*, straight: *angulus*
regular, *rēgula*, rule
reduction, *redūcō*, bring back

scale, *scālæ*, stairway
segment, *segmentum*, a cutting
semicircle, *sēmi-*², half: *circulus*
sign, *signum*, sign
similar, *similis*
simultaneous, *simul*, at the same time
solve, *sqlvō*, loosen, dissolve

subtraction, *subtrahō* (past participle, *subtractum*), withdraw, take away
superposition, *super*, upon: *pōnō*
table, *tabula*, board
tangent, *tangō*, touch
transit, *trānseō* (past participle, *trānsitum*)
triangle, *trēs*: *angulus*
trisect, *trēs* (represented in compounds by *tri*), *secō*, cut

unit, *ūnus*
use, *ūtor*
variation, *varius*, different
vertex, *vertex*, highest point
vinculum, *vinculum*, chain
velocity, *vēlōx* (genitive *vēlō-cis*), swift

¹ *Quattuor* is regularly represented in compounds by the initial syllable *quad*-.
² There was an adjective *quadrus*, square, which came into use a little later than the time of Caesar.
² Used as a prefix in Latin.
## GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

### SUMMARY OF DECLENSIONS AND CONJUGATIONS

#### NOUNS

1. **FIRST DECLENSION, ā-stems**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. rosa</td>
<td>rosaear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. rosae</td>
<td>rosārum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. rosae</td>
<td>rosīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. rosam</td>
<td>rosās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. rosā</td>
<td>rosīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. **SECOND DECLENSION, o-stems**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. dominus puer</td>
<td>ager vir templum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. domini pueri</td>
<td>agrī virī templī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. dominō puerō</td>
<td>agrō virō templō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. dominum puerum</td>
<td>agrum virum templum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. dominō puerō</td>
<td>agrō virō templō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. domini pueri</td>
<td>agrī virī templā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. dominōrum puerōrum agrōrum</td>
<td>virōrum templōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. dominīs puerīs</td>
<td>agrīs virīs templīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. dominōs puerōs</td>
<td>agrōs virōs templā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. dominīs puerīs</td>
<td>agrīs virīs templīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note.**—The vocative singular of -us nouns ends in -e: domine. The vocative singular (and sometimes the genitive singular) of filius and of proper nouns in -ius ends in -ī: fili.
3.

THIRD DECLENSION

(1) CONSONANT STEMS (Masculine and Feminine)

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.</th>
<th>lēx</th>
<th>miles</th>
<th>frāter</th>
<th>homō</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>lēgis</td>
<td>mīlitis</td>
<td>frātris</td>
<td>hominis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| D. | lēgī | mīlīti | frātrī | homini |}
| Ac. | lēgem | mīlitem | frātem | hominem |
| Ab. | lēge | mīlite | frātre | homine |

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N.</th>
<th>lēgēs</th>
<th>mīlitēs</th>
<th>frātrēs</th>
<th>hominēs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>lēgum</td>
<td>mīlitum</td>
<td>frātrum</td>
<td>hominum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>lēgibus</td>
<td>mīlitibus</td>
<td>frātribus</td>
<td>hominibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>lēgēs</td>
<td>mīlitēs</td>
<td>frātrēs</td>
<td>hominēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>lēgibus</td>
<td>mīlitibus</td>
<td>frātribus</td>
<td>hominibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note.**—Some masculine and feminine nouns have a nominative ending *-s*. If the stem ends in *-c* or *-g*, the combination of the final *-c* or *-g* of the stem with *-s* gives *-x*: dux, nominative from the stem duc-; lēx, nominative from the stem lēg-. If the stem ends in *-d* or *-t*, the final consonant is dropped before *-s*: laus, nominative from the stem laud-. If the vowel *i* stands before the final consonant of the stem it is frequently changed to *e* in the nominative: princeps, nominative from the stem princip-; miles, nominative from the stem mīlit-.

Nouns with stems ending in *-tr* have the nominative ending in *-ter*: frāter from the stem frātr-; māter from the stem mātr-.

Nouns with stems ending in *-din* and *-gin* replace *-in* of the stem by *-ō* in the nominative: virgō from the stem virgin-; multitūdō from the stem multitūdin-. The nominative homō is formed by replacing *-in* of the stem in the same manner.
(2) CONSONANT STEMS (Neuter)

Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>D.</th>
<th>Ac.</th>
<th>Ab.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>flūmen</td>
<td>caput</td>
<td>capitis</td>
<td>capītī</td>
<td>caput</td>
<td>capite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caput</td>
<td>corpus</td>
<td>corporis</td>
<td>corporī</td>
<td>corpus</td>
<td>corpore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corpus</td>
<td>iter</td>
<td>itineris</td>
<td>itinerī</td>
<td>iter</td>
<td>itinere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>D.</th>
<th>Ac.</th>
<th>Ab.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>flūmina</td>
<td>capitā</td>
<td>capitum</td>
<td>capītum</td>
<td>capita</td>
<td>capītum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corpora</td>
<td>corpora</td>
<td>corporum</td>
<td>corporum</td>
<td>corporibus</td>
<td>corporibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>itinera</td>
<td>itinera</td>
<td>itinerum</td>
<td>itinerum</td>
<td>itineribus</td>
<td>itineribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note.—Nouns with -in as the stem ending change i to e in the nominative: flūmen from the stem flūmin-.

A few other nouns likewise change the vowel before the final consonant of the stem in forming the nominative: caput from the stem capit-.

Neuter nouns with stems ending in -er or -or regularly have the nominative in -us: corpus from the stem corpor-.

The nominative iter has the stem itiner-.

(3) I-STEMS AND MIXED STEMS (Masculine and Feminine)

These include two classes. (1) Nouns having the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative. (2) Nouns having two consonants before the ending of the genitive singular.

Singular

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>D.</th>
<th>Ac.</th>
<th>Ab.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hostis</td>
<td>caedēs</td>
<td>caedis</td>
<td>caedī</td>
<td>caedem</td>
<td>caede</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gēns</td>
<td>gentis</td>
<td>gentī</td>
<td>gentem</td>
<td>gente</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**330**  A JUNIOR LATIN READER

*Plural*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>hostēs</th>
<th>caedēs</th>
<th>gentēs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>hostium</td>
<td>caedium</td>
<td>gentium</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>hostibus</td>
<td>caedibus</td>
<td>gentibus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>hostis or -ēs</td>
<td>caedīs or -ēs</td>
<td>gentīs or -ēs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>hostibus</td>
<td>caedibus</td>
<td>gentibus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note.**—The ablative singular of *turris* and sometimes of *ignis* and a few other words ends in -i instead of -e. The accusative singular of *turris* is *turrim*.

(4) **I-STEMS (Neuter)**

These end in -e, -al, or -ar.

*Singlular*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>insignis</th>
<th>calcar</th>
<th>animal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>insignis</td>
<td>calcāris</td>
<td>animālis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>insignī</td>
<td>calcārī</td>
<td>animāli</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>insignis</td>
<td>calcar</td>
<td>animal</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>insignī</td>
<td>calcārī</td>
<td>animāli</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Plural*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>insignia</th>
<th>calcāria</th>
<th>animālia</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>insignium</td>
<td>calcārium</td>
<td>animālium</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>insignibus</td>
<td>calcāribus</td>
<td>animālibus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>insignia</td>
<td>calcāria</td>
<td>animālia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>insignibus</td>
<td>calcāribus</td>
<td>animālibus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(5) **IRREGULAR NOUNS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. vis</td>
<td>vīrēs</td>
<td>bōs</td>
<td>bovēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. —</td>
<td>vīrium</td>
<td>bovis</td>
<td>boum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. —</td>
<td>vīribus</td>
<td>bovī</td>
<td>būbus or bōbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. vim</td>
<td>vīrīs or -ēs</td>
<td>bovem</td>
<td>bovēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. vī</td>
<td>vīribus</td>
<td>bove</td>
<td>būbus or bōbus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4. FOURTH DECLENSION, u-stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. exercitus</td>
<td>exercitus</td>
<td>cornū</td>
<td>cornua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. exercitus</td>
<td>exercitūs</td>
<td>cornūs</td>
<td>cornuum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. exercituî or -ū</td>
<td>exercitibus</td>
<td>cornū</td>
<td>cornibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. exercitum</td>
<td>exercitus</td>
<td>cornū</td>
<td>cornua</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. exercitū</td>
<td>exercitibus</td>
<td>cornū</td>
<td>cornibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. domus</td>
<td>domūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. domūs</td>
<td>domuum or domōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. domui or domō</td>
<td>domibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. domum</td>
<td>domūs or domōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. domū or domō</td>
<td>domibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loc. domī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. FIFTH DECLENSION, ē-stems

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. diēs</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>rēs</td>
<td>rēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. diēi</td>
<td>diērum</td>
<td>reī</td>
<td>rērum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. diēi</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>reī</td>
<td>rēbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. diem</td>
<td>diēs</td>
<td>rem</td>
<td>rēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. diē</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
<td>rē</td>
<td>rēbus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ADJECTIVES

6. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

a. bonus, good

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. bonus</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. bonī</td>
<td>bonae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. bonō</td>
<td>bonae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. bonum</td>
<td>bonam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. bonō</td>
<td>bonā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. bonī</td>
<td>bonae</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. bonōrum</td>
<td>bonārum</td>
<td>bonōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. bonōs</td>
<td>bonās</td>
<td>bona</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
<td>bonīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
b. **miser**, unhappy

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>D.</th>
<th>Ac.</th>
<th>Ab.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>miser</td>
<td>miser</td>
<td>miserī</td>
<td>miserō</td>
<td>miserum</td>
<td>miserō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>misera</td>
<td>miserae</td>
<td>miserae</td>
<td>miserae</td>
<td>miserum</td>
<td>miserō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>miserum</td>
<td>miserum</td>
<td>miserōrōm</td>
<td>miserōs</td>
<td>miserum</td>
<td>miserōs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>D.</th>
<th>Ac.</th>
<th>Ab.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>miserī</td>
<td>miserae</td>
<td>miserārum</td>
<td>miserīs</td>
<td>miserās</td>
<td>miserīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>miserum</td>
<td>miserum</td>
<td>miserōrōm</td>
<td>miserēs</td>
<td>misera</td>
<td>miserēs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

c. **pulcher**, beautiful

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>D.</th>
<th>Ac.</th>
<th>Ab.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pulcher</td>
<td>pulchra</td>
<td>pulchrae</td>
<td>pulchrae</td>
<td>pulchram</td>
<td>pulchrā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pulchrē</td>
<td>pulchrēae</td>
<td>pulchrēae</td>
<td>pulchrēae</td>
<td>pulchrēam</td>
<td>pulchrēa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pulchrō</td>
<td>pulchrōae</td>
<td>pulchrōae</td>
<td>pulchrōae</td>
<td>pulchrōam</td>
<td>pulchrōa</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>N.</th>
<th>G.</th>
<th>D.</th>
<th>Ac.</th>
<th>Ab.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pulchrī</td>
<td>pulchrēae</td>
<td>pulchrēae</td>
<td>pulchrēae</td>
<td>pulchrēam</td>
<td>pulchrēa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pulchrōrōm</td>
<td>pulchrōrōrum</td>
<td>pulchrōrōrum</td>
<td>pulchrōrōrum</td>
<td>pulchrōrōam</td>
<td>pulchrōra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pulchrōs</td>
<td>pulchrōs</td>
<td>pulchrōs</td>
<td>pulchrōs</td>
<td>pulchrōs</td>
<td>pulchrōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
<td>pulchrīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 7. Third Declension

#### (1) Three Terminations—(I-Stems)

**ācer, sharp**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th></th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. ācer</td>
<td>ācris</td>
<td>ācre</td>
<td>ācrēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. ācris</td>
<td>ācris</td>
<td>ācrīs</td>
<td>ācrīrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. ācrī</td>
<td>ācrī</td>
<td>ācrī</td>
<td>ācrībus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. ācrem</td>
<td>ācrem</td>
<td>ācre</td>
<td>ācrīs, -ēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. ācrī</td>
<td>ācrī</td>
<td>ācrī</td>
<td>ācrībus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### (2) Two Terminations—(I-Stems)

**omnis, all**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th></th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. omnis</td>
<td>omne</td>
<td>omnēs</td>
<td>omnia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. omnis</td>
<td>omnis</td>
<td>omnium</td>
<td>omnium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. omnī</td>
<td>omnī</td>
<td>omnibus</td>
<td>omnibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. omnem</td>
<td>omne</td>
<td>omnīs or -ēs</td>
<td>omnia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. omnī</td>
<td>omnī</td>
<td>omnibus</td>
<td>omnibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### (3) One Termination (I-Stems)

**fēlix, fortunate**

**potēns, powerful**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th></th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. fēlix</td>
<td>fēlix</td>
<td>potēns</td>
<td>potēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. fēlicis</td>
<td>fēlicis</td>
<td>potentiis</td>
<td>potentiis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. fēlicī</td>
<td>fēlicī</td>
<td>potenti</td>
<td>potenti</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. fēlicem</td>
<td>fēlix</td>
<td>potentem</td>
<td>potēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. fēlicī</td>
<td>fēlicī</td>
<td>potenti, -e</td>
<td>potenti, -e</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Plural | | | |
| N. fēlicēs | fēlicia | potentiēs | potentiā |
| G. fēlicium | fēlicium | potentiūm | potentiūm |
| D. fēlicibus | fēlicibus | potentiūbus | potentiūbus |
| Ac. fēlicis, -ēs | fēlicia | potentiis, -ēs | potentiā |
| Ab. fēlicibus | fēlicibus | potentiūbus | potentiūbus |
(4) *ventus*, *old*

(a consonant stem)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masc. and Fem.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Neut.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. vetus</td>
<td>vetus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. veteris</td>
<td>veteris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. veterī</td>
<td>veterī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. veterem</td>
<td>vetus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. vetere</td>
<td>vetere</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

8. PRESENT PARTICIPLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masc. and Fem.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Neut.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. portāns</td>
<td>portāns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. portantis</td>
<td>portantis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. portantī</td>
<td>portantī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. portantem</td>
<td>portāns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. portante (-ī)</td>
<td>portante (-ī)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>alius</td>
<td>ūnus</td>
<td>alter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sōlus</td>
<td>tōtus</td>
<td>neuter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ūllus</td>
<td>nūllus</td>
<td>uter</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. sōlus</td>
<td>sōla</td>
<td>sōlum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. sōlius</td>
<td>sōlius</td>
<td>sōlius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. sōlī</td>
<td>sōlī</td>
<td>sōlī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. sōlum</td>
<td>sōlam</td>
<td>sōlum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. sōlō</td>
<td>sōlā</td>
<td>sōlō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(The plurals are like those of *bonus* and *miser*.)

10. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lātus</td>
<td>lātior, lātius</td>
<td>lātissimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortis</td>
<td>fortior, fortius</td>
<td>fortissimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fēlix</td>
<td>fēlicior, fēlicius</td>
<td>fēlicissimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miser</td>
<td>miserior, miserius</td>
<td>miserrimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facilis</td>
<td>facilior, facilius</td>
<td>facillimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
11. **Irregular Comparison of Adjectives**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bonus</td>
<td>melior, melius</td>
<td>optimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malus</td>
<td>pejor, pejus</td>
<td>pessimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnus</td>
<td>major, majus</td>
<td>maximus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parvus</td>
<td>minor, minus</td>
<td>minimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multus</td>
<td>——, plús</td>
<td>plúrimus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

12. **Declension of Comparatives**

**látior, broader**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. látior</td>
<td>látius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. látioris</td>
<td>látioris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. látiori</td>
<td>látiori</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. látiorem</td>
<td>látius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. látiore</td>
<td>látiore</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**plús, more**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. ——</td>
<td>plús</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. ——</td>
<td>plúris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. ——</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. ——</td>
<td>plús</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. ——</td>
<td>——</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

13. **Regular Comparison of Adverbs**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Comparative</th>
<th>Superlative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>látē</td>
<td>látius</td>
<td>látissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fortiter</td>
<td>fortius</td>
<td>fortissimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ācriter</td>
<td>ācrius</td>
<td>ācerrimē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>facile</td>
<td>facilius</td>
<td>facillimē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
14. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bene</td>
<td>melius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>male</td>
<td>pejus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnopere</td>
<td>plūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multum</td>
<td>magis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>parum</td>
<td>minus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prope</td>
<td>propius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saepe</td>
<td>saepius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>diū</td>
<td>diūtius</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

15. NUMERALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roman Numerals</th>
<th>Cardinal</th>
<th>Ordinal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>unus, -a, -um</td>
<td>primus, -a, -um</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>duo, -ae, -o</td>
<td>secundus or alter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>tres, tria</td>
<td>tertius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>quattuor</td>
<td>quartus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>quinque</td>
<td>quintus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI.</td>
<td>sex</td>
<td>sextus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII.</td>
<td>septem</td>
<td>septimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII.</td>
<td>octo</td>
<td>octavus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX.</td>
<td>novem</td>
<td>nonus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X.</td>
<td>decem</td>
<td>decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XI.</td>
<td>undecim</td>
<td>undecimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XII.</td>
<td>duodecim</td>
<td>duodecimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIII.</td>
<td>tredecim</td>
<td>tertius decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIV.</td>
<td>quattuordecim</td>
<td>quartus decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XV.</td>
<td>quindecim</td>
<td>quintus decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XVI.</td>
<td>sēdecim</td>
<td>sextus decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XVII.</td>
<td>septendecim</td>
<td>septimus decimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XVIII.</td>
<td>duodēvigintī</td>
<td>duodēvigintī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIX.</td>
<td>ūndēvigintī</td>
<td>ūndēvigintī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XX.</td>
<td>vigintī</td>
<td>vigintī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXI.</td>
<td>ūnus et vigintī</td>
<td>(vigintī ūnus)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
XXVIII. duodētrigintā duodētricēsimus
XXIX. ūndētrigintā ūndētricēsimus
XXX. trīgintā trīcēsimus
XL. quadrāgintā quadrāgēsimus
L. quīnquāgintā quīnquāgēsimus
LX. sexāgintā sexāgēsimus
LXX. septuāgintā septuāgēsimus
LXXX. octōgintā octōgēsimus
XC. nōnāgintā nōnāgēsimus
C. centum centēsimus
Cl. centum (et) ūnus centēsimus (et) prīmus
CC. ducentī, -ae, -a ducentēsimus
CCC. trecentī trecentēsimus
CCCC. quadringentī quadiingentēsimus
D. quīngentī quīngentēsimus
DC. sescentī sescentēsimus
DCC. septingentī septingentēsimus
DCCC. octingentī octingentēsimus
DCCCC. nōngentī nōngentēsimus
M. milles millesimus
MM. duo milia bis millesimus

16 DECLENSION OF DUO, TRÈS, and MÌLIA

duo, two

N. duo duae duo
G. duórum duārum duórum
D. duóbus duābus duóbus
Ac. duōs, duo duās duo
Ab. duóbus duābus duóbus
tres, three
milia, n., thousands

Masc. and Fem. Neut.
N. tres tria
G. trium trium
D. tribus tribus
Ac. tres, tris tria
Ab. tribus tribus

milia
milium
milibus
milia
milibus

a. In the singular, mille, thousand, is an indeclinable adjective. In the plural it is a neuter noun, and the noun denoting the persons or things which are numbered is put in the genitive of the whole.

PRONOUNS

17. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

First person, ego, I
Second person, tū, you (thou)

Singular Plural Singular Plural
N. ego nōs tū vōs
G. meī nostrum tuī vestrum
  nostrī
D. mihi nōbis tibi vōbīs
Ac. mē nōs tē vōs
Ab. mē nōbis tē vōbīs

a. There is no personal pronoun of the third person. Its place is taken either by a demonstrative pronoun (usually is, he, ea, she, id, it), or, if the antecedent is the subject of the sentence or clause, by the reflexive.

18. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

First person, meī, of myself
Second person, tuī, of yourself
Third person, suī, of himself, etc.

G. meī nostrī tuī vestrī suī suī
D. mihi nōbis tibi vōbīs sibi sibi
Ac. mē nōs tē vōs sē (sēsē) sē (sēsē)
Ab. mē nōbis tē vōbīs sē (sēsē) sē (sēsē)
19. POSSESSIVES

Singular

1st pers. meus, -a, -um, my
2d pers. tuus, -a, -um, your (of one person)
3d pers. suus, -a, -um, his, her, its (reflexive)
       ejus (gen. sing. of is) his, etc. (not reflexive)

Plural

1st pers. noster, -tra, -trum, our
2d pers. vester, -tra, -trum, your (of more than one person)
       suus, -a, -um, their (reflexive)
3d pers. cōrum, cārum, eōrum (gen. plur. of is) their (not reflexive)

a. The vocative singular masculine of meus is mi.

20. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

a. hic, this

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>hic</td>
<td>haec</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td>hī</td>
<td>hae</td>
<td>haec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>hujus</td>
<td>hujus</td>
<td>hujus</td>
<td>hōrum</td>
<td>hārum</td>
<td>hōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>huic</td>
<td>hui̇c</td>
<td>hui̇c</td>
<td>hīs</td>
<td>hīs</td>
<td>hīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>hunc</td>
<td>hanc</td>
<td>hoc</td>
<td>hōs</td>
<td>hās</td>
<td>haec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>hōc</td>
<td>hāc</td>
<td>hōc</td>
<td>hīs</td>
<td>hīs</td>
<td>hīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. ille, that

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>ille</td>
<td>illa</td>
<td>illud</td>
<td>illī</td>
<td>illae</td>
<td>illa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>illius</td>
<td>illius</td>
<td>illius</td>
<td>illōrum</td>
<td>illārum</td>
<td>illōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>illī</td>
<td>illī</td>
<td>illī</td>
<td>illīs</td>
<td>illīs</td>
<td>illīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>illum</td>
<td>illam</td>
<td>illud</td>
<td>illōs</td>
<td>illās</td>
<td>illa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>illō</td>
<td>illā</td>
<td>illō</td>
<td>illīs</td>
<td>illīs</td>
<td>illīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
c. *is, this, that, he, she, it*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. is</td>
<td>ea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. e̞us</td>
<td>e̞us</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. eī</td>
<td>eī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. eum</td>
<td>eam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. eō</td>
<td>eā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) *iste* is declined like *ille*.

21. **THE IDENTIFYING PRONOUN**

*īdem, the same*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. ēdem</td>
<td>eadem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. e̞usdem</td>
<td>e̞usdem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. ēdem</td>
<td>eīdem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. eundem</td>
<td>eandem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. eōdem</td>
<td>eādem</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. ēdem or ēīdem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. eōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. ēīdem or ēīsēm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. eāsēm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. ēīsēm or ēīsēm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

22. **THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN**

*ipse, self*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. ipse</td>
<td>ipsa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. ipsius</td>
<td>ipsius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. ipsī</td>
<td>ipsī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. ipsum</td>
<td>ipsam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. ipsō</td>
<td>ipsā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

qui, who

<p>| | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>qui</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>quod</td>
<td>qui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>cujus</td>
<td>cujus</td>
<td>cujus</td>
<td>quorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
<td>quibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>quem</td>
<td>quam</td>
<td>quod</td>
<td>quos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>quō</td>
<td>quā</td>
<td>quō</td>
<td>quibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

24. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE

<p>| | | | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>quis</td>
<td>quae</td>
<td>quid or quod</td>
<td>qui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>cujus</td>
<td>cujus</td>
<td>cujus</td>
<td>quorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
<td>quibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>quem</td>
<td>quam</td>
<td>quid or quod</td>
<td>quos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>quō</td>
<td>quā</td>
<td>quō</td>
<td>quibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. In the nominative singular masculine the adjective form is sometimes qui. In the nominative and accusative singular neuter it is always quod. As a pronoun, quis may be either masculine or feminine.

25. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

a. quisque, each

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Masc.</td>
<td>Neut.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>quisque</td>
<td>quidique, quodique</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>cujusque</td>
<td>cujusque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>cuique</td>
<td>cuique</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac.</td>
<td>quemque</td>
<td>quidique, quodique</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab.</td>
<td>quōque</td>
<td>quōque</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(The plural is rare)
### b. quisquam, anyone

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Masc. and Fem.</th>
<th>Neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. quisquam</td>
<td>quicquam (quidquam)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. cujusquam</td>
<td>cujusquam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. cuiquam</td>
<td>cuiquam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. quemquam</td>
<td>quicquam (quidquam)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. quōquam</td>
<td>quōquam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*(Plural lacking)*

### c. quidam, a certain

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. quīdam</td>
<td>quae dam</td>
<td>quiddam (quoddam)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. cujusdam</td>
<td>cujus dam</td>
<td>cujusdam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. cuidam</td>
<td>cuidam</td>
<td>cuidam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. quendam</td>
<td>quandam</td>
<td>quiddam (quoddam)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. quōdam</td>
<td>quādam</td>
<td>quōdam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. quīdam</td>
<td>quae dam</td>
<td>quae dam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. quōrundam</td>
<td>quārundam</td>
<td>quōrundam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. quibusdam</td>
<td>quibusdam</td>
<td>quibusdam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. quōsdam</td>
<td>quāsdam</td>
<td>quae dam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. quibusdam</td>
<td>quibusdam</td>
<td>quibusdam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### d. aliquis, some

**Singular**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. aliquid (aliqui)</td>
<td>aliqua</td>
<td>aliquid (aliquod)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. alicujus</td>
<td>alicujus</td>
<td>alicujus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. alicui</td>
<td>alicui</td>
<td>alicui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ac. aliquem</td>
<td>aliquam</td>
<td>aliquid (aliquod)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ab. aliquō</td>
<td>aliquā</td>
<td>aliquō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Plural

N. aliquī
G. aliquōrum
D. aliquibus
Ac. aliquōs
Ab. aliquibus

aliquae
aliquārum
aliquibus
aliquās
aliquibus

aliqua
aliquōrum
aliquibus
aliqua
aliquibus

REGULAR VERBS

26.
FIRST CONJUGATION
ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: portō, portāre, portāvī, portātum

PRESENT

INDICATIVE

Singular

portō, I carry
portās, you carry
portat, he carries

SUBJUNCTIVE

portem
portēs
portet

Plural

portāmus, we carry
portātis, you carry
portant, they carry

IMPERFECT

Singular

portābam, I was carrying
portābās, you were carrying
portābat, he was carrying

Plural

portābāmus, we were carrying
portābātis, you were carrying
portābant, they were carrying

portārem
portārēs
portāret

portārēmus
portārētis
portārent
### FUTURE

**Singular**
- **portābō**, I shall carry
- **portābis**, you will carry
- **portābit**, he will carry

**Plural**
- **portābimus**, we shall carry
- **portābitis**, you will carry
- **portābunt**, they will carry

### PERFECT

**Singular**
- **portāvī**, I have carried, I carried
- **portāvistī**, you have carried, etc.
- **portāvit**, he has carried, etc.

**Plural**
- **portāvimus**, we have carried, etc.
- **portāvistis**, you have carried, etc.
- **portāvērunt**, -ēre, they have carried, etc.

### PAST PERFECT

**Singular**
- **portāveram**, I had carried
- **portāverās**, you had carried
- **portāverat**, he had carried

**Plural**
- **portāverāmus**, we had carried
- **portāverātis**, you had carried
- **portāverant**, they had carried

### FUTURE PERFECT

**Singular**
- **portāverō**, I shall have carried
- **portāveris**, you will have carried
- **portāverit**, he will have carried
Plural
portāverimus, we shall have carried
portāveritis, you will have carried
portāverint, they will have carried

PRESENT
Sing. portā, carry (thou)
Plur. portāte, carry (ye)

IMPERATIVE
Sing. 2. portātō, thou shalt carry
3. portātō, he shall carry
Plur. 2. portātōte, ye shall carry
3. portantō, they shall carry

FUTURE

INFINITIVES
Sing. portāre, to carry
Past portāvisse, to have carried
Fut. portātūrus esse, to be going to carry

PARTICIPLES
Pres. portāns, carrying
Fut. portātūrus, going to carry

GERUND
G. portandī, of carrying
D. portandō, to (for) carrying
Ac. portandum, carrying
Ab. portandō, from, by carrying

SUPINE
Ac. portātum, to carry
Ab. portātū, to carry

27.

PASSIVE VOICE

PRESENT

INDICATIVE

Singular
portor, I am carried
portāris, -re, you are carried
portātur, he is carried

Plural
portāmur, we are carried
portāmini, you are carried
portantur, they are carried

SUBJUNCTIVE

porter
portēris, -re
portētur
portēmur
portēmini
portentur
IMPERFECT

Singular

portābar, I was (being) carried
portābāris, -re, you were (being) carried
portābātur, he was (being) carried

Plural

portābāmur, we were (being) carried
portābāmini, you were (being) carried
portābantur, they were (being) carried

FUTURE

Singular

portābor, I shall be carried
portāberis, -re, you will be carried
portābitur, he will be carried

Plural

portābimur, we shall be carried
portābimini, you will be carried
portābuntur, they will be carried

PERFECT

Singular

portātus sum, I have been carried
portātus es, you have been carried
portātus est, he has been carried

Plural

portātī sumus, we have been carried
portātī estis, you have been carried
portātī sunt, they have been carried

PAST PERFECT

Singular

portātus eram, I had been carried
portātus erās, you had been carried
portātus erat, he had been carried

Singular

portātus sim
portātus sis
portātus sit

Plural

portātī simus
portātī sitis
portātī sint

Singular

portātus essem
portātus essēs
portātus esset
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>portātī erāmus, we had been carried</td>
<td>portātī essēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>portātī erātis, you had been carried</td>
<td>portātī essētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>portātī erant, they had been carried</td>
<td>portātī essent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUTURE PERFECT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>portātus erō, I shall have been carried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>portātus eris, you will have been carried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>portātus erit, he will have been carried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>portātī erimus, we shall have been carried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>portātī eritis, you will have been carried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>portātī erunt, they will have been carried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMPERATIVE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing.</td>
<td>portāre, be (thou) carried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.</td>
<td>portāmini, be (ye) carried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sing.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>portātor, thou shalt be carried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>portātor, he shall be carried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plur.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>portantor, they shall be carried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitives</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>amārī, to be loved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>amātus esse, to have been loved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>amātum īrī, to be about to be loved</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Participles</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>portātus, having been carried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>portandus, to be carried</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
28. SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

moneō, monēre, monui, monitum
dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum
capiō, capere, cēpi, captum
audiō, audīre, audīvi, auditum

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

Singular

moneō  dūcō  capiō  audiō
monēs  dūcis  capis  audīs
monet  dūcit  capit  audit

Plural

monēmus  dūcimus  capimus  audīmus
monētis  dūcitis  capitis  audītis
monent  dūcunt  capiunt  audiunt

IMPERFECT

Singular

monēbam  dūcēbam  capiēbam  audiēbam
monēbās  dūcēbās  capiēbās  audiēbās
monēbat  dūcēbat  capiēbat  audiēbat

Plural

monēbāmus  dūcēbāmus  capiēbāmus  audiēbāmus
monēbātis  dūcēbātis  capiēbātis  audiēbātis
monēbant  dūcēbant  capiēbant  audiēbant

FUTURE

Singular

monēbō  dūcam  capiam  audiam
monēbis  dūcēs  capiēs  audīēs
monēbit  dūcet  capiēt  audiet
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monēbimus</td>
<td>dūcēmus</td>
<td>capiēmus</td>
<td>audiēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbitis</td>
<td>dūcētis</td>
<td>capiētis</td>
<td>audiētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbunt</td>
<td>dūcent</td>
<td>capient</td>
<td>audient</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect**

| monuī   | dūxi      | cēpī      | audīvi         |

**Past Perfect**

| monueram| dūxeram  | cēperam  | audīveram      |

**Future Perfect**

| monuerō | dūxerō   | cēperō   | audīverō       |

**Subjunctive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moneam</td>
<td>dūcam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneās</td>
<td>dūcās</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneat</td>
<td>dūcat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>moneāmus</th>
<th>dūcāmus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moneātis</td>
<td>dūcātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>moneant</td>
<td>dūcant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monērem</td>
<td>dūcerem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monērēs</td>
<td>dūcerēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēret</td>
<td>dūceret</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>monērēmus</th>
<th>dūcerēmus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monērētis</td>
<td>dūcerētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monērent</td>
<td>dūcerent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>monuerim</th>
<th>dūxerim</th>
<th>cēperim</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>audīverim</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Past Perfect

- monuissem
- dúxissem
- cēpissem
- audīvissem

### Imperative

#### Present

**Singular**
- monē
  - dūc
  - capē
- monēte
  - dūcite
  - capite

**Plural**
- monētō
  - dūcitō
  - capitō
- monētō
  - dūcitō
  - capitō

#### Future

**Singular**
- monētō
  - dūcitō
  - capitō
- monēntō
  - dūcuntō
  - capiuntō

**Plural**
- monētōte
  - dūcitōte
  - capitōte
- monēntō
  - dūcuntō
  - capiuntō

### Participles

#### Present

- monēns
  - dūcēns
  - capiēns
- monēntō
  - dūcuntō
  - capiuntō

#### Future

- monitūrus
  - ductūrus
  - captūrus
- monēre
  - dūcere
  - capere

### Infinitives

#### Present

- monēre
  - dūcere
  - capere
- monēntō
  - dūcuntō
  - capiuntō

**Past**
- monuisse
  - dúxisse
  - cēpisse
- audīvisse

**Future**
- monitūrus esse
  - ductūrus esse
  - captūrus esse
  - audītūrus esse

---

1 This is an irregular form. The imperative of mittō is mitte, mittite, etc., which illustrates the regular formation in the 3d conjugation.
GERUND

monendi dúcendi capiendi audiendi
monendō dúcendō capiendō audiendō
e tc. e tc. e tc.

SUPINE

monitum ductum captum auditum
monítū ductū captū auditū

29.

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

Singualar

moneor dūcor capior audior
monēris, -re dūceris, -re caperis, -re audīris, -re
monētur dūcitur capitur auditur

Plural

monēmur dūcimur capimur audimur
monēmini dūcimini capimini audimini
momentur dūcuntur capiuntur audiuntur

IMPERFECT

Singualar

monēbar dūcebar capiēbar audiēbar
monēbāris, -re dūcebāris, -re capiēbāris, -re audiēbāris, -re
monēbātur dūcebātur capiēbātur audiēbātur

Plural

monēbāmur dūcebāmur capiēbāmur audiēbāmur
monēbāmini dūcebāmini capiēbāmini audiēbāmini
monēbantur dūcebantur capiēbantur audiēbantur

FUTURE

Singul ar

monēbor dūcar capiar audiar
monēberis, -re dūcēris, -re capiēris, -re audīēris, -re
monēbitur dūcētur capiētur audiētur
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monēbimur</th>
<th>Dūcēmur</th>
<th>Capiēmur</th>
<th>Audiēmur</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monēbiminī</td>
<td>Dūcēmini</td>
<td>Capiēmini</td>
<td>Audiēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monēbuntu</td>
<td>Dūcentur</td>
<td>Capientur</td>
<td>Audientur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monēar</th>
<th>Dūcar</th>
<th>Capiar</th>
<th>Audiar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monēāris, -re</td>
<td>Dūcāris, -re</td>
<td>Capiāris, -re</td>
<td>Audiāris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monēātur</td>
<td>Dūcātur</td>
<td>Capiātur</td>
<td>Audiātur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Singular**

**Plural**

**Imperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monērēr</th>
<th>Dūcerērer</th>
<th>Caperēr</th>
<th>Audīrērer</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monērēris, -re</td>
<td>Dūcerēris, -re</td>
<td>Caperēris, -re</td>
<td>Audīrēris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monērētur</td>
<td>Dūcerētur</td>
<td>Caperētur</td>
<td>Audīrētur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Monitus sum</th>
<th>Ductus sum</th>
<th>Captus sum</th>
<th>Audītus sum</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Monitus eram</td>
<td>Ductus eram</td>
<td>Captus eram</td>
<td>Audītus eram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitus erō</td>
<td>Ductus erō</td>
<td>Captus erō</td>
<td>Audītus erō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Subjunctive**
A JUNIOR LATIN READER

PAST PERFECT

monitus essem ductus essem captus essem auditus essem

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

Singular

monēre dūcere capere audire

Plural

monēmini dūcimini capimini audimini

FUTURE

Singular

2. monētor dūcitor capitor auditor
3. monētor dūcitor capitor auditor

Plural

2. ______ ______ ______ ______
3. monentor dūcuntor capiuntor aidiuntor

PARTICIPLES

PAST

monitus ductus captus auditus

FUTURE

monendus dūcendus capiendus aidiendus

INFINITIVE

PRESENT

monēri dūci capī audīri

PAST

monitus esse ductus esse captus esse auditus esse

FUTURE

monitum ēri ductum ēri captum ēri auditum ēri

a. A group of forms representing one person and number of a verb in all the tenses is called a Synopsis. The synopsis of portō in the first person singular of the indicative and subjunctive, active and passive, is as follows:
### A Junior Latin Reader

#### Active

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>portō</td>
<td>portem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf.</td>
<td>portābam</td>
<td>portārem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>portābō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>portāvī</td>
<td>portāverim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. Pf.</td>
<td>portāveram</td>
<td>portāvissem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. Pf.</td>
<td>portāverō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Passive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres.</td>
<td>portor</td>
<td>porter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperf.</td>
<td>portābar</td>
<td>portārer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>portābor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf.</td>
<td>portātus sum</td>
<td>portātus sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>P. Pf.</td>
<td>portātus eram</td>
<td>portātus essem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F. Pf.</td>
<td>portātus erō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Deponent Verbs

I. cōnor, cōnāri, cōnātus sum
II. polliceor, pollicēri, pollicitus sum
III. sequor, sequī, secūtus sum
IV. potior, potīri, potītus sum

#### Indicative

##### Present

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I.</th>
<th>II.</th>
<th>III.</th>
<th>IV.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cōnor</td>
<td>polliceor</td>
<td>sequor</td>
<td>potior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnāris, -re</td>
<td>pollicēris, -re</td>
<td>sequeris, -re</td>
<td>potīris, -re</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnātūr</td>
<td>pollicētūr</td>
<td>sequitūr</td>
<td>potītūr</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Plural**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>cōnāmur</th>
<th>pollicēmur</th>
<th>sequimur</th>
<th>potīmur</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cōnāmini</td>
<td>pollicēmini</td>
<td>sequimini</td>
<td>potīmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnāntūr</td>
<td>pollicentūr</td>
<td>sequuntūr</td>
<td>potiuntūr</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
cōnābar  pollicēbar  sequēbar  potiēbar
   IMPERFECT
   FUTURE
cōnābor  pollicēbor  sequar  potiar
   PERFECT
cōnātus sum  pollicitus sum  secūtus sum  potītus sum
   PAST
   PERFECT
cōnātus eram  pollicitus eram  secūtus eram  potītus eram
   FUTURE
   PERFECT
cōnātus erō  pollicitus erō  secūtus erō  potītus erō
   SUBJUNCTIVE
   PRESENT
cōner  pollicear  sequar  potiar
   IMPERFECT
cōnārer  pollicērer  sequerer  potīrer
   PERFECT
cōnātus sim  pollicitus sim  secūtus sim  potītus sim
   PAST
   PERFECT
cōnātus essem  pollicitus essem  secūtus essem  potītus essem
   IMPERATIVE
   PRESENT
cōnāre  pollicēre  sequere  potire
   FUTURE
cōnātor  pollicētor  sequitor  potītor
   INFINITIVE
   PRESENT
cōnāri  pollicēri  sequī  potīri
   PAST
cōnātus esse  pollicitus esse  secūtus esse  potītus esse
   FUTURE
cōnātūrus esse  pollicitūrus esse  secūtūrus esse  potītūrus esse
PARTICIPLE

PRESENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Future Active</th>
<th>Future Passive</th>
<th>Gerund</th>
<th>Supine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>conāns</td>
<td>pollicēns</td>
<td>sequēns</td>
<td>potiēns</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conātus</td>
<td>pollicitus</td>
<td>secūtus</td>
<td>potītus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conātūrus</td>
<td>pollicitūrus</td>
<td>secūtūrus</td>
<td>potītūrus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnandus</td>
<td>pollicendus</td>
<td>sequendus</td>
<td>potiendus</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GERUND

conandī, etc. pollicendī, etc. sequendī, etc. potiendī, etc.

SUPINE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Past</th>
<th>Future Active</th>
<th>Future Passive</th>
<th>Gerund</th>
<th>Supine</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cōnātum</td>
<td>pollicitum</td>
<td>secūtum</td>
<td>potītum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cōnātū</td>
<td>pollicitū</td>
<td>secūtū</td>
<td>potītū</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. The following verbs are semi-deponent. The present system is active and the perfect system is passive:

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, dare
gauceō, gaudēre, gavisus sum, rejoice
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, be accustomed
fidō, fidere, fisus sum, trust

IRREGULAR VERBS

31. CONJUGATION OF SUM

Principal parts: sum, esse, fui, futūrus

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sum, I am</td>
<td>sumus, we are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>es, you are</td>
<td>estis, you are</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>est, he, she, it is</td>
<td>sunt, they are</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Imperfect

eram, I was
erās, you were
erat, he, she, it was

erō, I shall be
eris, you will be
erit, he, she, it will be

Future

erimus, we shall be
eritis, you will be
erunt, they will be

Perfect

fui, I have been, I was
fuistī, you have been, you were
fuit, he, she, it has been, was

fueram, I had been
fuerās, you had been
fuerat, he, she, it had been

Futūre Perfect

fuerō, I shall have been
fueris, you will have been
fuerit, he, she, it will have been

Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sim</td>
<td>simus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sis</td>
<td>sītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sit</td>
<td>sīnt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Perfect

fuerim | fuerīmus
fuerīs | fuerītīs
fuerīt | fuerīnt

Past Perfect

fuissem | fuissēmus
fuisses | fuissētīs
fuisset | fuissent
### IMPERATIVE

#### PRESENT

| 2d pers. | es, be (thou) | este, be (ye) |

#### FUTURE

| 2d pers. | estō, be, thou shalt be | estōte, be, ye shall be |
| 3d pers. | estō, let him be, he | suntō, let them be, they shall |

### PARTICIPLE

**Fut.** futūrus, about to be

### INFINITIVE

**Pres.** esse, to be  
**Past** fuisse, to have been  
**Fut.** futūrus esse or fore, to be about to be

### 32. CONJUGATION OF POSSUM

Principal parts: **possum, posse, potui**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>possum</td>
<td>possum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potes</td>
<td>potestis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potest</td>
<td>possunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IMPERFECT</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>poteram</td>
<td>poterāmus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poterās</td>
<td>poterātis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>poterat</td>
<td>poterant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FUTURE</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>poterō</td>
<td>poterimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PERFECT</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>potuī</td>
<td>potuimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PAST PERFECT</th>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>potueram</td>
<td>potuerāmus</td>
<td>potuissem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>potuissēmus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
potuerō potuerimus

INFINEITIVE

Pres. posse Past potuiisse

33. CONJUGATION OF PRÓSUM

Principal parts: prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī

INDICATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prōsum</td>
<td>prōsumus</td>
<td>prōsim</td>
<td>prōsimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prōdes</td>
<td>prōdestis</td>
<td>prōsīs</td>
<td>prōsītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prōdest</td>
<td>prōsunt</td>
<td>prōsit</td>
<td>prōsint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The remaining forms of the present system are conjugated like sum, with the prefix prōd-. The perfect system is regularly formed with the stem prōfu-.

34. CONJUGATION OF FERŌ

Principal parts: ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Active</th>
<th>Passive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ferō</td>
<td>ferimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fers</td>
<td>fertis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fert</td>
<td>ferunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IMPERFECT

ferēbam ferēbāmus ferēbar ferēbāmur

FUTURE

feram ferēmus ferar ferēmur

PERFECT

tulī tulimus lātus sum lātī sumus
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tuleram</td>
<td>tulerāmus</td>
<td>lātus eram</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>FUTURE PERFECT</strong></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tulerō</td>
<td>tulerimus</td>
<td>lātus ēro</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>SUBJUNCTIVE</strong></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feram</td>
<td>ferāmus</td>
<td>ferar</td>
<td>ferāmur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>IMPERFECT</strong></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ferrem</td>
<td>ferrēmus</td>
<td>ferrer</td>
<td>ferrēmur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PERFECT</strong></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tulerim</td>
<td>tulerīmus</td>
<td>lātus sim</td>
<td>lātī simus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>PAST PERFECT</strong></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>tulissem</td>
<td>tulissēmus</td>
<td>lātus essem</td>
<td>lātī essēmus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>IMPERATIVE</strong></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PRESENT</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 fer</td>
<td>ferte</td>
<td>ferre</td>
<td>ferimini</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>FUTURE</strong></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 fertō</td>
<td>fertōte</td>
<td>fertor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 fertō</td>
<td>feruntō</td>
<td>fertor</td>
<td>feruntor</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>INFINITIVE</strong></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PARTICIPLES</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Active</strong></td>
<td><strong>Passive</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Active</strong></td>
<td><strong>Passive</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres. ferre</td>
<td>ferrī</td>
<td>Pres. ferēns</td>
<td>Past lātus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past tulisse</td>
<td>lātus esse</td>
<td>Fut. lātūrus</td>
<td>Fut. ferendus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. lātūrus esse</td>
<td>lātum īri</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>GERUND</strong></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ferendī, etc.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>SUPINE</strong></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acc. lātum</td>
<td></td>
<td>Abl. lātū</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
35. **CONJUGATION OF EÖ**

Principal parts: **eö, ire, ii or ivi, itum**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eö</td>
<td>imus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>is</td>
<td>ītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>it</td>
<td>eunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IMPERFECT**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ūbam</td>
<td>ūbāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ūbō</td>
<td>ūbimus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FUTURE**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ii or īvi</td>
<td>iimus or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>īvimus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PERFECT**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ieram</td>
<td>ierāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>īssem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(īveram)</td>
<td>(īverāmus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Īvissem)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Īvissēmus)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PAST PERFECT**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ierō or īverō</td>
<td>ierimus or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>īverimus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FUTURE PERFECT**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IMPERATIVE</td>
<td>INFINITIVE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pres. ĕ, ĕte</td>
<td>Pres. ire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fut. ĕ tô, ĕtōte</td>
<td>Past isse or īsse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĕtō, euntō</td>
<td>Fut. ĕtūrus esse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**GERUND**

eundī, etc.

36. **CONJUGATION OF FIŌ**

Principal parts: **fiō, fierī, factus sum**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Singular</strong></td>
<td><strong>Plural</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fiō</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fīs</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fīt</td>
<td>fīunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IMPERFECT

fiēbam fiēbāmus fierem fierēmus

FUTURE

fiam fiēmus

PERFECT

factus sum factus sim

PAST PERFECT

factus eram factus essem

FUTURE PERFECT

factus erō

IMPERATIVE

Pres. fi, fite

INFinitive

Pres. fierī

Past. factus esse

Fut. factum īrī

PARTICIPLES

Past. factus

Fut. faciendus

37. CONJUGATION OF VOLŌ, AND ITS COMPOUNDS

volō, velle, volui, be willing.
nōlo, nōlle, nōluī, be unwilling.
mālō, mālle, māluī, prefer.

INDICATIVE

Pres. volō

vis

vult

volumus

vultis

volunt

Imperf. volēbam

Fut. volam

Perf. volui

Past Perf. volueram

Fut. Perf. voluerō

nōlō

nōn vis

nōn vult

nōlumus

nōn vultis

nōlunt

nōlēbam

nōlamī

nōluī

nōlueram

nōluerō

mālō

māvis

māvult

mālumus

māvultis

mālunt

mālēbam

mālam

māluī

mālueram

māluerō
A JUNIOR LATIN READER

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres. velim nólim málim
Imperf. vellem nóllem mállem
Perf. voluerim nóluerim máluerim
Past Perf. voluissem nóluissem máluissem

IMPERATIVE

Pres. nólī nólīte
Fut. nólītō nólītōte
nólītō nóluntō

INFINITIVE

Pres. velle nólle mālle
Past. voluisse nóluisse māluisse

PARTICIPLE

Pres. volēns nólēns

Note.—A few verbs are defective, that is, they lack some forms which are found in the conjugation of other verbs. The most important are aīō, I say, I assent, inquam, I say, coepi, I began, memini, I remember, ōdī, I hate.

(1) The forms of aīō most commonly used are found in the present indicative, and are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. aīō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. aīs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. aīt</td>
<td>aīunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A few other forms, including the whole of the imperfect indicative and the second and third persons singular of the present subjunctive are sometimes found.

(2) The only forms of inquam in common use are found in the present indicative. They are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>inquam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inquis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inquit</td>
<td>inquiunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The three verbs, *coepī*, *memini*, and *ōdī* have no present, imperfect, or future forms. The perfects of *memini* and *ōdī* are used with present meanings, the past perfects with imperfect meanings, and the future perfects with future meanings. The tenses of *coepī* have their regular meanings. The present, imperfect, and future of *coepī* are supplied by the forms of *incipiō*.

**SYNTAX**

*Note.*—The statement of grammatical principles which follows is not intended to be in any sense a complete outline of Latin grammar. The topics presented are those which are especially important for the work of the second year. The mood and case uses treated are limited almost entirely to those which are found in the exercises or the connected text of this book.

**AGREEMENT**

38. (1) Adjectives and participles agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

*Magna urbs; magnae partis; magnis periculis.*

(2) A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its use in its own clause.

*Homō quem vidēs amicus meus est,* the man whom you see is my friend.

39. A noun in apposition is put in the same case as the noun which it explains.

*Agricola, vir benignus, puerōs laudat,* the farmer, a kind man, praises the boys.

40. A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

*Puer labōrat,* the boy works; *pueri labōrant,* the boys work.
Nouns: Cases

The Nominative

41. The nominative is the case of the subject or predicate of a finite verb.

Puella canit, the girl sings.
Frater tuus est agricola, your brother is a farmer.

a. The predicate nominative is used with the verb sum and with the passive voice of verbs meaning to name, call, appoint, choose, and the like.

Is rex tyrannus appellatus est, this king was called a tyrant.

The Genitive

Genitive of Possession

42. The genitive is used to denote the possessor.

Liber pueri repertus est, the boy's book has been found.

Genitive of the Whole (Partitive Genitive)

43. With words denoting a part, a dependent genitive is used to name the whole of that to which the part belongs.

Multi amicorum meorum in ea urbe habitant, many of my friends live in that city.

a. The ablative with de or ex is sometimes used in place of the genitive of the whole, regularly so with cardinal numerals and quidam. Unus e filiis tuus, one of your sons.

Genitive of Description

44. The genitive, modified by an adjective, may be used to describe a person or thing.

Homō magnae virtūtis, a man of great courage.

1 That is, any verb form which denotes person and number.
a. The genitive is often employed in this construction to denote measure.

Mūrus quattuor pedum, a four-foot wall (a wall of four feet).

OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

45. Nouns and adjectives which denote action sometimes take a dependent genitive in a relation similar to that of a direct object to the verb on which it depends.

Timor periculi, fear of danger.

SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE

46. Nouns which denote action sometimes take a genitive to indicate the person who does the act.

Adventus Caesaris, the arrival of Caesar.

GENITIVE OF MATERIAL OR COMPOSITION

47. The genitive may be used to denote the material of which something is composed, or the persons or objects making up a collective noun.

Exercitus virōrum fortium, an army of brave men.

GENITIVE WITH VERBS


a. If the object is a neuter pronoun or a neuter adjective used as a noun, it is always in the accusative.

Rōmānī haec semper meminerint, the Romans will always remember these things.

THE DATIVE

DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT

49. The indirect object is put in the dative.

Fēmina puerō epistulam dat, the woman gives the boy a letter.
50. The dative is used in dependence on adjectives meaning kind, friendly, pleasing, dear, useful, near, and some others.

_Filius tuus sorōribus benignus est_, your son is kind to (his) sisters.

**DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS**

51. Most verbs meaning to please, displease, trust, distrust, believe, persuade, serve, obey, favor, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare govern the dative.

_Ilās barbarīs nēmō nunc cōnfīdit_, no one now trusts those barbarians.

**DATIVE OF POSSESSION**

52. The possessor of something may be denoted by a noun or pronoun in the dative, with the word denoting the thing possessed in the nominative as the subject of a form of _sum_.

_Puerō gladius est_, the boy has a sword.

**DATIVE OF PURPOSE**

53. A noun in the dative is sometimes used to denote the purpose or end which something serves or is intended to serve.

_Hunc librum dōnō mīsī_, _I sent this book as a gift_ (lit. for a gift).

**DATIVE OF REFERENCE**

54. The dative is sometimes used to denote the person with reference to whom an act is said to be done or a situation to exist. This use is especially common in expressions which contain a dative of purpose.

_Legiō equitātui auxiliō missa est_, _the legion was sent as aid_ (lit. for aid) to the cavalry.
55. Verbs compounded with *ante*, *ob*, *prae*, and *sub* frequently have a dependent noun or pronoun in the dative case. This construction is sometimes found also with compounds of *ad*, *circum*, *con-*, *in*, *inter*, *post*, *prō*, and *super*.

*Legiōni praest*, he is in command of the legion.

a. If the simple verb from which the compound is formed is a transitive verb, the compound may take both the accusative and the dative.

*Labiēnum castris praefēcit*, he placed Labienus in charge of the camp.

**DATIVE OF AGENT**

56. With the future passive participle, the person by whom the act must be done or ought to be done is regularly denoted by the dative.

*Epistula mihi mittenda est*, a letter ought to be sent by me.

Note.—With a verb which has a dependent dative of some other kind, the dative of agent is sometimes replaced by the ablative of agent (66) to avoid confusion in the meaning of the sentence.

**ACCUSATIVE**

**ACCUSATIVE OF DIRECT OBJECT**

57. The direct object of a verb is put in the accusative.

*Silvam vidēmus*, we see the forest.

**ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME**

58. The accusative without a preposition is used to tell how long an act or situation continues.

*Multās hōrās in insulā mānsi*, I remained many hours on the island.
ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT IN SPACE

59. The accusative without a preposition is used to express extent in space.

*Puer quīnque mīlia passuum ambulāvit,* the boy walked five miles.

ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE TO WHICH

60. The accusative of *domus* and of names of cities and towns is used without a preposition to denote place to which. With other words in this construction, a preposition, *ad* or *in,* is used.

*Exercitus Rōmam redībit,* the army will return to Rome.
*Exercitus in urbem redībit,* the army will return to the city.

ACCUSATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS

61. Certain prepositions have their objects in the accusative case. Among the most important of these are *ad,* *ante,* *apud,* *circum,* *contra,* *inter,* *ob,* *per,* *post,* *praeter,* *propter,* *trans.*

*Is poēta inter barbarōs diū habitāvit,* this poet lived a long time among barbarians.

ACCUSATIVE AS SUBJECT OF INFINITIVES

62. The accusative is used as the subject of the infinitive.

*Explōrātor dixit urbem incēnsam esse,* the scout said the city had been burned.

TWO ACCUSATIVES

63. Verbs of naming, calling, appointing, thinking, and the like, may have in addition to the direct object a second accusative telling what the person or thing denoted by the object is named, called, appointed etc.

*Frātem tuum praetōrem creāvimus,* we have elected your brother praetor.
a. Compounds of *trans* sometimes take two objects, one governed by the preposition, the other by the simple verb. With the passive of such verbs the object governed by the preposition may be retained.

Legiōnem flūmen trādūxi, *I led the legion across the river.*

Legiō flūmen trāducta est, *the legion was led across the river.*

**THE ABLATIVE**

**ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION**

64. Verbs meaning to separate, remove, deprive of, be absent, and the like, take the ablative of separation, often with *ab* or *ex*.

*Hi montēs Galliam ab Hispāniā dividunt,* *these mountains separate Gaul from Spain.*

**ABLATIVE OF PLACE FROM WHICH**

65. The ablative of *domus* and of names of cities and towns is used without a preposition to express the idea of place from which. With other words in this construction a preposition, *ab*, *dē*, or *ex*, is used.

*Lēgātus Genavā profectus est,* *the envoy set out from Geneva.*

*Lēgātus ex oppidō profectus est,* *the lieutenant set out from the town.*

**ABLATIVE OF AGENT**

66. With passive verbs the noun or pronoun which denotes the person by whom the act is done is put in the ablative with *ā* or *ab*.

*Explōrātor ā militibus captus est,* *the scout was captured by the soldiers.*
Ablative of Comparison

67. With the comparative form of an adjective (occasionally of an adverb), if *quam* is omitted, the noun or pronoun denoting the person or thing with which comparison is made is put in the ablative without a preposition.

Puella altior *puerō* est, *the girl is taller than the boy.

*a.* If *quam* is used, the word denoting the person or thing with which comparison is made stands in the same case as the thing compared.

Puella est altior *quam puer*, *the girl is taller than the boy.*

Ablative of Place Where

68. The ablative with *in* denotes the place where something is or where some act occurs.

*In eis montibus multa animālia reperiuntur,* *many animals are found in these mountains.*

Ablative of Time

69. The time at which or within which some act takes place is regularly expressed by a noun or pronoun in the ablative case without a preposition.

*Eō annō pater meus tēctum novum aedificāvit,* *my father built a new house that year.*

Ablative of Accompaniment

70. The ablative with the preposition *cum* is used to denote the person with whom one is associated in doing an act.

*Cum amicō ambulō,* *I walk with a friend.*

*a.* The ablative of accompaniment also denotes the person with whom one is contending.
Cum Germānis bellum gessērunt, they waged war with the Germans.

b. The preposition cum may be omitted in military expressions, if the noun in the ablative is modified by an adjective other than a numeral.

* Multis militibus flūmen trānsīi, I crossed the river with many soldiers.
* Cum tribus legiōnibus flūmen trānsīi, I crossed the river with three legions.

**ABLATIVE OF MANNER**

71. The ablative, frequently with the preposition cum, is used to express manner.

Magnā cum cūrā (or magnā cūrā) omnia parāvimus, we have prepared everything with great care.

*Note.—Some words of frequent occurrence omit the preposition in this construction. Among these are jūre, justly (with justice), injūriā, unjustly (with injustice), meritō, deservedly (with merit), cāsū, accidentally (by chance), and some others.*

**ABLATIVE OF MEANS**

72. A word which is used to denote the means employed in accomplishing an act is put in the ablative without a preposition.

Galli gladiis pugnābant, the Gauls fought with swords.

**ABLATIVE OF ROUTE**

73. The way or route by which one goes may be denoted by the ablative without a preposition.

Breviōre itinere rediimus, we returned by a shorter route.
74. The ablative without a preposition is used to express the degree or measure of difference between two things.

Arbor decem pedibus altior mūrō (or quam mūrus) est, the tree is ten feet higher than the wall.

75. A noun or pronoun in the ablative, together with an adjective, a participle, or another noun in agreement, may be used to denote some circumstance or event loosely connected with the rest of the sentence.

Duce captō, hostēs fūgērunt, the leader having been captured, the enemy fled.

a. An ablative absolute is frequently translated by a clause introduced by when, after, if, since, although, or by a prepositional phrase. Thus, the ablative absolute in the preceding example may be translated when the leader had been captured or after the capture of the leader.

76. The ablative without a preposition is used to indicate in what respect a statement is true.

Helvētii reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, the Helvetians surpass the rest of the Gauls in courage.

77. The ablative modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing.

Homō magnāvirtūte, a man of great courage.

Note.—In many phrases, such as the example given above, either the ablative or the genitive of description (44) may be used. But physical characteristics are usually expressed by the ablative and measure always by the genitive.
ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

78. The ablative is sometimes used to express cause.

Hostēs timōre fugere coepērunt, the enemy began to flee on account of fear.

a. Sometimes a preposition (ab, dé or ex) is used with the ablative of cause.

Ex commūtātiōne rērum dolent, they grieve because of the change of circumstances.

b. Cause is frequently expressed by propter or ob with the accusative.

Propter timōrem, on account of fear.

ABLATIVE WITH ÛTOR, ETC.

79. The deponents Ûtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vēscor take their objects in the ablative.

Militēs nostri hastīs nōn útuntur, our soldiers do not use spears.

a. Occasionally the genitive is used with potior instead of the ablative.

Urbis potīrī cupiunt, they wish to gain possession of the city.

THE VOCATIVE

80. The vocative denotes the person addressed.

Ubi, Mārce, pater tuus est, Marcus, where is your father?

Note.—The vocative regularly stands after one or more words of the sentence in which it is found.

THE LOCATIVE

81. With names of cities and towns and with domus, place where is denoted by the locative case, which in the singular of nouns of the first and second declensions has the
same form as the genitive singular; in nouns of the third declension and in the plural of nouns of the first and second declensions it regularly has the same form as the ablative.

Rōmae, at Rome; domī, at home; Athēnīs, at Athens.

ADJECTIVES

ADHERENT AND PREDICATE ADJECTIVES

82. An adjective which is directly connected with the noun which it modifies is called an adherent adjective. Thus, *vir fortis*, *a* brave man; * Arbor alta*, *a* tall tree.

83. An adjective which is connected with its noun by some form of the verb meaning *to be* is called a predicate adjective. Thus, *vir fortis est*, *the* man is brave.

SUBSTANTIVE USE OF ADJECTIVES

84. Adjectives and participles are sometimes used as substantives (nouns or pronouns). Words meaning *many*, *all*, *others*, *few* and the like are especially common in this use. The masculine refers to men, or to persons in general, the feminine to women, and the neuter to things.

*Multi tē laudant*, many praise you.
*Omnia parāta sunt*, all things are prepared.

a. In military expressions *nostri* is used to mean *our* men or *our* soldiers. Other possessives are sometimes used with a similar meaning. Thus, *tui* or *vestri*, *your* men, your soldiers.

ADJECTIVES DENOTING A PART

85. There are a few adjectives which tell what part of an object is meant instead of telling what kind. Among the most important are *summus*, *medius*, *extrēmus*, and *imus*. Thus, *summus mōns*, the highest part of the mountain, the mountain top; *medius collis*, the middle of the hill, *mediō colle*, half way up the hill (on the middle of the hill).
ADJECTIVES WITH ADVERBIAL FORCE

86. Sometimes an adjective modifying the subject or object is best translated by an adverb.

*Inviti vēnērunt,* they came unwillingly.

MEANING OF THE COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE

87. The comparative and superlative forms of adjectives and adverbs are commonly translated by the corresponding English forms. But sometimes the comparative is translated by a positive form preceded by *too* or *rather,* and the superlative by a positive form preceded by *very.* Thus, *altior* may mean *rather high,* and *altissimus* may mean *very high.*

VERBS: MOODS

THE INDICATIVE IN MAIN CLAUSES

88. The indicative is used in statements of fact and in questions which imply that the answer expected is a statement of fact.

*Caesar aciem instrūxit,* Caesar drew up a line of battle.

*Quid Cōnsidius dixit,* what did Considius say?

THE INDICATIVE AFTER CERTAIN CONJUNCTIONS

89. The indicative is used in subordinate clauses after the conjunctions *quamquam,* although, *postquam,* after, *ubi,* when or where, and some others.

RELATIVE CLAUSES

90. A clause introduced by a relative pronoun commonly takes its verb in the indicative, except in the special uses described later (see especially 94, *a,* and 102).
A JUNIOR LATIN READER

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES WITH QUOD

91. A clause introduced by quod meaning *that*, with its verb in the indicative, is sometimes used as the subject or object of a verb, or in apposition with a noun or pronoun.

   a. Sometimes quod is translated *as to the fact that*, and the clause it introduces then serves as an adverbial modifier, loosely connected with the rest of the sentence.

SUBJUNCTIVE

VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

92. The subjunctive is used to express an act as willed by some person.

   Epistulās statim *mittāmus*, *let us send the letters at once.*

   a. The negative used with the volitive subjunctive is *nē*.

   *Nē diūtius maneāmus*, *let us not remain longer.*

OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

93. The subjunctive, commonly with *utinam*, is used to express a wish. The use of tenses is as follows:

   (1) A wish that something had been true in the past has the past perfect subjunctive. *Utinam hunc locum numquam vidēssem*, *would that I had never seen this place* (*I wish I had never seen this place*).

   (2) A wish that something were true in the present has the imperfect subjunctive. *Utinam meliōrem ducem habērē-mus*, *would that we had a better leader* (*I wish that we had a better leader*).

   (3) A wish relating to the future has the present subjunctive. *(Utinam) frāter tuus salvus redeat*, *may your brother return safely* (*I hope your brother may return safely*).
Note 1.—The imperfect and past perfect (and sometimes the present) in wishes are introduced by utinam.

Note 2.—The negative used with wishes is sometimes ne and sometimes non.

CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

94. A subordinate clause which expresses purpose has its verb in the subjunctive. Such a clause is commonly introduced by ut or (if negative) by ne.

Veni ut te vidêrem, I came to see you (lit. that I might see you).

Militês missi sunt ne urbs caperêtur, soldiers were sent that the city might not be captured.

a. Sometimes a purpose clause is introduced by a relative pronoun. This form of purpose clause is found chiefly after mittô and its compounds, and after relinquô and a few other verbs.

Puerum mittam qui te adjuvet, I will send a boy to help you (lit. who shall help you).

b. The clause of purpose may be translated by a simple infinitive, by an infinitive with in order, or by a clause with that or in order that. The following translations are possible for the sentence Veni ut te vidêrem:

I came to see you.
I came in order to see you.
I came that I might see you.
I came in order that I might see you.

95. A purpose clause which contains a comparative form of an adjective or adverb is introduced by quô instead of ut. Pontem faciunt quô facilius transeant, they are making a bridge that they may cross more easily.
CLAUSES OF RESULT

96. A subordinate clause which expresses result has its verb in the subjunctive. Such a clause is introduced by *ut*, or occasionally by a relative pronoun. The negative is *nōn*.

Mīlitēs tam fortiter restitērunt *ut* hostēs repellerentur, the soldiers resisted so bravely that the enemy were driven back.
Tempestātēs tantae erant *ut* ex portū proficiscī *nōn* audērēmus, the storms were so great that we did not dare to set out from the harbor.

Est nēmō tam sapiēns *qui* numquam erret, there is no one so wise that he never errs.

NOUN (OR SUBSTANTIVE) CLAUSES OF DESIRE

97. Verbs expressing an idea of desire, such as those meaning *to command*, *urge*, *persuade*, *request*, and the like may take as object (or as subject in the passive) a clause introduced by *ut* or *nē* with its verb in the subjunctive.

Helvētīis persuāsit *ut* exīrent, he persuaded the Helvetians to emigrate.

Mīlitibus imperāvit *nē* saxa jacerent, he ordered the soldiers not to throw stones.

Note 1.—These clauses are frequently translated by an infinitive with a subject, as in the examples above.

Note 2.—Such expressions as *jūs est*, *there is a law*, and *cōnsilium est*, *the plan is*, may be followed by a substantive clause telling what the law or plan is to which reference is made.

*a*. The verbs *jubeō*, *I order*, and *vetō*, *I forbid*, regularly take an infinitive with subject accusative, instead of a subjunctive clause. Verbs meaning *to wish* sometimes take the infinitive with subject accusative.

Legiōnem flūmen trānsire jussit, he ordered the legion to cross the river.
NOUN (OR SUBSTANTIVE) CLAUSES OF FACT

98. Verbs meaning to accomplish and impersonal verbs meaning it happens, it results, it remains, and the like, take a dependent clause with the subjunctive, introduced by ut. The negative is non.

Accidit ut duae cohortēs ante castra essent, it happened that there were two cohorts in front of the camp.

a. Such expressions as mōs est, the custom is, may be followed by a substantive clause with ut, telling what the custom is to which reference is made.

CLAUSES OF FEAR

99. Verbs and other expressions of fear may take a dependent clause with the subjunctive, introduced by nē meaning that or ut meaning that . . . not.

Verēbantur nē exercitus noster in Galliā manēret, they feared that our army would remain in Gaul.

Timeō ut sē fortiter dēfendat, I fear that he will not defend himself bravely.

a. Sometimes nē . . . non is used instead of ut after words of fear.

Timeō nē sē non dēfendat, I fear that he will not defend himself.

b. Such expressions as periculum est may take the same construction as that used with words of fear.

Periculum est nē cohors capiātur, there is danger that the cohort will be captured.

c. The present subjunctive in clauses depending on words of fear is often translated by the English future indicative.
ANTICIPATORY SUBJUNCTIVE

100. The subjunctive may be used in subordinate clauses to denote an act which is anticipated or expected.

Expectābam dum frāter rediret, I was waiting until my brother should return (or for my brother to return).

a. The anticipatory subjunctive is used mainly after words meaning until or before (dum, antequam, priusquam).

b. Sometimes the indicative is used after words meaning before or until, to state a new fact which is of importance in the narrative or to represent an actual event as looked back upon.

CLAUSES OF PROVISO

101. The conjunctions dum, modo, and dummodo, when meaning provided, provided that, or if only, take the subjunctive. Urbs salva erit, dum tū exeās, the city will be safe, provided you withdraw.

SUBJUNCTIVE IN RELATIVE CLAUSES OF DESCRIPTION

102. A relative clause with its verb in the subjunctive is sometimes used to describe the antecedent of the relative.

Pauci erant qui arma ferre non possent, there were a few who could not bear arms.

Note 1.—Such clauses are used with indefinite and negative antecedents, and with expressions of existence and non-existence, such as sunt qui, there are those who, est nēmō qui, there is no one who.

Note 2.—Clauses of description which are parenthetical in character or which have a personal pronoun as antecedent take the indicative.
CUM CAUSAL CLAUSES

103. A subordinate clause introduced by cum meaning since has its verb in the subjunctive.

Cum nūlla nāvis in cōnspectū sit, domum revertar, since there is no ship in sight, I shall return home.

a. Sometimes a causal clause with its verb in the subjunctive is introduced by a relative pronoun. Fēlix es qui tot amīcōs habeās, you are fortunate, since you have so many friends.

CUM ADVERSATIVE CLAUSES

104. A subordinate clause introduced by cum meaning although has its verb in the subjunctive.

Cum ea urbs parva esset, tamen magnam glōriam habēbat, although that city was small, nevertheless it had great fame.

a. The principal clause with which an adversative clause is connected frequently (but not always) contains the adverb tamen.

b. An adversative clause is sometimes introduced by a form of the relative pronoun.

Tum Cethēgus, qui paulō ante aliquid respondisset, repente conticuit, then Cethegus, although he (lit. who) had made some reply a little before, suddenly became silent.

CUM DESCRIPTIVE CLAUSES OF SITUATION (CUM TEMPORAL)

105. The imperfect or past perfect subjunctive is often used in a clause introduced by cum meaning when. Such a clause describes the situation or makes known the time of the main act.
Cum pōns factus esset, exercitus trāductus est, when the bridge had been made, the army was led across.

a. If the clause with cum is used to make definite the time denoted by the adverb tum or any other word of time, it takes the indicative.

Tum cum hostēs impetum faciēbant, auxilium nōn missum est, at the time when the enemy were making an attack, help was not sent.

b. If the verb of the cum clause denotes repeated action, it is commonly in the indicative. In such clauses cum is sometimes translated whenever.

Cum nāvem hostium viderant, ad eam properābant, whenever they saw a ship of the enemy, they hastened toward it.

c. The present or future indicative, and occasionally the perfect indicative, may be used with cum meaning when.

CLAUSES WITH QUĪN AFTER EXPRESSIONS OF DOUBT

106. Words and phrases of doubt, when accompanied by a negative, are followed by quīn and the subjunctive.

Nōn dubitō quīn Belgae fortēs sint, I do not doubt that the Belgians are brave.

Nōn dubium est quīn tūtī simus, there is no doubt that we are safe.

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

107. An indirect question has its verb in the subjunctive.

Quaesīvī quis hoc fēcisset, I asked who had done this.
108. Sometimes a subordinate clause which would otherwise have its verb in the indicative takes the subjunctive because it is closely dependent on a subjunctive or an infinitive.

Ita ácritur pugnāvērunt ut omnēs hostēs quī flūmen transissent celeriter repellerentur, they fought so fiercely that all the enemy who had crossed the river were quickly driven back.

IMPLIED (OR INFORMAL) INDIRECT DISCOURSE

109. The subjunctive may be used in a subordinate clause to indicate that it is a quotation, although no main clause of indirect discourse stands in the context.

Servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent poposcit, he demanded the slaves who had fled to them (who he said had fled to them).

The use of the subjunctive in this clause shows that the clause was a part of the utterance of the person who made the demand.

CAUSAL CLAUSES WITH QUOD, QUAIA, AND QUONIAM

110. Clauses of reason introduced by quod, quia, and quoniam take the indicative to denote a reason as given directly by the speaker or writer. These conjunctions, however, take the subjunctive if the reason is given as a quotation from someone else or from the thought or utterance of the writer or speaker at another time.

Profectus est quod verēbātūr, he set out because he was afraid.
Grātiās cōnsulī ēgērunt quod rem pūblicam servāvisset, they thanked the consul because (as they said) he had saved the state.
THE IMPERATIVE

111. The imperative mood is used to express commands. *Dēsilite, commīlitōnēs, jump down, comrades.*

Note.—The English imperative is used only in the present tense and in the second person. The Latin imperative has a future as well as a present. The future has the second and third persons, the present has only the second person.

NEGATIVE COMMANDS

112. Negative commands (prohibitions) in the second person are commonly expressed by the imperative of nōlō (nōlī, nōlīte) with the infinitive of the verb denoting the act forbidden.

*Nōlī hīc mānēre,* do not remain here.

*a.* Sometimes the perfect subjunctive with nē is used to express a negative command.

*Nē hīc mānsēris,* do not remain here.

THE INFINITIVE

THE COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

113. An infinitive is sometimes used to complete the meaning of another verb. When thus used, it denotes another action of the same subject as that of the verb on which it depends.

Omnēs redire volunt, all wish to return.

THE INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT

114. An infinitive, with or without subject accusative, may be used as the subject of many impersonal verbs and also of est with a predicate adjective or noun.

*Eum mānēre oportet,* he ought to stay.
*Mē ire necesse est,* I must go.
Note.—The subjunctive is sometimes used with necesse est and with a few other verbs which commonly take the infinitive.

THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

115. The infinitive with subject accusative is used with words of saying, hearing, knowing, thinking, believing, seeing, and the like.

(For examples, see 121.)

116. The infinitive with subject accusative is regularly used after jubeō, I order, vetō, I forbid, and sometimes after patior, I permit, cōgō, I compel, volō, I wish, nōlō, I am unwilling, mālō, I prefer.

Dux militēs impetum facere jussit, the leader ordered the soldiers to make an attack.

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

NON-COMMITTAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

117. A conditional sentence which does not imply that the condition is either true or false has both verbs in the indicative.

Si puerī in silvā errant, in periculō sunt, if the boys are wandering in the forest, they are in danger.

Si hostēs tūtī effugērunt, nostri eos capere nōn cōnāti sunt, if the enemy have escaped safely (lit. safe), our men did not try to capture them.

a. Sometimes an imperative or a subjunctive expressing will is used in the conclusion of a conditional sentence of this type instead of an indicative.

Si pācem cupitis, arma trādite, if you wish peace, surrender your arms.
FUTURE MORE VIVID CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

118. A future more vivid conditional sentence refers to future time and gives no indication as to the attitude of the speaker or writer toward the fulfillment of the condition. The verbs are in the future (or future perfect) tense.

*Si auxilium mittetur, oppidum défendetur,* if aid is (lit. shall be) sent, the town will be defended.

Note 1.—The verb of the condition in a sentence of this type is commonly translated by the present indicative with future meaning, as in the example above. Sometimes the future with *shall* is used.

Note 2.—The future perfect may be used in either clause to represent an act as occurring before some expressed or implied future time.

Note 3.—The future more vivid conditional sentence is merely a non-committal conditional sentence in future time.

FUTURE LESS VIVID CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

119. A future less vivid conditional sentence refers to future time, and also implies doubt on the part of the writer or speaker as to the fulfillment of the condition. The conclusion refers to a future act or situation as conceivable or imaginable without asserting that it will take place or be realized. The verbs are in the present (or perfect) subjunctive.

*Si milites flûmen trânseant, multit interficiantur,* if the soldiers should cross the river, many would be killed.

Note.—The perfect may be used in either clause to show that an act, if occurring, would take place before some expressed or implied future time.
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES CONTRARY TO FACT

120. A conditional sentence which implies that the condition is not true has its verbs in the imperfect or past perfect subjunctive, the imperfect to refer to present time and the past perfect to refer to past time.

(a) Si Haedui majores cópiás habérent, oppida défendérent, if the Haeduians had larger forces, they would defend the towns.

(b) Si Haedui majores cópiás habuissent, oppida défendissent, if the Haeduians had had larger forces, they would have defended the towns.

Note.—Commonly the tense of the verbs in the two clauses is the same, but the imperfect may be used in one clause and the past perfect in the other, if the sense requires.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

121. Indirect discourse is used with words of saying, hearing, knowing, thinking, believing, and the like. The use of moods is as follows:

1. A main clause expressing a statement has its verb in the infinitive with subject accusative.

2. A main clause expressing a command has its verb in the subjunctive.

3. All subordinate clauses have their verbs in the subjunctive.

Ea condicione quae á Caesare ferrar ut sē ēsūrōs esse ostendēbant; sibi tridūi spatium daret, they stated (lit. showed) that they would accept the terms which were offered by Caesar; let him give them the space of three days.

PARTICIPLES

122. The Latin verb has four participles. They are the present active, the past passive, the future active, and the future passive.
a. Deponent verbs have the same number of participles as other verbs. The past participle of a deponent is usually active in meaning, but it is occasionally used as a passive.

THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE

123. The present active participle denotes an act taking place at the same time as the main verb. It is less frequently used than the English present participle. Its declension is given in section 8, page 328.

_Nostri in hostēs advenientēs impetum fēcērunt_, our men made an attack on the enemy coming up (i.e., as they were coming up).

Note.—The English present participle is used with a form of _to be_ to make the progressive form of the verb. Thus, _he is marching, we were standing_. The Latin present participle is never so used.

THE PAST PARTICIPLE

124. The past passive participle denotes an act taking place before the time of the main verb. It is declined like _bonus_, section 6, page 325.

_Legiō a Caesare praemissa castra mūniēbat_, the legion, having been sent ahead by Caesar, was fortifying the camp.

THE FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

125. The future active participle is used chiefly with forms of _sum_ to denote an act which someone intends to do or is about to do.

_Bellum cum Gallīs gestūri erant_, they intended to (or were about to) wage war with the Germans.
126. The future passive participle is used chiefly with forms of sum to denote an act which ought to be done or must be done by someone.

Epistula mihi mittenda est, a letter ought to be sent by me.

Note.—The future passive participle of a deponent verb is passive in meaning.

THE GERUND

127. The gerund is a verbal noun of the second declension, used only in four cases and only in the singular number. Its cases are the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative.

a. The genitive of the gerund is used chiefly as an objective genitive with an adjective or noun. With the ablative causā it expresses purpose.

cupidus bellandi, desirous of engaging in war.
resistendi causā, for the purpose (sake) of resisting.

b. The dative of the gerund is little used.

c. The accusative of the gerund is frequently used as the object of the preposition ad to express purpose. It is never used as a direct object.

ad oppugnandum, for attacking, to attack.

d. The ablative of the gerund is used to express means or cause, or as object of the prepositions ab, dé, ex, or in.

pugnandō, by fighting.
in quaerendō, on inquiring.

Note.—The infinitive is used to supply the nominative of the gerund and also the accusative when used as a direct object.
THE GERUNDIVE

128. The gerundive is a future passive participle which is used in agreement with a noun or pronoun in a phrase equivalent in meaning to a gerund with an object.

spēs urbis capiendae, hope of capturing the city.

a. The case uses of the gerundive are in general the same as those of the gerund.

cupidus oppidi expugnandi, desirous of storming the town.
auxiliī ferendi causā, for the purpose (sake) of bringing aid.
ad eās rés cōnfiendiōs, for accomplishing these things.
dē auxiliō mittendō, about (concerning) sending aid.
lapidibus portandis, by carrying stones.

129. The following distinctions between the gerund and the gerundive are to be observed:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Gerund</th>
<th>Gerundive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A noun</td>
<td>An adjective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Active in meaning</td>
<td>Passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuter gender</td>
<td>All genders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Used only in the singular</td>
<td>Both numbers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note 1.—The genitive of the gerund and also the ablative, when used without a preposition, sometimes take a direct object. But no form of the gerund standing as the object of a preposition can have a direct object. The gerundive must be used instead.

THE SUPINE

130. The supine is a verbal noun of the fourth declension, used only in the accusative and ablative. The accusative is used to express purpose in clauses in which the finite verb expresses motion.
Legatos pācem petitum mīsērunt, they sent envoys to ask peace.

a. The supine of a transitive verb may take a direct object.

131. The ablative of the supine is used with a few adjectives as an ablative of respect. It is usually translated by the English present infinitive.

optimum factū, best to do (the best thing to do).

TENSES

132. The tenses of the Latin indicative are the present, imperfect, future, perfect, past perfect, and future perfect. In the subjunctive only the present, imperfect, perfect, and past perfect are found.

THE PRESENT

133. The present tense, as in English, is used to denote present time.

Note 1.—In a narrative of past events the present indicative is sometimes used for the purpose of presenting the situation more vividly before the mind of the reader or the hearer. This is called the Historical Present.

Note 2.—The present subjunctive is sometimes used with future force. This is especially common in clauses of fear.

134. A clause introduced by dum meaning while takes its verb in the present indicative.

Dum haec geruntur, ex urbe profectus sum, while this was going on, I set out from the city.

a. Dum meaning as long as may take any tense of the indicative which the sense requires.

THE IMPERFECT

135. The imperfect tense represents a past act as in progress or a past situation as continuing.
Note 1.—The imperfect indicative is sometimes used to denote an act as customary or of frequent occurrence in past time.

Note 2.—The imperfect indicative is often translated by the progressive form of the English past tense—was praising, was warning, etc., but sometimes the simple past tense is used as its equivalent.

Note 3.—The imperfect subjunctive is sometimes used to express action which was at a past time thought of as future.

THE FUTURE

136. The future tense, as in English, denotes future time.

Note.—With conjunctions meaning if and when the future tense is regularly used in Latin where the English employs the present in translation.

THE PERFECT

137. The perfect tense has two uses. (1) It may be equivalent in meaning to an English present perfect (translated with the auxiliary verbs have or has), or (2) it may be the equivalent of the English past tense, referring to an indefinite past act.

Note.—In future less vivid conditional sentences the perfect subjunctive is sometimes used to refer to a future act which, if occurring, would take place before some expressed or implied future time.

THE PAST PERFECT

138. The past perfect is used to represent an act as having occurred before some expressed or implied past time.

Note 1.—The past perfect subjunctive is sometimes used to refer to an act which was thought of in the past as likely to occur before some expressed or implied future time.

Note 2.—The past perfect is sometimes used in subordinate clauses to denote repeated action.
THE FUTURE PERFECT

139. The future perfect is used to show that an act will occur before some expressed or implied future time.

Note.—The future perfect is used more frequently in Latin than in English.

THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

140. The tense of the subjunctive in a dependent clause usually bears a definite relation to the tense in the principal clause. This relation is called the Sequence of Tenses.

1. If the main verb is present, future, or future perfect, the dependent subjunctive is present or perfect.

2. If the main verb is imperfect, perfect, or past perfect, the dependent subjunctive is imperfect or past perfect.

Note 1.—A perfect indicative which is translated by an English present perfect may be followed by a present or perfect subjunctive.

141. Exceptions to the rule for the sequence of tenses are sometimes found.

1. In a clause of result a perfect subjunctive is sometimes used where the sequence of tenses would lead us to expect an imperfect.

2. The historical present may be followed either by the tenses which would follow a perfect or by the tenses which would follow a present.

3. Sometimes a strongly marked difference between the time ideas of the subordinate clause and the main clause leads to a seeming disregard of the sequence of tenses.

PREPOSITIONS

142. The following prepositions take their objects in the ablative case:

ā, ab    praē
cum      prō
dē       sine
ē, ex
a. *Cum* is used as an enclitic with *mé, tê, sê, nóbis*, and *vôbis*, and commonly with *quô, quâ, and quibus*. *Mécum, with me, têcum, with you, quibuscum, with whom.*

143. The prepositions *in* and *sub* are used with the ablative in expressions denoting existence or continuance in a place; they are used with the accusative in expressions denoting motion toward a place.

*In urbe mânœi, I remained in the city.*
*In urbem vêni, I came into the city.*

144. All prepositions found in this book except those given above take their objects in the accusative.

145. When the object of a monosyllabio preposition is a noun modified by an adjective, the preposition sometimes stands between the adjective and the noun.

*magnö cum periculö, with great danger.*
EXERCISES IN LATIN COMPOSITION

LESSON I

1. Predicate Nominative, App. 41, a
2. Ablative of Means, App. 72

VOCABULARY

brother, frāter, -tris, m.
call, name, appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
choose, dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum.
city, urbs, urbis, f.
defend, dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī,
   -fēnsum.
elect, creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
his, her, its, their,¹ suus, -a, -um.

kill, interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum.
king, rēx, rēgis, m.
leader, dux, ducis, m.
my, meus, -a, -um.
soldier, miles, militis, m.
sword, gladius, -i, m.
weapon, tēlum, -i, n.

EXERCISES

1. The city will be called Rome. 2. Romulus had been elected king. 3. The king was killed with his brother's sword. 4. Romulus killed his brother with a weapon. 5. I shall defend the king with my sword. 6. My brother has been chosen leader of the soldiers. 7. Romulus was called the king of Rome. 8. The soldiers killed their leader with their swords. 9. The city will be defended by the weapons of the soldiers.

¹ In reflexive use.
LESSON II

1. Apposition, App. 39
2. Agreement of the Relative Pronoun, App. 38 (2)

VOCABULARY

ally, socius, -i, m.
army, exercitus, -ūs, m.
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
brave, fortis, forte.
consul, cōnsul, cōnsulis, m.
father, pater, -tris, m.
found, condō, -dere, -didi, -ditum.
man, vir, virī, m.
many, multī, -ae, -a.
native country, country, patria, -ae, f.
often, saepe, adv.
our, noster, -tra, -trum.
send, mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum.
who, which, what, that, qui, quae, quod.

EXERCISES

1. The brother of Romulus the king had been killed. 2. Many cities which the Greeks founded were beautiful. 3. The consul who was killed was a brave man. 4. Rome is a city of Italy, my native country. 5. The army which we have sent will defend the cities of our allies. 6. Cicero, the consul, was called the father of his country. 7. We have often defended our country with our swords. 8. The brother of the man who was killed will be elected consul.

LESSON III

1. Ablative of Place, App. 68
2. Ablative of Agent, App. 66

VOCABULARY

battle, proelium, -ī, n.
by, ā, ab, prep. with abl.
have, habeo, -ere, -ui, -itum.
in, on, in, prep. with abl.
into, in, prep. with acc.
stand, stō, stāre, stēti, stātūrus.
stone, lapis, lapidis, m.
throw, jacio, -ere, jēci, jactum.
town, oppidum, -ī, n.
wage, gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum.
wall, mūrus, -ī m.
war, bellum, -ī, n.
wound, vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
your, of one person, tuus, -a, -um; of more than one, vester, -tra, -trum.
EXERCISES

1. The Greeks founded many cities in Italy. 2. The Romans waged many wars in Gaul and Spain. 3. Many wars were waged in Gaul by the Romans. 4. Weapons were thrown by the soldiers who were standing on the wall. 5. The leader of our allies was wounded in battle by the Germans. 6. The town was defended by the consul, who had a brave army. 7. The towns of the Gauls, our allies, will be defended by Roman soldiers. 8. I have been wounded by a stone which was thrown by your brother. 9. The town was defended by the soldiers who had been sent into Spain.

LESSON IV

1. Ablative of Accompaniment, App. 70
2. Ablative of Respect (Specification), App. 76

VOCABULARY

cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, m.
courage, virtūs, -tūtis, f.
cross, trānseō, -īre, -īi, -ītum.
destroy, déleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum.
differ, differō, -ferre, distulī, dilātum.
drive back, repellō, -ere, repulūi, repulsum.
enemy, hostis, hostis, m.
knowledge, scientia, -ae, f.
nation, gēns, gentis, f.
place, locus, -i, m. (pl. usually loca, n.).
river, flūmen, flūminis, n.
suitable, idōneus, -a, -um.
surpass, praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum.
wisdom, sapientia, -ae, f.
with, cum, prep. with abl.

EXERCISES

1. The consul crossed the river with the cavalry. 3. The enemy will send cavalry into Italy with the army. 3. Many nations surpass us in knowledge of war. 4. Men differ from one another (inter sē) in courage and in wisdom. 5. The Gauls waged many wars with the Germans, who often crossed into Gaul. 6. We have chosen a place which is
suitable in many respects (*rés*). 7. Our soldiers drove back with their weapons the Gauls who had crossed the river. 8. The Gauls who have crossed the river will be driven back by our soldiers. 9. Our army has destroyed many cities of our enemies, the Germans.

LEsson V

1. Ablative with Certain Deponent Verbs, App. 79
2. Ablative of Route, App. 73

VOCABULARY

bridge, pōns, pontis, m.
can, am able, possum, posse, potuī.
custom, mōs, mōris, m.
difficult, difficilis, -e.
gain possession of, potior, -īrī, poti-itus sum.
grain, frūmentum, -ī, n.
language, lingua, -ae, f.
lead across, trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, - ductum.

legion, legiō, -ōnis, f.
lieutenant, légātus, -ī, m.
mountain, mōns, montis, m.
narrow, angustus, -a, -um.
road, iter, itineris, n.
set out, proficīscor, proficīscē, profectus sum.
this, hic, haec, hoc.
use, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum.

EXERCISES

1. The legion will use the grain which is in the town.
2. We gained possession of a town of the enemy, and we killed their leader.
3. The army crossed the mountains by a road which was narrow and difficult.
4. This is the road by which the Roman legions often set out from the city.
5. The Germans could not gain possession of this city of the Gauls.
6. The lieutenant led the army across by a bridge.
7. The legion could not cross the river with the cavalry.
8. The Helvetians differ from the Germans in language and in customs.
9. The consul was wounded by the weapons of the enemy.
LESSON VI

1. Ablative Absolute, App. 75
2. Ablative of Time, App. 69

VOCABULARY

another, alius, alia, aliud.
because, quod, conj.
burn, incendō, -ere, incendī, incend- sum.
camp, castra, -ōrum, n. pl.
capture, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum.
come, veniō, -īre, vēni, ventum.
day, diēs, diēī, m., f.
defeat, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
	number, numerus, -i, m.
return, revertor, revertī, (revertō, revertere), revertī, reversum.
same, īdem, eadem, idem.
that, is, ea, id; ille, illa, illud.
twelve, duodecim, indecl. num.
village, vicus, -i, m.
year, annus, -i, m.

EXERCISES

1. After defeating the army of the consul (the army of the consul having been defeated), the enemy crossed the river.
2. When the towns of the Gauls had been burned (not a clause), we returned to camp.
3. Many cities of our allies were burned that year.
4. The leader of the enemy and the Roman consul came into the town on the same day.
5. After capturing the camp of the king, the legion returned to the town.
6. Our fathers waged many wars in those years.
7. You cannot defend your country because you cannot use weapons.
8. We shall cross the mountains by another road.
9. They burned their towns, twelve in number, and many villages.
LESSON VII

1. Ablative of Separation, App. 64
2. Ablative of Manner, App. 71

VOCABULARY

absent, be absent, absum, abesse, āsuī.
attack, oppugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
but, sed, conj.
care, cūra, -ae, f.
deep, altus, -a, -um.
forces, cōpiae, -ārum, f. pl.
great, magnus, -a, -um.
guard, custōdiō, -īre, -īvi, -ītum.
separate, dividō, -ere, divīsī, divīsum.
several, complūrēs, -ia, gen. complūrium.
speed, celeritās, -tātis, f.
time, tempus, temporis, n.
wide, lātus, -a, -um.

EXERCISES

1. The river Rhine, which separates the Gauls from the Germans, is wide and deep.
2. The mountains which separate Gaul from Spain are called the Pyrenees.
3. Our forces attacked the camp of the enemy with great courage.
4. Our cavalry crossed the river with great speed and drove back the cavalry of the enemy.
5. The lieutenant was absent from the camp at that time.
6. The Britons guard their territory (finēs) with great care.
7. When we had driven back the cavalry (not a clause), we captured several villages.
8. But we were not able to gain possession of the large towns.

LESSON VIII

1. Dative of Indirect Object, App. 49
2. Dative with Adjectives, App. 50

VOCABULARY

cut off, interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum.
dear, cārus, -a, -um.
flee, fugīō, -ere, fūgī, fugītūrus.
friendly, amīcus, -a, -um.
give, dō, dare, dedī, datum.
help, juvō, -āre, jūvī, jūtum.
live, habitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
reward, praemium, -ī, n.
say, dico, -ere, dixi, dictum.
supplies, commeātus, -ūs, m.
supreme power, imperium, -ī, n.
two, duo, duae, duo.
very near, nearest, proximus, -a, -um.
why, cūr, adv.

EXERCISES

1. The Romans gave supreme power to two consuls. 2. I will give you a reward because you have helped my brother. 3. Hannibal attacked a city which was friendly to the Romans. 4. Italy, my native country, is dear to me. 5. Why did you say this to your father? 6. These mountains are very near to the town in which I live. 7. The legion which was in the mountains was cut off from supplies. 8. The soldiers defended the city on that day with the greatest courage. 9. When the king had been captured (abl. abs.), the army fled.

LESSON IX

1. Dative with Special Verbs, App. 51
2. Dative of Possession, App. 52

VOCABULARY

always, semper, adv.
book, liber, -brī, m.
boy, puer, puerī, m.
centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, m.
favor, favēō, -ere, favī, fauitum.
new, novus, -a, -um.
persuade, persuādeō, -suādere, -suāsī, -suāsum.
please, placeō, -ere, -ui, -itum.
remain, mancō, -ere, mānsī, mānsum.
sister, soror, sorōris, f.
son, filius, -ī, m
unwilling, be unwilling, nōlō, nōlle, nōlui.

EXERCISES

1. This place which the centurions havechosen will not please the lieutenant. 2. We favor this man because he was a brave leader. 3. Crassus had two sons, who were brave sol-
diers. 4. The boy has a sword, which his father gave him. 5. This boy is unwilling to remain, and I cannot persuade him. 6. The Helvetians have many towns and villages which we shall burn. 7. I gave your sister two new books. 8. The city in which I live is dear to me. 9. Our allies will always defend their native country with great courage.

LESSON X

1. Dative of Purpose, App. 53
2. Dative of Reference, App. 54

VOCABULARY

aid, auxilium, -i, n.
cohort, cohors, cohortis, f.
danger, periculum, -i, n.
displease, displiceō, -ēre, -ui, -itum.
fear, timēō, -ēre, -ui.
fleet, classis, classis, f.
guard, praesidium, -i, n.
leave, relinquō, -linquere, -liquī, -liquum.
no, nūllus, -a, -um, gen. nūllīus.
peace, pāx, pācis, f.
present, dōnum, -i, n.
reënforcements, subsidium, -i, n.
see, videō, -ēre, vidi, visum.
townspeople, oppidānī, -orum, m. pl.

EXERCISES

1. The boy sent these beautiful books as a present (for a present) to his sister. 2. The legion came to reënforce (as reënforcements to) the cavalry, who were in danger. 3. Caesar left two cohorts as a guard for the bridge. 4. Two legions will be sent to the aid of the townspeople (for aid to the townspeople). 5. The cohorts which were left as a guard for the camp did not see the battle. 6. We do not fear the Romans, because they have no fleet (Lesson IX, 2). 7. This peace displeased the consuls, and they sent another army into Spain. 8. After burning the villages (abl. abs.), the cavalry returned to camp.
LESSON XI

1. Dative of Agent, App. 56
2. Dative with Compound Verbs, App. 55

VOCABULARY

assemble, conveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum.
built, aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
envoy, légātus, -ī, m.
hostage, obses, obsidis, m.
if, sī, conj.
make war on, bellum ĵnerō, -ferre, etc.
neighbors, finitimi, -orum, m. pl.
place in command of, praeficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectum.
prison, carcer, carceris, m.
Senate, senātus, -ūs, m.
slave, servus, -ī, m.
wish, volō, velle, volui.

EXERCISES

1. Gaius Marius ought not to be killed by a slave. 2. Hostages ought to be sent by the enemy, if their king wishes peace. 3. We are brave men, but we do not make war on our neighbors. 4. The lieutenant has placed the centurion in command of the cohort. 5. The village ought to be defended by the soldiers. 6. The lieutenant was placed in command of the legion. 7. The fleet which had assembled was an aid (for an aid) to the army. 9. When the fleet had been built (abl. abs.), the army set out to Britain. 8. The envoys will not be able to persuade the senate.

LESSON XII

1. Genitive of the Whole, App. 43
2. Genitive of Possession, App. 42

VOCABULARY

arrow, sagitta, -ae, f.
ascend, ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēnsum.
citizen, cīvis, cīvis, m., f.
find, reperiō, -ire, reperrī, repertum.
fortification, mūnītiō, -onis, f.
god, deus, dei (nom. pl. di), m.
hill, collis, collis, m.
EXERCISES

1. Part of the town was burned by the enemy. 2. The bravest of the Gauls tried to ascend the hill and attack the camp. 3. Many weapons of the Germans were found in the camp. 4. We have defended the temples of the gods and the houses of the citizens. 5. Many of the prisoners were unwilling to return to Africa. 6. The centurion was wounded by the arrows of the Spaniards, and his brother was killed. 7. Peace has been made, and the prisoners ought not to be retained by the Romans. 8. The consul’s brother was placed in command of the fortifications (singular) which had been made.

LESSON XIII

1. Objective Genitive, App. 45
2. Genitive of Description, App. 44

VOCABULARY

all, omnis, -e.
children, liberi, -orum, m. pl.
depth, altitūdō, -dinis, f.
desirous, cupidus, -a, -um.
foot, pēs, pedis, m.
founder, conditor, -ōris, m.
horseman, eques, equitis, m.

influence, auctoritas, -tātis, f.
pirate, praedō, -onis, m.
praetor, praetor, -ōris, m.
sort, kind, modus, -ī, m.
state, civitas, -tātis, f.
three, trēs, triā.

EXERCISES

1. Romulus was called the founder of this city. 2. The leader of the horsemen was wounded by an arrow. 3. This prisoner was a citizen of great influence in his state. 4. The depth of the river which we crossed was (of) three feet. 5.
We are desirous of peace, but we do not fear your army. 6. A man of this sort ought not to have been sent into Asia by the Romans. 7. The Tiber is the largest of all the rivers of Italy. 8. The children of the praetor were captured by the pirates. 9. Caesar made war on the Helvetians and defeated them. 10. The horsemen were sent to the aid of (as aid for) the cohorts which were crossing the river.

LESSON XIV

1. Ablative with a Preposition in Place of the Genitive of the Whole, App. 43 a
2. Construction with mille, App. 16 a

VOCABULARY

arrive, perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum.
boat, nāvis, nāvis, f.
flight, fuga, -ae, f.
hope, spēs, speī, f.
injure, noceō, -ēre, -ui, -ītum.
march, iter facio, facere, etc.
mile, mille passūs or passuum, pl. milia passuum.
one, ūnus, -a, -um.
rest, the rest of, reliquus, -a, -um.
senator, senātor, -ōris, m.
small, parvus, -a, -um.
certain, a certain, quīdam, quae-
dam, quoddam, or quiddam.
stature, statūra, -ae, f.
thousand, mille, pl. mília.

EXERCISES

1. One of my brothers lives in Ireland. 2. Some of the senators were killed by the Gauls who captured Rome. 3. Three thousand men arrived in the town from (ex) the flight. 4. On that day we made a march of twelve miles into the territory of the enemy. 5. Two of the hostages remained in Italy, but the rest returned to Africa. 6. Three thousand horsemen crossed the mountains with the legions. 7. The hope of peace is greater, because the enemy have sent envoys. 8. The Romans were [men] of small stature, but they were brave soldiers. 9. Our boats could not injure the boats (Lesson IX, 1) of the Veneti.
LESSON XV

1. Accusative of Duration and Extent, App. 58, 59
2. Two Accusatives with Compounds of trāns, App. 63 a

VOCABULARY

after, post, prep. with acc.  
ancestors, mājōrēs, -um, m. pl.  
barbarous, barbarus, -a, -um.  
bring back, redūcē, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum.  
exile, exilium, -ī, n.  
four, quattuor, indecl. num.  
friend, amīcus, -ī, m.  
infantry (adj.), pedester, -tris, -tre.  
month, mēnsis, mēnsis, m.  
tired, dēfessus, -a, -um.  
today, hodiē, adv.  
tribune, tribūnus, -ī, m.  
walk, ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

EXERCISES

1. My friends remained in Spain for three months.  
2. We have walked four miles today, and we are tired.  
3. The lieutenant led the infantry forces across the river and attacked a town of the Gauls.  
4. Part of our forces had been led across the Rhine by the tribune of the soldiers.  
5. Our ancestors waged war with these barbarous nations for many years.  
6. The centurion who had led the cohort across the river Allia was killed in battle.  
7. Some of my friends have set out into exile.  
8. The Romans brought back many thousand slaves to Italy after this war.

LESSON XVI

1. Accusative of Place to Which, General Rule, App. 60¹  
2. Expressions of Place to Which Without a Preposition, App. 60²

VOCABULARY

before, ante, prep. with acc.  
bravely, fortiter, adv.  
consulship, cōnsulātus, -ūs, m.  
death, mors, mortīs, f.  
go, eō, īre, ī (īvī), ītum.  
hasten, contendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum.  
home, domus, -ūs, (-ī) f.

¹ See also section 7 (1), page 59  
² See also section 8 (1), page 59
EXERCISES

1. Why did not the praetor hasten to Gaul with the army?
2. We shall go to Geneva this summer, and we shall remain there several days.
3. The tribune returned to Rome after the death of his friend.
4. Cicero set out to Asia after his consulship.
5. Our friends returned home before the war.
6. The hostages who are in Italy will be sent back into the province.
7. The legion resisted bravely for four hours, and many were killed.
8. The Helvetians had led a large part of their forces across the river.
9. The king returned into his kingdom with three thousand men.

LESSON XVII

1. Expressions of Place in Which with Names of Towns, etc., App. 81
2. Expressions of Place from Which, App. 65

VOCABULARY

delay, moror, -ārī, -ātus sum.
demand, postulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
escape, effugiō, -fugere, -fugi, -fu-
gitūrus.
few, pauci, -ae, -a.
following, posterus, -a, -um.
forest, silva, -ae, f.
general, imperātor, -ōris, m.
give back, reddō, -dere, -didī, -di-
tum.
prepared, parātus, -a, -um.
where, ubi, adv.
withdraw, discēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum.

EXERCISES

1. The general is returning from Asia, and he will not delay at Corinth.
2. The Roman citizens who are in Saguntum demand our aid.
3. Cicero set out from Rome with a
few friends. 4. The envoys withdrew from Corinth on the following day. 5. Many citizens were not able to escape from Saguntum. 6. The army is prepared, but the consul is delaying at Rome. 7. I shall set out to Marseilles, where my friends live. 8. The king sent his son to Italy before the war. 9. Two of the boys had been in the forest three hours. 10. Many thousand prisoners who have been captured by the Romans will be given back.

LESSON XVIII

1. The Gerund, App. 127
2. The Gerundive, App. 128, 129

VOCABULARY

accomplish, efficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum.
collect, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum.
conquer, vincō, -ere, vīci, victum.
fight, pugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
girl, puella, -ae, f.
hurl, conjiciō, -jicere, -jēci, -jectum.
lose, āmittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -mis-sum.
much, multus, -a, -um.
nothing, nihil, indecl., n.
still, tamen, adv.
wife, uxor, -ōris, f.

EXERCISES

1. The enemy have no hope of conquering, but still they fight bravely. 2. We have collected all our forces, and we are prepared for (ad) setting out. 3. The Germans were desirous of capturing the town, because there was much grain in it. 4. In capturing the town we lost many men. 5. Divico accomplished nothing by delaying. 6. The Gauls drove back our men by hurling weapons. 7. Brutus had left his wife and children in Rome. 8. This girl wishes to remain at home with her brothers and sisters. 9. We shall return from Geneva in a few days. 10. We shall send two cohorts to Marseilles.
LESSON XIX

1. Participles of Deponent Verbs, App. 122 a
2. Position of Monosyllabic Prepositions, App. 145

VOCABULARY

arrival, adventus, -ŭs, m.
catch sight of, conspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
eighth, octāvus, -a, -um.
follow, sequor, -ī, secūtus sum.
fort, castellum, -ī, n.
lead back, redūcō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum.
perish, perēō, -īre, -ī (-īvī), -ītūrus.
reason, causa, -ae, f.
ten, decem, indecl. num.
trader, mercātor, -ōris, m.
undertake, suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum.
wait for, expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

EXERCISES

1. The cavalry, having followed the enemy for ten miles, returned to camp. 2. Having caught sight of the Gauls who were in the Roman camp, Labienus sent aid to our men. 3. Caesar feared danger for (đē with abl.) many reasons. 4. The Helvetians undertook this war with great hope, but they were conquered. 5. Having gained possession of the fort (Lesson V, 1), we waited for the arrival of the eighth legion. 6. The traders went by this road (Lesson V, 2) with great danger. 7. The lieutenant led back his men into camp because he was not desirous of fighting. 8. The praetor remained to defend Italy (ad with gerundive constr.). 9. Many who perished at Messina were Roman citizens.
LESSON XX

1. Reflexive Pronouns, App. 18
2. Possessive Adjectives, App. 19

VOCABULARY

barbarians, barbarī, -ōrum, m. pl.
chief, prīncīps, prīncipīs, m.
embassy, lēgātiō, -ōnis, f.
famous, clārus, -a, -um.
field, ager, agrī, m.
grandfather, avus, -ī, m.
(of) himself, herself, themselves,
reflex., suī, etc.
name, nōmen, nōminis, n.

promise, polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum.
surrender, dēdō, -dere, -dīdī, -dītum.
swamp, palus, -ūdis, f.
terrify, perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
wealthy, dives, divitīs, superl. dītissimus, -a, -um.

EXERCISES

1. Many in Italy surrendered themselves to Hannibal.
2. The boy to whom the sword has been given will injure himself (Lesson IX, 1).
3. Your name and your father’s name are famous in Gaul.
4. The barbarians, terrified by our arrival, fled into the forest and swamps.
5. The chiefs of the embassy brought (dūcere) with them several wealthy men as (prō with abl.) hostages.
6. My grandfather had been in Africa with the army.
7. The Britons, having promised hostages, returned to (in) their fields.
8. Hannibal crossed the Alps with great danger.
9. He was desirous of destroying Rome.

LESSON XXI

Indirect Discourse, App. 121

VOCABULARY

announce, nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
arrest, comprehendō, -hendere,
-hendī, -hēnsum.
believe, crēdō, -dere, -dīdī, -dītum.
hear, audiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
know, scīō, scīre, scīvī, scītum.
lay waste, vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
money, pecūnia, -ae, f.
sailor, nauta, -ae, m.
scout, explūrātor, -ōris, m.
ship, nāvis, nāvis, f.
sink, dēprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum.
valley, vallēs, vallis, f.

EXERCISES

1. The scout says that the enemy are crossing the valley.
2. We know that many sailors are being sent from (ex) Spain.
3. I hear that you have built a new house.
4. All believe that the ship was sunk by the pirates.
5. The scouts say that the enemy (plural) will cross the valley.
6. The Romans heard that the Gauls were laying waste the fields of their allies.
7. The centurion announced that two men had been arrested.
8. I believed that you would send back the money.
9. My friend said that the house which his brother had built had been burned.

LESSON XXII

1. Causal Clauses with cum, App. 103
2. Clauses of Result, App. 96

VOCABULARY

any, ūllus, -a, -um.
here, hic, adv.
long, longus, -a, -um.
messenger, nūntius, -i, m.
ever, numquam, adv.
no one, nēmō, dat. nēminī (no gen. or abl.).
now, nunc, adv.
seize, occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
shore, lītus, litoris, n.
since, cum, conj.
so, ita, tam.
without, sine, prep. with abl.

EXERCISES

1. Why do you remain here, since you have no friends?
2. The danger of the Roman citizens was so great that the consul sent an army.
3. Since I saw no danger, I set out without any weapons.
4. The legion fought so fiercely that the Gauls fled.
5. The enemy resisted so bravely that we
lost many men.  6. Since no one has sent aid, we shall not try to defend the camp. 7. The messenger says that our men have driven back the barbarians and seized the bridge. 8. We knew that many who set out to the war would never return. 9. The sailors said they had found this boy on the shore.

LESSON XXIII

1. Descriptive Clauses of Situation, App. 105  
2. Adversative Clauses with cum, App. 104

VOCABULARY

although, cum, conj.  
animal, animal, -ālis, n.  
at once, statim, adv.  
break down, rescindō, -seindere, -scidī, -seissum.  
delay, mora, -ae, f.  
honor, honor, -ōris, m.  
interpreter, interpres, -pretis, m.  

invite, invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
leap, leap down, désiliō, -silire, -silū.  
neighboring, vicinus, -a, -um.  
not yet, nondum, adv.  
summon, arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum.  
when, cum, conj.  

EXERCISES

1. The Gauls captured Rome when Camillus was in a neighboring city. 2. Although I summoned the interpreter at once, he has not yet arrived. 3. Although we were tired, still we returned without delay. 4. When his friends had broken down the bridge, Horatius leaped into the river. 5. When we were walking in the forest, we saw a large animal. 6. Although all else (omnia reliqua) has been lost, still honor has not been lost. 7. Since you are unwilling to go, I shall invite your brother. 8. No one could cross the river, because the bridge had been broken down. 9. The praetor said that he had arrested the leader of these men.
LES S ON XXIV

1. Purpose Clauses with ut and nē, App. 94
2. Relative Purpose Clauses, App. 94 a

VOCABULARY

buy, emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptum.
c ommonwealth, rēs pūblica, rēī pūblicae.
conspirators, conjūrātī, -ōrum, m. pl.
disloyal, improbus, -a, -um.
h arbor, portus, -ūs, m.
horse, equus, -i, m.
lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum.
letter, epistula, -ae, f.
people, populus, -i, m.
quae stor, quaestor, -ōris, m.
read, legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum.
six, sex, indecl. num.
through, per, prep. with acc.
villa, villa, -ae, f.

EXERCISES

1. The quaestor set out to a neighboring town to buy grain (that he might buy grain). 2. We arrested the man in order that he might not set out with the conspirators. 3. The lieutenant will send a scout to lead (who shall lead) the horsemen through the forest. 4. The praetor left six cohorts to defend the harbor. 5. I have come to see (that I may see) your new horse. 6. We gave hostages, that our towns might not be burned. 7. When my brother had read the letter, he set out to the villa at once. 8. Although your grandfather was a consul, you wish to destroy the commonwealth. 9. The Roman people know (singular) that you are a disloyal citizen.

LESSON XXV

1. Purpose Clauses with quō, App. 95
2. Indirect Questions, App. 107

VOCABULARY

ask, quaerō, -ere, quaesīvi, quaesītum.
baggage, impedimenta, -ōrum, n. pl.
fortify, mūniō, -ire, -ivī, -ītum.
honorable, honestus, -a, -um.
island, insula, -ae, f.
long, for a long time, diū, adv.
queen, rēgīna, -ae, f.
rapid, celer, celeris, celere.
safely, tūtō, adv.

send ahead, praemittō, -mittere,
-mittere,
-mīsī, -missum.
traveler, viātōr, -ōris, m.
write, scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptum.

EXERCISES

1. The cohorts left their baggage in camp, that they might make a more rapid flight. 2. Many ask why the king and queen are setting out from the city. 3. No one knew who had written this book. 4. The travelers constructed (madē) a bridge in order to cross (that they might cross) the river more safely. 5. I said this in order that you might remain longer. 6. I do not know in what part of the island you live. 7. We broke down the bridge, that the enemy might not cross. 8. The general sent ahead several soldiers to fortify (who should fortify) the camp. 9. I have heard that this boy’s father was not an honorable man.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>English</th>
<th>Latin</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>able, be</td>
<td>able,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>absent, be absent,</td>
<td>absum, abesse, aui, a futurus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accomplish,</td>
<td>cöñficio, -ficere, -feci, -fectum; efficiö, -ficere, -feci, -fectum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>across, trás, prep. with acc.</td>
<td>address, alloquor, -loquî, -locutus sum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afraid, be afraid,</td>
<td>timeö, -ere, -avi, -atum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Africa, Africa, -ae, f.</td>
<td>after, post, prep. with acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>again, iterum, adv.</td>
<td>aid, auxilium, -i, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all, omnis, omne.</td>
<td>Allia, Allia, -ae, f.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alone, sōlus, -a, -um, gen. sōlius.</td>
<td>ally, socius, -i, m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alps, Alpës, -ium, f. pl.</td>
<td>although, cum, conj.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>always, semper, adv.</td>
<td>among, inter, prep. with acc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ancestors, majörës, -um, m. pl.</td>
<td>and, et, -que, atque, conj.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>animal, animal, animális, n.</td>
<td>announce, nuntiö, -äre, -avî, -atum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>another, alius, alia, aliud.</td>
<td>answer, respóñsum, -i, n.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>any, úllus, -a, -um.</td>
<td>anyone, quisquam, quicquam or quidquam.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>armed, armátus, -a, -um.</td>
<td>arms, arma, -orum, n. pl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>army, exercitus, -üs, m.</td>
<td>arrest, comprehendö, -hendere, -hendi, -hēnsum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrival, adventus, -üs, m.</td>
<td>arrive, perveniö, -venire, -vēnî, -ventum.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrow, sagitta, -ae, f.</td>
<td>Ascanius, Ascanius, -i, m.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
bridge, pōns, pontis, m.
bring, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum.
bring back, redūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, f.
Britons, Britanni, -orum, m. pl.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, frātris, m.
Brutus, Brūtus, -i, m.
build, aedificō, -āre, -avi, -atum.
bring, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum.
bring back, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, /.
Britons, Britannl, -orum, m.
pi.
broad, latus, -a, -um.
brother, frater, fratris, m.
Brutus, Brūtus, -i, m.
build, aedificō, -āre, -avi, -atum.
bring, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum.
bring back, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, f.
Britons, Britanni, -orum, m. pl.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, frātris, m.
Brutus, Brūtus, -i, m.
build, aedificō, -āre, -avi, -atum.
bring, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum.
bring back, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, f.
Britons, Britanni, -orum, m. pl.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, frātris, m.
Brutus, Brūtus, -i, m.
build, aedificō, -āre, -avi, -atum.
bring, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum.
bring back, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, f.
Britons, Britanni, -orum, m. pl.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, frātris, m.
Brutus, Brūtus, -i, m.
build, aedificō, -āre, -avi, -atum.
bring, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum.
bring back, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, f.
Britons, Britanni, -orum, m. pl.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, frātris, m.
Brutus, Brūtus, -i, m.
build, aedificō, -āre, -avi, -atum.
bring, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum.
bring back, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, f.
Britons, Britanni, -orum, m. pl.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, frātris, m.
Brutus, Brūtus, -i, m.
build, aedificō, -āre, -avi, -atum.
bring, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum.
bring back, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, f.
Britons, Britanni, -orum, m. pl.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, frātris, m.
Brutus, Brūtus, -i, m.
build, aedificō, -āre, -avi, -atum.
bring, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum.
bring back, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, f.
Britons, Britanni, -orum, m. pl.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, frātris, m.
Brutus, Brūtus, -i, m.
build, aedificō, -āre, -avi, -atum.
bring, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum.
bring back, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, f.
Britons, Britanni, -orum, m. pl.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, frātris, m.
Brutus, Brūtus, -i, m.
build, aedificō, -āre, -avi, -atum.
bring, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum.
bring back, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, f.
Britons, Britanni, -orum, m. pl.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, frātris, m.
Brutus, Brūtus, -i, m.
build, aedificō, -āre, -avi, -atum.
bring, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum.
bring back, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, f.
Britons, Britanni, -orum, m. pl.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, frātris, m.
Brutus, Brūtus, -i, m.
build, aedificō, -āre, -avi, -atum.
bring, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum.
bring back, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, f.
Britons, Britanni, -orum, m. pl.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, frātris, m.
Brutus, Brūtus, -i, m.
build, aedificō, -āre, -avi, -atum.
bring, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum.
bring back, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, f.
Britons, Britanni, -orum, m. pl.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, frātris, m.
Brutus, Brūtus, -i, m.
build, aedificō, -āre, -avi, -atum.
bring, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum.
bring back, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, f.
Britons, Britanni, -orum, m. pl.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, frātris, m.
Brutus, Brūtus, -i, m.
build, aedificō, -āre, -avi, -atum.
bring, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum.
bring back, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, f.
Britons, Britanni, -orum, m. pl.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, frātris, m.
Brutus, Brūtus, -i, m.
build, aedificō, -āre, -avi, -atum.
bring, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum.
bring back, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, f.
Britons, Britanni, -orum, m. pl.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, frātris, m.
Brutus, Brūtus, -i, m.
build, aedificō, -āre, -avi, -atum.
bring, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum.
bring back, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, f.
Britons, Britanni, -orum, m. pl.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, frātris, m.
Brutus, Brūtus, -i, m.
build, aedificō, -āre, -avi, -atum.
bring, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum.
bring back, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, f.
Britons, Britanni, -orum, m. pl.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, frātris, m.
Brutus, Brūtus, -i, m.
build, aedificō, -āre, -avi, -atum.
bring, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum.
bring back, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum.
deep, altus, -a, -um.
defeat, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; vincō, -ere, vici, victum.
defend, dēfendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēnsum.
delay (noun), mora, -ae, f.
delay (verb), moror, -āri, -ātus sum.
delighted, be delighted, laetor, -āri, -ātus sum.
demand, postulo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
depth, altitūdō, -inis, f.
descend, dēscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scensum.
desire, cupidō, -ere, cupidī, cupītum.
despise, contemnō, -temnere, -tempi, -temptum.
destroy, dēleō, -ere, dēvī, -ētum.
differ, differō, -fere, distuli, -dilātum.
difficult, difficilis, -e.
disloyal, improbus, -a, -um.
dispase, displeceō, -ere, -ui, -itum.
ditch, fossa, -ae, /.
Divico, Divico, -onis, m.
do, facio, -ere, feci, factum.
dog, canis, canis, m.
draw up, instruo, -struere, -struxi, -structum.
drive back, repellō, -ere, repuli, repulsum.
drive out, expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum.

each, quisque, quaeque, quidque.
easily, facile, adv.
easy, facēlis, facēlē.
eighth, octāvus, -a, -um.
elect, elecō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
embassy, lēgātiō, -onis, f.
end, finis, finis, m.
enemy, hostis, hostis, m.; inimicus, -ī, m.
energetically, impigre, adv.
enroll, cōnscribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum.
envoy, lēgātus, -ī, m.
escape, effugio, -fugere, -fūgī.
ever, umquam, adv.
except, praeter, prep. with acc.
exile, exilium, -ī, n.
explore, explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

F
faithful, fidēlis, -e.
fame, glōria, -ae, f.
famous, clarus, -a, -um.
farmer, agricola, -ae, m.
father, pater, patris, m.
favor, favēō, -ère, favī, fauitum.
fear (noun), timor, timōris, m.
fear (verb), timeo, -ère, -ui; verecor, -ēri, veritus sum.
few, pauci, -ae, -a.
field, ager, agrī, m.
fierce, fērus, -a, -um.
fiercely, ācriter, adv.
fight, pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
find, invenīō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum; reperiō, -āre, repertiō, repertum.
find out, reperiō, -āre, repperi, repertum.
fire, ignis, ignis, m.
first, primus, -a, -um.
five, quīnque; indecl. num.
flee, fugīō, -ere, fugī, fugitūrus.
fleet, classis, classis, f.
flight, fugā, -ae, f.
follow, sequor, sequī, secūtus sum.
following, posterus, -a, -um.
folly, stultitia, -ae, f.
foot, pēs, pedis, m.
for, on behalf of, prō, prep. with abl.
forces (of soldiers), cōpiāe, -ārum, f. pl.
foreigner, peregrinus, -i, m.
forest, Silva, -ae f.
forget, obliviscor, -i, oblivitus sum.
formerly, anteā, adv.
fort, castellum, -i, n.
fortification, mūnitiō, -ōnis, f.
fortify, mūniō, -ire, -ivi, -itum.
found, condō, -dere -didi, -ditum.
founder, conditor, -oris, m.
four, quattuor, indecl. num.
friend, amicus, -i, m.
friendly, amicus, -a, -um.
friendship, amicitia, -ae, n.
frighten, terreō, -cre, -ui, -itum.
from, ā, ab; ē, ex; dē, preps. with abl.

G

gain possession of, potior, potīri, potitus sum.
Gaius, Gāius, -i, m.
garrison, praesidium, -i, n.
Gaul (a country), Gallia, -ae, f.
Gaul (an inhabitant of the country of Gaul), Gallus, -i, m.
general, imperātor, -ōris, m.
Geneva, Genava, -ae, f.
Germans, Germāni, -orum, m. pl.
girl, puella, -ae, f.
give, dō, dare, dedi, datum; give back, reddō, -dere, -didi, -ditum.
go, eō, īre, ī (ivi), itum; go out, exeō, -ire, -ī (ivi), -itum; go away, abeō, -ire, -ii (ivi), -itum.
god, deus, -i, m.
gold, aurum, -i, n.
good, bonus, -a, -um.
grain, frumentum, -i, n.
grandfather, avus, -i, m.
grandson, nepōs, nepōtis, m.
great, magnus, -a, -um.
Greeks, Graeci, -orum, m. pl.
guard (noun), praesidium, -i, n.
guard (verb), custōdiō, -ire, -ivi, -itum.

H

Hannibal, Hannibal, -alis, m.
happen, accidō, -ere, accidi.
harbor, portus, -ūs, m.
hasten, properō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; contendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tendūm.
have, habeō, -ere, -ui, -itum.
hear, audīō, -ire, -ivi, -itum.
height, altitūdō, -dinis, f.
help (noun), auxilium, -i, n.
help (verb), juvō, -āre, jūvi, jūtum.
Helvētii, the Helvētii, Helvētii, -ōrum, m. pl.
here, hic, adv.
high, altus, -a, -um.
hill, collis, collis, m.
(of) himself, herself, themselves, reflex., suī, etc.
his, her, its, their, when reflexive, suus, -a, -um; when not reflexive, ejus, eorum, eārum.
home, domus, -ūs (-ī), f.
honor, honor, honōris, m.
honorable, honestus, -a, -um.
hope, spēs, spei, f.
Horatius, Horātius, -i, m.
horse, equus, -i, m.
horseman, eques, equitis, m.
hospitality, hospitium, -i, n.
hostage, obses, obsidis, m.
hour, hōra, -ae, f.
house, tēctum, -i, n.
hunt, vēnōr, -āri, -ātus sum.
hurl, jacio, -ere, jēci, jaectum; conjiciō, -jicere, -jēci, -jectum.

I

I, ego, meī.
if, si, conj.
in, in, prep. with abl.
increase, grow greater, crēscō, -ere, crēvi, crētum.
industrious, impiger, -gra, -grum.
industriously, impigřē, adv.

infantry (noun), peditēs, -um (pl. of pedes, peditis, m.); (adjective), pedester, -tris, -tre.

influence, auctōritās, -tātis, f.
injure, noceō, -ere, -ui, -itum.
invasion, invade, invaso, -asse, -situm.

interpreter, interpres, interpretis, m.

into, in, prep. with acc.

invite, invitō, -āre, -avi, -atum.

Ireland, Hibernia, -ae, f.

island, Insula, -ae, /.

Italy, Italia, -ae, /.

Javelin, pilum, -i, n.

journey, iter, itineris, n.

joy, gaudium, -i, n.

justice, justitia, -ae, /.

kill, interficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectum; necō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

king, rex, regis, m.

kingdom, regnum, -i, n.

know, scio, scire, scivi, scitum; not know, ignōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

knowledge, scientia, -ae, f.

K

kill, interficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectum; necō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

king, rex, regis, m.

kingdom, regnum, -i, n.

know, scio, scire, scivi, scitum; not know, ignōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

knowledge, scientia, -ae, f.

Labienus, Labiēnus, -i, m.

lacon, lacus, -ūs, m.

language, lingua, -ae, f.

large, magnus, -a, -um.

Laurentum, Laurentum, -i, n.

Lavinia, Lāvīnia, -ae, f.

lay waste, vāstō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductum.

lead across, trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum.

lead back, redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum.

leader, dux, ducis, m.

leap down, dēsiliō, -silire, -silui.

leave, relinquō, -ere, reliqui, relicatum.

legion, legiō, -ōnis, f.

letter, epistula, -ae, f.

liberty, libertās, -tātis, f.

lieutenant, lēgātus, -i, m.

life, vita, -ae, f.

light, lūx, lūcis, f.

live, habito, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

long (adverb), diū.

long (adjective), longus, -a, -um.

lose, āmittō, -ere, āmisti, āmissum.

love, amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

low, humilis, -e.

M

make, facio, -ere, feci, factum; make war on, bellum inferō, etc. (with dative).

man, vir, viri, m.; homō, hominis, m.

many, multus, -a, -a (plural of multitūdō).

march, iter facio, facere, etc.

Marius, Marius, -i, m.

Marseilles, Massilia, -ae, /.

master, dominus, -i, m.

messenger, nuntius, -i, m.

Messina, Messāna, -ae, f.

middle, middle of, medius, -a, -um.

migrate, migrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

mile, mille passus, pl. mīlia passuum.

military, militāris, -e.

mob, turba, -ae, f.

money, pecunia, -ae, f.

month, mensis, mensis, m.

mother, mater, matris, f.

mountain, mons, montis, m.

much, multus, -a, -um.

multitude, multitūdō, -dinis, f.

my, meus, -a, -um.
name, nōmen, nōminis, n.
narrow, angustus, -a, -um.
nation, gēns, gentis, f.
native country, patria, -ae, f.
nature, nātūra, -ae, f.
necessary, it is necessary, oportet, -ère, oportuit.

neighboring, vicīnus, -a, -um.
neighbors, finītimī, -orum, m. pl.
Neptune, Neptūnus, -i, m.
ever, numquam, adv.
neat, novus, -a, -um.
ext, proximus, -a, -um.
night (adjective), nocturnus, -a, -um.
no, nūlīus, -a, -um, gen. nūlius.
no one, nēmō, dat. nēminī.
nor, neque, conj.
not, nōn, adv.
nothing, nihil, indecl., n.
ot yet, nondum, adv.
now, nunc, adv.
number, numerus, -i, m.

O
obey, pāreo, -ère, pārai.
observe, spectō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātum.
ocean, Oceanus, -i, m.
often, saepe, adv.
old, vetus, gen. veteris.
old man, senex, senis, m.
on, in, prep. with abl.
on account of, propter, prep. with acc.
one, at once, statim, adv.
one, unus, -a, -um, gen. unīus.
order, jubeō, -ère, jussī, jussum.
other, another, alius, -a, -ud; the other, reliquis, -a, -um.
ought, one ought, oportet, -ère, oportuit, impersonal.
our, noster, -tra, -trum.
outside, outside of, extra, prep. with acc.
rear, bring up, educō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
reason, causa, -ae, f.
receive, accipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -cep-tum.
reënforcements, subsidium, -ī, n.
regain, recuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
reject, repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
remain, maneō, -ēre, mānī, māns-
sum.
remember, meminī, meminis.
rule, regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum.
Rutilans, Rutilī, -ōrum, m. pl.
S
sacred, sacer, -era, -erum.
safe, tūtus, -a, -um.
safely, tūtō, adv.
Saguntum, Saguntum, -ī, n.
sailor, nauta, -ae, m.
same, idem, eadem, idem.
satisfied, contentus, -a, -um.
say, dīcō, -ere, dixi, dictum.
scout, explorātor, -ōris, m.
sea, mare, maris, n.
see, video, -ēre, vidi, visum; con-
spicio, -spicer, -spexī, -spectum.
send, mittō, -ere, mīsi, missum.
send ahead, praemittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missum.
send back, remittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -missum.
separate, dividō, -ere, dīvīsi, dīvi-
sum.
set out, proficiscor, proficisci, pro-
flectus sum.
several, complūrēs, -ia, gen. com-
plūrium.
shepherd, pāstor, -ōris, m.
shield, scūtum, -ī, n.
ship, nāvis, nāvis, f.
shore, lītus, litorīs, n.
short, brevis, breve.
sight, conspexī, -sus, m.
signal, signum, -ī, n.
since, cum, conj.
sink, déprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum.
sister, soror, sorōris, f.
six, sex, indecl. num. 
slave, servus, -i, m.
small, parvus, -a, -um.
so, tam, ita, advs.
so great, tantus, -a, -um.
soldier, miles, miltius, m.
so many, tot, indeclinable.
some, quīdam, quaedam, quoddam or quiddam.
son, filius, -i, m.
soon, mox, adv.
sort, kind, modus, -i, m.
sound, sonus, -i, m.
Spain, Hispānīa, -ae, f.
Spaniards, Hispani, -orum, m. pl.
speed, celerītās, -tātis, f.
spend the winter, hiemō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
stand, stō, stāre, steti, stātūrus.
state, civitās, -tātis, f.
statue, statua, -ae, f.
stature, statūra, -ae, f.
stay, manēō, -ere, mānsi, mānum.
still, tamen, adv.
stone, lapis, lapidis, m.; saxum, -i, n.
storm, tempestās, -tātis, f.
street, via, -ae, f.
strong, firmus, -a, -um.
struggle, certāmen, -minis, n.
suitable, idōneus, -a, -um.
summer, aestās, -tātis, f.
summon, arcessō, -ere, -ivī, -ītum.
sun, sól, sólis, m.
supplies, commeātus, -ūs, m.
supreme power, imperium, -i, n.
surpass, praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum.
surrender, trādō, -dere, -dīdi, -ditum; dēdō, -dere, -dīdi, -ditum.
swamp, palūs, -ūdis, f.

swift, celer, celeris, celere.
swiftly, celeriter, adv.
sword, gladius, -i, m.

T
take, capiō, -ere, cēpi, captum.
talk, loquor, loquī, locūtus sum.
temple, templum, -i, n.
ten, decem, indecl. num.
terrify, perterreo, -ere, -uī, -itum.
terror, terror, terrōris, m.
that (demonstrative), ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id; iste, ista, istud.
that (conj.), ut.
that not, nē.
their, when reflexive, suus, sua, suum; when not reflexive, eorum, earum (gen. pl. of is).
then, tum, adv.
there, ibi, adv.
think, arbitror, -āri, -ātus sum.
this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id.
thousand, mille, pl. milia.
threats, minae, -arum, f. pl.
three, trēs, tria.
through, per, prep. with acc.
throw, jacio, -ere, jēcī, jactum.
Tiber, Tiber, Tiberis, m.
time, tempus, temporis, n.
tired, tired out, défessus, -a, -um.
today, hodiē, adv.
top of, highest part of, summus, -a, -um.
toward, ad, prep. with acc.
town, oppidum, -i, n.
townpeople, oppidāni, -orum, m. pl.
trader, mercātor, -ōris, m.
traveler, viātor, -ōris, m.
treason, prōditio, -onis, f.
treaty, foedus, foederis, n.
tree, arbor, arboris, f.
tribune, tribūnus, -i, m.
Trojan, Trojānus, -i, m., the Trojans, Trojānī, -orum, m. pl.
Troy, Troja, -ae, f.
true, vērus, -a, -um.
trumpet, tuba, -ae, f.
trust, cōnfīdō, -fidere, -fīsus sum.
try, cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum.
turn, flectō, -ere, flexī, flexum.
twelve, duodecim, indecl. num.
two, duo, duae, duo.

U
undertake, suscipio, -cipere, -cepi, -ceptum.
unjust, inījustus, -a, -um.
until, dum.
unwilling, invitus, -a, -um; be unwilling, nōlo, nōlle, nōlui.
urge, hortor, -ārī, -āvi, -ātum sum.
use, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum.

V
undertake, suscipio, -cipere, -cepi, -ceptum.
unjust, inījustus, -a, -um.
until, dum.
unwilling, invitus, -a, -um; be unwilling, nōlo, nōlle, nōlui.
urge, hortor, -ārī, -āvi, -ātum sum.
use, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum.

V
valley, vallēs, vallis, f.
Veneti, Veneti, -ōrum, m. pl.
very near, nearest, proximus, -a, -um.
Victory, victōria, -ae, f.
villa, villa, -ae, f.
village, vicus, -i, m.
vio late, violō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
vow, voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtum.

W
wage, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum.
wait, wait for, expectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
walk, ambulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
wall, mūrus, -i, m.
war, bellum, -i, n.
ward off, dēpellō, -ere, dēpuli, -dēpulsum.
warn, moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
wave, flūctus, -ūs, m.
way, via, -ae, f.
wealth, divitiae, -ārum, f. pl.
wealthy, dives, divītis, superl. ditasimus, -a, -um.
weapon, tēlum, -ī, n.
when, cum, ubi, conjs.
where, ubi, adv.
who, which, what, that, rel. pron., quī, quae, quod.
who, which, what, interrogative pron. and adj., quis (quī), quae, quid (quod).
why, cēr, adv.
wide, lātus, -a, -um.
wife, uxor, uxōris, f.
wind, ventus, -i, m.
winter, hiems, hiemis, f.; spend the winter, hiemō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
wisdom, sapientia, -ae, f.
wise, sapiens, gen. sapientis.
wish, cupio, -ere, cupivi, cupītum;
volō, velle, volui; not wish, be unwilling, nōlo, nōlle, nōlui.
with, cum, prep. with abl.
withdraw, excēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum; discēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum.
without, sine, prep. with abl.
woman, fēmina, -ae, f.; mulier, muliēris, f.
word, verbum, -i, n.
work, labōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
wound (noun), vulnus, vulneris, n.
wound (verb), vulnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
write, scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptum.
wrong, injūria, -ae, f.

Y
year, annus, -i, m.
yearly, quotannis, adv.
yesterday, heri, adv.
you, tū, tuī; pl. vōs, vestrum or vestri.
young man, juvenis, juvenis, m.
your, of one person, tuus, -a, -um;
of more than one person, vester, -tra, -trum.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Latin</th>
<th>English</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A., abbr. for Aulus.</td>
<td>a, ab, prep. with abl., from, by.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ab-dō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, tr., put away, hide, conceal.</td>
<td>ab-dūcō, -ducere, -düxi, -ductum, tr., lead away, bring away.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ab-eō, -ire, -ii, -itum, intr., go away, depart.</td>
<td>abjicio, -jicere, -jeci, -jectum, tr. [ab+jacio], throw away, throw aside.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ab-undo, -are, -avi, -atum, tr., intr. [unda, wave], overflow.</td>
<td>ac, see atque.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ab-sum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, intr., be away, be distant, be absent.</td>
<td>acumbo, -cumbere, -cubi, -cubium, intr. [ad+cumbō], recline (at) table.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ab-sumo, -sumere, -sumpsi, -sūmpsum, tr., consume, destroy.</td>
<td>adectrīs, -ī, m., Aedectrus, grandson of Perseus.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ab-undō, -āre, -āvi, —, intr. [unda, wave], overflow.</td>
<td>acquisī, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [ad+causa], accuse, blame, reprimand.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ab-solvō, -solvere, -solvi, -solutum, tr., set free; acquit.</td>
<td>acer, acris, acre, adj., spirited, bold, sharp.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ab-solvō, -solvere, -solvi, -solutum, tr., set free; acquit.</td>
<td>aciēs, -ēi, f., line of battle; flash of the eye.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ab-solvo, -solvere, -solvi, -solutum, tr., set free; acquit.</td>
<td>Acis, -is, m., Acis, grandson of Medea.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abscindo, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, tr. [abs+caedo], cut off.</td>
<td>ad-amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., fall in love with.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ab-scindo, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, tr. [abs+caedo], cut off.</td>
<td>ad-amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., make equal to; equal, keep up with.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abscindo, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, tr. [abs+caedo], cut off.</td>
<td>ad-amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., make equal to; equal, keep up with.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abscindo, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, tr. [abs+caedo], cut off.</td>
<td>ad-amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., make equal to; equal, keep up with.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abscindo, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, tr. [abs+caedo], cut off.</td>
<td>ad-amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., make equal to; equal, keep up with.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ad-eō, -ire, -ii or -īvī, -itum, intr.,
go or come up to, come up, approach.
ad-eō, adv., to such a degree, so.
ad-equītō, -āre, -āvī, —, intr., ride up to, gallop to.
adhibeō, -āre, -ūi, -ītum, tr. [ad + habeō], apply; summon, admit, employ.
ad-huc, adv., until now, as yet.
adipiscor, adipisci, adeptus sum, tr.
[ad + adipiscor, reach], attain, obtain, win.
aditus, -ūs, m. [adeō, -ire], entrance, means of approach, access.
adjiciō, -jicere, -jicēs, -jicērum, tr.
[ad + jacio], hurl to, hurl upon, throw.
ad-jungō, -jungere, -jūnxī, -junctum, tr., join to, attach.
ad-juvō, -juvāre, -jūvī, -jūtum, tr.,
help, assist.
Admēta, -ae, f., Admeta, daughter of Eurystheus.
ad-ministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.,
manage, direct.
admirandus, -a, -um, adj. [admirō],
admirable, wonderful.
admirātiō, -ōnīs, f. [admirō], admiration, surprise.
ad-mirōr, -āri, -ātus sum, tr.,
be astonished at, admire.
ad-mittō, -mittere, -missī, -missum,
tr., send to, let go; admit.
ad-modum, adv., fully, very, quite.
ad-moneō, -monēre, -monuī, -monumentum,
tr., remind, admonish.
adolēscō,adolēscere, adolēvī, adul-tum, intr., grow up, grow to maturity.
ad-orior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, tr.,
fall upon, attack.
ad-ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., worship.
ad-scribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum,
tr., write in addition, add.
ad-stringō, -stringere, -strīnxi, -strictum,
tr., bind to, bind.
ad-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, intr.,
be at hand, be near.
adulēscēns, adulēscentsis, -ium, adj.
[pr. part. of adolēscō], youthful;
subst., m., a young man, a youth.
adulēscentia, -ae, f. [adulēscēns], youth.
adulēscentulus, -ī, m. [dim. of adulēscēns], a very young man.
adultus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of adolēscō], grown up, mature.
ad-ūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, tr.,
burn, sear.
ad-venīō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum,
intr., come to, come up, approach.
adventō, -ventāre, —, —, intr.
[intens. of advenīō], advance, approach.
adventus, -ūs, m. [advenīō], approach, coming, arrival.
adversārius, -a, -um, adj. [adversor],
opposed, hostile; subst., adversāri-us, -ī, m., an opponent, adversary.
adversor, -ārī, -ātus sum, intr. [adversus],
takes dative, resist, oppose.
adversus, prep. with acc., opposed to, against.
adversus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of advertō, turn to], opposing; unfavorable; in front.
ad-vertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum,
tr., turn to, direct to; animum advertere, observe, notice.
Aeacus, -i, m., Aeacus, a judge in the lower world.
aedēs, aedes, -ium, f. sing., temple, sanctuary; pl., dwelling, house.
aedificium, -i, n. [aedificō], a building.
aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.
[aedēs + faciō], build.
aedilis, aedēlis, -ium, m., aedile,
title of a Roman magistrate.
aedilītās, -ātis, f. [aedilīs], the office
of an aedile, aedileship.
Aeëtēs, -ae, m., Aetes, a king of Colchis.

ae ger, -gra, -grum, adj., ill, sick.

aegré, adv. [aeger], painfully; with difficulty; with grief; with resentment.

aegrōtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. [aegrōtus, sick], be sick.

Aegyptius, -a, -um, adj., Egyptian; subst., Aegyptus, -ī, m., an Egyptian.

Aemilius, -ī, m., L. Aemilius, a cavalry officer in Julius Caesar’s army.

aemulātiō, -ōnis, f. [aemular, to rival], rivalry.

Aenēas, -ae, m., Aeneas, a Trojan hero.

aeneüs, -a, -um, adj. [aes], of copper, of bronze.

aequālis, -e, adj., equal; subst., aequālis, -is, m., one of the same age.

aequē, adv. [aequus], equally.

Aequī, -orum, m., the Aequi, a people of Latium.

aequitās, -ātis, f. [aequus], equity, fairness.

aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [aequus], make equal, equalize.

aequus, -a, -um, adj., level, even; equal.

āēr, āeris, m., the air.

aerārium, -ī, n. [aes], treasury.

aes, aeris, n., copper, bronze; aes aliènum, debt.

Aesōn, -onis, m., Aeson, father of Jason.

aestās, -ātis, f., summer.

aestīvus, -a, -um, adj. [aestās], of summer, summer (as adjective).

aētās, -ātis, f., age.

aeternus, -a, -um, adj., eternal, undying.

Aethiopēs, -um, m. pl., the Ethiopians, a people of Africa.

Āfer, -fra, -frum, adj., African.

affectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [freq. of afficiō], strive after, aim at.

afferō, afferre, attuli, allātum, tr. [ad+ferō], bring to, bring.

afficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fēcunt, tr. [ad+faciō], do to; treat; affect.

affinis, -e, adj. [ad+finis], related by marriage; subst., affinis, -inis, -ium, m. and f., a relative by marriage.

affinitās, -ātis, f. [affinis], relationship by marriage.

Āfrica, -ae, f., Africa.

Āfricānus, -a, -um, adj., of Africa, African; subst., Africānus, -ī, m., Africanus, a cognomen of P. Cornelius Scipio.

agellus, -i, m. [dim. of ager], a little field.

ager, agrī, m., field, land, estate.

aggregōriō, -gredi, -gressus sum, tr. [ad+gradiō, step], attack.

agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [freq. of agō], drive; impel, instigate.

agmen, -inis, n. [agō], a marching army, a column.

agnōscō, -nōscere, -nōvi, -nītum, tr. [ad+(g)nōscō], recognize.

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, tr., drive, do, act; spend, pass.

agrestis, -e, adj. [ager], of the country; subst., agrestis, agrestis, -ium, m., a countryman, a peasant.

agricola, -ae, m. [ager+colō], farmer.

Agrippa, see Menēnius.

aiō, deductive verb, say, affirm.

āla, -ae, f., wing.

alacrītās, -ātis, f. [alacer, eager], eagerness, alacrity.

ālārius, -a, -um, adj. [āla], on or of the wings; subst., ālārii, -ōrum, m. pl., auxiliary troops.
Alba Longa, Albae Longae, f., Alba Longa, a city of Latium.

Albánus, -a, -um, adj., Alban, of Alba; subst., Albání, -órum, m. pl., the people of Alba, the Albans.
albus, -a, -um, adj., white.

Alcmêna, -ae, f., Alcmena, mother of Hercules.

álea, -ae, f., a game with dice; a die.

alienus, -a, -um, adj. [álius], another's; out of place; unfavorable.
alimenta, -órum, n. pl. [aló], food, provisions; support.
aliquamduí, adv., for a while.
aíiuardó, adv., at some time or other, once.
aliquantum, -i, n. [aliquantus, some], something.
alqui, aliqua, aliquod, indef. pronom. adj., some, any.
alquis, aliquid, indef. pron., someone, something.
aliquot, indecl. adj., several.
aliquotiens, adv. [aliquot], several times.
aliter, adv. [álius], otherwise.
alius, -a, -ud, adj., another, other.
Allia, -ae, f., the Allia, a small river near Rome.

Alliánsis, -e, adj., of the Allia.
alígō, -äre, -ávi, -átum, tr. [ad+ligō, bind], bind to, tie to.
Allobrogés, -um, m. pl., the Allobroges, a Gallic tribe on the Rhone.
alloquor, -loqui, -locútus sum, tr. [ad+loquor], speak to, address.
Allucius, -i, m., Allucius, the name of a certain Spaniard.
aló, alere, aluí, altum, tr., nourish, sustain.
Alpês, -ium, f. pl., the Alps.
Alpínus, -a, -um, adj., Alpine.
alter, altera, alterum, adj., the other (of two), a second, another.
altilúdō, -inis, f. [altus], height, depth.

altus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of aló], high, deep; subst., altum, -i, n., the deep, the sea.
alveus, -i, m., trough.
amáns, amantis, adj. [pres. part. of amô], loving, fond.
Amázonês, -um, f. pl., the Amazons.
Ambarrí, -órum, m. pl., the Ambarri, a Gallic tribe.
ambitió, -ónis, f. [ambió, go around], ambition.
ambitus, -ús, m. [ambió, go around], canvassing for votes, bribery.
ambô, -ae, -ó, num. adj., both.
ambuló, -áre, -ávi, -átum, intr., walk.

ámentia, -ae, f. [ámêns, out of one's mind], madness.
amicitia, -ae, f. [amicus], friendship.
amicus, -a, -um, adj. [amó], friendly.
amícus, -i, m. [amicus, adj.], a friend.
amita, -ae, f., (paternal) aunt.
ám-mittó, -mittere, -mísí, -missum, tr., lose.
amnis, amnis, -ium, m., river.
amô, -äre, -ávi, -átum, tr., love.
amoenitâs, -átis, f., pleasantness, charm.
amor, -óris, m., love.
ám-moveó, -movère, -môvi, -móatum, tr., move away.
amphora, -ae, f., jar, flagon.
amplê, adv. [amplius, ample], abundantly, liberally; compar., amplius, more.
Amúlius, -i, m., Amulius, a king of Alba.
an, conj., or, used in double questions.
anceps, -cîpitis, adj., two-headed, double.
ancona, -ae, f., anchor.
Ancus, -i, m., Ancus Marcius, fourth king of Rome.

Andromeda, -ae, f., Andromeda, the daughter of Cepheus.
angor, -öris, m., anguish, torment.
anguis, anguis, -ium, m. and f., serpent, snake.
angulus, -i, m., corner.
angustiae, -ärum, f. pl. [angustus], narrowness, a narrow place or pass, defile.
angustus, -a, -um, adj., narrow.
animus, -i, m., mind, courage, spirit.
Antiochus, -i, m., Antiochus, a Greek philosopher.
antiquus, -a, -um, adj., ancient, of long ago.
Antónius, -i, m., (1) C. Antonius, consul in 63 B.C.; (2) M. Antonius, consul in 44 B.C., afterwards triumvir.
antrum, -i, n., cave.
ánxius, -a, -um, adj., anxious.
Ap., abbr. for Appius.
aper, apri, m., a wild boar.
apériō, aperire, aperui, apertum, tr., open; reveal.
apertus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of aperió], open, exposed, unprotected.
Apollō, Apollinis, m., Apollo.
Apollonius, -i, m., Apollonius Molo, a celebrated teacher of oratory at Rhodes.
aparatus, -ús, m. [apparō, prepare], apparatus, equipment.
aparātus, -a, -um, adj. [apparō, prepare], prepared, splendid.
apāritor, -öris, m., servant.
apellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., call, name.
apellō, -pellere, -pulē, -pulum, tr. [ad+pellō], drive to, bring to; with or without nāvem, land, put in.
Appenninus, -i, m., the Appennines.
apetō, -petere, -petīvī, or -petīi, -petītum, tr. and intr. [ad+petō], strive after, seek; approach.
Appius, -i, m., Appius, a Roman praenomen.
appono, -ponere, -posui, -positum, tr. [ad+ponō], place near; serve, set before.
apprehendō, -hendere, -hendi, -hēnsum, tr. [ad+prehendō], take hold of, seize.
apropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. [ad+propinquō, draw near], approach.
Apr., abbr. for Aprilis, -e, adj., of April.
apus, -a, -um, adj., fit, adapted.
apud, prep. with acc., among, with; near; at the house of; on the bank of.
Āpulia, -ae, f., Apulia, a region of southern Italy.
aqua, -ae, f., water.
aquila, -ae, f., eagle.
A奎ëlia, -ae, f., a city of Cisalpine Gaul, modern Aquileia.
Aquitania, -ae, f., Aquitania, one of the divisions of Gaul.
Aquitanus, -ae, -um, adj., of Aquitania, Aquitanian; subst., Aquitania, -i, -orum, m. pl., the Aquitanians.

āra, -ae, f., altar.

Arar, -arīs, m., the Arar, a river in Gaul, now called the Saône.

arbītrium, -i, n. [arbiter, witness, judge], judgment, pleasure.

arbītror, -āri, -ātus sum, tr. [arbiter, judge], think, suppose.

arbor, -oris, f., tree.

arca, -ae, f., chest, box.

Arcadia, -ae, f., Arcadia, a district in Greece.

arcessō, -cessere, -cessivi, -cessītum, tr., send for, summon.

arcus, -ūs, m., bow, arch.

Ardea, -ae, f., Ardea, a town of the Rutuli, in Latium.

Ardeātēs, -ium, m. pl., the people of Ardea.

ārdeō, ā-ere, ārsī, ārsum, intr., be on fire, burn, burn up.

argentēus, -a, -um, adj. [argentum], of silver.

argentum, -ī, n., silver.

Argō, -ūs, f., the ship Argo.

Argolicus, -a, -um, adj., of Argolis (a district of Greece).

Argonautae, -ārum, m. pl., the crew of the Argo, the Argonauts.

Argus, -i, m., Argus, builder of the Argo.

Aricīnus, -a, -um, adj., of Aricia (a town of Latium).

ariēs, -etis, m., ram.

Ariovistus, -i, m., Ariovistus, king of the Suevi, a German people.

arma, -orum, n. pl., arms, weapons.

aquīla, -ae, f., eagle.

armamentārium, -i, n. [arma] arsenal, armory.

armātus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of armō], armed, equipped; subst., armāti, -ōrum, m. pl., armed men.

Armenia, -ae, f., Armenia.

armō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [arma], arm, equip.

arō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., plough.

Arpinum, -i, n., Arpinum, a town of Latium.

arripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, tr. [ad+rapīō], grasp, seize.

arroganter, adv. [arrogāns, arrogant], presumptuously.

arrogantia, -ae, f. [arrogāns, arrogant], arrogance, pride.

Arrūns, -untis, m., Arruns Tarquinius, a son of Tarquinius Priscus.

ars, artis, -ium, f., art.

artīfex, -icis, m., artificer, artisan.

artus, -ūs, m., joint, limb.

Arverni, -ōrum, m. pl., the Arverni, a tribe of Celtic Gaul.

arx, arcis, -ium, f., citadel.

Ascanius, -i, m., Ascanius, legendary founder of Alba Longa.

ascendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scensum, tr. [ad+scendō, climb], ascend, climb.

ascensus, -ūs, m. [ascendō], way up, ascent.

Asia, -ae, f., Asia.

Asiāticus, -a, -um, adj., of Asia, Asiatic.

aspiciō, aspicere, -aspxi, aspectum, tr. [ad+specīō, look], look at, behold, look on.

assidō, -sidere, -sēdī, —, intr. [ad+sīdō, sit], take a seat, sit down.

assurgō, -surgere, -surrēxi, -surrectum, intr. [ad+surgō, rise], rise up.

asylum, -i, n., a place of refuge, asylum.

at, conj., but.

Athēnae, -ārum, f. pl., Athens.

Atilius, -i, m., M. Atilius Regulus, consul in 256 B.C.
A Junior Latin Reader

Atlas, -antis, m., Atlas.
atque, conj., and also, and.
atrum, -i, n., atrium, the principal room or hall of a house.
atrium, -i, n., atrium, the principal room or hall of a house.
atrociter, adv. [atrox, savage], fiercely.
attingō, -tingere, -tigi, -tāctum, tr. [ad+tangō], touch; arrive at.
auctor, -ōris, m. [augeō], promoter, instigator.
auctūritās, -ātis, f. [auctor], influence, authority.
auctus, -a, -um, see augeō.
audacia, -ae, /., [audax], boldness.
audacter, adv. [audax], boldly.
audax, -acis, adj., daring, bold.
audeo, -ere, ausus sum, tr. and intr., dare, venture.
audio, -ire, -ivi, -itum, tr., hear.
aufugid, -fugere, -fugi, —, intr. [ab+fugio], flee away, run away.
Augeas, -ae, m., Augeas, a king of Elis.
augeō, augere, auxi, auctum, tr., increase; auctus, -a, -um, p. part. as adj., increased; abundant, ample.
augurium, -i, n. [augur, augur], augury, divination.
Aulus, -i, m., Aulus, a Roman praenomen.
aureus, -a, -um, adj. [aurum], of gold, golden.
aurum, -i, n., gold.
aut, conj., or; aut... aut, either... or.
autem, conj., but, on the other hand, however; furthermore.
auxilium, -i, n. [augeō], help, aid.
avāritia, -ae, f., [avārus], greed, avarice.
avārus, -a, -um, adj., greedy, covetous.

B

baculum, -i, n., staff.
balteus, -i, m., girdle, belt.
barba, -ae, f., beard.
barbari, -ōrum, m. pl. [barbarus, adj., barbarian], barbarians.
beatus, -a, -um, adj., happy, prosperous.
Belgae, -arum, m. pl., the Belgae, the Belgians.
bellicōsus, -a, -um, adj. [bellum], warlike, martial.
bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. [bellum], carry on war.
bellum, -i, n., war.
bēlua, -ae, f., wild beast, monster.
bene, adv. [bonus], well.
benefitium, -i, n. [bene+faciō], kindness, favor.
beneignē, adv. [benignus], kindly.
beneignitās, -ātis, f. [benignus], kindness.
beneignus, -a, -um, adj., kind.
bēstia, -ae, f., beast.
bibliothēca, -ae, f., library.
bibō, bibere, bibi, —, tr. and intr., drink.
Bibracte, -is, n., Bibracte, chief town of the Haedui.
Bibulus, -i, m., M. Calpurnius Bibulus, consul in 59 B. C.
biceps, -cipitis, adj., two-headed.
biduum, -i, n. [bis+dīēs], a period of two days, two days.
biennium, -i, n. [bis + annus], two years.

bipertítō, adv. [bis + partior, divide], in two divisions.

bis, adv., twice.

Bituriges, -um, m. pl., the Bituriges, a tribe in central Gaul.

Bocchus, -i, m., Bocchus, a king of Mauretania.

Bōi (Boi), -ůrum, m. pl., the Boi, a Gallic tribe.

bonitās, -ātis, f. [bonus], goodness, fertility.

bonus, -a, -um, adj.; subst., bonum, -i, n., what is good, good; bona, -ůrum, n. pl., goods, property.

bōs, bovis, m. and f., ox, cow; pl., cattle.

bracchium, -ī, n., the fore-arm, arm.

Brennus, -ī, m., Brennus, a Gallic king.

brevis, -ē, adj., short.

brevitās, -ātis, f. [brevis], shortness, brevity.

breviter, -e, adv. [brevis], briefly.

Britannia, -ae, f., Britain, Great Britain.

Brundisium, -ī, n., Brundisium, a city on the east coast of Italy, now Brindisi.

Brūtus, -ī, m., (1) L. Junius Brutus, one of the first two consuls at Rome; (2) M. Junius Brutus, one of Julius Caesar's assassins.

Būsiris, -idis, m., Busiris, a king of Egypt.

C

C., abbr. for Gaius.

Cācús, -ī, m., Cacus, a giant slain by Hercules.

cadáver, -ēris, n., a dead body, corpse.

cadō, cadere, cecidi, căsūrus, intr., fall; be killed.

caeccus, -a, -um, adj., blind.

caedēs, caedis, -ium, f. [caedō], murder, slaughter, massacre.

caedō, caedere, cecidi, caesium, tr., cut, cut down, kill.

caelēstis, -ē, adj. [caelum], from heaven, celestial.

caelum, -ī, n., sky, heaven.

Caere, no gen., n., Caere, a city of Etruria.

cerimōnia, -ae, f., ceremony, rite.

Caesar, -aris, m., C. Julius Caesar, consul in 59 B.C., later dictator.

Calais, -is, m., Calais, one of the Argonauts.

calamitās, -ātis, f., disaster, calamity.

calcar, calcāris, -ium, n., spur.

calceus, -ī, m., shoe.

callidus, -a, -um, adj. [callō, be callous, be skilled], shrewd, adroit.

calor, -ōris, m., heat.

calvus, -a, -um, adj., bald.

Camers, -ertis, m., a citizen of Camerinum (a city in Italy).

Camillus, -ī, m., M. Furius Camillus, a famous Roman general of the fourth century B.C.

campus, -ī, m., plain.

cancer, -cri, m., a crab.

candidātus, -ī, m. [candidus, white], candidate.

Caninium, -i, m., C. Caninius Rebilus, a lieutenant of Julius Caesar's and later consul.

canis, -īs, m. and f., dog.

Cannae, -ārum, f. pl., Cannae, a town in southeastern Italy.

Cannēnis, -ē, adj. of Cannae.

canō, canere, cecini, cantum, intr., sing.

cantō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr. [freq. of canō], sing.

Canusium, -i, n., Canusium, a town in southeastern Italy.
capessō, -ere, —, —, tr. [capiō], seize (eagerly), undertake, undergo.
capiō, capere, cēpi, captum, tr., take, capture.
capitālis, -e, adj. [capūt], of the head; of the life, capital.
Capitōlinus, -a, -um, adj. [Capitolium], of the Capitol, Capitoline.
Capitolium, -i, n., the Capitol, the temple of Jupiter in Rome; or, the hill on which the Capitol stood.
captivus, -i, m., [capiō], prisoner.
caput, capitis, n., head; chief city, capital.
Carbō, -ōnis, m., Cn. Papirius Carbo, consul in 85, 84, 82 B.C.
carcer, -eris, m., prison.
carmen, -inis, n., a song; charm, incantation.
carō, carnis, f., flesh.
carpō, carpere, carpśi, carptum, tr., pluck.
carpentum, -i, n., a carriage (with two wheels).
carrus, -i, m., cart.
Carthāginiēnsis, -e, adj. [Carthagō], of Carthage, Carthaginian; subst. Carthāginiēnsēs, -ium, m. pl., the Carthaginians.
Carthāgō, -inis, f., Carthage, a city of northern Africa; Nova Carthāgō, New Carthage, a city of Spain.
cārus, -a, -um, adj., dear, precious.
casa, -ae, f., cottage.
Casca, -ae, m., C. Servilius Casca, one of the assassins of Julius Caesar.
Cassiānus, -a, -um, adj., of Cassius, with Cassius.
Cassius, -i, m., (1) C. Cassius Longinus, one of the assassins of Julius Caesar; (2) L. Cassius Longinus, consul in 107 B.C.
castellum, -i, n., fort, redoubt.
Casticus, -i, m., Casticus, a prominent Sequanian.

Castor, -oris, m., Castor, son of Leda and twin brother of Pollux.
ciastra, -ōrum, n. pl., camp.
cāsus, -ūs, m. [cadō], fall; accident, occurrence, mischance.
catēna, -ae, f., chain.
Catilina, -ae, m., L. Sergius Catilina, organizer of a conspiracy against the Roman government in 63 B.C.; usually Anglicized as Catiline.
Catō, -onis, m., M. Porcius Cato, a Roman, prominent towards the close of the republic.
Caturiges, -um, m. pl., the Caturiges, a Gallic tribe in the Alps.
cauda, -ae, f., tail.
causa, -ae, f., cause, reason; causā, with preceding gen., for the sake of, for the purpose of.
caveō, cavēre, cāvi, cautum, tr. and intr., beware of, beware.
cēdo, cēdere, cessi, cessum, intr., withdraw, retire, yield.
celer, celeris, celere, adj., swift, speedy.
celerītās, -ātis, f. [celer], speed, swiftness.
celeriter, adv. [celer], swiftly, quickly.
cēlō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [celer], throng; renowned, famous.
celerbrō, -bris, -bre, adj., thronged; celebrated.

Celtae, -ārum, m. pl., the Celts.
Celtiberi, -ōrum, m. pl., the Celtiberi, a Spanish tribe.
cēna, -ae, f., dinner.
cēnāculum, -i, n. [cēna], dining-room.
Cēnaeum, -i, n., Cenaeum, a promontory of Euboea.
cēnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr. and tr. [cēna], dine, dine upon.
censeō, cēnsère, cēnsui, cēnsum, tr., estimate; think, believe.
cēnsus, -ūs, m. [cēnseō], census, enumeration.
centauros, -i, m., Centaur, a mythical creature with a horse’s body and a man’s head.
centum, āndecl. num. adj., hundred.
centuriō, -onis, m. [centuria, hundred men], centurion.
Cēpheus, -i, m., Cepheus, a king of Ethiopia.
Cerberus, -i, m., Cerberus, a fabled watch-dog of the Lower World.
Cerēs, -ēris, f., Ceres, goddess of agriculture.
cernō, cernere, crevī, crētum, tr., distinguish; discern, perceive.
certāmen, -inis, n. [certō], struggle, contest, rivalry.
certē, adv. [certus], assuredly, certainly.
certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. [freq. of cernō], contend, strive.
certus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of cernō], fixed, certain.
cervīx, -icis, f., neck, throat.
cervus, -ī, m., stag.
cēteri, -ae, -a, adj., pl., the other, the rest of.
Ceutronēs, -um, m. pl., the Ceutrones, a Gallic tribe in the Alps.
Charōn, -ontis, m., Charon, the ferryman over the river Styx.
Chrysogonus, -i, m., L. Cornelius Chrysogonus, a freedman of Sulla.
cibārius, -a, -um, adj. [cibus], given as rations; subst., cibāria, -ōrum, n. pl., provisions, rations.
cibus, -ī, m., food.
Cicerō, -onis, m., M. Tullius Cicero, the famous orator.
Cimber, -bri, m., a Cimbrian; Cimbri, -ōrum, pl., the Cimbri, a people of northern Germany.
Cимberius, -i, m., Cимberius, a leader of the Suebi and brother of Nasua.
Cimbricus, -a, -um, adj. [Cimber], of the Cimbri, Cimbrian.
Cincinnātus, -ī, m., L. Quinctius Cincinnatus, a famous Roman of the fifth century B.C.
Cineās, -ae, m., Cineas, a minister of king Pyrrhus of Epirus.
cingō, cingere, cinxī, cinctum, tr., surround, encircle.
cinis, cinēris, m., ashes.
Cinna, -ae, m., L. Cornelius Cinna, consul in 87-84 B.C.
circā, adv. and prep. with acc., around, round about.
Circeii, -ōrum, m. pl., Circeii, a town of Latium.
circinus, -i, m., a pair of compasses.
circiter, adv. [circus], about, nearly.
circuitus, -ūs, m. [circumeō], a going around, a circuit.
circum, prep. with acc. [circus], around, about.
circum-arō, -arāre, -arāvī, tr., plough around.
circum-dō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, tr., place around, surround.
circum-dūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -duc- tum, tr., lead around.
circum-eō, -ire, -ii or -ivī, -itum, tr. and intr., go around, go from one to another.
circum-fundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fū- sum, tr., pour around.
circum-saeπiō, -saepire, -saepsi, -saępum, tr., hedge around, encircle.
circum-sistō, -sistere, -steti, —, tr., surround.
circum-stō, -stāre, -steti, —, intr., stand around, surround.
circum-veniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, tr., come around, surround.
circus, -i, m., a circle; a circus.
citerior, -ius, comp. adj. [cis, this side of], on this side; nearer, hither.
cithara, -ae, f., cithara, guitar.
citharoedus, -i, m., citharoedus, one who plays on the cithara and sings at the same time.
citō, adv. [citus, swift], quickly, speedily.
citrō, adv. [cis, this side of], to this side; ultrō citrōque, hither and thither, backwards and forwards.
civicus, -a, -um, adj. [civis], of citizens; civic.
civilis, -e, adj. [civis], of citizens, civil.
civis, civis, -ium, m., citizen.
civitās, -ātis, f. [civis], citizenship; the state, a state.
clādēs, clādis, -ium, f., disaster, misfortune; defeat.
clam, adv., secretly.
clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. [freq. of clāmō], call out loudly, cry out.
clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., cry out, shout.
clāmor, -ōris, m. [clāmō], shout, shouting, noise.
clangor, -ōris, m., noise.
clārus, -a, -um, adj., famous; bright, clear; loud.
classis, classis, -ium, f., class, fleet.
Claudius, -i, m., Ap. Claudius, a Tribune of the soldiers in 216 B.C.
claudō, claudere, clausi, clausum, tr., close; agmen claudere, to bring up the rear.
clāva, -ae, f., staff, club.
clāmēns, -entis, adj., merciful.
clāmenter, adv. [clāmēns], mercifully.
clāmentia, -ae, f. [clāmēns], forbearance, mercy.
Cleopatra, -ae, f., Cleopatra, a queen of Egypt.
clēns, -entis, m., client, follower.
cloāca, -ae, f., sewer.
Clōdius, -i, m., another form of Claudius; P. Clodius Pulcher, a

Roman of Cicero's time and an enemy of Cicero.
Clulius, -i, m., Cluilius, a king of Alba.
Clūsinus, -a, -um, adj. [Clūsium], of Clusium (a city of Etruria).
Cn., abbr. for Gnaeus.
co-emō, -emere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, tr., purchase, buy up.
coepī, coepisse, coeptum, tr. and intr., defective verb, began.
coērceō, -ēre, -ūi, -ūtum, tr. [com-+arceō, enclose], restrain, curb.
cōgitātiō, -onis, f. [cōgitō], reflection, meditation.
cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [com-+agītō], ponder; plan.
cognātus, -a, -um, adj. [com-+(g)nāscor], related.
cognōmen, -inis, n. [com-+(g)nōmen], cognomen, surname.
cognōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nītum, tr. [com-+(g)nōscō, learn], find out, learn; pf., know.
cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum, tr. [com-+āgō], drive together, bring together, collect; compel, force.
cohors, cohortis, -ium, f., cohort, a division of the Roman army.
cohortor, -āri, -ātus sum, tr., encourage, rally, admonish.
Colchis, -idis, f., Colchis, a district in Asia to the east of the Black Sea.
collega, -ae, m., colleague.
colligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, tr. [com-+legō], gather together, collect.
colligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [com-+ligō, bind], bind together.
collis, collis, -ium, m., hill.
colloccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [com-+locō, place], station, arrange; give in marriage.
colloquium, -i, n., [colloquor], interview, conference.
colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum, intr. [com-+loquor], converse, confer.
collum, -i, n., neck.
colō, -ere, coluī, cultum, tr., cultivate, till.
colūnus, -i, m. [colō], farmer; settler, colonist.
color, -ōris, m., color.
columba, -ae, f., dove, pigeon.
columna, -ae, f., column, pillar.
com-, (also con- and co-), forms of the preposition cum employed in composition only.
combūrō, -ūrere, -ussi, -ustum, tr. [com-+ūrō], burn up, consume.
comes, -itis, m. and f., companion.
comitās, -ātis, f. [comis, courteous], courteousness, affability.
comitia, -orum, pl., public assembly, election.
commeatus, -ūs, m. [commēō], going to and fro; furlough; provisions, supplies.
com-memoro, -are, -avi, -atum, tr. [commemo, mention.
com-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr., send together; undertake; bring about; proelium committere, to begin battle.
commodē, adv. [commodus, conveniently], conveniently, advantageously.
commonefacio, -facere, -feci, -factum, tr. [commoneō+faciō], remind, impress upon.
com-moror, -ari, -atus sum, intr., tarry, linger.
com-moveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mō-
tum, tr., move deeply, excite, arouse, alarm.
com-mūniō, -ire, -ivi, -itum, tr., fortify, establish strongly.
commūnis, -e, adj., common.
commūniter, adv. [commūnis], commonly, in common.
commutātiō, -onis, f. [commūtō], change.
com-mūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., change (entirely), exchange.
com-parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., prepare.
comparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [compār, like], compare.
com-pellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, tr., drive together, collect.
comperiō, -perire, -peri, -pertum, tr. and intr., find out, ascertain.
com-plector, -plecti, -plexus sum, tr. [com-+plector, embrace], clasp, embrace.
com-plures, -plura or -pluria, adj., several, a number of, many.
com-pello, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, tr., drive together, collect.
com-portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., carry together, bring together, collect.
com-prehendo, -hendere, -hendi, -hēnsum, tr., seize, arrest.
comprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressum, tr. [com-+premō], press together, squeeze; suppress.
cōnāta, -ūrum, n. pl. [p. part. of cōnōr], undertaking, enterprise.
cōnātus, -ūs, m. [cōnōr], attempt.
con-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, intr. and tr., yield; grant, concede.
concidō, -cidere, -cidi, —, intr. [com-+cadō], fall, be slain.
concidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsum, tr. [com-+caedō], cut to pieces, destroy.
conciliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., win, win over, win the favor of.
concilium, -ī, n., council.
concipīō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. [com--capiō], take hold of; conceive.
concitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., rouse, incite.
con-clāmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr., cry out together, cry out loudly, exclaim.
concordia, -ae, f. [concors, harmonious], concord, harmony.
con-currō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, intr., run together.
con-cursus, -ūs, m., a running together, concourse; assault, charge.
condemnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [com--damnō], condemn.
condiciō, -ōnis, f. [condicō, agree], agreement; terms, conditions.
conditor, -ōris, m. [condō], founder.
con-dō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, tr., put away, store up; found.
con-dōnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., give; overlook, pardon.
con-ducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr., bring together, collect.
con-ductī, -ōrum, m. pl. [p. part. of condūcō], mercenary soldiers, mercenaries.
con-fērō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, tr., bring together, collect; compare; sē con-ferrē, betake oneself, proceed.
confēr tus, -a, -um, adj, p. part. of con-ferrī, press together], crowded, dense.
confessiō, -ōnis, f. [confiteor], confession.
confestim, adv., at once, immediately.
conficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum, tr. [com--facciō], finish, complete; weaken, overcome.
confidō, -fidere, -fīsus sum, intr. (takes dative), trust; be confident, have confidence.
confirmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., strengthen, establish.
confiteor, -fitēri, -fessus sum, tr. and intr. [com--fateor, acknowledge], confess.
conflagrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr., be on fire, be consumed.
coniō, -fligere, -flīxi, -fictum, intr., dash or strike together.
con-flo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., blow together, kindle; aes alienum con-flāre, to contract a debt.
coniōn, -fodēre, -fōdi, -fossum, tr., stab, pierce.
congregō, -gredi, -gressus sum, intr. [com--gradior, step], come together, meet.
congressus, -ūs, m. [congregō], meeting, conference.
conjiciō, -jicere, -jēci, -jectum, tr. [com--jaciō], throw together; hurl cast.
con-jungō, -jungere, -jūnxi, -junctum, tr., fasten together, join.
conjūnx, conjugis, m. and f. [compare conjungō], a married person, husband, wife.
conjurātī, -ōrum, m. pl. [p. part. of conjurō], conspirators.
conjurātiō, -ōnis, f. [conjurō], conspiracy.
con-jūro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr., swear together, form a conspiracy, conspire.
conor, -āri, -ātus sum, tr. and intr., try, attempt.
conquārō, -quīrere, -quisīvī, -quisītum, tr. [com--quāerō], hunt for, search out.
con-sanguineus, -a, -um, adj., related by blood; subst., consanguinei, -ōrum, m. pl., kinsmen, blood-relations.
conscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēnsum, tr. [com--scandō, climb], climb; go aboard, embark on.
cón-sciscō, -sciscere, -scivi, -scītum, tr. [sciscō, approve], resolve upon; mortem sibi cónsciscere, commit suicide.
cónsciūs, -a, -um, adj. [com-+sciō], conscious, aware.
cón-scribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, tr., enroll, organize.
cón-sensus, -ūs, m. [cónsentiō, agree], agreement.
cón-sequor, -sequi, -secutus sum, ir., follow up; overtake; gam.
cón-servo, -are, -avi, -atum, tr., retain, preserve.
Considius, -i, w., P. Considius, an officer in Caesar's army.
cón-sido, -sidere, -sedi, -sessum, intr., sit down, take one's seat.
consilium, -t, n., plan, counsel, advice.
cón-sisto, -stere, -stiti, —, intr., take one's stand, halt, make a stand.
cón-socio, -are, -avi, -atum, tr., associate, unite.
cón-spector, -ūs, m. [cónspiciō], sight, view.
cónspiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, tr. [com-+speciō, look], perceive, observe.
cónspicor, -āri, -ātus sum, tr., catch sight of, observe, see.
constanter, adv. [continens, continuous], continuously.
constante, -ae, f. [cōnstantēs, firm], constancy, firmness.
constituō, -stituere, -stituí, -stitūtum, tr. [com+statuō], station; decide, determine.
cón-stō, -stāre, -stītī, -stātūrūs, intr., stand together; consist; impers., cōnstat, it is known, it is certain.
cón-suēscō, -suēscere, -suēvi, suētum, intr., become accustomed; pf., be accustomed, be in the habit of.
cónsuētūdō, -inis, f. [cōn-suēscō], custom, habit, way.
cónsul, -ulis, m., consul, one of the chief magistrates at Rome.
cónsulāris, -e, adj. [cōnsul], of a consul, consular.
cónsulātus, -ūs, m. [cōnsul], consulsiphip.
cónsulō, -sulere, -sului, -sultum, tr. and intr., consult; consult the interests of (with dative).
cónsultā, adv. [abl. of cōnsultum], intentionally.
cónsultō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr. [freq. of cōnsulō], consult, deliberate.
cónsultum, -i, m. [cōnsulō], decree.
cón-sūmō, -sūmere, -sūpsi, -sūptum, tr., consume, spend.
con-tegō, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctum, tr., cover.
con-temnō, -temnere, -tempsi, -temp tum, tr., scorn, despise.
contemptor, -ōris, m. [contemnō], despiser, scouter.
con-tendō, -tendere, -tendi, -ten tum, intr., contend, fight; hasten.
contentio, -onis, f. [contendō], struggle, contest.
contentus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part of contineō, hold together], satisfied, contented.
con-texō, -texere, -texui, -textum, tr., weave.
continens, -entis, f. [contineō], continent, mainland.
continenter, adv. [continens, continuous], continuously.
contineō, -tinere, -tinui, -tentum, tr. [com+teneō], hold together; shut in, confine.
contingō, -tingere, -tigi, -tāctum, tr. [com+tangō], touch, adjoin; intr. and impers., contingit, it befalls, happens to.
continuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [continuus], make continuous, hold without an interval.

continuus, -a, -um, adj. [contineō], successive, continuous.

cōntūō, -ōnis, f. [compare com-, and veniō], a public assembly; a speech, a contio.

contrā, prep. with acc., against, opposite.

con-trahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, tr., draw or bring together.

contrōversia, -ae, f. [contrōversus, disputed], dispute, quarrel.

contumēlia, -ae, f., insult, abuse.

conūbium, -i, n. [com- + nubo], marriage.

con-verto, -vertere, -verti, -versum, tr., turn round, turn.

con-vinco, -vincere, -vici, -victum, tr., convict; prove.

con-voco, -are, -avi, -atum, tr., call together.

co-orior, -oriri, -ortus sum, intr., come forth, arise.

cōpia, -ae, f., plenty; pl., forces, troops.

cōpiōsē, adv. [cōpiōsus], copiously, at length.

cōpiōsus, -a, -um, adj. [cōpia], plentiful, well supplied.

Corinthus, -a, -um, adj., of Corinth, Corinthian.

Corinthus, -i, f., Corinth, a city of Greece.

Cornēlia, -ae, f., Cornelia, name of a woman or girl.

Corṇēlius, -i, m., (1) P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus Major, a famous Roman general who conquered Hannibal; (2) P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus Minor, who destroyed Carthage; (3) L. Cornelius Sulla, consul in 88 B.C., later dictator.

corneus, -a, -um, adj. [cornū], of horn.

corneus, -a, -um, adj. [cornum, cornel-cherry], of cornel-wood.

cornū, -ūs, n., horn; wing (of an army).

corōna, -ae, f., garland, wreath, crown.

corpus, corporis, n., body.

corrígō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctum, tr. [com- + regō], correct, reform.

corripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, tr. [com- + rapiō], seize, take hold of, snatch up.

corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, tr. [com- + rumpō, burst], ruin; corrupt.

cortex, -icis, m. and f., bark.

cotidiānus, -a, -um, adj. [cotūdiē], daily.

cotūdiē, adv. [quot + diēs], every day, daily.

Crassus, -i, m., (1) M. Licinius Crassus, a member of the First Triumvirate with Caesar and Pompeius; (2) P. Licinius Crassus, son of Marcus.

crēdibilis, -e, adj. [crēdō], credible.

crēdor, -ōris, m. [crēdō], creditor.

creō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., burn, consume.

crépitus, -ūs, m. [crepō, to rattle], clattering, noise.
crepundia, -orum, n., pl. [crepō, to rattle], a child's rattle, a rattle.
crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum, intr., increase, grow greater.
Crēta, -ae, f., Crete, an island in the Mediterranean Sea.
Crimen, -inis, n., charge, accusation.
Crinis, crinis, -ium, m., hair.
cruciatūs, -ūs, m. [cruciō, to torture], torture.
crūdēlis, -e, adj., cruel.
crūdēlicitas, -ātis, f. [crūdēlis], cruelty.
crūdēliter, adv. [crūdēlis], cruelly.
crūs, crūris, n., leg.
crux, crucis, f., gallows, cross.
cubiculum, -i, n. [cubō], bedchamber.
cubō, -āre, cubuī, cubītum, intr., lie down, recline.
culpa, -ae, f., fault, blame.
culpō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [culpa], blame, rebuke.
culter, -trī, m., knife.
cultus, -ūs, m. [colō], cultivation, culture; civilization, refinement.
cum, prep. with abl., with.
cum, conj., when, since, although.
cūnae, -ārum, f. pl., a cradle.
cūntātor, -ōris, m. [cūntor], a delayer; as a proper noun, bestowed informally as a cognomen on Q. Fabius Maximus.
cūntor, -āri, -ātus sum, intr., delay, hesitate.
cupidē, adv. [cupidus], eagerly.
cupiditās, -ātis, f. [cupidus], eagerness, longing, desire.
cupidō, -inis, f. [cupidus], passion, greed.
cupidus, -a, -um, adj. [cupiō], desirous, fond.
cupiō, -ere, cupīvī, cupītum, tr., wish, desire.
cūr, adv., why.
cūra, -ae, f., care.
Curēs, -ium, m. and f. pl., Cures, chief town of the Sabines.
cūria, -ae, f., curia (a division of the Roman people), ward; senate house.
Cūriātius, -ī, m., Curatius, an Alban name; name of triplet brothers who fought the Roman Horatii.
cūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [cūra], care for, attend to; have done.
currō, currere, cucurri, cursum, intr., run.
currus, -ūs, m., chariot.
cursus, -ūs, m. [currō], course.
curūlis, -e, adj., curule.
custōdia, -ae, f. [custōs], watch, custody, guard.
custōdiō, -ire, -īvī, -ītum, tr. [custōs], watch, guard.
custōs, -ōdis, m. and f., guard, guardian, keeper.
cyathus, -i, m., cup.
Cyzicus, -i, f., Cyzicus, (1) an island or peninsula in the Sea of Marmora; (2) a town situated on (1).

D

Dācus, -a, -um, adj., Dacian; subst., Dāci, -ōrum, m. pl., the Dacians.
damnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [damnum, loss], condemn, convict.
Danaē, -ēs, f., Danae, mother of Perseus.
dē, prep. with abl., down from, from; concerning, about.
de-ambulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr., walk, stroll.
dēbeō, -ere, -uī, -ītum, tr. [dē + habēō], owe, ought.
dēbitor, -ōris, m. [dēbeō], debtor.
dē-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, intr., withdraw, depart; die.
decem, indecl. num. adj., ten.
December, -bris, -bre, adj. [decem], of December; subst., December, -bris, m., December.
dé-cerno, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum, tr., decide, decree.
dé-certo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., fight it out, fight a decisive battle.
dēcidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, intr., [dē + cadō], fall down, fall off.
decimus, -a, -um, adj. [decem], tenth.
decipīō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr. [dē + capiō], beguile, deceive.
dē-clārō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [clārō, make bright], disclose, reveal.
decorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [decus, decoration], adorn, honor.
decurio, -ōnis, m. [decuria, a division of ten], decurion, the leader of a decuria.
dē-currō, -currere, -cucurri, -cursum, intr., run down; manoeuvre.
dē-decus, -decoris, n. [deceus, decoration; honor], disgrace, dishonor.
dēdictūcīus, -a, -um, adj. [dēdō], surrendered; subst., dēdictūci, -ōrum, m. pl., prisoners of war.
dēditio, -ōnis, f. [dēdō], surrender.
dēdītus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of dēdō], surrendered; subst., dēdītī, -ōrum, m. pl., prisoners of war, captives.
dēdō, -ere, dēdīdī, dēdītum, tr. [dē + dō], give up, surrender.
dē-duccō, -ducere, -duxī, -ductum, tr., lead away; draw down; nāvem dēducere, to launch a ship.
dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsum, tr., repel; defend.
dēfensor, -ōris, m. [dēfendō], defender.
dē-ferō, -ferre, dētuli, dēlātum, tr., carry away, carry down; confer.
dēfessus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of dēfētiscor, grow weary], tired out, exhausted.
dēficīō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. and intr. [dē + faciō], fail, run out; withdraw, desert.
dens, dentis, m., tooth.
densus, -a, -um, adj. close, thick.
denuñtiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., announce, proclaim; give warning.
depellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, tr., ward off.
deperdō, -perdere, -perdidī, -perditum, tr., destroy, lose.
deplōrō, -āre, āvī, ātum, tr., deplore, lament.
depōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -posītum, tr., set down, deposit; lay aside, give up.
depopular, -āri, -ātus sum, tr., lay waste, plunder, pillage.
deprecātor, -ōris, m. [deprecator], intercessor, mediator.
deprecar, -āri, -ātus sum, tr., avert by prayer, deprecate.
dprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum, tr., seize upon; discover.
deripīō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, tr. [de+rapiō], tear away, pull off.
descendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum, intr. [de+scandō, climb], descend, dismount.
deserō, -serere, -serui, -sertum, tr. [serō, join], abandon, desert.
desertus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of déserō], deserted.
désiderium, -i, n. [dēsiderō, long for], desire, longing.
dē-signō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., mark out; mean, intend.
dēsiliō, -īre, -ui, —, intr. [dē+saliō, leap], leap down.
dē-sistō, -sistere, -stītī, -stītum, intr., leave off, desist from.
dē-spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr., despair of, despair.
dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, tr. [dē+speciō, look], look down upon, despise.
dē-spondeō, -spondere, -spōndi, -spōnsum, tr., betroth, promise in marriage.
dē-stringō, -stringere, -strinxi, -strictum, tr. [stringō, bind], strip off, unsheathe, draw.
dē-sum, -esse, -fūi, -futūrus, intr., be wanting, be lacking.
dēsuper, adv., from above.
dētectus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of dētegō, uncover], uncovered, bare.
dēterior, -ius, compar. adj., of less value, less.
dēterreō, -ère, -ui, -itum, tr., frighten away, deter.
dē-trahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr., draw off, strip off.
dētrimentum, -i, n. [dēterō, wear away], loss.
deus, -i, m., a god.
dēversorium, -i, n. [dēversor, turn aside, lodge], inn, lodging-place.
dē-vertō, -vertere, -vertī, —, intr., turn away, turn aside.
dē-vincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victum, tr., conquer completely.
dē-vorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., swallow, devour.
dexter, -tra, -trum, adj., right, right-hand.
dextra, -ae, f. [dexter], the right hand.
diadēma, -atis, n., diadem.
Diāna, -ae, f., Diana, goddess of the chase.
diciō, -onis, f., authority, rule, sway.
dicō, -ere, dixī, dictum, tr., say; appoint, name.
dictātor, -ōris, m. [dictō, dictate], dictator.
dictātura, -ae, f. [dictātor], dictatorship.
dictiō, -onis, f. [dicō], a speaking, a pleading.
dictitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr. [intens. of dictō, dictate], say often, maintain.
diēs, diēi, m. and f., day.
differō, -ferre, distuli, dilātum, tr. and intr. [dis-ferō], carry apart; put off; differ.
difficilis, -e, adj. [dis-facilis], difficult.
difficiliter, adv. [difficilis], with difficulty.
difficultās, -ātis, f. [difficilis], difficulty.
diffundō, -fundere, -fūdi, -fūsum, tr. [dis-fundō], pour out, spread, diffuse.
dignitās, -ātis, f. [dignus], worth; authority, prestige.
dignus, -a, -um, adj., worthy.
diligenter, adv. [diligens, industrious], industriously, diligently.
diligentia, -ae, f. [diligens], watchfulness, diligence.
diligō, -ligere, -lēxi, -lēctum, tr. [dis-legō], single out; esteem, love.
dī-lūcēscō, -lūcēscere, -lūxi, —, intr. [lūx], grow light, dawn.
dī-micō, -äre, -āvi, -ātum, intr. [micō, flash], fight, contend.
dimidius, -a, -um, adj. [dis-medius], half.
di-mittō, -mittere, -miscī, -missum, tr. send out, send forth; dismiss.
Diomēdēs, -is, m., Diomedes, a Greek hero.
dirimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, tr. [dis-emō], take apart; interrupt; compose, settle.
diripīō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, tr. [dis-rapiō], plunder.
dirus, -a, -um, adj., dreadful, dire.
dis- or di-, inseparable particle employed in composition, apart, away, in different directions.
dis-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, intr., withdraw, depart.
disciplīna, -ae, f. [discō], training, discipline.
discipulus, -i, m. [discō], learner, pupil.

disco-, -ere, didici, —, tr., learn.
di-scribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, tr., distribute, divide.
discrimen, -inis, n. [discernō, separate], crisis, peril.
discriminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [discrimen], divide, distinguish.
discus, -i, m., discus, quoit.
disertus, -a, -um, adj. [from p. part. of disserō], fluent, eloquent.
disjiciō, -jicere, -jēci, -jectum, tr. [dis-jacio], throw asunder, break up, disperse.
dis-pār, gen. disparis, adj., unequal, unlike.
dispergō, -spergere, -persi, -persum, tr. [di-spargō, scatter], scatter, spread, disperse.
displaceō, -ere, -ui, -itum, intr. [dis-placeō], displease.
dis-pōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, tr., place here and there, distribute.
dis-putō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., argue, discourse.
dissēnsiō, -onis, f. [dissentiō, disagree], disagreement.
dis-serō, -serere, -serui, -seratum, intr. [serō, join], discourse, argue.
dis-similis, -simile, adj., dissimilar, unlike.
diū, adv., long, for a long time.
diurnus, -a, -um, adj. [compare diēs], of the day, daily.
diūturnus, -a, -um, adj. [diū], lasting, long.
di-vellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, tr., tear apart, tear away.
di-versus, -versa, -versum, adj., turned different ways, opposite.
dīves, gen. divītis, adj., rich, wealthy.
Diviciācus, -i, m., Diviciacus, a prominent Hæduan.
Divicō, -onis, m., Divico, a prominent Helvetician.
dividō, -ere, divisi, divisum, tr., divide, separate.
divīnus, -a, -um, adj. [divus, divine],
divine.
divitiae, -ārum, f. pl. [dives],
riches, wealth.
dō, dare, dedi, datum, tr., give.
doceō, -ere, -ui, doctum, tr., teach;
show, explain.
doctrina, -ae, f. [doceō], teaching;
learning, erudition.
doctor, -ōris, m. [doceō], teacher.
doctus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of
doceō], learned, skilled.
doleō, -ere, -ui, -itūrus, intr. and tr.,
suffer; grieve.
dolor, -ōris, m. [doleō], sorrow,
suffering, pain.
dolus, -i, m., trick, treachery,
dereduction.
domesticus, -a, -um, adj. [domus],
of the house; private, personal.
domicilium, -i, n. [domus], residence,
dwelling-place.
dominātiō, -ōnis, f. [dominor], rule,
supremacy.
dominor, -āri, -ātus sum, intr., rule.
dominus, -i, m. master.
domō, -āre, domui, domitum, tr.,
subdue, master.
domus, -ūs (-i), f., home, house.
dōnec, conj., as long as, while; until.
dōnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [dōnō],
present, bestow.
dōnum, -i, n., gift.
dormiō, -āre, -ivi, -itum, intr., sleep.
dorsum, -i, n., back; ridge.
dōs, dōtis, f., dowry.
dracō, -ōnis, m., serpent, dragon.
dubitatiō, -ōnis, f. [dubitō], doubt,
hesitation.
dubitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr.
[dubius], doubt, hesitate.
Dūbis, -is, m., the Dubis, a river in
Gaul, now the Doubs.
dubius, -a, -um, adj., doubtful,
uncertain.
ducenti, -ae, -a, num. adj. [duo+
centum], two hundred.
dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductum, tr., lead;
prolong.
dūdum, adv., before, formerly; jam
dūdum, this long time, a long
time ago.
dulcis, -e, adj., sweet, agreeable.
dum, conj., while; until.
Dumnorix, -īgis, m., Dumnorix, a
prominent Haeduon.
duo, duae, duo, num. adj., two.
duodecim, indecl. num. adj. [duo+
decem], twelve.
duo-dé-viginti, indecl. num. adj.,
twenty.
duplex, gen. duplicis, adj., double,
twofold.
dūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr.
[dūrus], harden; last, endure.
dūrus, -a, -um, adj., hard, harsh,
severe.
dux, ducis, m. [dūcō], leader.

e, ex, prep. with abl., from within,
out of, from.
equis, equid, pron., interrog.,
anyone, anything, whether any-
one, whether anything.
e-dicō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum, tr.,
declare, proclaim, appoint.
edictum, -i, n. [p. part. of ēdicō],
edict.
e-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, tr., give
out, put forth; give birth to,
exhibit; inflict.
edō, -ere, ēdī, ēsum, tr., eat.
e-ducō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., bring
up, rear, train.
e-ducō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr.,
lead out.
effēminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.
[ex+fēmina], make womanish,
enervate.
efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum, tr. [ex+fērō], carry forth, remove; lift up, raise.

effervēscō, -fervēscere, -ferbui, — [ex+fervēscō, boil], boil up, boil.

efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. [ex+faciō], accomplish, bring about, cause.

effigies, -ī, f., semblance, effigy.

efflo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [ex+fīlō, blow], breathe out.

effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, intr. [ex+fugiō], escape.

effundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, tr. [ex+fundō], pour out; use up, waste.

Egeria, -ae, f., Egeria, the nymph of a fountain near Rome.

ego, mei, pers. pron., I.

egrédiō, égrēdī, égressus sum, intr. [ē+gradior, step], go out, depart.

egrégiō, adv. [égregius], excellently, unusually.

égregius, -a, -um, adj. [ē+grex, flock], distinguished, eminent.

é-lābor, -lābī, -lāpsus sum, intr., glide out, glide away, escape.

é-laborō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. endeavor, take pains.

élīgō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, tr. [ē+legō], choose, select.

Élis, -idis, f., Élis, a district in Greece.

eλοquentia, -ae, f. [éloquéns], eloquence.

Élysion, -a, -um, adj., Elysian.

é-migrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., move, depart, migrate.

e-mittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mīssum, tr., send forth, release; utter.

emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum, tr., buy.

ēn, interj., behold! see!

enim, conj. (postpositive), for.

é-niteō, -nitere, -nītūī, —, intr., shine forth, gleam; be displayed.

é-nitor, -nīti, -nīxus or -nīsus sum, intr., struggle out; struggle, strive.

ēnsis, -is, m., sword.

ē-numerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., reckon up, recount.

ē-nūntīō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., assert; proclaim, reveal.

eō, ire, iī or iīi, itum, intr., go.

eō, adv. [ēs], to that place, thither; on that account.

eōdem, adv. [idem], to the same place; to the same end, to the same result.

Éphēsius, -a, -um, adj., of Ephesus, Ephesian.

epigramma, -atis, n., epigram.

Épirus, -i, f., Épirus, a district in northwestern Greece.

epistula, -ae, f., letter, epistle.

equēs, equitis, m. [equus], horseman; pl., horsemen, cavalry.

equester, -tris, -tre, adj. [eques], of a horseman, equestrian, cavalry (as adj.).

equidem, adv., truly, at all events; with first person verb, I for my part.

equitātus, -ūs, m. [equitō], cavalry.

equītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. [eques], ride.

equus, equī, m., horse.

ērēctus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of ērigō], upright, erect; resolute.

ergā, prep. with acc., towards, for.

 Ergīnus, -ī, m., Erginus, a king of the Minyae.

ergō, adv., therefore.

Éridanus, -i, m., the Eridanus, a river.

ērigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctum, tr. [ē+regō], lift up; arouse, encourage.

ēripīō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, tr. [ē+rapiō], snatch away, take away, rescue.

errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., wander, stray; be mistaken, err.

ērudīō, -ire, -iīi, -itum, tr. [ē+ rudis, rough], educate, instruct.
ërumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum, *intr.*, break out, burst forth.
ē-ruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, *tr.*, dig out, cast forth.
Erythia, -ae, *f.*, Erythia, an island.
Erymanthius, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Erymanthus (*a chain of mountains in Arcadia*), Erymanthian.
etiam, *adv.* [et+jam], now too, yet; also, besides; even.
Etrūscus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Etruscan, of Etruria; *subst.*, Etrūsci, -orum, *m.* *pl.*, the Etruscans.
et-si, *conj.*, though, although, even if.
Eunomus, -i, *m.*, Eunomus, name of a certain youth.
Euripidēs, -is, *m.*, Euripides, an Athenian tragic poet.
Eurōpa, -ae, *f.*, Europe.
Eurystheus, -i, *m.*, Eurystheus, a king of Tiryns.
Eurytōn, -onis *m.*, Eurytian, a giant.
Eurytus, -i, *m.*, Eurytus, a king of Oechalia.
evādō, -vādere, -vāsi, -vāsum, *intr.*, come out, make one's way; escape.
evellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, *tr.* [vellō, pluck], pull out.
evēniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.*, come out; result, turn out.
evērtō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *tr.*, overturn, overthrow.
evocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, call out.
evomō, -vomere, -vomui, -vomitum, *tr.*, vomit forth.
ex, see ē.
ex-animō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, put out of breath, stun; exhaust.
ex-ārdēscō, -ārdēscere, -ārsī, -ārsūm, *intr.*, blaze out; be inflamed, be enraged.
ex-audiō, -ire, -ivī, -ītum, *tr.*, hear clearly, hear.
ex-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.*, withdraw.
excellō, -cellere, —, -celsum, *intr.*, be eminent, excel.
excelsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [p. part. of excellō], lofty, tall; distinguished.
excerpō, -cerpere, -cerpsi, -cerptum, *tr.*, [carpō], pick out, select.
excipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *tr.* [ex+capiō], take out, take up, catch; receive, entertain.
excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, call out; rouse.
ex-clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, cry out, exclaim.
ex-cruciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, rack, torture.
excūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [ex+causa], excuse.
execrō, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.* [ex+sacrō, doom], curse.
exemplum, -i, *n.*, example, precedent.
ex-eō, -ire, -ii or -ivī, -itum, *intr.*, go out.
exequor, -exequí, -execūtus sum, *tr.* [ex+sequor], follow up; carry out, enforce.
exerceō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, *tr.* [ex+arceō, enclose], train, drill.
exercitātiō, -onis, *f.* [exercitō, train], exercise, training.
exercitātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [p. part. of exercitō], trained, experienced.
exercitus, -ūs, *m.* [exerceō], army.
exigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* [ex+agō], drive out, expel; exact; spend.
exiguus, -a, -um, *adj.*, scanty, small.
exiliō, -ire, -ui, —, *intr.* [ex+saliō, leap], spring forth.
exilium, -i, *n.* [exul], exile.
eximius, -a, -um, *adj.*, unusual, distinguished.
existimātiō, -onis, *f.* [existimō], judgment, opinion.
existimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [ex+ aëstimō, estimate], estimate; judge, think.
exitium, -i, n., destruction, ruin.
exitus, -ūs, m. [exeō], outcome, end, close.
ex-orior, -ōriō, -ortus sum, intr., come forth, arise, appear.
expectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [ex+ spectō], expect, await, wait for.
expectātiō, -ōnis, f. [expectō], awaiting, expectation.
expedītus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of expediō, extricate], unimpeded, free, open.
ex-pellō, -pelleō, -pulī, -pulsum, tr., drive out, expel.
experior, -ēriō, -pertus sum, tr., prove, test.
ex-piō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [piō, appease], atone for, appease.
expirō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [ex+ spirō, breathe], breathe out.
explōrātor, -ōris, m. [explōrō], scout.
explorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., explore.
ex-pōnō, -pōnerō, -posui, -positum, tr., set forth, explain; expose, abandon; set ashore.
exprimō, -primēre, -pressī, -pressum, tr. [ex+premō], press out; wring out, elicit.
expugnātiō, -ōnis, f. [expugnō], a taking by storm, storming.
ex-pugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., take by storm, capture.
exquirō, -quirēre, -quisīvi, -quisītum, tr. [ex+quaerō], search out, inquire about.
extrāmplō, adv., immediately, forthwith, without delay.
externus, -a, -um, adj. [exterus, on the outside], foreign, outer.
extrō, -āre, —, —, intr. [ex+stō], stand forth; be extant, exist.
extrā, prep. with acc., outside of.
ex-trahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr., draw out; extricate, release.
ex-tra-ordinārius, -a, -um, adj., extraordinary, uncommon.
extrēmus, -a, -um, adj. [exterus, on the outside], outermost, farthest, most distant.
extrūō, -uere, -ūxi, -ūctum, tr. [strūo], pile, heap up; erect.
exul, -ulis, m., an exile.
exultō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr. [freq. of exsiliō], leap up (for joy), exult.
exuo, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, tr., take off, remove.
ex-ūro, -ūreō, -ussī, -ustum, tr., burn up.

F
faber, -brī, m., workman, smith.
Fabianus, -a, -um, adj., of Fabius.
Fabius, -ī, m., (1) Q. Fabius Maximus, a Roman commander in the Second Punic War; (2) Q. Fabius Maximus, consul in 121 B.C.
Fabricius, -ī, m., C. Fabricius, a prominent Roman of the 3d century B.C.
fabricor, -āriō, -ātus sum, tr. [fabricō], make, construct, build.
fābula, -ae, f., story, tale.
facētē, adv. [facētus, witty], wittily, humorously.
facile, adv. [facilis], easily.
facilis, -e, adj., easy.
facinus, facinorīs, n., deed; crime.
faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, tr., make do.
factīo, -ōnis, f. [faciō], faction, party.
factum, -ī, n. [p. part. of faciō], deed, action.
factūsīs, -ūsis, f. [facilis], means, opportunity, chance.
fallo, fallere, fēfellī, falsum, tr., deceive, cheat, elude.
falsō, adv. [falsus], falsely.
falsus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of fallō], false, deceptive, misleading.
falx, falcis, f., sickle.
fāma, -ae, f., report, rumor, talk.
famēs, -is, f., hunger.
familia, -ae, f. [famulus, servant], household establishment, slaves in a household; family.
familioris, -e, adj. [familia], of a household; rēs familiāris, private property, estate; subst., familioris, -is, m., a friend, an intimate acquaintance.
fānum, -i, n., shrine, temple.
fār, farris, n., grain, meal.
fās, (only nom. and acc. sing.), n., divine law (as opposed to jūs, human law); the right; fās est, it is lawful, it is permitted.
fāsti, -ōrum, m. pl., calendar.
fātīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., weary, tire, fatigue.
fātum, -i, n. [p. part. of for, speak], fate, destiny.
fauces, -ium, f. pl., throat.
Fausta, -ae, f., Fausta, daughter of L. Cornelius Sulla.
Faustulus, -i, m., Faustulus, the shepherd who reared Romulus and Remus.
Faustinus, -i, m., Faustus, son of L. Cornelius Sulla.
faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum, intr. (takes dative), favor.
favor, -ōris, m. [faveō], favor, goodwill.
fax, facis, f., torch, firebrand.
fēlicitās, -ātis, f. [fēlix], good fortune, luck.
fēliciter, adv. [fēlix], happily, luckily.
fēlix, gen. fēlicis, adj., fortunate, happy.
Fēlix, -īcis, m., Felix (= the lucky), a cognomen assumed by L. Cornelius Sulla.
fēmina, -ae, f., woman.
femur, femoris, n., thigh.
fera, -ae, f., wild beast, wild animal.
ferē, adv., about, nearly; in general, usually.
Ferentina, -ae, f., Ferentina, a goddess of the Latins.
ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, tr., bear, bring, carry; endure; signa ferre, advance the standards, advance; fertur, it is said; ferunt, they say.
ferōciter, adv. [ferōx], courageously, fiercely, arrogantly.
ferōx, gen. ferōcis, adj., fierce, high-spirited; emboldened, aggressive.
ferreus, -a, -um, adj. [ferrum], of iron.
ferrum, -i, n., iron; sword.
fertilis, -e, adj., fertile.
ferus, -a, -um, adj., wild.
fessus, -a, -um, adj., wearied, tired, exhausted.
festīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. [festinus, hasty], hasten.
fētialis, -e, adj., diplomatic, fetial; subst., fētialis, -is, m., a fetial priest.
fīdēlis, -e, adj. [fidēs], faithful.
Fīdenātēs, -ium, m. pl., the Fidenates, the people of Fidenae (a town near Rome).
fīdēs, -ei, f., faith, confidence; faithfulness; pledge.
fīdō, -ere, fisus sum, intr., trust, rely upon.
filia, -ae, f., daughter.
filius, -i, m., son.
fīngō, fīngere, finxi, fictum, tr., form, fashion, make up.
finīō, -ire, -īvī, -ītum, tr. [finis], limit, determine, fix.
finis, finis, -ium, m. and f., end, limit; pl., country, territory.
finītimus, -a, -um, adj. [finis], neighboring; as subst., finitimi, -ōrum, m. pl., neighbors.
fīō, fieri, factus sum, intr., become, be made.
fīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [fīrmus], strengthen, make firm.

fīrmus, -a, -um, adj., firm, strong.

fīglītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., demand urgently, demand.

flamma, -ae, f., flame.

flectō, -ere, flexī, flexum, tr., turn, bend.

fleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, intr., weep, cry.

fletus, -ūs, m. [fleō], weeping, wailing.

fōrēns, -entis, adj. [pr. part. of fōreō], flourishing, prosperous.

fōrēō, -ēre, -ui, —, intr. [fōs], blossom; flourish, be prosperous, be eminent.

fōs, flōris, m., flower.

flōctus, -ūs, m. [fluō], wave, billow.

flōmen, flōminis, n. [fluō], river.

fluō, -ere, flūxi, flūxum, intr., flow.

focus, -ī, m., fire-place, hearth.

foedus, foederis, n., treaty, alliance.

folium, -ī, n., leaf.

fōns, fontis, m., spring, fountain.

forās, adv. [compare foris], out of doors, out.

fore, fut. inf. of sum.

foris, -is, f., door; frequently pl. (with reference to the two leaves of a double door).

fōrma, -ae, f., form, appearance; beauty.

fōrmōsus, -a, -um, adj. [fōrma], beautiful, handsome.

forte, adv. [abl. of for, chance], perhaps, by chance.

fortis, -e, adj., strong; brave, valiant.

fortīter, adv. [fortis], bravely.

fortitūdō, -dinis, f. [fortis], fortitude, bravery.

fortūna, -ae, f. [fors], fortune.

forum, -ī, n., an open space; marketplace; especially, Forum Romanum, the Roman Forum.

forus, -ī, m., gangway; a row of seats in the theatre or circus, seats.

fossa, -ae, f. [fodiō, dig], ditch.

frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum, tr., break; weaken, dishearten.

frāter, frātris, m., brother.

frāternus, -a, -um, adj. [frāter], of a brother, brotherly.

fraus, fraudis, f., deceit, deception, fraud.

fremitus, -ūs, m. [fremō], roar, a roar, a loud noise.

(frendō, -ere,) intr., only in pres. participle, gnash the teeth.

frequēns, -entis, adj., crowded, in numbers.

fretum, -ī, n., a strait, channel.

frigidus, -a, -um, adj. [frigus], cold.

frigus, frigoris, n., cold, coldness.

fructūsus, -a, -um, adj. [fructus, fruit], fruitful, productive.

frūgēlitās, -atīs, f. [frūx], thriftiness, frugality.

frūmentum, -ī, n. [fruor], grain.

fruor, frūi, frūctus sum, intr. (takes ablative), enjoy, have the benefit of.

frūstrā, adv., in vain, to no purpose.

frūx, frūgis, f., usually pl., fruit, produce, crops.

Fūcinus, -ī, m., Fucinus, a lake of Latium, now Lago Fucino.

Fūfidius, -ī, m., Fufidius, a friend of L. Cornelius Sulla.

fuga, -ae, f., flight.

fugiō, -ere, fugī, fugitūrus, intr., flee.

fugītivus, -ī, m. [fugiō], a runaway, a fugitive slave.

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [fuga], rout, put to flight.

fulmen, -inis, n., lightning-flash, thunderbolt.

fūmus, -ī, m., smoke.

fundamentum, -ī, n. [fundō, found], foundation.

fundō, -ere, fūdi, fūsum, tr., pour, pour out; rout, defeat.
fundus, -i, m., farm, estate.

furōr, -ōris, m. [furō, to rage], madness, fury.

fürtum, -i, n. [furt, thief], theft.

futūrus, -a, -um, adj. [fut., part. of sum], yet to be, to come, future.

G
Gabii, -ōrum, m. pl., Gabii, a town in Latium.

Gabinus, -i, m., A. Gabinus, consul in 58 B.C.

Gabinus, -a, -um, adj., of Gabii; subst., Gabii, -ōrum, m. pl., the people of Gabii.

Gaetuli, -ōrum, m. pl., the Gaetulians, a people of northwestern Africa.

Gaius, -i, m., Gaius (or Caius), a Roman praenomen.

galea, -ae, f., helmet.

Galla, -ae, f., Gaul.

Gallicus, -a, -um, adj. [Gallia], of the Gauls, Gallic.

Gallus, -i, m., a Gaul; pl., the Gauls.

Garunna (less correctly, Garumna), -ae, m., the Garunna, a river of Gaul, now called the Garonne.

gaudeō, -ēre, gāvisus sum, semi-deponent, intr., rejoice, be glad.

gaudium, -i, n., joy, gladness.

gemīnī, -ōrum, m. pl., twins.

gemō, -ere, genui, —, intr., groan, lament.

Genava, -ae, f., Genava, a city on Lake Geneva, now Geneva.

gener, -erī, m., son-in-law.

generātim, adv. [genus], by kinds; by tribes, by nations.

gēns, gentis, -ium, f., nation, tribe.

genū, -ūs, n., knee.

genus, generis, n., race, family, birth, descent; kind, class.

Germānī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Germans.

Germānicus, -a, -um, adj., of the Germans, Germanic.

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum, tr., carry, carry on, wage; wear; wield.

Geryōn, -onis, m., Geryon, name of a Spanish giant.

gestō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [freq. of gerō], bear, carry, wear.

gigās, -antis, m., giant.

gignō, -ere, genui, genitus, tr., give birth to; beget.

gladius, -i, m., sword.

Glaucē, -ēs, f., Glaucē, daughter of Creon.

glōria, -ae, f., glory, fame.

glōrior, -āri, -ātus sum, intr. [glōria], boast, pride oneself.

glōriōsus, -a, -um, adj. [glōria], glorious, famous, renowned.

Gnaeus, -i, m., Gnaeus, abbr. Cn., a Roman praenomen.

Gorgō, -onis, f., a Gorgon.

gradus, -ūs, m., step, pace; pl., steps, stairs.

Graeae, -ārum, f. pl., the Graeae.

Graecia, -ae, f., Greece.

Graecus, -a, -um, adj., Greek, Grecian; subst., Graeci, -ōrum, m. pl., the Greeks.

Graiocelei, -ōrum, m. pl., the Graiocelei, a Gallic tribe in the Alps.

grandis, -e, adj., large, extensive.

graphium, -i, n., stylus, pen.

grātia, -ae, f. [grātus], favor, influence; gratitude, thanks, requital; grātiās agere, to express thanks; grātiam referre, to make requital. to requite; grātiā (with gen.), for the sake of.

grātulātiō, -ōnis, f. [grātulor], rejoicing, joy.

grātulor, -āri, -ātus sum, intr. [grātus], manifest joy, congratulate.

grātus, -a, -um, adj., pleasing; grateful.
gravis, -e, adj., heavy; difficult.
gravitās, -ātis, f. [gravis], heaviness; importance; dignity.
graviter, adv. [gravis], heavily; severely; with dignity, impressively.
gravor, -āri, -ātus sum, intr. [gravis], be reluctant, do unwillingly.

H habeō, -ère, -uī, -itum, tr., have, hold; treat; consider, regard.
habito, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr. [freq. of habeō], live, dwell.
Hādēs, -ae, m., Hades, the abode of the dead.
Haeduus, -a, -um, adj., Haeduan; subst., Haeduī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Haedui, the Haedians, a Gallic tribe.
haereō, -ère, haesi, haesurus, intr., stick, cling; hesitate.
haesito, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr. [freq. of haereō], stick fast, remain fixed, hesitate.
Hamilcar, -aris, m., Hamilcar, a Carthaginian general, father of Hannibal.
Hannibal, -alis, m., Hannibal, a famous Carthaginian general, son of Hamilcar.
Hammon, -onis, m., Hammon, an Egyptian god.
Hannō, -onis, m., Hanno, a prominent Carthaginian.
harēna (sometimes spelled arēna), -ae, f., sand; shore, beach.
Harpyiae, -ārum, f. pl., the Harpies.
Harūdēs, -um, m. pl., the Harudes, a German tribe.
harūspex, -icus, m., soothsayer.
Hasdrubal, -alis, m., (1) Hasdrubal, a Carthaginian general, son-in-law of Hamilcar; (2) another general of the same name, a little later in time.
合适的翻译: hasta, -ae, f., spear.
haurio, -ire, hausi, haesi, haesurus, intr., draw, drain; swallow.
Hesperidēs, -um, f. pl., the Hesperides.
Hierosolyma, -orum, n. pl., Jerusalem.
Hippolytē, -ēs, f., Hippolyte, queen of the Amazons.
Hispānia, -ae, f., Spain.
Histōria, -ae, f., narrative, history.
Homo, hominis, m., a man, a human being.
honestās, -ātis, f. [honor], honesty, honor.
haud, adv., not at all, by no means, not.
haud-quāquam, adv., by no means, not at all.
hauriō, -ère, hausī, haustum, tr., draw, drain; swallow.
Helvētius, -a, -um, adj., Helvetian, of the Helvetii; subst., Helvētii, -ōrum, m. pl., the Helvetii, the Helvetians, a Gallic people.
herba, -ae, f., herb; grass, turf.
Herculēs, -is, m., Hercules, a famous Greek hero.
hērēs, -ēdis, m. and f., heir, heiress.
Herminius, -i, m., T. Herminius, a hero of the early Roman Republic.
herī, adv., yesterday.
Hésionē, -ēs, f., Hesione, daughter of Laomedon.

合适的翻译: Hesperidēs, -um, f. pl., the Hesperides.
Hibernia, -ae, f., Ireland.
hibernus, -a, -um, adj., of winter; subst., hiberna, -ōrum, n. pl., winter-quarters.
hic, haec, hoc, dem. pron., this; the latter; the following; he, she, it.
hic, adv., here.
hiemō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr. [hiems], spend the winter, winter.
hiems, hiemis, f., winter.
Hibemia, -ae, /. Ireland.
homō, hominis, m., a man, a human being.
honor.
honestē, adv. [honestus], honorably, properly.

honestus, -a, -um, adj. [honor], honorable; honored, eminent.

honor, -ōris, m., honor, repute, esteem; Honōr, -ōris, m., Honor personified as a god.

honōrificus, -a, -um, adj. [honor + faciō], honorable, doing honor.

hōra, -ae, f., hour.

Horātius, -i, m., Horatius; (1) the name of three brothers who fought the Alban Curiatii; (2) the father of the three Horatii; (3) Horatius Cocles.

horreo, -ēre, -ui, —, intr. and tr., shudder, shudder at, dread.

horreum, -i, n., storehouse, granary.

horribilis, -e, adj. [horreo], terrible, fearful, dreadful.

hortor, -āri, -ātus sum, tr., urge, encourage, exhort.

hortus, -i, m., garden.

hospes, -itis, m., host, guest; friend, guest-friend.

hospitalium, -i, n. [hospes], hospitality.

Hostilius, -i, m., (1) Hostius Hostilius, a Roman commander in the time of Romulus; (2) Tullus Hostilius, third king of Rome.

hostis, hostis, -ium, m., enemy.

huc, adv. [hic], this way, to this place.

hūmānitas, -ātis, f. [hūmānus], culture; kindness.

hūmānus, -a, -um, adj. [homō], human; kind.

humi, adv. [locative of humus, ground], on the ground.

humilis, -e, adj. [humus, ground], low; humble.

Hydra, -ae, f., the Hydra.

Hylās, -ae, m., Hylas, one of the Argonauts.
impellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, tr. [in+pellō], drive forward; impel, urge on.
impendeō, -ère, —, —, intr. [in+pendeō], hang, hang over, overhang.
imperātor, -ōris, m. [imperō], general, commander.
imperātum, -ī, n. [p. part. of imperō], command, order.
imperitus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+peritus], inexperienced, unskilled.
imperium, -i, n. [imperō], power, authority.
imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr. [in+parō], command; control.
impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. and intr. [in+patrō, perform], gain, gain one’s request.
impetus, -ūs, m. [in+petō], attack, raid.
impiger, -gra, -grum, adj. [in+piger, lazy], industrious, energetic.
impigrē, adv. [impiger], energetically, industriously.
impleō, -ère, -ēvī, -ētum, tr. [in+pleō, fill], fill, fill up.
implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [in+plōrō, wail], implore, beseech.
impōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, tr. [in+pōnō], place upon, impose; put on board.
importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [in+portō], bring in, import.
imprēmis, adv. [in+abl. pl. of primus], especially, chiefly.
improubus, -a, -um, adj. [in+probus, honest], bad, wicked.
improuvisō, adv. [improuvisus, unforeseen], unexpectedly.
impugnō, -āre, -āvī, ātum, tr. [in+pugnō], attack, assail.
impiunē, adv. [compare in- and poena, penalty], with impunity.
impūnītās, -ātis, f. [compare impūne], impunity, freedom from punishment.
imus, -a, -um, adj. [contr. for infimus, superl. of inferus, lower], lowest, lowest part of, base of.
in, prep. with abl. and acc.; with abl., in, on; with acc., into, against.
in-, inseparable negative particle used in composition, not, un-, in-.
in-ambulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. walk up and down.
in-auditus, -a, -um, adj., unheard of, unusual.
incendium, -ī, n. [incendō], fire, conflagration.
incendō, -cendere, -cendi, -cēnsum, tr., set fire to, burn; irritate; make angry.
inceptum, -ī, n. [p. part. of incipió], beginning; attempt, undertaking.
icidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cidum, -a, -um, intr. [in+cadō], fall in, fall into.
icipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. and intr. [in+capió], begin.
in-citō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [citō, rouse], rouse, incite, instigate.
includō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsum, tr. [in+claudō], shut up, enclose.
in-cognitus, -a, -um, adj., unknown.
incola, -ae, m. and f. [incolō], inhabitant, resident.
in-colō, -colere, -colui, —, tr., inhabit.
incommodus, -e, adj., unharmed, safe.
in-commodum, -i, n., inconvenience, misfortune, loss.
icrēdibilis, -e, adj., incredible.
in-crepō, -crepāre, -crepuī, -crepātum, tr., resound; upbraid.
in-cumbō, -cumbere, -cubūi, -cubūtum, intr., lean upon; bend to, apply oneself to.
in-cūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [in+causa], accuse, complain of.
inde, adv., thence, from that place; from that time, then.
index, -dicis, m. and f., informer, witness; index, sign.
indicium, -ī, n., information, disclosure.

in-dicō, -dicere, -dixī, -dictum, tr., proclaim, declare, appoint.

in-dictus, -a, -um, adj., (not said), not pleaded, unheard.

indignātīō, -ōnis, f. [indignor], indignation.

indignitās, -ātis, f. [indignus], indignity, outrage.

in-dignor, -āri, -ātus sum, intr., be indignant, be offended.

in-dignus, -a, -um, adj., unworthy, undeserving.

in-dico, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, tr., lead in; move, induce.

indulged, -ere, indulsi, indultum, intr., be indulgent, be favorable.

induo, -duere, -dui, -dutum, tr., put on.

in-eo, -ire, -ii (or -ivi), -itum, tr., enter; enter upon, form.

iners, -ertis, adj. [in-+ars], idle, inert, indolent.

in-fandus, -a, -um, adj., unspeakable, shocking.

iu-fans, gen. -fantis, adj., without speech; subst., m. and f., infant, babe.

in-felix, -felicis, adj., unfortunate, unhappy.

inferī, -ōrum, m. pl. [inferus, below, lower], those of the lower world, the dead, the shades.

inferior, -ius, compar. adj., lower; inferior.

in-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, tr., bring upon, cause; allege; bellum inferre, make war on; signa inferre, advance to the attack, attack.

infestus, -a, -um, adj., unsafe; hostile.

inficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. [in+faciō], stain, dye, color.

in-flectō, -flectere, -flexī, -flexum, tr., bend, bow.

in-flō, -äre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., blow into, inflate.

in-fluō, -fluere, -flūxi, intr., flow into, empty into.

in-fōrmō, -äre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., shape, mould; instruct, educate.

infra, prep. with acc., below, underneath.

in-fundō, -fundere, -fūdi, -fūsum, tr., pour into, pour upon.

ingenium, -ī, n., intellect, ability, character; disposition.

ingēns, gen. ingentis, adj., huge, very large, very great.

ingenuus, -a, -um, adj., free-born.

ingrediō, -gredi, -gressus sum, tr. and intr. [in+gradior, step], step, enter, go into, advance.

inmīcitia, -ae, f. [inimicus], enmity, hostility.

inmīcus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+amicus], unfriendly, hostile; subst., inimicus, -ī, m., an enemy.

iniquus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+aequus], uneven; unfair, unjust.

initium, -ī, n. [ineō], beginning.

injiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, tr. [in+jacio], throw into, hurl upon; inspire in, cause.

injurīa, -ae, f. [in+jūs], injury; injuriā, unjustly.

(in-jussus -ūs) m. [in+jubeō], only abl. injussū, without command, without order.

in-jūstus, -a, -um, adj. unjust.

in-nascor, -nāsci, -nātus sum, intr., be born in, spring up, arise.

in-nitor, -niti, -nixus sum, intr., lean upon, support oneself by.

innocentia, -ae, f. [innocēns, harmless, blameless], honesty, innocence.

in-noxius, -a, -um, adj., harmless, innocent.
inopia, -ae, f. [inops], want, lack; poverty.
in-opinâns, gen. inopinantis, adj. [in-+ pres. part. of opinor, suppose], not expecting, unawares, off one's guard.
inops, -opis, adj. [in+ops], poor, destitute.
inquam, inquis, inquit, intr. defect., say, employed in direct quotations.
in-sciêns, gen. -scientis, adj., unknowing, without knowledge, unawares.
in-scius, -a, -um, adj., unknowing, unaware.
in-sequens, gen., -sequentis, adj. [pres. part, of insequor], following, next.
in-sequor, -sequi, -secutus sum, tr. and intr., follow after, pursue, follow up.
insidia, -árum, f. pl., snare; ambush, ambush; plot.
insigne, insignis, -ium, n., [insignis], badge, decoration.
insignis, -e, adj. [in+signum], noted, eminent, distinguished.
insiliô, -silire, -silui, —, intr. [in+saliô, leap], leap in, leap upon.
insolenter, adv. [insolêns, insolent], haughtily, insolently.
inspergô, -spergere, -spersi, -spersum, tr., sprinkle over.
inspicio, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, look into, look.
instituô, -stituere, -stitui, -stîtûm, tr.[in+statuô], establish, institute, appoint; train.
institutum, -î, n., custom, usage.
in-stô -stâre, -stîti, -stâtûrus, intr., approach, be at hand; press on.
instrumentum, -î, n., implement, tool; as collective in the sing., implements, tools.
in-struô, -struere, -strûxi, -strûctum, tr., draw up, arrange; furnish, equip.
insula, -ae, f., island.
in-sum, -esse, -fuî, intr., be in, be upon.
integer, -gra, -grum, adj., untouched, unhurt; fresh, vigorous.
intellegô, -legere, -lêxi, -lêctum, tr. [inter+legô], perceive, understand, know.
in-tendo, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum, tr., stretch; bend, aim.
intentus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of intendô], attentive, intent.
inter, prep. with acc., among, between.
intercipiô, -cipere, -cêpi, -ceptum, tr. [inter+capiô], intercept.
interclûdô, -clûdere, -clûsi, -clûsum, tr. [inter+claudô], cut off.
interdicô, -dîcere, -dîxi, -dictum, tr., forbid, interdict.
interdiû, adv., during the day, by day.
inter-dum, adv., sometimes, from time to time.
inter-eà, adv., meanwhile, in the meantime.
interficiô, -ficere, -fêci, -fectum, tr. [inter+faciô], kill, slay.
interim, adv., meanwhile, in the meantime.
interimô, -imere, -êmi, -êemptum, tr. [inter+emô, take out], destroy, slay, kill.
interjiciô, -jicere, -jêci, -jectum, tr. [inter+jaciô], throw between, interpose.
inter-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr., suspend, interrupt; let pass; pass., intervene.
interneciô, -ônis, f., slaughter, extermination.
interpellô, -âre, -âvî, -âtum, tr., interrupt, obstruct.
interpres, -etis, m., interpreter.
interpretor, -âri, -âtus sum, tr. [interpres], explain, interpret.
inter-regnum, -i, n., interregnum.
inter-rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., ask, question.
inter-sum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, intr., be between, lie between; be present at, attend.
inter-vallum, -i, n., interval, distance.
in-tolerābilis, adj., intolerable, unbearable.
intrā, prep. with acc., within.
intrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., enter.
introitus, -ús, m. [introeō, go in]; entrance.
in-tueor, -tueri, -tuitus sum, tr., look upon, gaze at; protect, defend.
in-undo, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., over-flow, inundate.
in-usitatus, -a, -um, adj., unusual, extraordinary.
in-venio, -venire, -veni, -ventum, tr. and intr. [in+venio, find, come upon, come into.
in-victus, -a, -um, adj., unconquered, invincible.
in-videō, -vidēre, -vidī, -visum, intr., envy, be jealous of.
invidia, -ae, f. [invidus, envious]; envy, jealous.
invitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., invite.
invisus, -a, -um, adj., unwilling.
Iolāus, -ī, m., Iolaus, a companion of Hercules.
Iolē, -ēs, f., Iole, daughter of Eurystus.
Iphiclēs, -is, m., Iphicles, brother of Hercules.
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, dem. pron., self, himself, herself, itself; pl., themselves.
ira, -ae, f., anger, wrath, ire.
iracundus, -a, -um, adj. [īra], irritable, passionate.
irātus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of irāscor], angry, angered.
irideō, -ridēre, -rīsi, -rīsum, intr. [in+rideō], laugh at, jeer, mock.
irridiculē, adv. [in+ridiculē, absurdly], without wit, without humor.
irrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum, tr. and intr. [in+rumpō, burst], break in, rush into, burst into.
irruō, -ruere, -rūi, —, intr., rush in, rush upon.
is, ea, id, demonstr. pron., this, that; he, she, it.
iste, ista, istud, demonstr. pron., that of yours, that.
Isthmus, -i, m., the Isthmus (of Corinth).
ita, adv., so, in such a way, thus.
Italia, -ae, f., Italy.
ita-que, conj., and so, accordingly, therefore.
item, adv., likewise, also.
iter, itineris, n., road, march, journey.
iterum, adv., again, a second time.

J
jaceō, -ēre, jacuī, —, intr., lie, be prostrate.
jacio, jacere, jecī, jactum, tr., throw, cast, hurl.
jactātiō, -onis, f. [jactō], tossing, motion.
jactō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [freq. of jaciō], toss about; discuss.
jam, adv., already, now; nōn jam, no longer.
Jāniculum, -ī, n., the Janiculum, a hill in Rome, west of the Tiber.
Jānus, -ī, m., Janus, the Roman god of beginnings and of doors and entrances.
Jāson, -onis, m., Jason, leader of the Argonauts.
jocus, -i, m., jest, joke.
juba, -ae, f., mane.
Juba, -ae, m., Juba, a king of Numidia.
jubeō, -ère, jussī, jussum, tr., order, command.
jūcundus, -a, -um, adj., pleasant, agreeable.
Jūdaeī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Jews.
jūdex, -icis, m., judge.
jūdicium, -ī, n. [jūdex], judgment; trial; court.
jūdicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [jūdex], judge, decide.
jūgerum, -ī (gen. pl. jūgerum), n., an acre, a juger (about two-thirds of an English acre).
jugulum, -ī, n. [jugum], throat, neck.
jugum, -i, n., yoke.
Jugurtha, -ae, m., Jugurtha, a king of Numidia.
Jugurthinus, -a, -um, adj., of or with Jugurtha, Jugurthine.
Jūlia, -ae, f., Julia, a woman's name.
Jūlius, -i, m., see Caesar.
jūmentum, -ī, n. [compare jugum and jungō], draught-animal, beast of burden.
jungō, -ere, jūnxi, jūnctum, tr., join, fasten together; form.
jūnior, adj. [compar. of juvenis], younger.
Jūnius, -ī, m., L. Junius Brutus, one of the first two consuls of Rome.
Jūnō, -ōnis, f., Juno, queen of the gods.
Juppiter, Jovis, m., Jupiter, king of the gods.
Jūra, -ae, m., the Jura, a chain of mountains between the Rhine and the Rhone.
jūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr. [jūs], swear, take oath.
jūs, jūris, n., right, law, justice.
Jūs jūrandum, jūris jūrandī, n., an oath.
jussum, -ī, n. [p. part. of jubeō], order, command.
(jussus, -ūs), m., only in the abl., jussū, by order, command, decree.
jūstitia, -ae, f. [jūstus], justice.
jūstus, -a, -um, adj. [jūs], just, upright.
juvenis, -is, adj., young, youthful; subst. m., young man, a youth.
juvō, -āre, jūvī, jūtum, tr., help, assist.
jūxtā, prep. with acc., next to, near.

K
Kal., abbr. for Kalendae, -ārum, f. pl., the Calends, the first day of each month in the Roman calendar.

L
L., abbr. for Lucius.
Labiēnus, -ī, m., Titus Atius Labienus, an officer in Caesar's army.
lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum, intr., glide, slip, fall.
labor, -ōris, m., labor, toil.
lāboriōsē, adv. [lāboriōsus, toilsome], laboriously.
lāborō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr. and tr. [labor], work; suffer, be in pain; be in difficulties; labor for.
Lacedaemonius, -a, -um, adj., Lacedaemonian, of Lacedaemon (a city of Laconia).
lacessō, -cessere, -cessivi, -cessītum, tr., provoke, challenge, attack.

Lacoñiā, -ae, f., Laconia, a country of the Peloponnesus.
lacrīma, -ae, f., tear.
lacūs, -ūs, m., lake.
laedō, laedere, laesi, laesum, tr., injure, offend.
laetītia, -ae, f. [laetus], joy, happiness.
laetor, -āri, -ātus sum, intr. [laetus], rejoice, be delighted.
laetūs, -a, -um, adj., joyful, happy, glad.
laeva, -ae, f. [laevus, on the left side], the left hand.
Lāomedōn, -ontis, m., Laomedon, a king of Troy.
lapis, lapidis, m., stone.
laqueus, -i, m., noose.
Larcius, -i, m., Spurius Larcius, a hero of the early Roman republic.
Lārentia, -ae, f., Larentia, wife of Faustulus.
largior, -īrī, -ītus sum, tr. and intr. [lārgus, abundant], give lavishly.
largiter, adv. [lārgus, abundant], in abundance, much.
largītō, -ōnis, f. [lārgior], lavish giving, generosity.
Lārissa, -ae, f., Larissa, a city of Thessaly.
Lars, Lartis, m., Lars Porsena, a king of Clusium.
lassitūdō, -dinis, f. [lassus, weary], weariness.
lātē, adv. [lātus], widely, far and wide, extensively.
latebræ, -ārum, f. pl. [lāteō], hiding-place.
lateō, -ēre, latuī, —, intr., lie hid, be hidden.
Latīnē, adv. [Latinus], in Latin.
Latīnī, -ōrum, m. pl. [Latinus, adj.], the Latins, a nation of central Italy.
Latīnus, -a, -um, adj., of Latium, Latin.
Latīnus, -i, m., Latinus, a king of the Laurentines.
lātitūdō, -dinis, f. [lātus], width.
Latium, -i, n., Latium, a district of west central Italy.
Latobrigī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Latobrigi, a German tribe.
latrō, -ōnis, m., robber, brigand.
lātus, -a, -um, adj., wide, broad.
latus, lateris, n., side; flank, wing.
laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [laus], praise, laud.
laurea, -ae, f., laurel-tree; laurel wreath.
Laurentēs, -um, m. pl., the people of Laurentum, the Laurentines.
Laurentum, -i, n., Laurentum, a town of Latium.
laus, laudis, f., praise, glory.
Lāvinia, -ae, f., Lavinia, daughter of King Latinus.
Lavinium, -i, n., Lavinium, a city of Latium.
lectica, -ae, f. [lectus], a litter, sedan.
lectus, -i, m., couch, bed.
lēgātiō, -ōnis, f. [lēgō, appoint as deputy], embassy, legation.
lēgātus, -i, m. [p. part. of lēgō, appoint as deputy], lieutenant, ambassador, envoy.
legiō, -ōnis, f., legion.
legiōnārius, -a, -um, adj. [legiō], legionary.
lēgitimus, -a, -um, adj. [lēx], fixed by law, legal.
lēgō, legere, lēgī, lēctum, tr., collect; choose; read.
Lemannus, -i, m., Lake Geneva.
lēnis, -e, adj., mild, gentle.
lēnitās, -ātis, f. [lēnis], smoothness, gentleness.
Lentulus, -i, m., P. Cornelius Lentulus, Cicero's son-in-law.
leō, -ōnis, m., lion.
Lernaeus, -a, -um, adj., of Lerna (a marsh near Argos), Lernaean.
Lēthē, -ēs, f., Lethe, the river of forgetfulness in the lower world.
Leuci, -ōrum, m. pl., the Leuci, a tribe of Celtic Gaul.
levis, -e, adj., light, slight, trifling.
leviter, adv. [levis], lightly, slightly.
lēx, légis, f., law.
libenter, adv. [libēns, willing], willingly, with pleasure.
liber, librī, m., book.
liber, libera, liberum, adj., free.
liberalis, -e, adj. [liber], befitting a freeman; honorable, liberal.
liberalitas, -ātis, f. [liberalis], generosity, liberality.
liberator, -ōris, m. [liberō], liberator.
libere, adv. [liber], freely, boldly.
liberi, -ōrum, m. pl. [liber], children.
libeō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [liber], set free, free, liberate, release.
libertas, -ātis, f. [liber], freedom, liberty.
libertos, -ī, m. [liber], freedman.
Libya, -ae, f., Libya, a country of northern Africa.
licentia, -ae, f. [licēns, free], freedom, license; boldness.
līceor, -ērī, līcītus sum, intr., bid, make a bid.
līcēt, līcēre, līcūt, impers., it is permitted, it is allowed, one may.
Lichas, -ae, m., Lichas, a companion of Hercules.
līctor, -ōris, m., lictor.
ligneus, -a, -um, adj. [lignum], of wood, wooden.
lignum, -i, n., wood, firewood.
Ligurēs, -um, m. pl., the Ligures, the people of Liguria.
Liguria, -ae, f., Liguria, a district of northern Italy.
limen, -inis, n., threshold, door.
limus, -ī, m., mud, mire.
Ligonēs, -um, m. pl., the Lingones, a people of Celtic Gaul.
lingua, -ae, f., language, tongue.
linter, -tris, f., boat, skiff.
Linus, -ī, m., Linus, a centaur who instructed Hercules in music.
Liscus, -ī, m., Liscus, chief magistrate of the Haeduī.
littera, -ae, f., a letter (of the alphabet); pl., a letter, an epistle; literature.
litterātus, -a, -um, adj. [littera], of letters, learned, educated.
litūs, litorīs, n., sea-shore, beach.
locus, -ī, m. (pl. loca, -ōrum, n.), place.
longē, adv. [longus], far, at a distance; by far.
longīnquus, -a, -um, adj. [longus], remote, distant; lengthy, long.
longītūdō, -inis, f. [longus], length.
longus, -a, -um, adj., long.
līquor, loqui, locūtus sum, intr., speak.
lōrum, -ī, n., thong, strap.
Lūcīus, -ī, m., Lucius, a Roman praenomen.
Lucrētia, -ae, f., Lucretia, whose death caused the expulsion of king Tarquin.
lūctor, -ārī, -ātus sum, intr., wrestle, contend, struggle.
lūctus, -ūs, m. [lūgeō, mourn], sorrow, mourning, affliction.
Lūcullus, -ī, m., L. Licinius Lucullus, a noted Roman general of the last century B.C.
Lucumō, -ōnis, m., Lucumo, an Etruscan name; the original name of Tarquinius Priscus.
lūdībrium, -ī, n. [compare lūdūs], object of ridicule, mockery.
lūdīcru, -ī, n. [compare lūdūs], sport, game; public exhibition.
lūdus, -ī, m., game, sport.
lūmen, -inis, n. [compare lūx], light, a light.
lūna, -ae, f., the moon.
lupa, -ae, f., a she-wolf.
lūx, lūcis, f., light; primā luce, at dawn.
lūxuriōsus, -a, -um, adj. [lūxuria, luxury], luxurious, voluptuous.
lūxus, -ūs, m., luxury, splendor.
macellum, -i, n., a meat-market.

maeror, -ōris, m. [maereō, be sad], mourning, sorrow.

maestus, -a, -um, adj. [maereō, be sad], sad, sorrowful.

magicus, -a, -um, adj., magical, magic.

magis, compar. adv., more, rather.

magister, -trī, m., master, teacher.

magistrātus, -ūs, m. [magister], magistracy, office; magistrate.

magnificus, -a, -um, adj., [magnus, magnus+facio], splendid, fine, magnificent.

magnitudo, -inis, /. [magnus], size, magnitude.

magnopere, adv. [magnō+opere], greatly.

magnus, -a, -um, adj., large, great.

Magnus, -ī, m., the Great, a cognomen of Cn. Pompeius.

majestās, -ātis, f. [major], dignity, majesty.

major, majus, adj. [compar. of magnus], larger, greater; major nātū, older; subst., majōrēs, -um, m. pl., ancestors.

male, adv. [malus], badly, ill; compar. pejus, superl. pessimē.

maleficium, -i, n. [male+faciō], an evil deed; mischief, injury.

målō, målle, målui, —, tr. [magis+volō], prefer.

malum, -ī, n. [malus], evil; misfortune.

malus, -a, -um, adj., bad.

mandātum, -ī, n. [p. part. of mandō], injunction, command.

mandō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [manus+dō], consign, intrust.

māne, adv., in the morning, early in the morning.

manēō, -ēre, mãnśi, mãnsum, intr., remain.

mānēs, -ium, m. pl., a departed spirit, shade, ghost.

manifestus, -a, -um, adj.; clear, evident, manifest.

Mānius, -ī, m., L. Manlius Vulso, consul in 256 B.C.

mānsuētūdō, -inis, f. [mānsuētus, mild], mildness, gentleness, clemency.

manubiae, -ārum, f. pl., booty, prize-money.

manus, -ūs, f., hand; band (of armed men).

Marcomanni, -ōrum, m. pl., the Marcomanni, a German tribe.

Mārcus, -ī, m., Marcus, a Roman praenomen.

mare, maris, n., the sea.

maritus, -ī, m., husband.

Marius, -ī, m., C. Marius, a famous Roman general, consul seven times, died 86 B.C.

marmor, -oris, n., marble.

Mārs, Mārtis, m., the Roman god of war.

Mārtius, -a, -um, adj. [Mārs], of Mars; of the month of March; Campus Mārtius, the Campus Martius, an open field and drill-ground in Rome on the bank of the Tiber.

Masinissa, -ae, m., Masinissa, a king of Numidia.

Massiva, -ae, m., Massiva, grandson of Masinissa.

matara, -ae, f., javelin, pike.

mātēr, -tris, f., mother.

mātrimōnium, -i, n. [māter], marriage; in mātrimōnium dare, give in marriage, arrange a marriage for; in mātrimōnium dūcere, marry.

mātrōna, -ae, f. [māter], married woman, wife, matron.

Matrona, -ae, f., the river Marne.

mātūrē, adv. [mātūrus], early, quickly, soon.

mātūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr. [mātūrus], set about early, hasten.
matūrus, -a, -um, adj., full grown, mature, ripe.

maximē, superl. adv. [maximus], in the highest degree, most, especially, exceedingly.

maximus, -a, -um, adj. [superlative of magnus], largest, greatest.

Mēdēa, -ae, f., Medea, wife of Jason.

medicāmentum, -i, n. [medeōr, heal], drug, antidote.

medicinae, -ae, f. [medeōr, heal], the healing art, medicine.

medicus, -a, -um, adj. [medeōr, heal], of healing, medical.

medicus, -ī, m. [medicus, medical], physician, surgeon.

mediocris, adv. [mediōrus, medium], moderately, slightly.

meditor, -āri, -ātus sum, intr. and tr., reflect; meditate, plan.

medium, -ī, n. [medius], the middle, the intervening space.

medius, -a, -um, adj., middle, intervening, middle of.

Medūsa, -ae, f., Medusa, a Gorgon.

melior, -ius, adj. [compar. of bonus], better.

membrum, -ī, n., limb, member.

meminī, infin. meminisse, defect., tr., remember.

memoria, -ae, f., [memor, mindful], memory, remembrance.

memorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [memor, mindful], mention, recount, relate.

Menēnius, -ī, m., Menenius Agrippa, a prominent Roman of the early Republic.

mēns, mentis, f., the mind.

mēnsa, -ae, f., table.

mēnsis, mēnsis, -ium or -um, m., month.

mentīō, -onis, f., mention.

mercātor, -ōris, m. [mercōr, to trade], trader, merchant.

mercennārius, -a, -um, adj. [mercès, hired, paid; subst., mercennārius, -i, m., hired servant.

mercès, -ēdis, f., hire, pay, fee.

Mercurius, -ī, m., Mercury, messenger of the gods and god of traders.

mereō, -ère, merui, meritum, and mereor, -ēri, meritus sum, tr. and intr., be deserving, deserve, merit.

mergō, -ère, mersī, mersum, tr., plunge, sink.

meridiēs, -ēi, m. [medius+diēs], mid-day, noon; the south.

meritum, -i, n. [p. part. of mereō], merit, desert.

meritus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of mereō], due, deserved, just.

merx, mercis, f., goods, merchandise.

Messāla, -ae, m., M. Valerius Messala, consul in 61 B.C.

-met, an enclitic suffix, self, own.

Metellus, -ī, m., Q. Caecilius Metellus Numidicus, consul in 109 B.C.

mētior, -īri, mēnsus sum, tr., measure; deal out, distribute.

Metius, -ī, m., M. Metius, employed by Julius Caesar as an envoy to Ariovistus.

Mettius, -ī, m., Mettius Fufetius, an Alban dictator.

metuō, -ere, metui, —, tr. [metus], fear, dread.

meus, -a, -um, adj. [mē], my, mine.

migrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., migrate, remove.

miles, militis, m., soldier.

militāris, -e, adj. [miles], military.

militō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. [miles], serve as a soldier, wage war.

mille, num. adj. (pl. milia, -ium, neuter noun), thousand.

milliēs, adv. [mille], a thousand times.
minae, -ārum, f. pl., threats.

Minerva, -ae, f., Minerva, the goddess of wisdom.

minimē, superl. adv. [minimus], least, very little; by no means, not at all.

minimus, -a, -um, adj. [superl. of parvus], least, smallest, very small; youngest.

ministerium, -i, n. [minister, servant], office, service, labor.

minor, -āri, -ātus sum, tr. [freq. of minor, threaten], threaten, menace.

minor, minus, adj. [compar. of parvus], less, smaller; minor nātū, younger.

Minōs, -ōis, m., Minos, a judge in the lower world.

Minturnae, -ārum, f. pl., Minturnae, a city of Latium.

Minucius, -i, m., M. Minucius Rufus, master of horse in 217 B.C.

minuō, -ere, minuī, minūtum, tr., diminish, weaken, impair.

minus, adv. [nct. of minor], less.

Minyae, -ārum, m. pl., the Minyae, neighbors of the Thebans.

mirabilis, -e, adj. [miror], wonderful.

mirāculum, -i, n. [miror], marvel, miracle.

miror, -āri, -ātus sum, tr. and intr. [mirus], be astonished; wonder at.

mirus, -a, -um, adj., wonderful, strange.

miser, -era, -erum, adj., unhappy.

misericordia, -ae, f. [misericors, compassionate], pity, compassion.

miseror, -āri, -ātus sum, tr. [miser], lament, bewail.

Mithridātēs, -is, m., Mithridates, a king of Pontus.

Mithridaticus, -a, -um, adj., of or with Mithridates, Mithridatic.

mitis, -e, adj., mild, gentle, kind.

mittō, -ere, misī, missum, tr., send, hurl.

moderātiō, -ōnis, f. [moderor, to control], moderation, self-control.

modo, adv. [abl. of modus], only; merely; a little while ago, recently.

modus, -i, m., manner, kind, way; limit, measure.

mœnia, -ium, n. pl., walls (of a city).

mola, -ae, f., meal, coarse flour.

molestē, adv. [molestus], with difficulty, with vexation; molestē ferre, to be annoyed.

molestia, -ae, f. [molestus], vexation, annoyance.

molestus, -a, -um, adj. [mölēs, a load], troublesome, annoying.

mōlimentum, -i, n. [mōlior, make exertion], trouble, effort.

mollis, -e, adj., soft.

molō, -ere, molui, molitum, tr. [mola], grind; molitus, -a, -um, p. part. as adj., ground.

Molō, see Apollōnius.

moneō, -ere, monuī, monitum, tr., warn, advise.

monitus, -ūs, m. [moneō], admonition, advice.

mōns, montis, -ium, m., mountain.

mōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [mōnstrum], show, exhibit; point out.

mōnstrum, -i, n. [moneō], a divine omen, portent; monster.

mora, -ae, f., delay.

morbus, -i, m., sickness, disease.

mordeō, -ere, momordi, morsum, tr., bite.

moribundus, -a, -um, adj. [morior], dying.

morior, morī, mortuus sum, intr., die.

moror, -āri, -ātus sum, tr. and intr. [mora], delay, linger; hinder.

mors, mortis, f., death.

mortālis, -e, adj. [mors], mortal; subst., mortālis, -is, m., a mortal, a person.
mortifer, -era, -erum, adj. [mors + ferō], death-dealing, deadly.
mortuus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of morior], dead.
mōs, mōris, m., custom.
mūtus, -ūs, m. [moveō], movement; disturbance, tumult.
moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum, tr., move.
mox, adv., soon, presently.
mūgiō, -īre, -īvī, —, intr., low, bello.
mūgitus, -ūs, m. [mūgiō], lowing, bellowing.
muliebris, -e, adj. [mulier], of a woman.
mulier, -ēris, f., woman.
multitūdō, -inis, f. [multus], multitude.
multō, adv. [abl. of multum], by much, much, by far, far.
multō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [multa, a fine], punish, fine.
multum, adv. [acc. of multum], much, greatly.
multus, -a, -um, adj., much; pl. many; subst., multum, -i, n., much.
mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, tr. [moenia], fortify, protect; build (a road).
mūniō, -onis, f. [mūniō], fortification, intrenchment.
nāvica, mūneris, n., service, duty; present, gift.
mūrus, -ī, m., wall.
mūsica, -ae, f., music.
mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [freq. of moveō], change.
mūtuus, -a, -um, adj. [mūtō], mutual.

Nanciscor, -i, nactus sum, tr., get, obtain; meet with, find.
nārrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., tell, relate.
nāscor, -i, natus sum, intr., be born; arise, grow.
Nasua, -ae, m., Nasua, a leader of the Suebi, a German tribe.
nāsus, -i, m., nose.
nātō, -ōnis, f. [nāscor], race, nation, people.
natō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. [freq. of nō, swim], swim, float.
nātūra, -ae, f. [nāscor], nature.
nātūrālis, -e, adj. [nātūra], of nature, natural.
naufragium, -i, n. [compare nāvis and frangō], shipwreck.
nauta, -ae, m. [for nāvita; compare nāvis], sailor.
nauticus, -a, -um, adj. [nauta], naval, nautical.
nāvālis, -e, adj. [nāvis], of ships, nautical, naval.
nāvicula, -ae, f. [dim. of nāvis], boat, skiff.
nāvigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. [nāvis + agō], sail, navigate.
nāvis, nāvis, -ium, f., ship, boat.
-ne, enclitic particle employed as the sign of a direct question that may be answered by “yes” or “no”.
nē, conj., that . . . not, in order that . . . not; after words of fear, that; as adv., not; nē . . . quidem, not even, not . . . either.
necessāriō, adv. [abl. of necessarium], unavoidably, necessarily.
necessārius, -a, -um, adj. [necesse], necessary, unavoidable, pressing; subst., necessārii, -orum, m. pl., connections, kinsmen.
necessē, indecl. adj., necessary.
necessitūdō, -inis, f. [necesse], close relationship, intimaey.
nec-ne, adv., or not, used in double questions.

eccô, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [nex], kill, put to death.

nefāstus, -a, -um, adj. [nefās, wrong, crime], unhallowed; diēs nefāstus, a day not open to the transaction of state business.

neglegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, tr. [neg+legō], disregard, neglect, slight.

negō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr., say no, say that not; refuse, deny.

negōtium, -i, n. [neg+ōtium], business; matter, affair, task; difficulty, trouble.

Nemaeus, -a, -um, adj., Nemean, of Nemea (a city of Argolis).

Nemetēs, -um, m. pl., the Nemetes, a German tribe.

nēmō, dat. nēminī, acc. nēminem, no gen. or abl., m. and f. [ne+homō], no one.

nepōs, -ōtis, m., grandson.

Neptūnus, -i, m., Neptune, god of the sea.

nē-quāquam, adv., by no means, not at all.

ne-que, conj., nor, and ... not.

nervus, -i, m., sinew, muscle, power, strength.

ne-sciō, -ire, -ivi, —, tr., not know, be ignorant.

Nessus, -i, m., Nessus, a centaur.

neuter, -tra, -trum, pronom. adj. [ne+uter], neither.

nē-ve, conj., and that not, and not.

nex, necis, f., death, murder.

nī, conj., if not, unless.

niger, -gra, -grum, adj., black.

nihil, indecl., n. [ne+hilum, a shred], nothing.

nihilum, -i, n. [ne+hilum, a shred], nothing; esp. in the abl. with a compar., e.g. nihilō minus, none the less.

Nilus, -i, m., the river Nile.

nimbus, -i, m., rain-storm; thundercloud.

nis, conj. [ne+sī], unless, if not; adv., except.

nītor, -i, nīxus or nīsus sum, intr., lean; strive; rely, depend upon.

nīx, nīvis, f., snow.

nōbilis, -e, adj. [nōtus], famous, well known; noble; subst., nōbilēs, -ium, m. pl., the nobles, the nobility.

nōbilitās, -ātis, f. [nōbilis], high birth; collect., the nobility, the nobles.

noceō, -ère, nocui, nocitum, intr., injure.

noctū, adv. [nox], at night, by night.

nocturnus, -a, -um, adj. [nox], nightly, at night, night (as adjective).

nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, tr. and intr. [ne+volō], be unwilling, not to wish.

nōmen, -inis, n., name.

nōminātim, adv. [nōminō], by name, in detail.

nōminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [nōmen], call by name, mention.

nōn, adv., not.

nōnāgintā, indecl. num., ninety.

nōn-dum, adv., not yet.

nōn-nūllos, -a, -um, adj., some, several.

nōn-numquam, adv., sometimes, a few times.

Nōreia, -ae, f., Noreia, a town of Noricum, now Neumarkt.

Nōricus, -a, -um, adj., of Noricum (a district south of the Danube).

nōs, pl. of ego.

noster, -tra, -trum, adj. [nōs], our, ours.

nōtus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of nōscō, learn, know], known, familiar.
novem, indecl. num., nine.

novitās, -ātis, f. [novus], newness, novelty.

novus, -a, -um, adj., new; superl., last, latest; novissimūs agmen, the rear line (of an army); subst., novissimīs, -ōrum, m. pl., those in the rear line, the rear line.

nox, noctis, -ium, f., night.

num, interrog. particle, introducing a question expecting a negative answer; with indirect questions, whether.

Numa, -ae, m., Numa Pompilius, second king of Rome.

numerus, -i, m., number.

Numida, -ae, m., a Numidian, an inhabitant of Numidia.

Numidia, -ae, f., Numidia, a country of northern Africa.

Numitor, -ōris, m., Numitor, a king of Alba.

nummus, -i, m., a coin.

numquam, adv. [ne+umquam], never.

nunc, adv., now.

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [nūntiōs], announce, report.

nūntius, -i, m., messenger, message.

nūper, adv., newly, lately, recently.

nūptiae, -ārum, f. pl. [nūbō], marriage, wedding.

nusquam, adv. [ne+usquam], nowhere.

nūtrīo, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, tr., nourish, nurse.

nūtus, -ūs, m. [nuō, nod], a nod; hint.

nympha, -ae, f., nymph.
ob-viam, adv., in the way, to meet.
ob-volvō, -volvere, -volvī, -volvūtum, 
tr., wrap round, enfold.
occāsiō, -ōnis, f. [ob+cadō], opportunity, occasion, chance.
occāsus, -ūs, m. [ob+cāsus], falling down, setting; sólis occāsus, sunset.
occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsum, intr. [ob+cadō], fall; set (applied to the sun); occidēns, -entis, pres. part. as adj., setting.
occidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsum, tr. [ob+caedō], cut down, kill.
occulta, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [frc. of occultō, hide], hide, keep concealed.
occultus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of occultō, hide], hidden, concealed; subst. n., in occultō, in secret.
occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., seize.
occurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, intr. [ob+currō], run to meet, meet.

Oceanus, -ī, m., the Ocean.
oceulum, -ī, n., Oceulum, a town on the western edge of Cisalpine Gaul.
octāvianus, -ī, m., Octavian, grand-nephew of Julius Caesar, better known as the Emperor Augustus.
octāvius, -ī, m., Octavius Mamilius, a leader among the early Latin peoples.

dō, indecl. num., eight.
dōgintā, indecl. num., eighty.
occulus, -ī, m., eye.
oē, odisse, osārus, defect., tr., hate.
odiō, -ōnis, n. [ōdī], hatred.
odor, -ōris, m., smell, odor.
oechalia, -ae, f., Oechalia, a town of Euboea.
oeneus, -ī, m., Oeneus, father of Δεάνηρ.
oeta, -ae, f., Oeta, a mountain in Thessaly.

offendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēnsum, tr. [ob+fendō, strike], offend.
offēnsiō, -ōnis, f. [offendō], offense.
offereō, -ferre, obtuli, oblātum, tr. [ob+ferō], bring before, offer.
officium, -i, n. [opus+faciō], duty, service.
ōlim, adv., formerly, once upon a time.

Olympus, -i, m., Olympus, a mountain on the frontiers of Macedonia and Thessaly.
ōmen, -inis, n., omen.
omittō, -ere, omisī, omissum, tr. [ob+mittō], let go; neglect.
omnīō, adv. [omnis], altogether, entirely, at all; only.
omnis, -e, adj., all.
onerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [onus, a burden], load, fill.
onustus, -a, -um, adj. [onus, a burden], loaded, burdened.
operator, -ae, f. [opus], effort, labor, toil.
operandus, -i, m. [opera], laborer, workman.
operiō, -ire, operui, operatum, tr., cover, cover over, conceal.
opiniō, -ōnis, f. [ opinor, suppose], opinion; expectation.
oporēt, oportēre, oportuit, impers., it is necessary, it is proper, one must, one ought.
oppidānī, -ōrum, m. pl. [oppidum], townspeople, inhabitants of a town.
oppidum, -i, n., town.
opportuñē, adv. [opportūnus], fitly, opportunely.
opportūnus, -a, -um, adj. [ob+portus], fit, seasonable, opportune.
opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, tr. [ob+premō], press down, weigh down, overwhelm, overpower.
oppugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [ob+pugnō], attack.
opūs, opis, f. power; pl., resources, influence.
optimē, superl. adv. [optimus], best.
opimus, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of bonum), best.
opus, operis, n., work, task, need.
oraculum, -i, n. [ōrō], oracle.
orātiō, -onis, f. [ōrō], oration.
orātor, -ōris, m. [ōrō], orator.
orbis, orbis, -ium, m., ring, circle; orbis terrārum, the earth, the world.
Orcus, -ī, m., Orcus, the lower world.
ōrdō, ordinis, m., order, rank.
Orgetorīx, -īgis, m., Orgetorix, a Helvetian chieftain.
origō, originis, f. [oricor], origin.
oricīr, orītus sum, intr., rise, arise; break out; orīēns, -entis, pres. part. as adj., rising.
orāmentum, -i, n. [ōrō], equipment; mark of honor, ornament.
ōrnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., fit out, furnish, equip; adorōn, -entis, -entum, tr. [ōs], beg, entertain, ask for.
Orpheus, -ī, m., Orpheus, a famous musician of Thrace.
ōs, ōris, n., mouth.
ōsculor, -āri, -ātus sum, tr. [ōsculum], to kiss.
ōsculum, -i, n. [ōs], a kiss.
ostendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum, tr. [ob+tendō], show, point out.
Ōstia, -ae, f., Ostia, a city at the mouth of the Tiber.
ōstium, -i, n. [compare ōs], door; mouth, entrance.
ōtōsus, -a, -um, adj. [ōtium], at leisure, unoccupied.
ōtium -i, n., peace, quiet.

P
P., abbr. for Públius.
pābulum, -i, n. [compare pāscō], food, pasturage, fodder.
paciscor, pacisci, pactus sum, intr., bargain, agree.
pācō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [pāx], pacify, subdue.
pactiō, -onis, f. [paciscor], agreement, bargain.
paeone, adv., nearly, almost.
pāgus, -ī, m., district, canton, division.
palaeastra, -ae, f., wrestling-place, place of exercise.
palam, adv., openly, publicly, plainly.
Palātiōn, -ī, n., the Palatine hill, one of the seven hills of Rome.
palūdāmentum, -i, n., military cloak.
palūs, -ūdis, f., swamp, marsh.
pandō, -ere, pandi, passum, tr., spread out, stretch out.
papāver, -eris, n., a poppy.
pār, paris, adj., equal, like.
parātus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of parō], prepared, ready.
parcō, -ere, peperci, parsūrus, intr. (takes dative), spare, treat with forbearance.
parcus, -a, -um, adj. [parcō], sparing, frugal.
parēns, parentis, m. and f. [pariō], parent.
pāreō, -ere, pāruī, —, intr., obey.
pariō, -ere, peperi, partum, tr., bring forth, give birth to, produce.
pariter, adv. [pār], equally, in like manner, as much.
parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., prepare; obtain, get.
parricidium, -i, n. [compare pater and caedō], parricide, murder of a father.
pars, partis, -ium, f., part; direction.
Parthi, -ōrum, m. pl., the Parthians, a people of Asia.
partus, -ūs, m. [pariō], a bearing, birth.
parum, adv., too little, insufficiently.
parvus, -a, -um, adj., small.
pāscō, pāscere, pāvi, pāustum, tr., supply with food, feed; pass., graze, feed.

passim, adv. [pandō], scattered, here and there, in every direction.

passus, -ūs, m., pace; mille passūs, a mile.

pāstor, -ōris, m. [pāscō], shepherd.

patefaciō, -facere, -feci, -factum, tr. [pateō+faciō], lay open, open, throw open.

patella, -ae, f. [dim. of patina, pan], a small pan, a small dish.

patēns, -entis, adj. [pres. part. of pateō], open, exposed.

pateō, -ēre, -ui, —, intr., extend; be open.

pater, patris, m., father.

paterculus, -a, -um, adj. [pater], of a father, paternal.

patiens, -entis, adj. [pres. part. of patiōr], enduring, tolerant, patient.

patientia, -ae, f. [patiens], patience, endurance.

patria, -ae, f. [fem. of adj. patrius, of a father; with terra understood], country, native land.

patrimōnium, -i, n. [pater], paternal estate, patrimony.

patrōnus, -i, m. [pater], protector, patron; defender, advocate.

patruus, -i, m. [pater], a father's brother, uncle.

pauci, -ae, -a, adj., pl., few, a few.

paullātim, adv. [paulum, little], gradually.

paulisper, adv. [paulum, little,+per], a little while, a short time.

paulo, adv. [abl. of paulum, a little], (by) a little, a little, somewhat.

paulum, adv. [acc. of paulum, a little], somewhat.

pauper, -eris, adj., poor, of small means.

paupertās, -ātis, f. [pauper], small means, poverty.

pavor, -ōris, m. [paveō, be afraid], terror, alarm.

pāx, pācis, f., peace.

peccō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr., do wrong, transgress, offend.

pectus, pectoris, n., breast.

pecūarius, -a, -um, adj. [pecū, cattle], of cattle; subst., pecūaria, -ae, f. (rés understood), cattle-breeding.

pecūnia, -ae, f. [pecus], money.

pecus, pecoris, n., cattle, herd, flock.

pecus, pecudis, f., a head of cattle, beast; pl., flock, herd.

pedes, peditis, m. [pēs], foot-soldier; pl., infantry.

pediculus, -i, m. [pēs], a little foot, a small base.

Peliās, -ae, m., Pelias, uncle of Jason.

pellis, pellis, -ium, f., skin, hide, pelt.

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum, tr., beat; drive out, drive away, rout.

pendō, -ere, pependī, pensus, tr., weigh, pay out, pay.

per, prep. with acc., through.

per-agō, -agere, -ēgi, -āctum, tr. (drive through); finish, complete.

peragrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [per+ager], wander through, traverse.

percipic, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. [per+capiō], perceive, feel.

percussor, -ōris, m. [percutiō], assassin.

percutiō, -cutere, -cussi, -cussum, tr. [per+quatiō, shake], pierce, strike.

per-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, tr., ruin, destroy.

per-duco, -ducere, -düxi, -ductum, tr., lead through, lead, bring, conduct.
per-grinus, -a, -um, adj. [per+ager], strange, foreign; subst., peregrinus, -i, m., a foreigner.

perenni, -us, adj. [per+annus], lasting through the year, perennial.

per-eo, -ire, -ii, -itus, intr., perish, be destroyed.

per-facilis, -e, adj., very easy.

per-fero, -ferre, -tuli, -latum, tr., bear through; bear, endure, withstand; bring; carry (a law).

per-fici, -ficere, -fecti, -fectum, tr. [per+faciō], accomplish, perform, complete.

per-fodi, -fodere, -fodi, -fossum, tr., dig through; transfix.

perfringo, -fringere, -frugi, -fractus, tr. [per+frango], break through.

perfruga, -ae, m., [perfrugio], desert.

per-fugio, -fugere, -fugi, —, intr., flee for refuge, flee.

pergo, -ere, perrexi, perrectum, intr. [per+regō], go on, proceed.

periculo, -ae, m., [periculum], dangerous.

periculum, -i, n., danger; trial, test.

peritia, -ae, f. [peritus], experience, knowledge.

peritus, -a, -um, adj., experienced, skilled.

per-maneo, -manere, -mansi, -mansum, intr., remain, continue.

per-mitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr., permit; entrust.

per-moveo, -movere, -movi, -motum, tr., move deeply, excite, induce.

perniciōs, -ēi, f. [per+nex], destruction, ruin.

perniciōsus, -a, -um, adj. [perniciōs], destructive, ruinous.

per-pauci, -paucae, -pauca, adj., very few.

perpetuo, adv. [perpetuus], continually.

perpetuus, -a, -um, adj., continuous, constant, perpetual; subst., n. sing., in perpetuum, for all time, forever.

per-rumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum, tr., burst through, burst asunder.

per-saepe, adv., very often.

per-scribo, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, tr., write in full, write out, describe fully.

per-seuere, -are, -avi, -atum, intr. [per+severus, strict], persist, persevere.

per-solvo, -solvere, -solvi, -solutum, tr., pay, pay over.

perspicuo, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, tr. [per+specio, look], perceive clearly, discern.

per-suadeo, -suadere, -suasi, -suatum, intr., persuade.

per-terreo, -terrere, -terrui, -terrētum, tr., frighten thoroughly, terrify.

pertinacia, -ae, f. [pertinax, stubborn], stubbornness, obstinacy.

pertineo, -tinere, -tini, —, intr. [per+teneō], stretch out, extend; relate, concern.

per-turbo, -turbō, -tērēre, -terti, -territum, tr., frighten thoroughly, terrify.

pertinacia, -ae, f. [pertinax, stubborn], stubbornness, obstinacy.

petio, -e, f. [petō, seeking], candidacy, canvass.

peto, -ere, petivi, petītum, tr., seek; ask; attack, assail.
phalanx, -angis, f., phalanx.
phalerae, -ârum, f. pl., decorations of metal (for the breast).
Pharnacés, -is, m., Pharnaces, son of king Mithridates of Pontus.
Pharsálicus, -â, -um, adj., of Pharsalus, Pharsalian.
Pharsálus, -i, f., Pharsalus, a city in Thessaly.
Phásis, -idos, m., the Phasis, a river of Colchis.
philosophia, -ae, f., philosophy.
philosophus, -i, m., philosopher.
Phineus, -i, m., Phineus, a king of Salmydessus, in Thrace.
Phrîxus, -i, m., Phrixus.
pictûra, -ae, f. [pingó, to paint], a picture.
pietás, -âtis, f. [pius, pious], devotion, pietry.
pilleus, -i, m., a cap.
pîlum, -i, n., javelin.
pîscâtor, -ôris, m. [piscor, to fish], fisherman.
pîcis, piscis, -ium, m., fish.
Pîsō, -ônis, m., (1) M. Pupius Piso, consul in 61 B.C.; (2) L. Calpurnius Piso, consul in 58 B.C.; (3) L. Calpurnius Piso, a Roman commander, grandfather of No. 2.
placeô, -ère, placûi, placûtûm, intr., please; impers., placuit, it was resolved, it was decided, it was thought best.
plácô, -âre, -âvi, -âtum, tr., soothe, appease, placate.
plága, -ae, f., blow, wound.
plánitiês, -êi, f. [plânu], a plain.
plânum, -a, -um, adj., level, flat.
plausus, -âs, m. [plaudô, to clap], clapping, applause.
plêbeius, -a, -um, adj. [plêbs], of the common people, plebeian.
plêbs, plêbis, f., the common people, plebeians.
plênum, -â, -um, adj., full, filled.
plêrique, plêraeque, plêraque, adj., a very great part, very many, the greater part of, most of.
plêrumque, adv. [n. acc. of plêrusque, most], for the most part, commonly.
plûrium, adv. [n. acc. of plûrimum], very much, most.
plûrimum, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of multus), most, very much, very many.
plûs, plûris, (compar. of multus), subst., n. sing., more; pl., plûrês, plûra, adj., more, a greater number of.
plûs, adv. [n. acc. of plûs], more.
Plûtô, -ônis, m., Pluto, king of the lower world.
poena, -ae, f., punishment.
polliceor, -èri, pollicitus sum, tr., promise, offer.
Polydectês, -is, m., Polydectes, a king of Seriphus.
Polyphêmus, -i, m., Polyphemus, one of the Argonauts.
Pompeîânus, -a, -um, adj., of Pompeius, Pompeian.
Pompeius, -i, m., Cn. Pompeius Magnus, a famous Roman general of the last century B.C.
Pomptînus, -a, -um, adj. Pompentine, Pontine; palûdês Pompâtinae, the Pompentine marshes (in Latium).
pônum, -i, n., fruit, apple.
pôndô, adv. [compare pondus], by weight, in weight.
pôndus, ponderis, n. [compare pen-dô], weight, a weight.
ponô, -ere, posui, positum, tr., place, fix; castra pônerë, to pitch camp.
pôns, pontis, -ium, m., bridge.
Ponticus, -a, -um, adj., of Pontus, Pontic.

Pontius, -i, m., Pontius Cominius, name of a Roman youth.

Pontus, -i, m., Pontus, a country in Asia Minor.

popularis, -e, adj. [populus], of the people, democratic, popular.

populatio, -onis, /n. [populor], laying waste, plundering.

populus, -i, m., a people, nation; the people, the populace.

Porsena, -ae, m., Lars Porsena, a king of Clusium.

posta, -ae, f., gate, door.

portendó, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum, tr. [por for prō+tendó], indicate, foretell.

portentum, -i, n. [p. part. of portulo], a demand, request.

potens, gen., -entis, adj. [possim], powerful, influential.

potentia, -ae, f. [poténs], power.

potestas, -atis, f. [potis, able], power; privilege, chance, opportunity.

pótio, -onis, f. [pótō, to drink], a drink, drink.

potius, adv. (compar. of potis, able), rather, preferably.

praebō, -ere, praebuí, praebítum, tr. [prae, before, +habéō], hold forth, offer; furnish, supply; exhibit, show.

praecéps, -cipitis, adj. [praecipio before, +caput], head foremost, headlong.

praecipio, -cipere, -cepi, -ceptum, tr. [prae, in front, +caedō], cut off.

praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr. [praecipio, teacher, instructor.

praecipue, adv. [praecipius, especially].
praecó, -ónis, m., herald.
praedá, -ae, f., booty, spoil.
prae-dícó, -áre, -ávi, -átum, tr. and intr. [dícó, dedicate], proclaim, assert.
prae-dícó, -díceré, -díxi, -dictum, tr., foretell, predict.
praedó, -ónis, m. [praedá], pirate, robber.
praefectus, -i, m. [p. part. of praefício], commander, prefect.
praefício, -fícere, -fécí, -fectum, tr. [praef. before, +fació], place in charge of, place in command of.
prae-mittó, -mittere, -missí, -missum, tr., send, dispatch.
praemíum, -i, n., reward.
prae-optó, -áre, -ávi, -átum, tr., choose rather, prefer.
prae-scribó, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, tr., determine in advance, prescribe, dictate.
praescriptum, -i, n. [p. part. of praescribó], precept, direction.
praeséns, gen., -entis, adj. [pres. part. of praesum], at hand, present.
praesentia, -ae, f. [praeséns], presence; the present; in praesentia, at the moment, for the present.
praeséntim, adv., especially.
praesidium, -i, n. [compare prae, before, and sedeó], protection; guard, garrison.
prae-stáns, gen., -stantis, adj. [pres. part. of praestó], preëminent, distinguished, surpassing.
prae-stó, -stáre, -stíti, -stítum, intr. and tr., stand before; excel, be better; exhibit, show.
prae-sum, -esse, -fui, —, intr., be in command of, be in charge of.
prae-ter, prep. with acc. [compare prae, before], except; past, beyond; in addition to; contrary to.

praet-ea, adv., in addition, besides, further.
prae-t-eo, -ire, -ii, -itum, tr. and intr., go by, go past, pass; praeteritus, -a, -um, p. part. as adj., gone by, past.
praeteritus, -a, -um, see praetereó.
praetextus, -a, -um, adj. [praetor, leader, general], of a praetor, praetorian; praetória cohors, a general’s bodyguard.
prae-venió, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, intr. and tr., come before, precede; anticipate.
pràvus, -a, -um, adj., crooked; bad, dishonest.
precēs, -um, f. pl., prayer, entreaty.
prehendó, -hendere, -hendi, -hensum, tr., grasp, seize.
pream,-ere, -pressi, -pressum, tr., press; burden, weigh down.
prietum, -i, n., price, value; reward, recompense.
Priamus, -i, m., Priam, a king of Troy.
pridem, adv., long ago.
priđē, adv. [compare prior and diēs], the day before.
primō, adv. [primus], at first.
primum, adv. [primus], in the first place, first of all; cum primum, as soon as; quam primum, as soon as possible.
primus, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of prior), first.
princeps, gen. principis, adj. [compare primus and capiō], first; subst., m., chief, prominent man.
principatus, -ús, m. [princeps], leadership, supremacy.

prior, prius, compar. adj., former, previous; first.

pristinus, -a, -um, adj. [compare prior], former, original.

prius, adv. [n. of prior], before, first.

prius-quam, conj., before.

privátim, adv. [privátus], in a private capacity, privately.

privátus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of privó], private, personal; subst., privátus, -i, m., a private citizen.

privó, -äre, -ávi, -átum, tr. [privus, private], deprive, rob.

pró, prep. with abl., in front of; for, on behalf of, for the sake of.

probó, -äre, -ávi, -átum, tr. [probus, good], approve, approve of.

Proca, -ae, m., Proca, a king of Alba.

pró-cédó, -cédere, -cessí, -cessum, intr., advance, proceed.

Procilíus, -i, m., C. Valerius Procilíus, a Gallic friend of Julius Caesar.

procul, adv., in the distance, at a distance, far off.

pró-cumbó, -cumbere, -cubuí, -cubí-tum, intr. [pró- + cumbó, recline], fall forwards, fall prostrate.

pró-curró, -currere, -cúrri, -currsum, intr., run or rush forwards, charge.

pró-eó, -ire, -iī, -itum, intr. [pród for pró], go forth, go forward, advance.

pródigium, -i, n., omen, portent, prodigy.

próditió, -ónis, f. [pródó], treason, betrayal.

pró-dó, -dere, -didi, -ditum, tr., hand down, transmit; betray.

pró-ducó, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, tr., lead forth, bring out.

proelium, -i, n., battle.

profectió, -ónis, f. [proficíscor], setting out, departure.

profectó, adv. [pró + factó], actually, in fact, assuredly, certainly.

pró-feró, -ferre, -tuli, -látum, tr., bring forth, carry forward, extend, defer.

proficíscor, proficíscí, profectus sum, intr., set out, start, depart.

profiteor, -éri, -fessus sum, tr. [pró + fateor, confess], declare publicly, profess, avow.

pro-fugió, -fugere, -fugi, intr., flee, escape.

profugus, -i, m. [profugió], fugitive, refugee.

pro-fundó, -fundere, -fúdi, -fúsuum, tr., pour out; spend freely, squander.

profundus, -a, -um, adj., deep.

prógregdor, -gredi, -gressus sum, intr. [pró+gradior, step], go on, advance, proceed.

prohibeó, -hibère, -hibuí, -hibitum, tr. [pró+habeó], check, stop, restrain; keep out, prohibit.

prójició, -jicere, -jéci, -jectum, tr. [pró+jacio], hurl forward, hurl down.

pro-inde, adv., therefore, accordingly.

prómineó, -minère, -minuí, intr., stand out; project, lean out.

pró-mittó, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr., send forth, promise.

pró-moveó, -movère, -móvi, -mó-tum, tr., move forward, advance.

prómtus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of prómó, bring forth]; ready, prompt.

prómonturium, -i, n., headland, promontory.

prope, adv. and prep. with acc.; as adv., near, nearly, almost, about; as prep., near, near to.

pró-pelló, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, tr., drive forward; drive off, repel, rout.
properê, adv. [properus, speedy], hastily, speedily.
properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. [properus, speedy], hasten.
propinquus, -a, -um, adj. [propel], near, neighboring; subst., pro-
pinquī, -ōrum, m. pl., relatives, kinsmen.
prō-pōnō, -pōnerē, -posuī, -positum, tr., set forth; set, relate; offer, propose.
propositum, -i, n. [p. part. of prō-
pōnō], plan, intention, purpose.
propter, prep. with acc., on account of, by reason of.
propter-eā, adv., on that account; propterea quod, for the reason that,
because.
prō-pulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [freq. of prōpellō], drive back, repel.
prōrā, -ae, f., bow, prow.
prō-scribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, tr., publish; outlaw; proscribo.
prōscriptiō, -ōnis, f. [prōscribō], proscription, outlawry.
prō-sequor, -sequē, -secūtus sum, tr., follow, follow after, attend.
Prōserpina, -ae, f., Proserpina, Pro-
serpine, queen of the lower world.
prōsiliō, -silīre, -silui, —, intr. [prō+
saliō, leap], leap forward, spring up.
prōspiciō, -spicerē, -spexī, -spectum, intr. [prō+speciō, look], look ahead; look out for, provide.
prō-sternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum, tr., spread out; over-
throw, lay prostrate.
prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfui, intr., be useful, benefit, profit, serve.
prō-vehō, -vehēre, -vexī, -vectum, tr., carry forward; pass., ride for-
ward; sail out; aetāte prōvectus, advanced in years.
prō-vidēo, -vidère, -vīdi, -visum, tr. and intr., foresee; provide for, make provision for.
prōvia, -ae, f., province.
proximē, adv. [proximus], nearest; most recently, last.
proximus, -a, -um, adj. (superl. to propior, nearer), nearest, next.
Ptolomaeus, -i, m., Ptolemy, a king of Egypt.
pūbēs, gen. -eris, adj., grown up, adult; subst., pūberēs, -um, m. pl., adults, men.
pūbicē, adv. [pūbicus], in the name of the state, at public expense.
pūbicus, -a, -um, adj. [populus], of the people or state, public.
Pūblius, -i, m., Publius, a Roman praenomen.
pudor, -ōris, m., shame, sense of honor.
puella, -ae, f. [dim. of puer], girl.
puer, -pueri, m., boy.
puerilis, -e, adj. [puer], of a child, of children, childish.
pūgiō, -ōnis, m., dagger, poniard.
pugna, -ae, f., fight, battle.
pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. [pugna], fight.
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj., beautiful.
pūctum, -i, n. [p. part. of pungō], point; moment.
pungō, -ere, pupugi, pūctum, tr., prick, sting, pierce.
Pūnicus, -a, -um, adj. [Poenus], Punic, Carthaginian.
pūrgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [pūrus +agō], clean, cleanse; excuse; pūrgātus, -a, -um, p. part. as adj., free from blame.
pūrus, -a, -um, adj., clean, pure; unadorned.
putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. (clean, prune); think, suppose.
Pyrēnaeus, -a, -um, adj., Pyrenean; subst., Pyrēnaei, -ōrum, m. pl., the Pyrenees.
Pyrrhus, -i, m., Pyrrhus, a king of Epirus.
Pythia, -ae, f., Pythia, the prophetic priestess in the temple of Apollo at Delphi.

Q
qua, adv. [abl. fem. of quī], by which way, where.
quadrāgintā, indecl. num. [quattuor], forty.
quadrāringentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. [quattuor+centum], four hundred.
quaeō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitum, tr., inquire, ask.
quaestor, -ōris, m. [for quaesitor, compare quaerō], quaestor, a Roman magistrate connected with state finances.
quaestūra, -ae, f. [quaestor], the office of quaestor, quaestorship.
quālis, -e, pronom. adj.; interrog., of what sort? what kind of? relative, of such kind, such as, as.
quāliscumque, quālecumque, indef. pron., of any kind whatever.
quam, adv. [qui], than, (rather) than, as, how.
quam-diū, adv., as long as.
quam-quam, conj., although, though; and yet, yet.
quantus, -a, -um, interrog. adj., how great? how large? relative (following tantus), as; e.g. tantus . . . quantus, as large . . . as; subst., quantum, -i, n., as much as, all that.
qua-rē, adv., wherefore, therefore; wherefore? why?
quārtānus, -a, -um, adj. [quārtus], occurring every fourth day, quartan; subst., quārtānā, -ae, f. (supply febris, fever); quartan ague.
quārtus, -a, -um, adj. [quattuor], fourth.
qua-si, adv., as if.
quater, adv. [quattuor], four times.
quattuor, indecl. num., four.
-que, enclitic conj., and.
quis, qua, quid, indef. pron., anyone, anybody, anything, someone, somebody, something.

quis (qui), quae, quid (quod), interrog. pron. and adj., who? which? what?

quis-quam, quicquam, indef. pron., any one, any thing, any one or thing at all.

quis-que, quid-que, indef. pron., each, each one, each man.

quis-quis, quicquid, indef. pron., whoever, whatever, every one who, every thing that.

quō, adv. [qui]; interrog., whither? where? relative, to which place or point, whither; indef., to any place, anywhere; with compar., in order that.

quo-ad, adv. and conj., until, as long as.

quod, conj. [qui], because; the fact that, that; quod si, but if, now if.

quoniam, conj. [quom, for cum, jam], since, insasmuch as.

quoque, conj., also.

quotannis, adv. [quot, how many, abl. of annus], every year, yearly.

quotiens, adv. [quot, how many], interrog., how often? relative, as often as.

quo-usque, adv., till when? how long?

R

rādix, -dicis, f., root, lower part; foot, base (of a mountain).

raeda, -ae, f., carriage, wagon (with four wheels).

rāmus, -i, m., branch, bough.

rapina, -ae, f. [rapiō], robbery, plunder, rapine.

rapiō, -ere, rapui, raptum, tr., seize, carry off.

rārus, -a, -um, adj., rare, scarce.

ratiō, -onis, f., reckoning, account; list, record; plan, course, manner; principle, reason.

ratis, -is, f., raft, float.

Rauraci, -orum, m. pl., the Rauraci, a Gallic people on the Rhine.

re-bellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr., rebel, make war again.

re-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, intr., retire, withdraw.

recēns, gen. -entis, adj., recent, new.

re-cēnseō, -cēnsēre, -cēnsui, -cēnsum, tr., number, reckon; review.

recipīō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. [re-+capio], take back, regain; accept, receive; sé recipere, to recover oneself, to withdraw, to retreat.

re-conciliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., win back, recover; reconcile.

re-creō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., renew, restore, refresh.

rēctē, adv. [rectus], straight; right, properly.

rēctus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of regō] straight, direct; upright.

recuperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., regain, recover.

recūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr. [re-+causa], refuse, decline.

red-dō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, tr., give back, return; render.

red-eō, -ēre, -ēi, (-ivi), -itum, intr., go back, return.

reditūō, -ōnis, f. [redeō], a going back, return.

redigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctum, tr. [red-+agō], force back; bring under, reduce; collect.

redimō, -imere, -ēmi, -ēemptum, tr. [red-+emō], buy back, ransom, buy up.

red-integrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [integrō, make whole], renew, restore.

reditus, -ūs, m. [redeō], return.

re-ducō, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, tr., lead back.
re-fé-ró, -fé-re, -tuli, -lá-tum, tr., bear back, bring back; pedem referre, withdraw, retire, retreat; grátiam referre, requite.

refició, -fícere, -fé-ci, -fectum, tr. [re + fació], make again; renew, recruit, repair; réclect.

re-fringó, -fringere, -fré-gi, -fráctum, tr. [re + frángó], break down.

re-fugió, -fugere, -fú-gi, -fugitúrus, intr., flee back; flee away, escape.

re-fúlgeo, -fulgère, -fúlsi, —, intr., flash back, glitter.

régia, -ae, f. [régius], palace.

régina, -ae, f. [réx], queen.

regió, -ónis, f. [regó], region, district.

régius, -a, -um, adj. [réx], royal, of the king.

régnó, -áre, -ávi, -átum, —, intr. [régnun], reign, rule.

régnum, -i, n. [réx], royal power, kingdom.

regó, -ere, réxi, réctum, tr., guide, direct; rule, govern.

regredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, —, tr. [re + gradior, step], go back, return.

re-jició, -jicere, -jé-ci, -jectum, tr. [re + jació], hurl back, drive back, repulse.

reliquias, -a, -um, adj. [compare reliquó], remaining, rest of, the remainder of.

re-líquo, -linquere, -líqui, -lúctum, tr., leave behind, leave.

reliquiae, -árum, f. pl. [compare re-líquo], remains, relics, remnants.

reliquus, -a, -um, adj. [compare re-líquo], remaining, rest of, the remainder of.

re-lúc-tor, -ári, -átus sum, —, intr., struggle against, resist.

re-manéó, -manère, -mánsi, -mánsu-m, —, intr., remain.

remedium, -i, n. [re-, compare medeor, heal], remedy; cure.

rémigó, -áre, -ávi, -átum, —, intr. [rémx, rower], row, ply an oar.

re-mínisci, -i, —, intr. and tr., remember, recall.

re-mittó, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr., send back; relax, discontinue.

remótus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of moveó], distant, remote.

re-moveó, -movère, -móvi, -mó tum, tr., move back; take away, remove.

re-múneror, -ári, -átus sum, tr., repay, reward.

Remus, -i, m., Remus, brother of Romulus.

rémus, -i, m., oar.

re-novó, -áre, -ávi, -átum, tr., renew.

re-nuó, -nuere, -nui, —, intr., shake the head, refuse.

re-núntió, -áre, -ávi, -átum, —, tr., bring back word, report, announce.

re-pelló, -pellere, reppuli, repulsum, tr., drive back, repulse; avert.

repente, adv. [repéns, sudden], suddenly.

repentinus, -a, -um, adj. [repéns, sudden], sudden, unexpected.

re-perió, -ire, repperi, repertum, tr., find, discover.

re-petó, -petere, -petivi, -petitum, tr., demand back; rés repeteré, to demand reparation.

re-pleó, -plere, -plévi, -plétum, tr., fill again, refill.

re-póno, -pônerre, -posui, -positum, tr., replace, restore; put away, keep, preserve.

re-praesentó, -áre, -ávi, -átum, tr. [compare praeséns, present], make present, display; do immediately.

re-prehendo, -prehendere, -prehendi, -prehénsum, tr., hold back, seize; censure, rebuke.

re-pudió, -áre, -ávi, -átum, tr. [re-pudium, a casting off], reject, divorce.
re-pugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr., fight back, resist, oppose.

repulsa, -ae, f. [p. part. of repellō], repulse, defeat.

rés, reī, f., thing, affair.

re-scindō, - scindere, -scidi, -scis- sum, tr., cut down, break down.

re-sciscō, -sciscere, -scīvī, -scītum, tr. [sciscō, approve], learn, find out.

re-scribō, - scribere, -scripsi, -scripsum, tr., write back; rewrite, enroll anew.

re-servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., keep back, save up, reserve.

re-sistō, - sistere, -stītī, —, intr., resist, make a stand.

respiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, tr. and intr. [re-+ speciō, look], look back; have regard for.

re-spūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr., breath out; breathe.

re-spondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, intr., reply, respond, answer.

respōnsum, -ī, n. [p. part. of re- spondeō], reply, answer.

re-spuō, -spuere, -spuī, —, tr., refuse, spurn.

re-stinguō, -stinguere, -stīnxī, -stīntum, tr., put out, quench.

restituō, -stituere, -stītuī, -stītūtum, tr. [re-+ statuō, station], restore.

re-tardō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., keep back, check.

retineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, tr. [re-+ teneō], restrain, retain.

re-vellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, tr., pull away.

re-vertor, -vertī, (perf.) -verti, -versum, intr., turn back, return.

re-vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., call back, recall.

rēx, régis, m. [regō], king.

Rhadamanthus, -ī, m., Rhadamanthus, a judge in the lower world.

Rhēa, -ae, f., Rhea Silvia, mother of Romulus and Remus.

Rhēnus, -ī, m., the river Rhine.

rhētor, -oris, m., a teacher of oratory, rhetorician.

Rhadanus, -ī, m., the river Rhone.

Rhodus, -ī, f., the island of Rhodes.

rideō, -ère, risi, risum, intr., laugh.

ripa, -ae, f., bank (of a stream).

ritē, adv. [compare ritus], in a proper manner, fitly, duly.

ritus, -ūs, m., rite, ceremony.

rixā, -ae, f., quarrel, dispute.

rōbur, rōboris, n., oak.

rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., ask, request.

rogus, -ī, m., funeral pile, funeral pyre.

Rōma, -ae, f., Rome.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., Roman; subst., Rōmānus, -ī, m., a Roman; pl., the Romans.

Rōmulus, -ī, m., Romulus, the founder of Rome.

rosa, -ae, f., rose.

Rōscius, -ī, m., Sextius Roscius, defended by Cicero on a charge of murder.

rōstrum, -ī, n. [rōdō, gnaw], beak; pl., rōstra, -ōrum, the Rostra, a platform for speakers in the Forum, adorned with beaks of captured ships.

rota, -ae, f., wheel.

Rubicō, -ōnis, m., the Rubicon, a river in northeastern Italy.

ruīna, -ae, f. [ruō, fall in ruins], ruin, downfall; pl., ruins.

rupēs, -is, f., rock, cliff.

rūrsus, adv. [contr. for reversus], again, in turn.

rūs, rūris, n., the country; pl., the fields, the country.

rūsticus, -a, -um, adj. [rūs], of the country, rustic.

Rutēnī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Ruteni, a Gallic tribe, partly in the Transalpine province.
Rutuli, -ōrum, m. pl., the Rutuli, the Rutulians, a nation of central Italy.

S
Sabini, -ōrum, m. pl., the Sabines, a people of central Italy.
sacer, -cra, -crum, adj., sacred; subst., sacra, -ōrum, n. pl., sacred rites, religious customs; Monṣ Sacer, a hill near Rome.
sacerdōs, -ōtis, m. and f. [sacer], priest, priestess.
sacerdōtium, -i, n. [sacerdōs], priesthood.
sacrificium, -i, n. [compare sacrificō], sacrifice.
sacrificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr. [sacer + faciō], offer sacrifice, sacrifice.
saepe, adv., often.
saepe-numerō, adv., very often, again and again.
saeviō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr. [saevus, savage], be furious, rage.
saevus, -a, -um, adj., fierce, savage.
saginō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [sagina, feeding], fatten.
sagitta, -ae, /., arrow.
sagulum, -i, n. [dim. of sagum, mantle], a military cloak.
Saguntinus, -a, -um, adj., of Saguntum, Saguntine; subst., Saguntinis, -ōrum, m. pl., the Saguntines, the people of Saguntum.
Saguntum, -i, n., Saguntum, a city in Spain.
sal, salis, m., salt.
salinum, -i, n. [sāl], salt-cellar.
Salmydessus, -i, m., Salmydessus, a town in Thrace.
salsus, -a, -um, adj. [sāl], salted.
saltus, -ūs, m., [saliō, leap], leaping, a leap.
saltus, -ūs, m., ravine, mountain pass, mountain valley.
salūs, -ūtis, f., safety.
salūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [salūs], greet, hail.
salveō, -āre, —, —, intr., be well; salvē, imper. (in greetings), hail to you.
Samnīs, -ītis, adj., of Samnium (a district of central Italy), Samnite; subst., Samnītēs, -īum, m. pl., the people of Samnium, the Sammites.
sanciō, -āre, sānxi, sāntum, tr., make sacred; decree, enact.
sānctus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of sanciō], sacred, holy, inviolate.
sanguis, sanguinis, m., blood.
sānītās, -ātis, f. [sānus], health, sanity.
Santoni, -ōrum or -um, m. pl. the Santoni, a Gallic people of Aquitania.
sānus, -a, -um, adj., sound, healthy; sane, sensible.
sapiēns, gen. -entis, adj. [pres. part. of sapiō, have taste, be sensible], wise.
sarcina, -ae, f., pack; pl., packs, light baggage.
Sardinia, -ae, f., Sardinia.
satis, adv., enough.
satis-faciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, intr., give satisfaction, make reparation, apologize.
satisfactiō, -onis, f. [satisfaciō], apology, explanation.
saxum, -i, n., rock, stone.
scālæ, -ārum, f. pl., stairway, stairs; ladder.
scapha, -ae, f., skiff, boat.
sclerātus, -a, -um, adj. [scelus], wicked, criminal.
sclerus, scleris, n., wickedness, crime.
schola, -ae, f., school.
scientia, -ae, f. [sciēns, knowing], knowledge, expertness, skill.
sclićet, adv. [sciēre + licet], of course, no doubt, doubtless.
sciō, -īre, -īvi, -ītum, tr., know.
Scipīō, -ōnis, m., Q. Caecilius Metellus Pius Scipio, father-in-law of Pompeius; see also Cor-nēlius.
scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptum, tr., write.
scūtum, -i, n., shield.
sē- or sēd-, inseparable prefix, apart, away.
sē-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, intr., go apart, retire, withdraw.
sēcrētō, adv. [sēcrētus], separately, secretly, in private.
sēcrētus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of sēcērnō, to separate], secret; subst., sēcērētum, -i, n., secret; privacy.
sector, -āri, -ātus sum, tr. [freq. of sequor], follow after, attend.
secundum, prep. with acc. [sequor], following, along; in accordance with.
secundus, -a, -um, adj. [sequor], second; favorable, successful.
secūris, -is, f., axe.
sed, conj., but.
sēdecim, indecl. num. [sex+decem], sixteen.
sedeō, -ère, sēdī, sessum, intr., sit.
sēdēs, -is, f. [sedeō], seat, chair; residence, abode.
sēdītīōsus, -a, -um, adj. [sēdītīō, sedition], seditious, factious.
Sedusii, -ōrum, m. pl., the Sedusii, a German tribe.
Segusiāvi, -ōrum, m. pl., the Segusiavi, a Gallic tribe west of the Rhone.
sella, -ae, f. [sedeō], chair, seat.
semel, adv., once; semel atque iterum, time and again, repeatedly.
sēmentis, -is, f. [sēmen, seed], a seeding, a sowing.
semper, adv., always.
senātus, -ūs, m. [senex], senate.
senectūs, -ūtis, f. [senex], old age.
senēscō, -ere, senuī, —, intr. [compare senex], grow old.
senex, senis, adj., old; subst., m., old man.
sēnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. [sex], six each.
senior, gen. -ōris, adj. (compar. of senex), older; subst., m. pl., the older men, the elders.
Senonēs, -um, m. pl., the Senones, a Gallic tribe that settled in northern Italy.
sententia, -ae, f. [sentiō], opinion, thought, purpose.
sentiō, -ire, sēnsī, sēnsum, tr., feel, see, perceive.
sēparātīm, adv. [sēparātus, separate], separately, severally.
sepeliō, -ire, -ivi, -itum, tr., bury.
septem, indecl. num., seven.
septendecim, indecl. num. [septem+decem], seventeen.
septentriōnēs, -um, m. [septem+trīōnēs, plowing oxen], the constellation of the Great Bear, the Big Dipper; the north.
septimus, -a, -um, adj. [septem], seventh.
sepultūra, -ae, f. [sepeliō], burial.
Sēquana, -ae, f., the river Sēine.
Sēquanuș, -a, -um, adj., of the Sēquani, Sēquanian; subst., Sēquani, -ōrum, m. pl., the Sēquani, a tribe of eastern Gaul.
sequor, sequī, securūs sum, tr. and intr., follow, pursue.
Sergius, -i, m., see Catilina.
sēriō, adv. [sērius, serious], seriously, in earnest.
Seriphus, -i, f., Seriphus, an island in the Aegean Sea.
sermō, -onis, m. [serō, entwine] talk, conversation.
serō, serere, sēvī, satum, tr., sow, plant.

serpēns, gen. -entis, f. [pres. part. of serpō, crawl], serpent.

Sertōrius, -i, m., Q. Sertorius, a Roman general and a friend of Marius.

servīlis, -e, adj. [servus], of slaves, servile.

servitūs, -ūtis, f. [servus], servitude, slavery.

Servius, -i, m., Servius Tullius, the sixth king of Rome.

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., save; observe.

servus, -i, m., slave, servant.

sēstertiōs, -i, gen. pl., sēstertium, sesterce, a small silver coin worth four and one tenth cents.

sētius, compar. adj., less, in a less degree (with negatives only); nihilō sētius, nevertheless.

seu, see sēre.

sēvērē, adv. [sēvērus, serious], severely, strictly.

sex, indecl. num., six.

sexāgintā, indecl. num., sixty.

sexcentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. [sex+centum], six hundred.

sextus, -a, -um, adj. [sex], sixth.

Sextilius, -i, m., Sextilius, name of a certain Roman praetor.

sī, conj. if.

sīc, adv., so, thus.

sicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [siccus], dry, drain.

siccus, -a, -um, adj., dry; subst., siccum, -i, n., dry land.

Sicilia, -ae, f., Sicily.

Siculus, -a, -um, adj., Sicilian; subst., Siculi, -orum, m. pl., the Sicilians.

sīc-ut, adv., just as, as.

Signia, -ae, f., Signia, a town in Latium.

signifer, -i, m. [signum+ferō], standard bearer.

significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [signum+faciō], point out; signify, mean.

signō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [signum], affix a seal to, seal.

signum, -i, n., mark, sign; signal; standard (military).

silentium, -i, n. [sileō, be still], silence.

silva, -ae, f., forest.

similis, -e, adj., like, similar.

similitūdō, -inis, f. [similis], likeness, resemblance.

simul, adv., at the same time.

simulācrum, -i, n. [simulō], likeness, semblance.

simulātiō, -onis, f. [simulō], pretence, simulation.

simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [similis], make like; pretend.

sin, conj. [si+ne], but if.

sine, prep. with abl. without.

singuli, -ae, -a, adj., one at a time; distrib., one on a side.

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., left, on the left hand.

sinistra, -ae, f. [sinister], the left hand.

sinus, -ūs, m., a fold; bosom.

sitiēns, gen. -entis, adj. [pres. part. of sitiō, to thirst], thirsty.

situs, -ūs, m., site, location.

si-ve or seu, conj., whether, or if; sive . . . sive, whether . . . or, either . . . or.

sōbius, -a, -um, adj. [sē+ebrius, drunk], sober.

socer, -erī, m., father-in-law.

societās, -ātis, f. [socius], association, alliance.

socius, -i, m., associate, ally.

sōl, sōlis, m., the sun.

soleō, -ère, solitus sum, semi-deponent, intr.; be accustomed, be in the habit.
solitarius, -a, -um, adj. [sólus], lonely, solitary.
solum, -i, n., throne.
sollemnis, -e, adj., established, fixed, regular; solemn.
solicitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., disturb, tempt, incite.
solum, -i, n., bottom, base; ground, soil.
sólus, -a, -um, adj., alone, only.
solvō, -ere, solvi, solutum, tr., loosen, unbind, release; relax; of ships, with or without nāvem or nāvēs, set sail, weigh anchor.
spēs, spei, f., hope.
strepitus, -ús, m. [strepō, make a noise], noise, uproar, confusion.

stringō, -ere, strīnxī, strictum, tr., strip off; draw, unsheathe.

studeō, -ère, studuí, —, intr. (takes dative), be devoted, apply oneself, study; favor.

studiósē, adv. [studiōsus], eagerly, devotedly.

studiōsus, -a, -um, adj. [studium], eager, fond, studious.

studium, -i, n. [studeō], zeal, enthusiasm, eagerness.

stultitia, -ae, /., [stultus, fool], folly; imbecility.

stupeo, -ère, stupuí, —, intr., be astounded, amazed, aghast.

Stymphalis, gen. -idis, adj., of Stymphalus, Stymphalian.

Stymphalus, -i, n., Stymphalus, a town of Arcadia.

Styx, Stygis, f., the Styx, a river of the lower world.

suádeo, -ère, suāsi, suāsum, tr. and intr. [compare suavis], advise, recommend, urge.

suavis, -e, adj., sweet, agreeable, pleasant.

sub, prep with acc. and abl., under.

sub-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, tr., put under, apply.

sub-dúcō, -dúcere, -dūxi, - ductum, tr., lead up, lead away; draw up, beach.

sub-eō, -ire, -iī, -itum, intr. and tr., go under; undergo, submit to; enter.

subigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, tr. [sub+agō], drive under, reduce, subdued.

subítō, adv. [subitus], suddenly, unexpectedly.

subitus, -a, -um, adj., sudden, unexpected.

subjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, tr. [sub+jaciō], hurl under, hurl from below.

sub-levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., hold up, support; assist, help.

sublicius, -a, -um, adj. [sublica, pile, stake], of piles, resting on piles.

sublimis, -e, adj., uplifted, high; up, aloft.

sub-ministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [ministrō, provide], furnish, supply.

subsidium, -i, n. [compare sub and sedeō], reënforcements, support, aid.

sub-sistō, -sistere, -stiti, —, intr., make a stand; oppose, resist.

sub-sum, -esse, -fui, —, intr., be at hand, be close by.

sub-trahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr., draw from under; take away.

sub-vehō, -vehere, - vexi, -vectum, tr. [vehō, carry], bring up, transport.

succēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, intr. [sub+cēdō], go under; succeed, take the place of; withdraw.

successor, -ōris, m. [succēdō], successor.

successus, -ús, m. [succēdō], success.

succidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsum, tr. [sub+caedō], cut down, fell.

sūcus, -i, m., juice, sap.

sūdōr, -ōris, m., perspiration.

Suēbī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Suebi, a people of Germany comprising various tribes.

Suēbus, -a, -um, adj., of the Suebi, Suebic.

sui, reflexive pron., of himself, herself, itself, themselves.

Sulla, -ae, m., see Cornēlius.

Sullānus, -a, -um, adj., of Sulla; subst., Sullānī, -ōrum, m. pl., the adherents of Sulla.

sum, esse, fui, futūrus, intr., be, exist.
summa, -ae, f. [summus], chief place, supremacy; sum, total.

summovēō, -movēre, -móvī, -mótum, tr. [sub+moveō], drive away, remove.

summus, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of superus), highest; utmost, greatest; top of, highest part of; subst., summum, -i, n., the top.

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsi, sūmptum, tr. [sub+emō], take, take up.

sūmptuārius, -a, -um, adj. [sūmptus], sumptuary.

sūmptus, -ūs, m. [sūmō], expense, cost.

supplex, -lectilis, f., domestic utensils, furniture.

superbe, adv. [superbus], haughtily, arrogantly.

superbia, -ae, f. [superbus], pride, haughtiness.

superbus, -a, -um, adj., haughty, proud; subst., Superbus, -i, m., the Proud, an epithet applied to the second king Tarquin as a cognomen.

superior, -ius, adj. (comp. of superus), higher; previous, preceding; superior.

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [superus], defeat, overcome.

super-sum, -esse, -suī, —, intr., be left over, survive, remain.

superus, -a, -um, adj. [super, above], upper, higher; Mare Superum, the upper sea, i.e. the Adriatic.

super-vivō, -vivere, -vīxī, —, intr., outlive, survive.

suppetō, -petere, -petīvī or -petīi, -petītum, intr. [sub+petō], be at hand, be available.

suppleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, tr. [sub+pleō, fill], fill up, fill out, recruit.

supplicēter, adv. [supplex, supplicant], as suppliants, submissively.

supplicium, -i, n. [supplex, supplicant], punishment.

suppōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, tr. [sub+pōnō], put under.

supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [sub+portō], convey, bring up.

suprā, adv. [superus], above, before.

suprēmus, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of superus), highest; last.

suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr. [sub+capiō], undertake.

suspendō, -pendere, -pendi, -pēnsum, tr. [sub+pendō], hang up, suspend.

suspicīō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, tr. [sub+speciō, look], suspect.

suspicīō, -ōnis, f. [compare suspiciō], suspicion, distrust.

suspicor, -āri, -ātus sum, tr. [compare suspiciō], suspect.

sustineō, -tinere, -tinui, -tentum, tr. [sub+teneō], hold up, sustain, withstand.

suus, -a, -um, reflexive adj. [compare sui], his, her, its, their, his own, her own etc.

Symplēgadēs, -um, f., the Symplegades, the clashing rocks.

Syphax, -ācis, m., Syphax, a king of Numidia.

Syrācūsae, -ārum, f. pl., Syracuse, a city in Sicily.

Syria, -ae, f., Syria.

T

tabernāculum, -i, n. [taberna, hut], tent.

tabula, -ae, f., board, plank; tablet, list, record.

taceō, -ēre, tacui, tacitum, intr. and tr., be silent, be silent about.

tacitus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of taceō], silent, still.

taedium, -i, n. [taedet, it wearsies], weariness, loathing.

Taenarum, -i, n., Taenarum, a promontory of Laconia, in Greece.
tālāris, -e, adj. [tālus, ankle], of the ankles; subst., tālāria, -iüm, n. pl., winged sandals.
tālis, -e, adj., such, of such a kind.
tam, adv., so.
tamen, adv., nevertheless, still, yet, however.
tametsi, conj. [for tamen-etsi], although.
tam-quam, adv., as if, just as if.
Tanaquil, -ūlis, f., Tanaquil, wife of Tarquinii Prīscus.
tandem, adv., at length, at last, finally.
tangō, -ere, tetīgi, tāctum, tr., touch.
tantopere, adv. [tanto+opere], so greatly.
tantum, adv. [acc. n. of tantus], so greatly; this much, only.
tantus, -a, -um, adj., so great, so large; tantus ... quantus, as large ... as; subst., tānti, n., gen., of so much value, worth so much, worth while.
tardō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [tardus, slow], hinder, retard.
Tarentum, -i, n., Tarentum, a city in southern Italy, now Taranto.
Tarpeius, -a, -um, adj., Tarpeian; mons Tarpeius, the Tarpeian Rock, on the Capitoline Hill in Rome.
Tarquinia, -ae, f., Tarquinia, sister of king Tarquinii Superbus.
Tarquinii, -orum, m. pl., Tarquinii, a city of Etruria.
Tarquinii, -i, m., Tarquinii, Tarquin: (1) Tarquinus Prīscus, fifth king of Rome; (2) L. Tarquiniius, son of Prīscus and afterwards king himself with the added name Superbus; (3) Arruns Tarquiniius, son of Prīscus; (4) Sextus Tarquiniius, son of Superbus.
Tarpturus, -i, m., Tartarus, the infernal regions.
taurus, -i, m., bull.
tēctum, -i, n. [p. part. of tegō], roof, house, abode.
tegō, -ere, tēxi, tēctum, tr., cover, protect.
tēlum, -i, n., weapon, missile.
temerarius, -a, -um, adj. [temere], rash, heedless, inconsiderate.
temere, adv., rashly, heedlessly.
temperantia, -ae, f. [temperāns, moderate], self-control, discretion.
temperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [tempus], restrain, abstain from, refrain from.
tempestās, -ātis, f. [tempus], storm, weather.
templum, -ī, n., temple.
temptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [intens. of tendō], try, make trial of.
tempus, temporis, n., time.
tendō, -ere, tetendi, tentum, tr., stretch, aim, direct.
teneō, -ere, tenuī, —, tr., hold.
tenuis, -e, adj., slight, thin; shallow.
ter, adv. [trēs], three times, thrice.
tergum, -i, n., back.
terminus, -i, m., boundary, end.
terni, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [ter], three each.
terra, -ae, f., the earth, land.
terrēnus, -a, -um, adj. [terra], of earth, earthen.
terreō, -ere, terrui, territum, tr., frighten, terrify.
terribilis, -e, adj. [terreō], dreadful, terrible.
terror, -ōris, m. [terreō], terror, fright.
tertius, -a, -um, adj. [ter], third.
thestamentum, -ī, n. [testor, call to witness], a (last) will.
testimōnium, -i, n. [testis], evidence, proof.
testis, -is, m. and f., witness.
tēstūdō, -dinis, f. [tēsta, shell; hard covering], tortoise; covered column (a military term).
Teutoni (-ēs), gen. Teutonum, m. pl.,
the Teutons, a German people.

theātrum, -i, n., theatre.

Thēbae, -ārum, f. pl., Thebes, a
Greek city, in Boeotia.

Thēbānus, -a, -um, adj., of Thebes,
Thebans; subst., Thēbāni, -ōrum,
m. pl., the Thebans.

Thermōdōn, -ontis, m., the Thermo-
don, a river of Pontus, in Asia Minor.

Théseus, -ei, m., Theseus, an
Athenian hero.

Thessalia, -ae, f., Thessaly.

Thrācia, -ae, f., Thrace.

Tiberis, -is, m., the Tiber, a river of
Italy.

Ticinus, -i, m., the Ticinus, a river of
northern Italy, now called the
Ticino.

Tigrānēs, -is, m., Tigranes, a king of
Armenia.

Tigurīnus, -a, -um, adj., of the
Tigurini; subst., Tigurini, -ōrum,
m. pl., the Tigurini, a division of
the Helvetiā.

timeō, -ère, timui, —, tr. and intr.,
fear.

timidus, -a, -um, adj. [timeō], timid,
cowardly.

timor, -ōris, m. [timeō], fear.

tingō, -ere, tīnxi, tīinctum, tr., dip,
dye.

Tīryns, Tirynthiūs, f., Tiryns, a city of
Argolis, in Greece.

toga, -ae, f., toga.

togātus, -a, -um, adj. [toga], clad in
the toga.

tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., endure,
withstand.

tollō, -ere, sustuli, subsūltum, tr.,
lift, elevate, raise; elate; remove.

Tolōsātēs, -ium, m. pl., the Tolos-
ates, the people of Tolosa, in
Gaul.

torpeō, -ère, —, —, intr., be in-
active, languish.

torvē, adv. [torvus, stern], sternly,
fiercely.

tot, indecl. adj., so many.

totidem, indecl. adj. [tot+idem],
just as many, the same number of.

totiens, adv. [tot], so many times, so
often.

tōtus, -a, -um, adj., the whole of, all.

tractō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [freq. of
trahō], handle, treat.

trādō, -dere, -dīdi, -ditum, tr.
[trāns+dō], deliver over, sur-
render.

trādūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum,
tr. [trāns+dūcō], lead across.

trāgula, -ae, f., a dart, a javelin
thrown by a strap.

trahō, -ere, trāxi, tractum, tr.,
draw, drag.

trājiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, tr.
and intr. [trāns+jaciō], hurl a-
cross; pierce.

trājectus, -ūs, m. [trājiciō], crossing
over, passage.

trānō, -nāre, -nāvī, —, tr. and intr.
[trāns+nō, swim], swim across.

tranquillitās, -ātis, f. [tranquillus],
stillness; a calm (at sea).

tranquillus, -a, -um, adj., calm,
still.

trāns, prep. with acc., across, on the
other side of.

trāns-eō, -ire, -ī (-īvī), -itum, tr.
and intr., cross; go over.

trāns-fitō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, tr.,
pierce, transfix.

trānsiliō, -silire, -silui, —, tr. and
intr. [trāns+siliō, leap], leap over.

trāns-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.,
carry over, transport.

trāns-vehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum,
tr., convey across, carry over.

trāns-versus, -a, -um, adj., lying
across, cross (as an adjective).

Trasumennus, -i, m., Trasumennus,
a lake in Etruria.
Trebia, -ae, m., Trebia, a river in northern Italy.

très, tria, gen. trium, num. adj., three.

Trèveri, -orum, m. pl., the Treveri, a people of Belgic Gaul. Compare modern Tréves.

Triboci, -orum, m. pl., the Triboci, a German tribe.

tribūnus, -i, m. [tribus, tribe], tribune, title of a Roman official.

tribuo, -ere, tribui, tribútum, tr. [tribus, tribe], assign, bestow.

tribútum, -i, n. [p. part. of tribuo], tribute, payment.

triduum, -i, n. [trés+diēs], a period of three days, three days.

triennium, -i, n. [trés+annus], a period of three years, three years' time.

trigemini, -ae, -a, pl. [trēs+geminus], born three at a birth; subst., trigemini, triplets.

trigintā, indecl. num., thirty.

trinitā, -ae, -a, distrib. num. [trēs], three each; three-fold, triple.

triplex, -icis, adj. [trēs+plicō, fold], threefold, triple.

tristis, -e, adj., dejected, depressed, sad.

tristitia, -ae, f. [tristis], dejection, sadness.

triumphō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. [triumphus], celebrate a triumph, triumph.

triumphus, -i, m.; a triumphal procession, triumph.

Troja, -ae, f., Troy, a city in Asia Minor.

Trojānus, -a, -um, adj., of Troy, Trojan; subst., Trojāni, -orum, m. pl., the Trojans.

Troucillus, -i, m., see Valerius.

trucidō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., slaughter, massacre.

truncus, -i, m., trunk (of a tree); trunk, body.

tū, gen. tui, pers. pron., you.

tuba, -ae, f., trumpet.

tueor, -ēri, tūtus sum, tr., gaze upon; watch over, protect.

tugurium, -i, n., hut, cottage.

Tulingi, -orum, m. pl., the Tulingi, a German people on the Rhine.

Tullia, -ae, f., Tullia, name of a woman or girl; especially, the two daughters of King Servius Tullius.

Tullius, -i, m., see Cicerō and Servius.

tum, adv., then, at that time.

tumultus, -ūs, m., confusion, disturbance, uprising.

tumulus, -i, m., mound, hillock.

Tūnēs, -ētis, m., Tunes (now Tunis), a town of northern Africa.

turba, -ae, f., crowd, mob; confusion, tumult.

turbo, turbinis, m. [compare turbō, disturb], whirlwind, hurricane.

Turnus, -i, m., (1) Turnus, king of the Rutuli; (2) Turnus Herdonius, of Aricia.

turpis, -e, adj., unseemly, shameful, disgraceful.

turris, turris, -ium, f., tower.

Tusculānus, -a, -um, adj., of Tusculum, (a city of Latium).

tūtor, -ōris, m., [tueor], defender; guardian.

tūtus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of tueor], safe; subst., tūtum, -i, n., safety, place of safety.

tuus, -a, -um, adj. [tū], your, yours (referring to one person).

tyrannus, -i, m., tyrant.

ubi, adv., when, where.

Ubii, -orum, m. pl., the Ubii, a German tribe.
ulciscor, -i, ultus sum, tr., take vengeance on, avenge.

úllus, -a, -um, adj., any.

ulterior, -ius, compar. adj., farther.

ultimus, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of ulterior), farthest, most distant, last; subst., n., ad ultimum, at last.

últor, -öris, m. [ulciscor], avenger.

ultrâ, prep. with acc., beyond.

ultrō, adv., beyond; of one's own accord, voluntarily.

umbra, -ae, f., shadow.

umerus, -i, m., upper arm, shoulder.

umquam, adv., ever.

únā, adv. [únus], at the same time, together, along.

unda, -ae, f., wave.

unde, adv., from which place, whence.

úndecimus, -a, -um, adj. [úndecim], eleventh.

úndēvīntī, indecl. num. [únus + dē + vīntī], nineteen.

undique, adv., from all parts, on all sides, all around, everywhere.

unguentum, -i, n. [ungō, anoint], ointment.

úniversus, -a, -um, adj. [únus + versus], all together, all.

únus, -a, -um, num. adj., one.

urbānus, -a, -um, adj. [urbs], of a city, urban; subst., urbānī, -īorum, m., pl., inhabitants of a city.

urbs, urbis, -ium, f., city.

urgeō, -ēre, ussī, ustum, tr., press, press hard, urge, distress.

ûrō, -ere, ussi, ustum, tr., burn.

usquam, adv., any place, anywhere.

usque, adv., all the way, even, all the time, until.

úsūrpo, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., make use of, use.

úsus, -ūs, m. [útor], use; practice, experience.

ut, adv. and conj.; as adv., as, when; as conj., that, in order that, so that.

úter, útris, m., a vessel of skin, leather bottle.

uter, -tra, -trum, pron., which (of two).

uterque, utraque, utrumque, pron., each (of two).

útilis, -e, adj. [útor], useful, expedient.

utinam, adv. [uti (=ut) + nam], oh that, I wish that, would that.

útor, úti, úsus sum, intr., use, make use of, enjoy.

utrimque, adv. [uterque], on both sides.

utrum, adv. [neut. of uter], whether, used in double indirect questions.

uxor, -öris, f., wife.

V

vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., be empty, be unoccupied.

vacuus, -a, -um, adj. [vacō], vacant, empty.

vadum, -i, n., ford, shallow.

vae, interj., woe!

vāgitus, -ūs, m. [vāgiō, to cry], wailing, crying.

vagor, -āri, -ātus sum, intr. [vagus, strolling], range, rove.

valeō, -ère; valui, valūtūrus, intr., be strong, have power, be valid.

Valerius, -ī, m.; (1) C. Valerius Troucillus, a Gallic leader; C. Valerius Procillus, a Gallic friend of Julius Caesar.

validus, -a, -um, adj. [valeō], strong.

vallēs, vallis, -ium, f., valley.

vallum, -i, n. [vālūs, stake], rampart, wall.

Vangionēs, -um, m. pl., the Vangiones, a German tribe.

varius, -a, -um, adj., various, different.

vās, vasis, n., vessel, utensil.
vastō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [vāstus, waste, desert], lay waste.

vāticinātiō, -ōnis, f. [vāticināre, foretell], prophecy.

-ve, enētic conj., or.

vēcīgāl, -ālis, n., revenue, tax.

vegetus, -ā, -um, adj., lively, animated.

vēhēmenter, adv. [vēhēmēns, vehement, violent], violently; very much, greatly.

vēhō, -ere, vexī, vectum, tr., bear, carry, bring.

Veīēns, gen. -ēntis, adj., of Veii, Veientian; subst., Veīēntēs, -ium, m. pl., the people of Veii, the Veientians.

Veii, -ōrum, m. pl., Veii, a city of Etruria not far from Rome.

vellūs, vellēris, n., fleece, pelt.

vēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [vēlum, veil], cover, envelop, veil.

vēlōciter, adv. [vēlōx], swiftly.

vēlōx, gen. -ōcis, adj., swift, speedy.

vēnātiō, -ōnis, f. [vēnor], hunting, the chase.

vēndō, -dere, -dīdī, -dītum, tr. [vēnum, sale, + dōl, sell.

vēnēnum, -i, n., drug, poison.

vēnerātiō, -ōnis, f. [vēnerōr, reverence], deep respect, reverence.

venia, -ae, f., pardon.

veniō, -ire, vēnī, ventum, intr., come.

vēnōr, -āri, -ātus sum, intr., hunt.

venter, -tris, m., belly.

ventus, -i, m., wind.

Verbigenerus, -i, m., Verbigenerus, a division of the Helvetii.

verbūm, -i, n., word.

vērē, adv. [vērus], truly.

vērecundia, -ae, f. [compare vereor], shame, sense of shame.

vereor, -ēri, veritus sum, tr., fear.

vergō, -ere, —, —, intr., be inclined, slope.

vergobretus, -i, m., vergobret, title of the chief magistrate of the Haeduvi.

vērō, adv. [vērus], in fact, certainly; but in fact, however.

versor, -āri, -ātus sum, intr. [dep., and freq. of vertō], occupy oneself, engage, conduct oneself.

versus, -ūs, m. [vertō], line; verse.

vertō, -ere, vertī, versum, tr., turn.

vērus, -a, -um, adj., true.

vēscor, -i, —, —, intr., feed upon.

Vesontiō, -ōnis, m., Vesontio, a city of the Sequani, now Besançon.

vesper, -erī, m., evening.

Vesta, -ae, f., Vesta, Roman goddess of the hearth.

Vestālis, -e, adj., of Vesta, Vestal; subst., f., a priestess of Vesta, a vestal virgin.

vester, vestra, vestrum, adj. [vōs], your, yours (referring to more than one person).

vestibulum, -i, n., entrance, vestibule.

vestīgium, -i, n., footprint, track.

vestis, -is, f., garment, clothing.

vestītus, -ūs, m. [vestiō, to clothe], clothing.

veterānus, -a, -um, adj. [vetus], veteran.

vetō, -āre, vetūi, vetūtum, tr., forbid.

vetus, gen. vetēris, adj., old.

vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., harass.

via, -ae, f., road, street, way.

viātor, -ōris, m. [via], traveller.

vīcinus, -a, -um, adj. [vīcus], neighboring.

vicis, f. gen. (no nom.), change; in vicēm, in turn.

victimā, -ae, f., victim (for sacrifice).

victor, -ōris, m. [vincō], victor, conqueror; as adj., victorious.

victōria, -ae, f. [victor], victory.

victus, -ūs, m. [vīvō], means of living, provisions; mode of living.
vicus, -í, m., quarter, street; village.
video, -ère, vidi, visum, tr., see.
video, -erí, visus sum, intr. [pass. of video], seem, appear.
vigilantia, -ae, f. [vigilans, watchful], watchfulness, vigilance.
vigilia, -ae, f. [vigil, awake], a watching; a watch (as a division of time).
vici, indecl. num., twenty.
vilicus, -i, m. [villa], steward, bailiff.
villa, -ae, f., villa, country house.
viminális, -e, adj. [vimen, osier, willow], of osier; Viminális Collis, the Viminal Hill, in Rome.
vincio, -äre, vixi, victum, tr., bind, fasten.
vincó, -ere, vicí, vinctum, tr., bind, defeat.
vinculum, -i, n. [vincio], bond, fetter.
vini, -i, n., wine.
viró, -ère, ávī, -átum, tr., violate.
vir, virí, m., man, a male person.
virgō, virginis, f., young woman, maiden, virgin.
virítm, adv. [vir], man by man, to each man.
virtús, -útis, f. [vir], manliness, courage, bravery, virtue.
vis (see App. 5), f., force, violence; pl., strength.
visó, -ere, visi, visum, tr. [freq. of video], go to see, visit.
vita, -ae, f., life.
vitium, -i, n., fault, vice.
vitó, -äre, -ávī, -átum, tr., avoid.
vivó, -ere, vivi, victum, intr., live.
vivus, -a, -um, adj. [vivō], living, alive.
vix, adv., scarcely, with difficulty.
Vocció, -ónis, m., Voccio, king of Noricum.
vocó, -äre, -ávī, -átum, tr. [vōx], call, summon.
Vocontii, -orum, m., the Vocontii, an Alpine Gallic tribe.
Volcánus, -i, m., Vulcan, the god of fire.
voló, -äre, -ávi, -átum, intr., fly.
voló, velle, volui, tr., wish, be willing.
Volsci, -órum, m. pl., the Volsci, a people of Latium.
volucris, -is, f. [volucer, flying], bird.
volutárius, -a, -um, adj. [voluntás], voluntary; subst., voluntárii, -órum, m. pl., volunteers.
volutáis, -átis, f. [voló, wish], wish, approval, sanction, good-will.
voluptáis, -átis, f., pleasure, enjoyment.
vōs, pl. of tú, you.
voró, -äre, -ávi, -átum, tr., devour.
voveó, -ère, vövi, vö tum, tr., vow, promise solemnly.
vóx, vōcis, f. voice, cry, utterance, word.
vulgáris, -e, adj. [vulgus], ordinary, common.
vulgō, adv. [vulgus], generally, everywhere.
vulgus, -i, n., the multitude, the public.
vulneró, -äre, -ávi, -átum, tr. [vulnus], wound.
vulnus, vulneris, n., wound.
vultur, vulturis, m., vulture.
vultus, -ús, m., face, features, expression.

X
Xanthippus, -i, m. Xanthippus, a Lacedaemonian general.

Z
Zama, -ae, f., Zama, a town of Numidia.
Zetès, -ae, m., Zetes, one of the Argonauts.
INDEX

This index refers to the syntactical material to be found in the Lessons of this book, pp. 57-125, in the Notes to the selections for reading, and in the Grammatical Appendix. In the case of the Notes references are made only to a few typical occurrences of the principle involved. Numerals refer to section numbers in the Appendix, to line numbers in the Perseus, Hercules, and The Argonauts, to section and line in the stories from Roman History, and to chapter and line in Caesar.

ABLATIVE:
absolute, App. 75; Arg. 29; 126;
R. 7, 2; 10, 34; C. 2, 2; 5, 6.
of accompaniment, App. 70; Her.
342.
of accordance, Her. 391, 523; R.
6, 17; C. 14, 3.
of agent, App. 66.
of attendant circumstance, C. 18,
23.
of cause, App. 78; Per. 83; R. 5,
19; C. 31, 19.
of comparison, Lesson XX; App.
67; R. 24, 10; 26, 98.
with de or ex for gen. of the whole,
App. 43, a; Her. 380; Arg. 6.
of degree of difference, App. 74;
Her. 265; R. 19, 21; C. 41,
14.
of description, App. 77; Per. 36;
Her. 122; Arg. 256; C. 6, 11.
with dignus, R. 23, 6; 24, 57.
of manner, App. 71; Per. 42; Arg.
261; C. 36, 10.
of means, App. 72; Her. 165.
of place in which, Lesson II; R.
23, 1; C. 39, 17.
of place from which, Lesson II;
App. 65; R. 27, 44.
of respect, App. 76; Per. 55; R.
1, 20; C. 5, 3.
of route, Lesson XXXI; App. 73;
Arg. 136.
of separation, App. 64; Her. 47;
R. 11, 5; C. 1, 13.
of time, App. 69; Per. 50; C. 12,
12.
with utor etc., App. 79; Her. 193;
Arg. 35; C. 16, 5.

ACCUSATIVE:
of direct object, App. 57.
of duration of time, App. 58; Per.
18; Her. 392.
of extent (amount), Arg. 121; R.
27, 103.
of extent (space), App. 59; Arg.
40; C. 38, 1.
of place to which, App. 60; Arg.
16.
with prepositions, App. 61.
with proximus, C. 54, 3.
as subject of an infinitive, App.
62.
governed by trans in composition,
App. 63, a; R. 23, 71.
two accusatives with verbs of
naming, etc., App. 63; Per. 10;
R. 1, 22.
two accusatives with volo, C. 34,
5.

ADJECTIVES:
adherent, App. 82.
with adverbial force, App. 86; R
1, 20; 6, 25.
comparative and superlative,
meaning of, App. 87.
denoting a part, Lesson XXXIII;
App. 85; R. 13, 17; C. 22, 1;
24, 3.
predicate, App. 83.
substantive use, App. 84; Per. 1;
Her. 85; R. 13, 19.

ADVERBATIVE clauses: see cum and
quamquam.

AGREEMENT:
of adjectives, App. 38, 1; adj. at-
tracted to agreement with predi-
cate noun, Her. 103.
Agreement: (continued)
   of appositives, App. 39.
   of relative pronouns, App. 38, 2; R. 12, 15.
   of verbs, App. 40; R. 14, 6; 17, 32; C. 1, 5.
Antecedent, included in relative clause, R. 5, 39.
Apposition, App. 39.

causā, abl. with dependent gen., R. 4, 17.
Causal clauses: see cum and quod.
coepī, passive of with passive infinitive, C. 47, 2.
Commands:
   in indirect discourse, App. 116, (2).
   negative, with nēō and infinitive, Lesson XXXIV; App. 115; R. 9, 38; C. 13, 13; with nē and subjunctive, App. 115, a; with caēvē and subjunctive, App. 115, b.
Comparatives, with no influence on case of noun, R. 26, 124 and 143.
Conditions, contrary to fact, Lesson XXX; App. 114; R. 13, 9; C. 14, 4.
   less vivid, Lesson XXIX; App. 113; R. 23, 67.
   more vivid, Lesson XXIX, App. 112.
   non-committal, Lesson XXXI, App. 111.
cōnsuēscō, force of tenses, Her. 32.
cum, enclitic use of, App. 136, a; Her. 91.
cum clauses, adversative, Lesson XII; App. 101; Arg. 12; R. 1, 23.
   causal, Lesson XI; App. 100; Arg. 28.
   descriptive, Lesson XIII; App. 102; Arg. 8; R. 1, 5; 25, 63.
cum prīmum, with perfect indic., Her. 208; R. 3, 11.
cum inversum, Arg. 109, 342; R. 18, 31.

Dative: (continued)
   of agent, Lesson XV; App. 56;
   Arg. 244; C. 32, 13.
   with compound verbs, App. 55;
   Per. 33; 68; Her. 37; Arg. 298;
   R. 20, 14.
   indirect object, App. 49; Per. 55;
   R. 3, 13.
   with obviam īre, R. 25, 22; 27, 67.
   of possession, Lesson XXVIII;
   App. 52; R. 2, 6; C. 34, 10.
   of purpose, Lesson X; App. 53;
   Arg. 44; R. 9, 19; C. 18, 27.
   of reference, Lesson X; App. 54;
   Arg. 226; R. 9, 19; for possessive gen., Arg. 293; R. 27, 88.
   of separation, C. 17, 9.
   with special verbs, App. 51; Her. 23; 255; C. 9, 8.
Description, relative clauses of,
   Lesson XXIII; App. 99.
Descriptive clause of situation, see cum.
domus, locative of, Lesson I.; declension of, Lesson I.
dum, with present indicative in a clause of situation, Per. 46;
   Her. 328; R. 3, 14; C. 27, 6.

etsī, with indicative, R. 9, 22.
Fear, clauses of, Lesson XXIV;
   App. 96.

Genitive: of description, App. 44; Her. 120;
   185.
   explanatory, R. 25, 24; 26, 9.
   of indefinite value, C. 20, 14.
   of material, App. 47.
   of measure, App. 44, a; Her. 186;
   Arg. 40; C. 5, 7.
   objective, App. 45; R. 6, 8; 8, 19;
   C. 4, 3.
   of possession, App. 42.
   with potius, C. 3, 21.
   subjective, App. 46.
   with verbs of remembering and
   forgetting, Lesson XXXV;
   App. 48; C. 13, 11; 14, 6.
   of the whole, App. 43; Her. 286;
   R. 13, 24; C. 20, 4.
GERUND, App. 122, 124.
ablative of, App. 122, d; Her. 529; 549; Arg. 27; R. 11, 52.
cusative of, with ad, App. 122, c; Her. 238.
genitive of, App. 122, a; Her. 97, 504; C. 52, 6.
GERUNDIVE, Lesson XVIII; App. 123, 124.
ablative, Arg. 27.
accusative of, with ad, Arg. 44; R. 9, 14; C. 1, 8.
after cūrō, etc., C. 13, 2; 19, 2.
genitive of, Arg. 160; R. 11, 85; 18, 12.
genitive with meī, tuā, etc., C. 44, 18.

IMPERATIVE, use of, App. 107.
future, Lesson 32.

IMPERSOINAL verbs:
licet, Lesson IX.
opertet, Lesson IX; App. 109; R. 27, 106.
passive of intransitives used impersonally, Lesson XVII; Arg. 75; 244; R. 10, 11; 22, 90; C. 7, 13.

INDICATIVE mood, use of, App. 88.
INDIRECT discourse, App. 116.
commands in, Lesson XVI; App. 116, 2; C. 7, 18.
subordinate clauses in, Lesson XVI; Arg. 31; R. 17, 51; C. 7, 10.

INDIRECT questions, Lesson XIV; App. 104; Arg. 38; R. 11, 54; 23, 68 (double); C. 12, 2.

INFINITIVE:
complementary, App. 108.
as object of hābēō, Arg. 5.
as subject, App. 109; Per. 23; Her. 469.
with passive of cōgō, Her. 474.
with subject accusative, App. 110; object of cupidō, R. 6, 2;
pator, R. 13, 2; prohibēō, Her. 343; of volō, R. 5, 51.
as subject, App. 109; Her. 464;
R. 16, 5; C. 33, 13.
INFORMAL indirect discourse, App. 106; Arg. 142; R. 14, 10; C. 16, 1.

jam dūdum, use of tenses with, Per. 24; R. 12, 1.
lcet, use of, Lesson IX.
LOCATIVE case, Lesson I; App. 81; R. 6, 7; 11, 85.
mille, use of in sing. and pl., Her. 181.

nōlī, in negative commands, see COMMANDS.

NOMINATIVE:
as subject, App. 41.
as predicate, App. 41, a; Per. 2.

NOUN clauses:
of desire, Lesson XXII; App. 94; Arg. 20; 129; R. 7, 29; 20, 36.
of fact, Lesson VII; App. 95; Arg. 21; R. 24, 10; C. 13, 17.
of fear, Lesson XXIV; App. 96; Arg. 15.
clause with nē dependent on periculum, App. 96, b; R. 19, 26.

ōdi, force of tenses, Her. 3.
opertet, use of, Lesson IX; App. 109; R. 27, 106.

PARTICIPLES:
uses of, Lessons XXV; App. 117-121.
equal to coordinate verb, R. 9, 29; 10, 37; 24, 65.
future active, App. 120; Arg. 320; R. 27, 45.
future passive, Lesson XV; App. 121; Arg. 132; R. 5, 53.
perfect of deponent verbs as passive, C. 11, 9.
perfect of deponent verbs with present force, Her. 331; Arg. 15; C. 32, 5.
perfect with hābēō, C. 15, 3; 18, 9; 44, 37.
perfect translated by English noun, R. 3, 15; 5, 21.
perfect equivalent to relative clause, R. 3, 19; 4, 11.
present as substantive, Her. 536; Arg. 260.
pator, with infinitive and acc. as object, R. 13, 2.
with noun clause as object, C. 45, 3.
INDEX

Place constructions, with prepositions, Lesson II; App. 65, 68.
without prepositions, Lesson II; App. 65; C. 39, 17.
place to which, Lesson II; App. 60; Arg. 17; R. 8, 15.

Postpositives, enim, Lesson II;
Per. 7; tamen, Per. 9.
postquam, with perfect indicative, Per. 12.
with past perfect indicative, Her. 127.

Prepositions, cases with, App. 136-138.
position of monosyllabic preposition between adjective and noun, App. 139; Her. 73.

Purpose, Lessons XIX, XX; App. 91, 92; ut, Arg. 62; nē, Arg. 159; quī, Arg. 17; R. 5, 4; quō, C. 8, 4.

quam, force of with superlative, Her. 351; Arg. 220.
quamquam, with indicative, R. 5, 19.
quidem, with concessive force, Her. 346; R. 11, 14.
quīn, with subjunctive, after verb of doubting, App. 103; Arg. 113; C. 3, 17.
quīsquam, use of, Lesson IV.
quod causal, with subjunctive, Arg. 252; R. 10, 12.
quod, noun clause of fact, C. 14, 5; 19, 1; 44, 19.
quod, =“as to the fact,” C. 36, 12.

Reflexive use of passive voice, Her. 301; R. 7, 40.

Relative clauses:
causal, with subjunctive, R. 23, 54; 27, 29.
descriptive, Lesson XXIII; App. 99; C. 6, 1.
of purpose, see Subjunctive.
relative clause preceding antecedent, Arg. 59; R. 21, 11.

Relative pronoun translated as personal or demonstrative, Her. 478; Arg. 87.

Result, clauses of, Lesson V; App. 93; Arg. 48; 70; R. 22, 93.

Sequence of tenses, Lesson VIII;
App. 134, 135; Arg. 185.
simul atque, with perfect indicative, Per. 102; Her. 374.

Subjunctive:
anticipatory, Lesson XXVIII;
App. 97; Arg. 138; R. 19, 6; C. 11, 15.
by attraction, Lesson XXXV;
App. 105; Arg. 20; C. 36, 2.
in negative commands, after cavē, App. 115, b; with nē, App. 115, a.
in conditions, contrary to fact, Lesson XXX; App. 114; R. 13, 9; C. 14, 4; less vivid, Lesson XXIX; App. 113; R. 23, 67.
cum, adverbative, Lesson XII;
App. 101; Arg. 12; R. 1, 23; causal, Lesson XI; App. 100; Arg. 28; descriptive clause, Lesson XIII; App. 102; Arg. 8; R. 1, 5; 25, 63.
of desire or will, Lesson XXVI;
App. 89; R. 7, 15; 25, 29; 26, 34.
of entreaty, Arg. 293.
in clause of fear, Lesson XXIV;
App. 96; Arg. 15.
in indirect questions, Lesson XIV;
App. 104; Arg. 38; R. 11, 54; 23, 68 (double); C. 12, 2.
in indirect discourse, Lesson XVI;
App. 116; Arg. 31.
informal indirect discourse, App. 106; Arg. 142; R. 14, 10; C. 16, 1.
in noun clauses, of desire, Lesson XXII; App. 94; Arg. 20; R. 7, 29; 20, 36; of fact, Lesson VII; App. 95; Arg. 21; R. 24, 10; C. 13, 17; of fear, Lesson XXIV; App. 96; Arg. 15.

Optative, Lesson XXVII; App. 90; R. 4, 9; 18, 26.
potential, R. 18, 36; 24, 26; C. 6, 4; 28, 7.
proviso, App. 98.
in clauses of purpose, Lessons XIX, XX; App. 91, a, 92; ut, Arg. 62; nē, Arg. 159; quī, Arg. 17; R. 5, 4; quō, C. 8.
SUBJUNCTIVE: (continued)
in clause with quīn after verb of doubting, App. 103; Arg. 113; C. 3, 17.
quod causal, Arg. 252; R. 10, 12.
in relative causal clauses, R. 23, 54; 27, 29.
in relative descriptive clauses, Lesson XXIII; App. 99; C. 6, 1.
in clauses of result, Lesson V;
App 93; Arg. 48; 70; R. 22, 93.
SUPINE, Lesson XXI; App. 125, 126;
in -um, R. 27, 117; C. 11, 4; in -ū, R. 23, 68; C. 3, 15.

TENSES:
force of, App. 127-133.
force of with jam dūdum, etc.,
Per. 24; R. 12, 1; 25, 46; 26, 60.
force of tenses of cōnsuēscō and ēdī, Her. 3; 32.
future indicative = imperative, Her. 540.

TENSES: (continued)
imperfect with ubī in clause of situation, Her. 208.
past perfect with postquam in clauses of situation, Her. 127.
perfect indicative with postquam, ubī, cum prīnum, simul atque, Per. 12; Her. 208; Arg. 276.
present, historical, Per. 64; R. 5, 37.
present indicative with dum in clauses of situation, Per. 46; 63; Her. 328.
repeated or habitual action, imperfect and past perfect, Per. 40; Her. 18; 44; 109.
sequence of tenses, Lesson VIII;
App. 134, 135; Arg. 185.

ubi prīnum, with perfect indicative, Arg. 276.

WISHES, mood and tenses in, Lesson XXVII; App. 90.